The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses

Under the Auspices of EBMT

Michelle Kenyon
Aleksandra Babic
Editors

Second Edition

EBMT

OPEN ACCESS

Springer

The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses

Michelle Kenyon • Aleksandra Babic
Editors

The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses

Under the Auspices of EBMT

Second Edition

Springer

Editors
Michelle Kenyon
Department of Haematological Medicine
King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
London, UK

Aleksandra Babic
Almere, The Netherlands

This book is an open access publication.

ISBN 978-3-031-23393-7 ISBN 978-3-031-23394-4 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4

European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

In response to the overwhelmingly positive feedback from the first edition of this book, we have crafted a new edition that incorporates suggestions for changes coupled with our ideas for new content. Our general goals in the second edition were to produce a revision of the entire book to bring it up to date for 2023 and beyond, but to ensure we retained the same overall format with clear explanations supported by the latest evidence and references.

We have added an entirely new chapter on CART and immunotherapy and this second edition also takes into account guideline and nursing practice changes that have occurred since the COVID-19 pandemic.

In this edition, we have added new figures and tables offering improved and more accessible graphics to support the extensive written explanations.

Those that have used the first edition will recognise the familiar format which we retained to enable the reader to move through the textbook chapter by chapter, or by selecting the content of particular interest and relevance from the comprehensive chapter list. We hope that you find this second edition as informative as the first. The information within is a valuable resource and will continue to educate nurses working in the field of Haematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation and cellular therapy.

London, UK — Michelle Kenyon

Acknowledgements

Aleksandra Babic did not participate in this second edition, but her name remains on the cover to acknowledge her leading role as an author and as an editor in the first edition published in 2018 while she was working for the Oncology Institute of Southern Switzerland (IOSI).

Contents

JACIE and Quality Management in HSCT: Implications for Nursing

1

Carole Charley, Raquel Espada Martín, Ivana Ferrero, Aleksandra Babic, and Iris Bargalló Arraut

Abstract

Laboratory medicine, along with the airline industry, has a long history of utilising quality management systems. It took until 1999 for the Joint Accreditation Committee of the International Society for Cellular Therapy (ISCT) and the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), known as JACIE, to be established as an accreditation system in the field of haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT). The aim was to create a standardised system of accreditation to be officially recognised across Europe, and it was based on the accreditation standards established by the US-based Foundation for the Accreditation of Cellular Therapy (FACT).

Since the concept of JACIE was originally launched, many European centres have applied for initial accreditation with other centres gaining reaccreditation for the second, third or fourth time. Transplant units, outside of Europe, have accepted the importance of the JACIE Standards, with units in South Africa, Singapore and Saudi Arabia also gaining accreditation.

There is evidence that both donor and patient care have improved within the accredited centres (Passweg et al., Bone Marrow Transplant 47:906–923; 2012: Demiriz IS, Tekgunduz E, Altuntas F (2012) What is the most appropriate source for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation?).

Peripheral Stem Cell/Bone Marrow/Cord Blood Bone Marrow Res. (2012):Article ID 834040 (online)). However, there is a lack of published evidence demonstrating that this improvement directly results from better nursing care. Therefore, the authors conducted a survey of nursing members of the European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Nurses Group (EBMT (NG)) to identify how nurses working in the area of HSCT felt that JACIE impacted in the care they delivered and the general implications of JACIE for nurses.

Aleksandra Babic and Iris Bargalló Arraut are acknowledged for participating in first edition.

C. Charley (✉) · R. Espada Martín
JACIE Accreditation Office, Barcelona, Spain
e-mail: raquel.espada@ebmt.org

I. Ferrero
JACIE Accreditation Office, Barcelona, Spain

Stem Cell Transplantation and Cellular Therapy Laboratory, City of Health and Science of Turin, University of Turin, Turin, Italy
e-mail: ivana.ferrero@unito.it

A. Babic
Almere, The Netherlands

I. B. Arraut
EBMT Office, Barcelona, Spain
e-mail: iris.bargallo@ebmt.org

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_1

Keywords

FACT-JACIE International Standards · Nurses implications · Quality management · Standard operating procedures

1.1 Background to JACIE

The 1990s saw an increase in the number of transplant teams performing haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) (Passweg et al. 2012a, b). The procedure that was initially considered experimental during the 1960s/1970s was becoming an established treatment for many blood cancers, solid tumours and acquired or congenital disorders of the haematopoietic system within adult and paediatric populations. Towards the end of the 1990s, the source of haematopoietic stem cells was collectable from the marrow, peripheral blood and cord blood and from autologous, sibling and unrelated donations (Demiriz et al. 2012).

In 1998 two leading European scientific organisations, The International Society for Cellular Therapy (ISCT) Europe and the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), formed a joint committee to be known as the Joint Accreditation Committee for ISCT and EBMT (JACIE) (Cornish 2008). The purpose of this new committee was to establish a system to allow transplant teams to self-assess against a group of standards (Cornish 2008), provide an inspection process and recognise compliance with the standards by awarding accreditation to those teams who worked within the field of HSCT. A pilot study of the JACIE inspection and accreditation process was carried out in Spain 2000–2002. This enabled JACIE to assess sections of the standards that gave rise to common difficulty experienced by the transplant teams and to assess what assistance, if any, would be required by the centres for them to obtain accreditation. The results of this pilot study underlined the need to implement national and international regulations (Pamphilon et al. 2008) within each European country. In January 2004, with the support from the European Union under the Public Health Programme (2003–2008), the JACIE accreditation process was launched (Pamphilon et al. 2008).

To enable a set of international standards for the provision of quality medical, nursing and laboratory practice in HSCT transplantation to be developed and recognised, JACIE collaborated with their American counterparts, the Foundation for the Accreditation of Cellular Therapy (*FACT*) (JACIE). The "FACT-JACIE International Standards for Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Product Collection, Processing, and Administration" are revised on a regular basis.

JACIE remains a non-profit organisation with all members being an expert within their specialty: clinical, collection or processing procedures of HSCT. Clinicians, nurses and quality managers who are experts in their field can volunteer to become JACIE inspectors, if they meet the criteria set. Potential inspectors must attend training, pass an exam and act as an observer within the inspection team as a trainee before their first official JACIE inspection. As the JACIE accreditation process has evolved, the inspection team membership has extended to include apheresis nurses and experienced quality managers recognising the multi-professional components of HSCT programmes. The accreditation process monitors an established quality management system (QMS); therefore, accredited centres are required to apply for reaccreditation every 4 years.

Since 2000, 508 transplant programmes and facilities in 34 countries in Europe and beyond have applied to JACIE and 790 inspections (first-time and reaccreditation) have been performed. Three hundred sixty-eight applicants have achieved accreditation at least once with practically all centres repeating the process after the first accreditation cycle (JACIE activity report 2021 https://www.ebmt.org/annual-report-2020/jacie-activity-report-2020).

In terms of activity, 2020 was severely affected by the Covid 19 pandemic. From mid-March 40 applications were received, 18 inspections were completed before on-site inspections were cancelled and 47 accreditations were awarded.

Although the initial aim of the accreditation scheme was a voluntary process, in many countries, health-care systems/commissioners or health insurance providers and tissue banking authorities increasingly view JACIE accreditation as important and demand accreditation to allow the procedure of HSCT to be performed.

Accreditation is the means by which a centre can demonstrate that it is performing to a required level of practice in accordance with agreed standards of excellence. Essentially it allows a centre to certify that it operates an effective QMS. Furthermore, due to the increased use of unrelated donors from different countries, interaction and collaboration between units are key elements for the success of stem cell transplantation. JACIE accreditation is a guarantee that the donor and the cellular product have been handled according to specific safety criteria.

A QMS is a mechanism to:

- Ensure that procedures are being performed in line with agreed standards, with full participation by all staff members. In a HSCT programme, this ensures that the clinical, collection and laboratory facilities are all working together to achieve excellent communication, effective common work practices, shared policies where appropriate, increases guarantees for improved patient outcomes and the use of international donor criteria for related donors (Gratwohl et al. 2014; Anthias et al. 2015, 2016). Nurses have successfully taken on the role of improving communications for donor mobilisation, collections and liaising with the staff of the processing facility.
- Track and monitor collected cell products for safety and viability from the time of donation to the administration procedure. Patients' medical records must include not only the information of date and time of the collection but also volume of collected product, type and volume of citrate and the product identification. A transport log will be required to ensure traceability of all products from collection to processing and then to clinical for administration.
- Identify errors and incidents that can be reviewed and corrective actions to be implemented and allow a plan of action to be put into place to minimise the error reoccurring.
- Formalise training and competencies.
- Clearly identify the roles and responsibilities of all staff working within the transplant team or with outside agencies (clinical, collection, processing and support services; intensive care, radiotherapy, cleaning and transport services, laboratories and donor panels).
- Review documentation for evidence that standards have achieved compliance on a regular basis.

1.2 Preparing for JACIE Accreditation

1.2.1 Considerations

JACIE Standards set a minimum criteria of resources required for a safe delivery of the cellular therapy service. The Standards required for example human resource in quality manager, data manager and clinical support staff such as dedicated pharmacist, dietitian and social worker as part of the infrastructure. Therefore it is important that the centre has formal arrangements in place to meet these specific Standards and sometimes this may require additional resources. Any arrangements should be formalised as part of the QMS to achieve accreditation.

A clinical transplantation program may apply for accreditation alone or in conjunction with associated collection and processing facilities. JACIE allows stand-alone accreditation for independent facilities. There will be many processing facilities that are independent from the clinical transplant teams and may be responsible for collections of apheresis products. In this situation, the processing facility and clinical facility have a choice of accreditation. They may decide to apply for separate or combined accreditation. However, in order to obtain JACIE accreditation, it is important that the QMS describes the communication processes between all facilities involved and provides the evidence that communications

exist, e.g. minutes of weekly, monthly and annual meetings must include the names of the attendees, sharing evidence of engraftment and adverse events. It is important to remember that a clinical facility must use an apheresis and processing facility that are JACIE accredited. Similarly, an apheresis facility must use a processing facility that is accredited before clinical and apheresis facilities can be awarded JACIE accreditation.

1.2.2 Implementing a Quality Management System

HSCT is a procedure with a high technological content, which requires extensive attention towards patients/donors who might introduce important problematic clinical factors and also towards sophisticated laboratory procedures related to the collection, manipulation, cryopreservation and transplantation of haematopoietic cellular therapy. The continuous improvement of stem cell technology requires that all procedures regarding HSCT be guaranteed through the definition of qualitative standards recognised by scientific associations and international organisations. For the collection, processing and transplantation of HSCs, there are standardised procedures, which require specific clinical, haematological and laboratory knowledge and strict quality controls concerning all processes from cellular collection and manipulation to the administration of the collected product. Stem cell collection, processing, storage and transplantation must be carried out in a highly regulated manner to guarantee both safety and clinical efficacy. Moreover, in recent years, immune effector cells (IECs) have been introduced into clinical practice, along with their challenges due to widely diverse manufacturing methods, clinical indications, and safety and toxicity profiles. (For further information please see the chapter 7.

Therefore, quality assurance is a very important topic at all levels of a haematopoietic cellular therapy and transplantation program, including robust nursing procedures, e.g. chemotherapy administration, use of stem cell mobilisation agents and collection of cellular material.

The implementation of a QMS arises from the need to develop an appropriate system to optimise the quality of the service offered by a stem cell transplantation unit, in a general context of health-care quality improvement. A QMS is a tool that can be used to rapidly identify errors or accidents and resolve them to minimise the risk of repetition. A QMS assists in training and clearly identifies the roles and responsibilities of all staff (Cornish 2008; Caunday et al. 2009).

In 1966, Avedis Donabedian wrote a paper entitled “Evaluating the Quality of Medical Care”, where the concepts of structure, process and outcome in health care were introduced. The structure includes not only the physical aspects in which care is given but also the resources and tools available to the health-care team, the leadership and the staff. The process is how the health-care system and the patient interact. The outcome includes the effect of care on diseases and their prevention, such as the mortality rate, the error rate and the quality of life (Samson et al. 2007).

During the 1950s, Edwards Deming introduced the plan-do-check-act (PDCA) cycle, an iterative four-step management method used for the implementation and improvements of processes and products, also known as plan-do-study-act (PDSA). He also stressed the importance of viewing problems in the context of a system and that most mistakes were not the fault of the worker (Samson et al. 2007).

The major objective of the JACIE Standards is to promote quality medical and laboratory practice in HSCT and other therapies using cellular products; therefore dedicated quality management standards are found within the FACT-JACIE manual (clinical facility B04, marrow collection facility CM04, apheresis collection facility C04, processing facility D04).

Quality management is the management of activities involved in quality assessment, assurance and control that try to improve the quality of patient care, products and services in cellular therapy activities.

A QMS could be implemented applying the PDCA cycle for the management and continuous improvement of processes and products.

- **PLAN** means to establish the objectives and processes necessary to the centre. This means define the scope of the QMS and identify which processes within the scope are most important, those staff who are involved in the important processes and involve them in defining the targets to be used to measure the quality of the process. Ensure all staffs know how they can contribute to achieve the performance required.

  One important aspect to consider when implementing a QMS is the organisation and interaction between the different facilities (clinical, collection and processing). The Program shall include an organisational chart of functions, considering clinical, collection and processing staff, in particular for those tasks that are critical to assuring product or service quality. Training plans should be defined and put in place. Documentation may be displayed in a variety of formats (job descriptions, training records, qualifications certificates, retraining).

  A document system should be implemented serving multiple purposes for the QM programme. They provide instructions on:
  - Activities, policies and processes controlling various steps within the activities.
  - Quality control and traceability of products, donor and patients.

  The Quality Management Manual should be one of the first documents developed when preparing for JACIE accreditation. The centre must have a standard operating procedure (SOP) outlining the method by which to create, approve, implement and update SOPs (known as the "SOP for SOPs"). Clinical and collection protocols or laboratory methods must be translated into written procedures, in paper form or an electronic version, and readily available to staff. The purpose of document control is to ensure the correct approved documents are in use.

Since the 6th edition of the FACT-JACIE Standards, more specific requirements for validation and qualification studies have been delineated, and the concept of risk assessment has been implemented.

Validation is documented evidence that the performance of a specific process meets the requirements for the intended application. For example, the procedure for thawing frozen cells should be evaluated, as there is a risk of contamination and loss of cells during the thawing process. A thawing control, on three procedures, could be performed to assess whether these criteria would validate the process.

Qualification is documented evidence that the equipment/facility/utility is meeting the user requirement specification, working correctly and leading to the expected results. For example, "the dry shipper used for the transportation of frozen haematopoietic stem cells should be validated for temperature control".

During the implementation phase, risk management should be an ongoing part of the quality management process, to minimise hazards for processes, patients and staff.

In the 8th edition of the Standards, more general standards were added to address risk management program requirements for Clinical Programs utilizing licensed (or equivalent regulatory approval) cellular therapy products.

Risk management is not a new knowledge, even in healthcare. Risk is defined as an *"effect of uncertainty on objectives"* (ISO 31000: 2009), and there are many different approaches to classify and manage risks. Moreover, a risk can have not only a negative impact as a threat, but also be an "opportunity" with a positive influence.

There are several methods for the assessment of the risk, such as Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) or Failure Modes, Effects and Criticality Analysis (FMECA), methods of assessing potential failure mechanisms and their impact on system, identifying single failure points.

- ***DO*** means to implement the plan, execute the process and carry on the activities. Once the programme has been established and staff trained, the activities and the quality plan should be maintained, through the document system and the available resources. Policies and procedures could be revised, training programmes implemented and the outcome analysis of cellular therapy product efficacy reviewed to verify that the processes in use provide a safe and effective product.
- ***CHECK*** is to measure the results and compare them against the expected results or goals defined by the plan. Audits represent one of the principal activities in this step and should be documented, independent inspection and retrospective review of activities to determine if they are performed according to written procedure and specified endpoints. They should be conducted to ensure that the QMS is operating effectively and to identify trends and recurring problems in all aspects of the programme. Moreover, the transplant programme should manage errors, accidents, deviations, adverse reactions and complaints and monitor activities, processes and products using measurable indicators (Harolds 2015).
- Finally, **ACT** is to improve the QMS based on the results of the previous steps. Investigation of errors and indicators and the implementation of corrective or improvement strategies are undertaken and monitored with follow-up assessment to determine the effectiveness of the change.

Data shown by Gratwohl and colleagues (Gratwohl et al. 2014) demonstrate that the use of a clinical quality management system is associated with improved survival of patients undergoing allogeneic HSCT.

BMT is a rapidly evolving field, involving in recent years not only blood and marrow stem cells but also many other cellular, immune and cytotoxic therapies (for example CAR-T therapies). The application of JACIE Standards is an excellent example for clinical quality systems in other specialities (Snowden et al. 2017).

1.3 The JACIE Accreditation Process

1.3.1 Start Working with the Standards

The JACIE accreditation process begins when the transplant centre, with the support of the hospital management team (a key element in order to assure provision of the required resources to successfully implement the JACIE accreditation process), agrees to start working according to the JACIE Standards.

It is important to gather all the necessary information before commencing the JACIE accreditation pathway. First read the JACIE Standards, access the guides, manuals and supporting documentation from the EBMT website (www.ebmt.org/jacie-accreditation). Then begin to complete the JACIE Inspection Checklist as a self-evaluation tool. This document contains all the JACIE Standards and will help the centre establish their level of compliance against each standard and identify further work required to achieve accreditation. Furthermore, the checklist is the pivotal tool used continuously throughout the JACIE accreditation process, until JACIE accreditation has been awarded.

1.3.2 Application for JACIE Accreditation

When the applicant has established a mature QMS, i.e. has been in place and operational for at least a year, a self-assessment of the standards has been performed and shows a high percentage of compliance, the centre can formally apply for JACIE accreditation. The application form and inspection checklist should be completed in English and submitted to the JACIE Office where the JACIE team will review and approve the application form, finalising this part of the process with the signing the accreditation agreement by the centre.

After application being approved, the applicant will be required to provide the preaudit doc-

umentation to the JACIE Office. The JACIE team and the inspectors will determine that all required documentation has been correctly submitted. The documents can be provided in the language of the centre/applicant; however, in some exceptional cases, a translation in English of some key documents will be requested. The preaudit documentation includes relevant documentation for all areas of the Stem Cell Transplant Programme such as personnel documentation, donor consent information, labels and summary of QMS activities (Quality Management Plan, audit report, policies) and others.

1.3.3 Arranging the Inspection Date

The JACIE Office will begin the process to assign an inspection date and the inspection team once all the documentation and the agreement are completed and approved. The inspection team will typically consist of one inspector per facility to be inspected, plus a quality management inspector. For example, if the applicant has applied for adult clinical and bone marrow, apheresis and processing accreditation, the inspection team will consist of experts in each of the following areas: clinical, apheresis, processing and quality management (The clinical inspector will be responsible for clinical and marrow collection facilities). The inspectors are selected according to their area of expertise: clinical, apheresis, processing and quality management. For instance, a clinician will inspect the clinical facility. If a paediatric unit is part of the inspection, a paediatrician will be assigned. When there is more than one facility per area, for instance, two apheresis units, an extra collection inspector will be included in the inspection team.

The applicant will be invited to view the list of JACIE inspectors, found on the EBMT website, and inform the JACIE Office if there are any inspectors that they would prefer did *not* participate in their inspection, due to a conflict of interest. Although the aim is to perfom the inspection in the language of the centre, the inspectors work internationally and therefore it is not uncommon for some/part of the inspection to be carried out in English. If the inspection is carried out in English, the JACIE co-ordinators will work with the Center to organise facilitators for the inspection team as well as to offer a discount to the center for translating some of the documents.

1.3.4 The Inspection

The inspection will take place over a period of 1–2 days and is a thorough examination of all aspects of the programme. The inspector will use the inspection checklist previously completed by the applicant to evaluate the centre's compliance with the standards.

The inspection is usually divided in the following parts:

- Introductory meeting by the programme director and the inspection team with all the programme personnel.
- Tour of the facilities and observation of procedures (or mock procedures).
- Review of documentation.
- Interviews with personnel.
- Closing meeting with programme director.
- Closing meeting summarising the inspection results with the transplant team.

1.3.5 The Inspection Report

Following inspection, the inspectors submit their completed written report and inspection checklist to the JACIE Office. The inspection report is a fundamental part of the accreditation process. The report will be prepared and presented to the JACIE Accreditation Committee by the JACIE Co-ordinators.

The Accreditation Committee is a group of experts from all areas of Stem Cell Transplantation (Clinical, Collection, Processing and Quality Management) that discuss each individual report and determine any corrective actions required in order to achieve accreditation. Bear in mind that while the inspectors' task is to *identify* areas of

non-compliance, it is the JACIE Accreditation Committee who determines what, if any, corrective actions are required to be performed.

1.3.6 Corrections and Accreditation Award

A high percentage of all inspections reveal at least some deficiencies and the degree of deficiency identified will vary in seriousness. In most cases, documentary evidence of corrections can be submitted electronically. However, if the deficiencies are considered to represent a risk for patients, donors or personnel, a focused re-inspection will be required before accreditation can be awarded.

Centres are allowed a period up to 9 months to implement and submit evidence of the corrections to the JACIE Office. The same team of inspectors will review and assess the adequacy of the corrections provided by the centre. Once the inspectors are satisfied that all points have been resolved, with the approval of the JACIE Accreditation Committee, the applicant will be awarded accreditation for a 4-year period, subject to a document-based interim audit at the end of the second year.

1.3.7 Post JACIE Accreditation

The inspection is the most visible part of the JACIE accreditation process. The most challenging part, once accreditation has been awarded, is maintaining accreditation. At the second year of accreditation, the interim audit will be due, and if the system has not been maintained, the hard work invested in achieving accreditation will become void and centres risk having to return to the beginning of the process when applying for reaccreditation.

The JACIE Committee warns against failing to uphold standards or maintain the QMS between inspections. Those centres that fail to maintain their QMS due to lack of commitment or allow their system to deteriorate may discover that standards that were compliant at the initial inspection have become partially compliant or non-compliant during the next inspection. For instance, inspectors may identify failures to review documentation, perform audits and maintain competencies due to the lack of available evidence during the accreditation cycle.

The accreditation process described above corresponds to the JACIE accreditation based on an onsite inspection. JACIE also offers accreditation based on a remote inspection by adapting the current onsite inspection format. The format of the remote inspections is designed to mimic as much as possible the onsite accreditation process through video conferencing and supported by live streaming of the facilities and/or prerecorded video tour.

Further information regarding the JACIE Accreditation process is available in the document entitled "Quality Management and Accreditation in Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation and Cellular Therapy: The JACIE Guide", available on the EBMT website (https://www.ebmt.org/sites/default/files/2021-03/The-JACIE-Guide.pdf).

1.4 JACIE Standards That Affect Nursing: Clinical and Collection

The JACIE Standards are divided into sections: clinical and donor (B), collection of marrow (CM), apheresis products (C) and laboratory (D). Many of these standards are shared across each facility as appropriate (Table 1.1) with Quality Management standards being found in all sections.

It is not possible to describe, within this chapter, all the actions and evidence required to fulfill a full compliance for all the standards published in the latest edition of the FACT-JACIE Standards; therefore in Tables 1.2, 1.3 and 1.4, there are examples of appropriate standards, compliance and comments that have implications for nurses.

It is important that the nursing team takes ownership of the relevant standards and works towards achieving full compliance whilst being aware of the other standards that have implications on nurses or nursing (Table 1.5).

Table 1.1 FACT-JACIE Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Accreditation Standards (8th edition) QUALITY MANAGEMENT

CLINICAL PROGRAM STANDARDS	BONE MARROW FACILITY STANDARDS	COLLECTION FACILITY STANDARDS	PROCESSING FACILITY STANDARDS
PART B	PART CM	PARTC	PART D
B1 General	CM1 General	C1 General	D1 General
B2 Clinical Unit	CM2 Clinical Unit	C2 Apheresis Collection Facility	D2 Processing Facility
B3 Personnel	CM3 Personnel	C3 Personnel	D3 Personnel
B4 Quality Management	B4 Quality Management	C4 Quality Management	D4 Quality Management
B5 Policies and Standard Operating Procedures	CM5 Policies and Standard Operating Procedures	C5 Policies and Standard Operating Procedures	D5 Policies and Standard Operating Procedures
B6 Allogeneic and Autologous Donor Selection, Evaluation, and Management	CM6 Allogeneic and Autologous Donor Selection Evaluation and Management	C6 Allogeneic and Autologous Donor Selection, Evaluation and Management	D6 Equipment, Supplies, and Reagents
B7 Recipient Care	CM7 Coding and Labeling of Cellular Therapy Products	C7 Coding and Labeling of Cellular Therapy Products	D7 Coding and Labeling of Cellular Therapy Products
B8 Clinical Research	CM8 Process Control	C8 Process Controls	D8 Process Controls
B9 Data Management	CM9 Storage	C9 Cellular Therapy Product Storage	D9 Cellular Therapy Product Storage
B10 Records	CM10 Cellular Therapy Product Transportation And Shipping	C10 Cellular Therapy Product Transportation and Shipping	D10 Cellular Therapy Product Transportation and Shipping
	CM11 Records	C11 Records	D11 Receipt Of Cellular Therapy Products
	CM12 Direct Distribution to Clinical Program	C12 Direct Distribution to Clinical Program	D12 Disposal
			D13 Records

Table 1.2 Examples of "non-compliant" clinical standards (FACT-JACIE Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Accreditation Standards: (in previous editions of the JACIE standards))

B.3.7 C3	STAFFING NURSES	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	COMMENT
	Standard		6th Ed. JACIE Standards	7th Edition Standards
C3.4.1	The number of trained collection personnel shall be adequate for the number of procedures performed and shall include a minimum of one designated trained individual with an identified trained backup to maintain sufficient coverage.	Partially compliant	No back up plan to continue the service in the rare event that a member of a small team requires long-term absence from work.	Continues to be an issue in 27% (3 out 11) initial collection reports
B.3.7.1	The Clinical Program shall have nurses formally trained and experienced in the management of patients receiving cellular therapy.	Partially compliant	No evidence of formal training in the transplant setting	Resolved in all 8 initial and 34 clinical re-accreditation reports
B.3.7.2	Clinical Programs treating paediatric patients shall have nurses formally trained and experienced in the management of paediatric patients receiving cellular therapy.	Partially compliant	Nurses are paediatric qualified but lack evidence of formal training in the transplant setting	Resolved in all 8 initial and 34 clinical re-accreditation reports

(continued)

Table 1.2 (continued)

B.3.7 C3	STAFFING NURSES	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	COMMENT
B.3.7.3	*Nurses shall have received specific training and maintain* competence *in the transplant-related skills that they routinely practice* including:			
B.3.7.3.3	Administration of blood products, growth factors, cellular therapy products, and other supportive therapies.	Partially compliant	Hospital policy does not include the administration of cellular products; therefore a policy for the administration of cellular products is required. This policy can then be used for training and competency testing	Resolved in all 8 initial and 34 clinical re-accreditation reports
B.3.7.3.6	Palliative and end-of-life care.	Non-compliant	No training	Resolved in all 8 initial and 34 clinical re-accreditation reports
B.3.7.4	There shall be written policies for all relevant nursing procedures, including, but not limited to:			
B.3.7.4.1	Care of immunocompromised patients.	Partially compliant	Hospital policy used does not include the severely compromised transplant patient, therefore a policy or SOP required	Resolved in all 8 initial and 34 clinical re-accreditation reports
B.3.7.4.3	Administration of cellular therapy products.	Partially compliant	Policy/SOP does not include administration of donor lymphocytes	15% (5 out of 34 re-accreditation reports) either had no formal training in the administration of transplants (including DMSO containing products or Immune Effector Cells OR no special documentation of the infusion process)
B.3.7.6	There shall be a nurse/patient ratio satisfactory to manage the severity of the patients' clinical status.	Partially compliant	During the discussions with nursing staff there appears to be an informal policy in place to increase the number of nursing staff when required. A formal policy should be written	Resolved in all 8 initial and 34 clinical re-accreditation reports

Table 1.3 Examples of "non-compliant" quality management standards for clinical and apheresis facilities (FACT-JACIE Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Accreditation Standards (in previous editions of the JACIE standards))

B.4	QUALITY MANAGEMENT	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	
	Standard		6th Ed. JACIE Standards	7th Ed. JACIE Standards
B.4.4	The Quality Management Plan shall include, or summarise and reference, policies and Standard Operating Procedures addressing personnel requirements for each key position in the Clinical Program. Personnel requirements shall include at a minimum:			
B.4.4.1 C.4.4.1	A current job description for all staff.	Partially compliant	Job description not available for all nursing grades/role	Lack of evidence continues to be an issue in 9% of the re-accreditation reports (3 out of 34 reports). Not an issue in the 6 initial reports.
B.4.4.2 C.4.4.2	A system to document the following for all staff:			
B.4.4.2.2 C.4.4.2.2	New employee orientation.	Partially compliant	Orientation program in place but no evidence that nurse Smyth (only worked on the ward for 3 months) has participated in the orientation program	Lack of evidence continues to be an issue in 6% of the re-accreditation reports (2 out of 34 reports) not an issue in the 6 initial reports.
B.4.4.2.3 C.4.4.2.3	Initial training and retraining when appropriate for all procedures performed.	Partially compliant	No evidence of re-training for nurse X who has returned from long-term absence.	Not yet fully resolved in either the re-accreditation or initial reports. (1 out of 34 re-accreditation reports and 1 out of 6 initial reports lacked evidence).
B.4.4.2.5 C.4.4.2.5	Continued competency at least annually.	Partially compliant	Not all nursing staff have evidence that competencies are performed annually	Lack of evidence continues to be an issue in 23% of the re-accreditation reports (8 out of 34 reports). Not an issue in the 6 initial reports.
B.4.4.2.6 C.4.4.2.6	Continuing education.	Partially compliant	Education program in place but no attendance list for each education activity	Not fully resolved. Lack of evidence continues in 6% of re-accreditation reports (2 out of 34 reports) and in 2% of initial reports (1 out of 6 reports)
B.4.8.3	Audits shall include, at a minimum:			
B.4.8.3.3	Annual audit of verification of chemotherapy drug and dose against the prescription ordering system and the protocol.	Non-compliant	Not performed	Lack of evidence or the standard is not performed continues to be an issue in 47% of the re-accreditation reports (16 out of 34 reports) and an issue in 50% of the initial reports. (3 out of 6 reports)

(continued)

Table 1.3 (continued)

B.4	QUALITY MANAGEMENT	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	
B.4.11 C.4.11	The Quality Management Plan shall include, or summarise and reference, policies and procedures for cellular therapy product tracking and tracing that allow tracking from the donor to the recipient or final disposition and tracing from the recipient or final disposition to the donor.	Partially compliant	Policies and SOP are included with the QMP. Staffs do not complete the tracking forms	

Table 1.4 Examples of "non-compliant" policy and procedure standards for clinical and apheresis facilities (FACT-JACIE Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Accreditation Standards: (in previous editions of the standards))

B.5. C5	POLICIES AND PROCEDURES	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	
			6th Ed. JACIE standards	7th Ed. JACIE standards
B.5.1 C.5.1	The Clinical Program shall establish and maintain policies and/or procedures addressing critical aspects of operations and management in addition to those required in B4. These documents shall include all elements required by these standards and shall address at a minimum:			
C5.1.6	Administration of blood products	Non-compliant	Not an issue	17% (5 out of 29) re-accreditation reports and 54% (6 out of 11) initial reports were found non-compliant e.g. the policy not being available in the collection facility OR the policies/SOP's meet the JACIE standards but there is no reference to acceptable end-points and/or the range of expected results in the procedure
B.5.1.8	Administration of HPC and other cellular therapy products, including products under exceptional release	Partially compliant	The policy has not been updated to include cord blood	Resolved for both initial and re-accreditation reports
C6.1.7	Labeling (including associated forms and samples)	Partially compliant	Labeling procedure should show more details regarding roles of physician and nurse involved in labeling operations	Remains an issue in 54% initial reports (6 out of 11 reports)
C5.1.8				The processing facility is often responsible for labelling. (1) the SOP is not available in the collection facility. (2) the ISBT 128 standard terminologies for product code or Eurocode is not used.
C.5.1.14	Equipment operation, maintenance and monitoring including corrective actions in the event of failure.	Partially compliant	No evidence of maintenance reports	Resolved in the re-accreditation report.
				27% (3 out of 11) initial reports had no evidence or have no correction action documented in the event of equipment failure

Table 1.4 (continued)

B.5. C5	POLICIES AND PROCEDURES	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	
C5.5.5	Staff training and, if appropriate, competency shall be documented before performing a new or revised standard operating procedure	Non-compliant	Lack of evidence	7% (2 out of 29) re-accreditation reports and 27% (3 out of 11) initial report had no documented evidence for this standard
B7	Recipient care			
B.7.4.4	Prior to administration of the preparative regimen, one (1) qualified person using a validated process or two (2) qualified people shall verify and document the drug and dose in the bag or pill against the orders and the protocol, and the identity of the patient to receive the therapy.	Non-compliant	No evidence of two persons verifying the drug.	Resolved in initial reports but remains a slight issue in 3% (2 out of 34) re-accreditation reports
B.7.6	There shall be a policy addressing safe administration of cellular therapy products.	Partially compliant	The policy has not been updated to include cord blood	15% (5 out of 34) re-accreditation reports **non-complaint** due to policy not being available in the outpatient facility or the policy not being detailed enough
B.7.6.4	Two (2) qualified persons shall verify the identity of the recipient and the product and the order for administration prior to the administration of the cellular therapy product.	Non-compliant	No evidence of two person verify the drug	Remains an issue for 33% (2 out of 6) initial reports
B.7.6.6	There shall be documentation in the recipient's medical record of the administered cellular therapy product unique identifier, initiation and completion times of administration, and any adverse events related to administration.	Partially compliant	No evidence of start and completion times of the infused product written in the recipient's medical notes	No issue for initial reports. In the re-accreditation reports there remains a slight issue in 6% (2 out of 34) reports not being compliant

Table 1.5 Examples of "non-compliant" process control standards for apheresis facilities (FACT-JACIE Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Accreditation Standards: (in previous editions of the standards))

C.08	PROCESS CONTROLS	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	
			6th Ed. JACIE Standards	7th Ed. JACIE standards
C8.1	Collection of cellular therapy products shall be performed according to written Standard Operating Procedures.	Non-compliant	Not an issues	10% (3 out of 29) re-accreditation reports were identified not to perform all the procedures mentioned in the SOP. e.g. calibration to be checked after every 5 procedures. 27% (3 out of 11) initial reports had no evidence that this standard was performed

(continued)

Table 1.5 (continued)

C.08	PROCESS CONTROLS	COMPLIANCE	COMMENT	
C8.2.2	Each supply and reagent used to collect cellular therapy products shall be visually examined at receipt and prior to use for damage or evidence of contamination	Partially complaint	Not an issue	Lack of evidence that visual checks were performed were found in 14% (4 out of 29) re-accreditation and in 18% (2 out of 11) initial reports
C.8.10.1	Adequacy of central line placement shall be verified by the Apheresis Collection Facility prior to initiating the collection procedure.	Partially complaint	No evidence that this standard is performed	10% (3 out of 29) of re-accreditation reports could not demonstrate this standard was performed
C.8.11	Administration of mobilization agents shall be under the supervision of a licensed health care professional experienced in their administration and management of complications in persons receiving these agents.	Partially compliant	The responsibilities of administration of growth factors should be clearly defined in the appropriate policies especially for those donors where shared care is in place	Appears to have been resolved in both re-accreditation and initial reports. Although it was noted in one initial report that an allogeneic donor's results were not reviewed.
C.8.12.1	Methods for collection shall include a process for controlling and monitoring the collection of cellular therapy products to confirm that products meet predetermined release specifications.	Partially compliant	Criteria for HPC-A collection should be defined together with ranges of expected results concerning HPC product characteristics	Continues to be an issue in a minority of reports. 18% (2 out of 11) initial reports and 7% (2 out of 29) re-accreditation reports stated that the release criteria is not clearly defined in an SOP or there was no evidence of pre-determined release criteria from the collection facility to processing facility.

1.4.1 Staffing and Nursing (Table 1.2)

Senior staff should be aware that the patient's pathway, during the transplant process, can be unpredictable. There are episodes when the patient will experience complications of the treatment required for HSCT that will require a higher intensity of nursing care. During such episodes, the nursing management should have an established contingency plan to provide adequate nursing care for these patients. Possible options could be:

- Nursing staff within the team allowed to work extra shifts.
- The employment of additional nursing staff with relevant experience from the hospital pool of nurses or from nursing agencies.
- Transfer of the patient to a high dependency or intensive care setting.

Whatever the contingency plan, there should be evidence in place, such as a written policy for staffing. This policy should describe the plan of action to be taken for small teams, apheresis, quality management and data collection teams, in case of planned or unplanned long-term absence from work, therefore allowing the patient's or donor's pathway to continue without affecting the nursing or medical care given.

Not only should there be adequate nursing staff, the nurses should be qualified, trained and competent in the roles they perform.

JACIE can be a challenge and an opportunity for nurses in:

- Reviewing existing procedures.
  - Especially those that have been performed automatically in the same way despite being inefficient.
- In adopting measures for clinical risk management.
  - Paying more attention to long-term planning for continuing education of personnel, procedures and tools for monitoring, verifying and in achieving competence maintenance.
- Development and implementation of internal audits and quality indicators.

Furthermore, JACIE is an opportunity for nurse recognition within the organisation they work, in terms of contribution to the overall results achieved.

1.4.2 Training and Competencies (Tables 1.2 and 1.3)

All hospitals should have their own programme for training, annual review/appraisal and competencies. The structure already in place for recording the individual staff members training can also be used to record the JACIE Standards' requirements. A new system for training records for JACIE is not required if the following is undertaken.

- Basic training.
  - A route that leads to the skills acquisition in order to obtain new or improved "performance"
- Educational training:
  - The set of activities, including basic training, aimed to develop and enrich the staff on the technical, special, managerial and cultural side aspects of their role
- Competence:
  - The proven ability to use knowledge and skills
- Competency maintenance:
  - The minimum activity that is required to be performed by each operator in order to retain the assessments defined in the specific job description.
- Competency matrix:
  - The activities performed must be recorded in order to perform an annual assessment (quantitative and qualitative) for the activities that can be recognised.

It is important that training and competency programmes are structured and ongoing, with documented evidence of training topics and dates. Most importantly, an attendance register for training and competency sessions is required. Whilst initial supervised training is more easily documented, annual competency maintenance can be difficult to show (Table 1.3). Ongoing training for clinical personnel should reflect:

- Their experience
- Individual competencies and proficiencies
- Orientation for new staff
- Preceptorship

Training needs to be flexible to reflect staff requirements and should be performed in a timely manner to demonstrate annual updating.

When staff cannot attend a particular training session due to staffing issues, holidays or sickness, a self-teaching system, e.g. an electronic system that includes the presentation and self-assessment tool, may be an option to consider.

For those centres that apply for a combined adult and paediatric JACIE accreditation, it is important that training sessions should include relevant age-specific issues for each topic, especially if the two age group populations are nursed within the same ward environment. Where adult and paediatric patients are nursed on separate wards, training sessions may be separate for certain topics, but it is also important to share ses-

sions, where appropriate, to provide evidence that both population groups are an integrated part of a combined transplant facility.

The FACT-JACIE International Standards Accreditation requires that the clinical programme have access to personnel who are formally trained, experienced and competent in the management of patients receiving cellular therapy. Core competencies are specified within the standards, and evidence of training in these competencies must be documented. This may be achieved by evidence of in-service training, attendance at conferences, etc.

During September 2016, the EBMT (NG) in collaboration with JACIE and the EOC (Ente Ospedaliero Cantonale) launched the first video recorded course, aimed at physicians, nurses and technicians working within JACIE-accredited centres. The course focused on competency maintenance. Although this initial training course is no longer available, The EBMT (NG) has created and amassed a substantial amount of additional information useful to patients and practitioners. These guides, videos, presentations, E-learning programmes and online material that supports training and competency maintenance can be found in the EBMT (NG) document centre (www.ebmt/nursing/nurses-group-education).

1.4.3 Benefits of Quality Management (Table 1.3)

The key aim of the JACIE process is to implement a QMS into clinical practice. Despite the difficulties that maybe encountered, the process can be useful for integration of staff from all disciplines and professional collaboration. Staff education plays a key role in the implementation of the whole system and in particular for the quality management system (Piras et al. 2015). The majority of the quality standards are aimed at providing evidence that there are systematic processes in place. Furthermore, several of the standards relate to having systems in place to record initial qualification, training and competencies and minimal qualifications for the trainer. The hospital system can be utilised for these standards, and this evidence can be shown to the inspectors. However, not all hospital record systems register the training qualification required by a member of staff who has a training role.

1.4.4 Audits (Table 1.3)

Some nurses may be unfamiliar with this area. One approach is to view audits as assessing the care you give, reviewing the evidence and making changes to improve the patient's or donor's experience and/or nursing care given. After a predetermined period of time, it is necessary to reassess the changes made to measure any improvements resulting from those changes. This is referred to as "closing the audit loop". A nursing audit schedule works best when the nursing teams initiate the audit topics. It is important to include the audits required by JACIE, e.g. (1) the verification of the chemotherapy drug and dose against the prescription and the protocol and (2) the verification of the haematopoietic stem cell infusion.

It is important that the audit is performed by personnel that are not directly involved within the activity to be audited who has sufficient expertise in the subject manner to be able to identify problems and must also be a competent auditor (López-Villar and Dolva 2021).

1.4.5 Reporting Adverse Events (Table 1.3)

To enable adverse/serious events to be fully reported, it is important that a culture of "no blame" is present. The hospital should have an established reporting system in place, and it is important that the adverse events for transplantation and collection of cellular products including apheresis and marrow can be coded separately to other departmental adverse/serious events. This allows for clarity and a true record of the number of events recorded for the transplant programme. Each episode is reviewed and changes made if required. This is then followed

by an audit of the changes made to minimise a reoccurrence. Nurses working with patients and donors have a very important role in reporting adverse events.

It is important that all adverse/serious events are recorded in the quality meeting minutes, quarterly and annual reports and most importantly shared with all the sections involved in delivery of the transplant programme (clinical, collection and processing), as appropriate. For example, if a recipient has a reaction to a stem cell infusion or there is a deviation from the time specified for each infusion of thawed cells, these events should be reported and shared with the processing facility.

Where adverse/serious events have been shared across departments, the inspector will require evidence that the events were discussed, and if any changes were made to practice that this was recorded, policies were updated and the episode monitored.

1.4.6 Tracking of Collected Products (Table 1.3)

To enable the safe collection, storage (including temporary storage within the collection facilities) and distribution of collected products, it is important that each stage of the process is recorded. Therefore, collection, laboratory, transport and clinical staff should be involved in signing a transport log to accept the product and in some cases recording the temperature of the product. Policies should be in place to include what to do if there is a deviation in practice, e.g. temperature of the product falls outside the range of temperature agreed within the transport policy. It is important that policies and standard operating procedures that include responsibilities of more than one facility are shared and members of staff have ready access.

The donor and recipient's medical notes must be completed, as part of the tracking system, to record the collection or transfusion of the collected product. The cellular product identification, time and date should also be included in the medical notes.

1.4.7 Common Deficiencies That Have Occurred in Previous Editions of the FACT-JACIE Standards

During the annual meeting of the EBMT (2015), the results of a review of JACIE inspection reports against the 5th ed. of the JACIE Standards were presented (JACIE Quality Management 2015). The aim of the review was to identify common deficiencies within the standards. Of reports issued against the 5th ed. of the FACT-JACIE Standards, 95% (145/152) had been reviewed.

Standards relating to clinical personnel were rated as the group of standards with the highest number of deficiencies. This was due to the lack of evidence:

- In training and competencies for physicians.
- Relating to donor and recipient informed consent.
- Of diagnosis and management of graft versus host disease, both acute and chronic.

Other clinical standards that highlighted lack of evidence were related to the administration of the preparative chemotherapy regimen and the administration of the transplanted product. The inspectors could not find evidence that two personnel had checked the identity of the recipient against the dose of the material to be infused.

There were issues with quality management standards for clinical, collection and processing. Third-party agreements/service-level agreements failed to state the responsibilities of each facility involved within the process, e.g. who was responsible for transportation of the collected cellular product either from the collection facility to processing or transportation from processing to the clinical facility. For those clinical facilities that provide shared care for donors prior to collection of cellular material, it is important that third-party agreements/service-level agreements also include the responsibilities for the administration of mobilisation products. These responsibilities should be described within the appropriate standard operating procedure/policy (SOP), and it is

important that all parties involved with the shared care have access to the SOP.

Labelling of collected products was a common issue, either non-compliance with the International Society of Blood Transfusion (ISBT128) standards for labelling or personnel failed to complete all the data fields on the label. Often the volume and name of the citrate used and start and completion time of the collection were missing.

At the time of revising this chapter, FACT-JACIE accreditation is being awarded against the 7th and 8th Edition of the FACT-JACIE Standards. Although a thorough review of common deficiencies has not been performed against these editions, it is hoped that the common deficiencies described in the above section will help as a guideline to those applying for JACIE accreditation for the first time.

1.5 JACIE: Implications on Nursing—The Nurse's Perspective

Research demonstrates that patient outcomes and donor care are improved (Anthias et al. 2016; Gratwohl et al. 2011) when treatment is delivered within a JACIE-accredited centre. Therefore, it could be assumed that the JACIE accreditation process has had implications on nursing practice. A literature search was performed (using PubMed and Google search engine with the following parameters: quality management, standard operating procedures, nurse education, JACIE accreditation and audit), but no results were found reflecting the dearth of nursing research on implications of JACIE for nursing. Therefore, in 2016 a simple survey was sent to the members of the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation Nurses Group (EBMT (NG)) via email. The aim of the survey was to establish what implications the JACIE process had for nurses in their daily practice.

The survey was repeated in 2021, to establish if views of nurses working within an established JACIE framework had changed. Initially the second survey, using the "SurveyMonkey" platform, was sent to 1130 EBMT (NG) members via email. (1125 emails were delivered. 21.42% (241/1125) of members opened the survey. Only 55/241 participated in the survey.) To improve the response rate of 4.9% (55/1125) the survey was then included on the EBMT web site, social media accounts such as Twitter and the September 2021 EBMT Newsletter, using the same email addresses, and the deadline for completion was extended.

1.6 Results

In the original survey a total of 322 EBMT (NG) members were contacted via email with a response rate of 9.62% (31 replies) from 12 countries. One reply was rejected due to the transplant centre not working towards JACIE accreditation, therefore 30 replies from 11 countries were evaluated. The response rate for the second survey after extending the deadline (see Sect. 1.5) allowed the authors to review 70 responder's comments. A response rate of 6.2% (70/1125).

The role, seniority and the involvement of the nurse, in the JACIE process, could have an influence on how each respondent responded.

In both surveys the majority of the respondents were classified as senior nurses (97% in the first survey compared with 94% in the second survey):

First survey 2016	Position	Second survey 2021
7	Ward Managers	5
14[a]	Clinical Nurse Specialists (CNS)	31
5	Quality Managers	8
3	Nurse Coordinators	Not mentioned
1	Junior Nurse	3
0	Did not complete 23	

[a] One CNS role includes data manager and one CNS is responsible for JACIE

In the first survey there was one nurse consultant responsible for SOPs in clinical and processing facility.

The majority of nurses, in both surveys, worked within the clinical area 93.3% (28/30),[1] and 95% (48/51) in the second survey (Nineteen nurses in the second survey declined to respond to this question—maybe they saw their role as managerial).

The apheresis facility was represented by 3.3% (1/30) and 5% (3/51) in the second survey.

The processing facility was represented in the first survey only, by 3.3% (1/30).

1.6.1 Does the JACIE Process Have any Implications for Nurses?

Although both surveys showed an overwhelming response 90% (27/30) and 77% (41/53—17 nurses declined to reply to this question) that the JACIE process has implications for nurses on their daily working practice. This means 10% (3/30) and 22.6% (12/53) of nurses thought JACIE had no implications on their daily working practice. It is difficult for the authors to argue that this is based on European nurses' experience due to the poor response rate in both surveys.

1.6.2 Conclusion of the Surveys

Although there was a very low response to the surveys (9.62% and 6.2%), the results represent the views of senior nurses (97% and 94% respectively).

After reviewing the 45[2] comments from the 30 respondents from the initial survey, the authors would like to suggest that the JACIE accreditation process has had a positive impact on nurses. Only 9% of comments could be classified as having a negative impact on the nurse due to extra workload.

The second survey revealed that 37% (14/38) of the responders work within a centre that had achieved JACIE Accreditation for a fourth time. Only 4 of the 70 responders had participated in both surveys: one responder agreed her/his view of the JACIE accreditation process having implications upon nurses had changed. (Unfortunately no comment was made to explain the change in opinion.) From the 25 comments reviewed from the 70 responders the authors would like to suggest that only 20% of comments relate to improvements within the quality management system giving raise to improved patient and donor care.

Therefore, it is suggested that a further in depth study is required within the BMT nursing community to fully understand the implications for nurses between the initial JACIE and re-accreditation phases whilst maintaining and improving the quality system that is now, or should be, embedded into daily practice. The study could be based on the Donabedian model looking at structure, process and outcomes.

The JACIE Standards are reviewed every 4 years, allowing them to be adapted to the rapidly developing field of HSCT. For example the recent editions of the standards have specifically identified standards relating to Immune Effector Cells. Of these 69 standards there are only 2 standards that directly involve the nurse and this is for specific nurse training involved with caring for those patients receiving Immune Effect Cells. (Please see relevant chapter relating to Immune Effector cells) Nurses are required to maintain compliance with the QMS and JACIE Standards and must familiarise themselves with the changes that occur in each edition of the JACIE Standards. Each edition will present fresh challenges to achieve the standards especially given the present day competing pressures on resource and finance. It is noteworthy that none of the surveyed nurses mentioned this aspect as a concern for nurses in their practice. As nurses working within FACT-JACIE-accredited centres, it is important to provide evidence of our continued monitoring of practice and processes through the QMS and not regard the JACIE accreditation process as a tick box exercise.

[1] Two clinical nurses worked in a second area (one in apheresis and one in processing facility).

[2] See Appendix for a full list of citations written by the respondents to both surveys.

1.7 Discussion Points

1. As stated earlier, the majority of responders in both surveys are classed as "senior nurses". Should we be asking ourselves is there a reason why "junior nurses", within the specialty, did not get involved with the surveys? Could it be the opportunity for junior nurses to become engaged with the EBMT (NG) and/or with the JACIE Accreditation process is rare due to the criteria for EBMT centre membership (www.ebmt.org/membership).

   Criteria of EBMT centre membership (2022)

   (a) Full Centre Membership Fees in 2022 were €900 per year, and include a team of 3 physicians (including the Principal Investigator), **1 Principal Nurse**, 1 Data manager, 1 Quality manager, 1 Lab technician, 1 Pharmacist and 1 Transplant coordinator per centre. The principle nurse, included in the centre membership is probably a senior nurse within the team.

   (b) Extra nurse members can be included within the centre membership at an extra fee €40 per year.

   (c) An individual membership can be applied for. The applicant must hold a PhD, nursing degree or any other relevant degree to be assessed on a case-by-case basis and demonstrate an expertise in stem cell transplantation, cellular therapy or other relevant fields. This should be proven by 2 years working experience in activities related to the aims of EBMT. Two EBMT members should support the application.

2. The other interesting observation in the results of the second survey is how many responders did not complete all ten questions,, within the survey, especially the following question: *"Describe briefly how the JACIE process has had implications/affected your daily practice"*.

   An amazing 57% (40/70) of responders did not respond to this question. Without performing another survey to these responders we can only surmise why they did not respond. Could it be that senior nurses (maybe more than we think) do not understand the aim of the JACIE Accreditation process or is it they are not fully involved with the JACIE accreditation process?

   The senior nurses who did respond to this question, focussed their comments on how their work was now focussed on following protocols, rather than focussing on the overall quality improvement the JACIE process was having, or maybe not, on their transplant program, patients and donor care.

   An amazing 57% (40/70) of responders did not respond to this question. Without performing another survey to these responders we can only surmise why they did not respond. Could it be that senior nurses (maybe more than we think) do not understand the aim of the JACIE Accreditation process or is it they are not fully involved with the JACIE accreditation process?

   The senior nurses who did respond to this question, focussed their comments on how their work was now focussed on following protocols, rather than focussing on the overall quality improvement the JACIE process was having, or maybe not, on their transplant program, patients and donor care.

   The majority of respondents 95% (38/40), to the question we are discussing, were not involved with the original survey in 2016. Does this tell us something regarding the turnover of staff within the speciality or does it suggest the responders were too junior during the first survey to respond and are now employed in a more senior role, finding themselves involved with EBMT (NG) and hopefully the JACIE process. If so, does this reflect there is only JACIE awareness in senior nursing staff (CNS/Ward managers) and not at ward level.

3. The low response rate and the survey results, to both surveys, may suggest nurses do not think the JACIE process is relevant to their daily practice or nurses think the aim of JACIE is to follow standard operating procedures rather than developing and addressing quality issues. If either, or both, of these suggestions

are correct the EBMT (NG) and JACIE may have to consider improving education, training and developing nursing based evidence for JACIE to allow nurses to fully understand the aims of the JACI process.

Since the introduction of JACIE accreditation, nurses have submitted oral and poster presentations at the annual EBMT (NG) conference on the topic "Preparing for JACIE". The small response to our EBMT (NG) surveys and a literature search that could not identify published articles on the topic of "JACIE and implications for nurses" could suggest the JACIE accreditation process has not impacted greatly on nurses.

One of the five Deming principles (Health Catalyst 2014) that help health-care process improvements:

> *Quality improvement is a science of process management. If you cannot measure it you cannot prove it, therefore quality improvement must be data driven.*

As specialised nurses, working in the field of HSCT, we should be asking ourselves why are we not publishing our data or audit findings. Using the development of the apheresis collection services across Europe as an example, many teams will be nurse led. When the collection of HSCs became an established practice, the number of nursing teams increased, training became more formalised and apheresis nurse forums were established to try and reinforce policies and procedures. A QMS was introduced in the form of JACIE accreditation with risk management and audit became integral to the apheresis nurse role.

Deming also states: "If nurses are going to manage care, they require the right data delivered in the right format at the right time and in the right place". Therefore, nurses with the HSCT programme should take ownership, perform audits, assess the results, make changes to patient care and reassess. These experiences and findings should be shared and published.

If the reluctance to publish is a lack of ownership of quality management, or nurses perceive quality management as the responsibility of the quality manager, then they must be reminded that JACIE has a significant impact upon each and every role and that they must be aware and fully participate in the process. Audit, review of policies and procedures, competencies and risk assessment will become a key part of the nursing routine for the QMS to be maintained and to evolve.

Acknowledgements The authors would like to thank the JACIE Office for the use of materials, Tuula Rintala (whom during the initial revision of this chapter held the following positions: Collection and Quality Management Nurse JACIE Inspector, Chairperson JACIE Inspectors Committee and member of the JACIE Accreditation Committee and at a later stage held the position of Quality of Care and Advocacy for JACIE) and Eoin McGarth (whom during the initial revision of the chapter held the position of Advocacy and Quality of Care Director for JACIE) for their help and advice.

Appendix: Citations Classified in the Role of the Nurse (Survey 2016)

1. Staff nurse/junior nurse: citation classed as positive (only one citation)
   (a) As nurses, we have checked procedures to enable the team to demonstrate our work on education and patient care.
2. Ward manager's citations
   Citations classed as positive:
   (a) Improved structure to create procedures.
   (b) A more uniformed way of working.
   (c) (Almost) everything we do is now described in the policies, and everybody performs the procedure the same way, which is better for the patient.
   (d) Communication processes have improved between the different professionals (e.g. nurses, physicians) improving the way we are working together.
   (e) We now have the knowledge to implement the method and the instruments of risk management.
   (f) There have been improvements on patient care, central venous catheter management, team work and communication and safety of the patients.

(g) A tool that can be used to helped introduce new staff to the daily routine of transplant care.

Citations classed as neither negative nor positive:

(a) Started to use many procedures.
(b) We regularly update the quality documentation.
(c) Description of working processes.
(d) It's an Issue of quality management.

3. Clinical nurse specialist's citations

Citations classed as positive:

(a) Now we are JACIE accredited and working within an established programme, it was well worth it and, we feel confident about our quality standards and programme.
(b) Quality is always a priority in every aspect of the transplant process.
(c) Maintain patient records more accurately.
(d) We have started the donor care programme according the JACIE.

Citations classed as neither negative nor positive

(a) Preparation of QMS and developing SOPs × four citations.
(b) Increased number of protocols and procedures to follow and manage, requiring additional management hours to administrate.
(c) We had to prepare and update all SOP documents from the nursing field.
(d) As a centre preparing for our first accreditation, we are preparing documents, SOP and the nurses' education programme.
(e) Perhaps not implications, many checklists and SOPs have been revised or developed which has developed our work.
(f) I personally worked on the SOPs and routines in HSCT.
(g) I was required to present results at the clinical audit meetings and answer questions.

Citations classed as negative:

(a) Initially the documentation and developing the programme took many years and was hard work
(b) As our quality manager is from a laboratory background, I had to incorporate clinical quality lead into my CNS role, and this has added to my workload.
(c) Finding time for many meetings related to quality and JACIE was difficult due to other demands.
(d) Unfortunately no impact on daily practice.

4. Quality manager's citations

Citations classed as positive:

(a) There is a greater awareness of the routines.
(b) An improved structure.
(c) Patient safety is highlighted
(d) All nurses are working in a more quality assured way, by only using adequate and current documents and working procedures.
(e) The internal audits, which we have performed for several years, whilst working with JACIE, have led to improvements in quality assurance.
(f) Before JACIE accreditation, we actually did not have strict medical SOPs for treatment of our paediatric transplant patients.
(g) Since first accreditation as a separate paediatric centre, we have broadened our cooperation with the adult clinic, apheresis and stem cell lab. Since then SOPs are more in common. "Nurses are now involved and appreciate being involved in the review meeting for patient outcome".

Citations classed as neither negative nor positive:

(a) More SOPs to write
(b) Increased audits
(c) Working with documents and internal audits
(d) Updating SOPS, ensuring staff, including the multidisciplinary team, understand the importance of following the SOP

5. Nurse coordinator's and nurse consultant's citations

Citations classed as positive:

(a) Separate donor and recipient management.

(b) JACIE is a good working tool, especially for new colleagues.

Citations classed as neither negative nor positive:

(a) More attention in the control of the working activities.
(b) More attention in the registration of processes.
(c) More attention in the nurse training and evaluation of competency.
(d) My mission is to work for the HSCT programme of quality programme improvement process as required by the accreditation body JACIE.

6. Citations from the second survey 2021. (Not grouped into role of the nurse)
   (a) Raised awareness of quality and governance. Understanding a structured approach to assessing performance
   (b) It is a guide for my daily practice
   (c) All staff far more aware of Quality Improvement
   (d) Improved documentation and recording of competencies
   (e) Awareness Quality education
   (f) Improved patient care
   (g) Improves many practices
   (h) Following guidelines
   (i) Controlling all existing documents concerning care treatments in stem cell program
   (j) Protocols, corrective actions, quality control and patient satisfaction
   (k) JACIE processes need more carefulness than some other assistance processes
   (l) Guidelines in what to do and screen in follow-up
   (m) We review our daily activity to confirm that it is within JACIE standards
   (n) It has implications from a workload perspective and also ensures standards are regulated.
   (o) Has allowed me to improve the way I organise my daily work schedule
   (p) Increased quality of care, integration of EBP, harmonization of care, learning activity for new collections via SOPs
   (q) The accreditation process requires a vast amount of work, which is jointly completed and kept up to date by the core quality team. I have weekly meetings with the QM and Lead Consultant to ensure standards are maintained, updates and recommendations are reviewed.
   (r) Not applicable
   (s) We work better because we follow the JACIE standards of working
   (t) Organised activities, SOPs, continuous educational programmes
   (u) Protocols exist to increase the safety and quality of patient care
   (v) SOPs must comply with JACIE
   (w) Working mainly on quality. The staff members are more quality oriented. Quality is part of everything we do.
   (x) SOPs based on scientific evidence, awareness of incidents and areas of improvement
   (y) Better procedures and guidelines
   (z) Very quality driven.
   (aa) Use of SOPs/document controlled forms/training records
   (bb) Need to ensure competencies etc. up to date
   (cc) We are toward the first accreditation so we try to train nurses and work following the Standard
   (dd) All areas are regularly accredited and with internal audits prepared

References

Anthias C, Ethell ME, Potter MN, Madrigal A, Shaw BE. The impact of improved JACIE standards on the care of related BM and PBSC donors. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50:244–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2014.260; published online 10 November 2014.

Anthias C, O'Donnell PV, Kiefer DM, et al. European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation Centres with FACT-JACIE accreditation have significantly better compliance with related donor care standards. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22(3):514–9.

Caunday O, Bensoussan D, Decot V, Bordigoni P, Stoltz JF. Regulatory aspects of cellular therapy product in Europe: JACIE accreditation in a processing facility. Biomed Mater Eng. 2009;19:373–9.

Cornish JM. JACIE accreditation in paediatric haemopoietic SCT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;42:S82–6. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2008.290.

Demiriz IS, Tekgunduz E, Altuntas F. What is the most appropriate source for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation? Peripheral stem cell/bone marrow/cord blood. Bone Marrow Res. 2012;2012:834040.

EBMT. https://www.ebmt.org/Contents/Resources/Library/Slidebank/Pages/JACIE2015. 2015 JACIE Quality Management Day 2015. Common deficiencies, Carole Charley.

Gratwohl A, Brand R, Niederwieser D. Introduction of a quality management system and outcome after hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29:11. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2010.30.4121.

Gratwohl A, Brand R, McGrath E, van Biezen A, Sureda A, Ljungman P, Baldomero H, Chabannon C, Apperley J. Joint Accreditation Committee (JACIE) of the International Society for Cellular Therapy and the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation, and the European Leukemia Net. Use of the quality management system "JACIE" and outcome after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Haematologica. 2014;99(5):908–15.

Harolds J. Quality and safety in health care, part I. five pioneers in quality. Clin Nucl Med. 2015;40(8):660–2.

Health Catalyst. 2014. www.healthcatalyst.com Proprietary.© 2014 Five deming principles that help healthcare process improvement by John Haughom, MD

López-Villar O, Dolva J, Audits. In Aljurf M, Snowden JA, Hayden P, Orchard KH, McGrath E, editors. Quality Management and Accreditation in Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation and Cellular Therapy: The JACIE Guide. 2021 Springer p. 25–34.

Pamphilon D, Apperley JF, Samson D, Slaper-Cortenbach I, McGrath E. JACIE Accreditation in 2008: demonstrating excellence in stem cell transplantation. Hematol Oncol Stem Cell. 2008;2(2):311–9. (online)

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Gratwohl H, et al. The EBMT activity survey: 1990–2010. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012a;47:906–23; published online 30th April 2012.

Passweg JR, Demiriz IS, Tekgunduz E, Altuntas F. What is the most appropriate source for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation? Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012b;2012(47):906–23.

Piras A, Aresi P, Angelucci E. Analysis of the accreditation process. JACIE Transplant Program Businco. Prof Infern. 2015;68(2):167–73. https://doi.org/10.7429/pi.2015.6822167.

Samson D, Slaper-Cortenbach I, Pamphilon D, McGrath E, McDonald F, Urbano Ispizua A. Current status of JACIE accreditation in Europe: a special report from the Joint Accreditation Committee of the ISCT and the EBMT (JACIE). Bone Marrow Transplant. 2007;39:133–41.

Snowden JA, McGrath E, Duarte RF, Saccardi R, Orchard K, Worel N, Kuball K, Chabannon C, Mohty M. JACIE accreditation for blood and marrow transplantation: past, present and future directions of an international model for healthcare quality improvement. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2017;52(10):1367–71.

Further Reading

Benchmarking: https://www.nature.com/articles/s41409-019-0718-7.

JACIE Manual. https://www.ebmt.org/JACIE-accreditation.

JACIE Quality Manual.

JACIE Standards. https://www.ebmt.org/JACIE-accreditation.

JACIE version 4.0 https://www.nature.com/articles/s41409-021-01467-8.

Quality Management and Accreditation in Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation and Cellular Therapy: The JACIE Guide.

Quality and Accreditation https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S2666636722011988.

Smith J, Jones M Jr, Houghton, et al. Future of health insurance. N Engl J Med. 1999;965:325–9.

HSCT: How Does It Work?

2

Letizia Galgano, Daphna Hutt, and Hilda Mekelenkamp

Abstract

The HSCT (haematopoietic stem cell transplant) is a particular treatment for many haematological and non-haematological diseases. Broadly, there are three different categories of transplantation, autologous, allogeneic and syngeneic, which can be applied to most disease scenarios. Haematopoietic stem cells can be derived from the bone marrow, peripheral blood and umbilical cord blood. HSCT treatment can be divided into separate phases that start with the harvest of the stem cells and passing through the conditioning, aplasia and engraftment until the recovery of the haematopoietic functions. HSCT is indicated in many diseases, and these indications depend on numerous factors such as the disease type, stage and response to previous treatment. This chapter includes transplant in primary immunodeficiency in children, haemoglobinopathies as well as inherited bone marrow failure and inborn errors of metabolism.

Keywords

HSCT · Indications · Autoimmune diseases · Haemoglobinopathies · Paediatric · Immunodeficiencies

2.1 What Nurses Need to Know

2.1.1 Introduction

Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) is a therapeutic option for several malignant and non-malignant diseases including acute and chronic leukaemia, lymphoma and multiple myeloma, some of the inherited disorders such as severe combined immunodeficiency and thalassemia and other inborn errors of metabolism and autoimmune diseases (Maziarz and Slater 2021).

HSCT involves the use of autologous, patient's own, haematopoietic stem cells (HSC) or allogeneic HSCT where the donor cells come from a family-related or an unrelated donor, and the source of HSC may be obtained from the bone marrow (BM) or peripheral blood (PBSC) or cord blood (CB).

L. Galgano (✉)
Department of Transfusion Service and Cell Therapy BMT Unit, AOU Careggi Hospital, Florence, Italy
e-mail: galganol@aou-careggi.toscana.it

D. Hutt
Department of Pediatric Hematology-Oncology and BMT, Edmond and Lily Safra Children Hospital, Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel
e-mail: dhutt@sheba.health.gov.il

H. Mekelenkamp
Department of Pediatrics, Willem-Alexander Children's Hospital, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, The Netherlands
e-mail: h.mekelenkamp@lumc.nl

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_2

The collected HSC are infused into a recipient (Gratwohl 2018). Before the infusion, the recipient is treated with a conditioning regimen (see Chap. 6), involving the use of different types and dosages of chemo and/or radiotherapy and/or immunosuppressant drugs (such as anti-thymocyte globulin) (Copelan 2006).

2.1.2 Aims of HSCT

- In the autologous setting, patients with chemosensitive malignant diseases are offered high-dose chemotherapy in order to destroy or further reduce the malignant disease, ablating the marrow with this aggressive therapy. In this case, the stem cell infusion is intended to treat the prolonged chemotherapy-induced hypoplasia and not the disease itself (Michel and Berry 2016; Maziarz and Slater 2021).
- In the allogeneic setting:
  - In malignant haematological disease, donor HSCs replace the immune system and help to eradicate malignancy (Michel and Berry 2016; Maziarz and Slater 2021).
  - In non-malignant diseases, where the cause is dysfunction of the haematopoietic stem cell (HSC), the HSCT procedure replaces the inefficient patient immune system with the donor one (Michel and Berry 2016).

2.1.3 Outcomes

Patient selection influences outcomes. Patients with better overall functional performance status, limited comorbidities and underlying organ damage have more favourable outcomes (Maziarz and Slater 2021). Outcomes vary according to:

- The stage of the disease.
- The age of the patients.
- The lapse of time from diagnosis to transplant.
- The histocompatibility between donor and recipient.
- The donor/recipient sex combination (the overall survival decreases for male recipients having a female donor) (Sureda et al. 2015a).
- Advances in immunogenetics and immunobiology.
- Stem cell source and graft manipulation.
- Conditioning regimens.
- Disease characterization and risk stratification.
- Immunosuppression.
- Immune reconstitution (poor or delayed) may have an important impact on infectious morbidity, relapse of haematological disease and overall survival (Elfeky et al. 2019).
- Antimicrobials.
- Other pathologies and/or complications.
- Other types of supportive care.

All these factors contribute to improvements in disease control and overall survival (Maziarz and Slater 2021).

2.1.4 Nursing Considerations

Patients require specific care to overcome the physical and emotional problems resulting from this treatment. Usually after myeloablative conditioning, HSCT recipients typically experience a period of profound pancytopenia lasting days to weeks depending on the donor source. The rapidity of neutrophil recovery varies with the type of graft: approximate recovery time is 2 weeks with G-CSF-mobilized PBSC, 3 weeks with BM and can be as long as 4 weeks with CB. However, re-establishment of immune system takes at least several months due to prolonged lymphocyte recovery process, and some patients continue to show immune deficits for several years after HSCT (Mosaad 2014). During this period, the patient has a high risk of developing complications; thus, HSCT units require multidisciplinary teams of physicians, nurses, pharmacists, social workers, nurse practitioners, physician assistants, nutrition experts and occupational and physical therapists, in addition to a specialized facility and technical resources (Maziarz and Slater 2021).

Nurses who work in HSCT units have a key role in treatment management and require specific training to:

- Understand, prevent and manage the early and late effects of HSCT.
- Care for high-risk patients.
- Inform and educate patients and their caregivers.
- Safely administer drugs, blood products and cell products.
- Manage the central venous catheters (CVCs).
- Give emotional support.

These topics will be covered in later chapters.

2.2 Different Types of HSCT

HSCs may be obtained from autologous, syngeneic or allogeneic related (HLA-matched) or unrelated donors (matched unrelated donor MUD). There are also partially matched HLA donors defined by a single-locus mismatch and/or missing HLA data known as mismatched alternative donors (MMAD). This includes mismatched unrelated donor MMUD (partially matched 7/8, 9/10 loci), unrelated CB and haploidentical donors (see Chap. 3) (Duarte et al. 2019). HSCs may be harvested from peripheral blood (PBSC), bone marrow (BM) or cord blood (CB) source.

2.2.1 Autologous Stem Cell Transplantation

Autologous HSCT is defined as "a high dose chemotherapy followed by the reinfusion of the patient's own HSC" (cit. NCI Dictionary). After mobilization (see Chap. 5), the patient's HSCs are collected and cryopreserved. Auto-HSCT facilitates the prompt reconstitution of a significantly depleted or ablated marrow following very aggressive chemotherapy intended to eradicate haematologic and non-haematologic malignancies (Maedler-Kron et al. 2016).

Graft failure can occur rarely, and some trials demonstrate how relapse remains an issue for the majority of patients with multiple myeloma (Michel and Berry 2016; Poirel et al. 2019).

2.2.2 Allogeneic Stem Cell Transplantation

In allogeneic HSCT, the recipient receives HSCs from a related or unrelated donor who can be fully or partially human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-matched (Fig. 2.1); related donors are family members; unrelated donors are identified through a donor registry or a cord blood bank. In allogeneic HSCT, the major histocompatibility complex includes HLA class I and II molecules located on chromosome 6 play an important role (Maziarz and Slater 2021). (See Chap. 3 for HLA typing and donor selection.)

In allogeneic HSCT, the aim of conditioning is to:

- Kill tumour cells (in malignant diseases).
- Eradicate existing bone marrow tissue in order to provide space for engraftment of transplanted donor stem cells.
- Suppress the patient's immune response and minimize the risk of graft rejection of the donor HSC (Maziarz and Slater 2021).

Allogeneic HSCT has been subject to several improvements during recent years.

Reduced intensity conditioning regimens, alternative donor transplants have increased the accessibility and availability, especially for older patients who have poor tolerance of the high toxicity of the treatment. These improvements have resulted in reduced transplant-related mortality, although relapse remains an issue (Michel and Berry 2016; Maedler-Kron et al. 2016).

2.2.2.1 Allogeneic Transplantation from HLA-Matched Related Donor (MRD)

The ideal donor is an HLA-identical sibling-matched sibling donor. Patients have a 25%

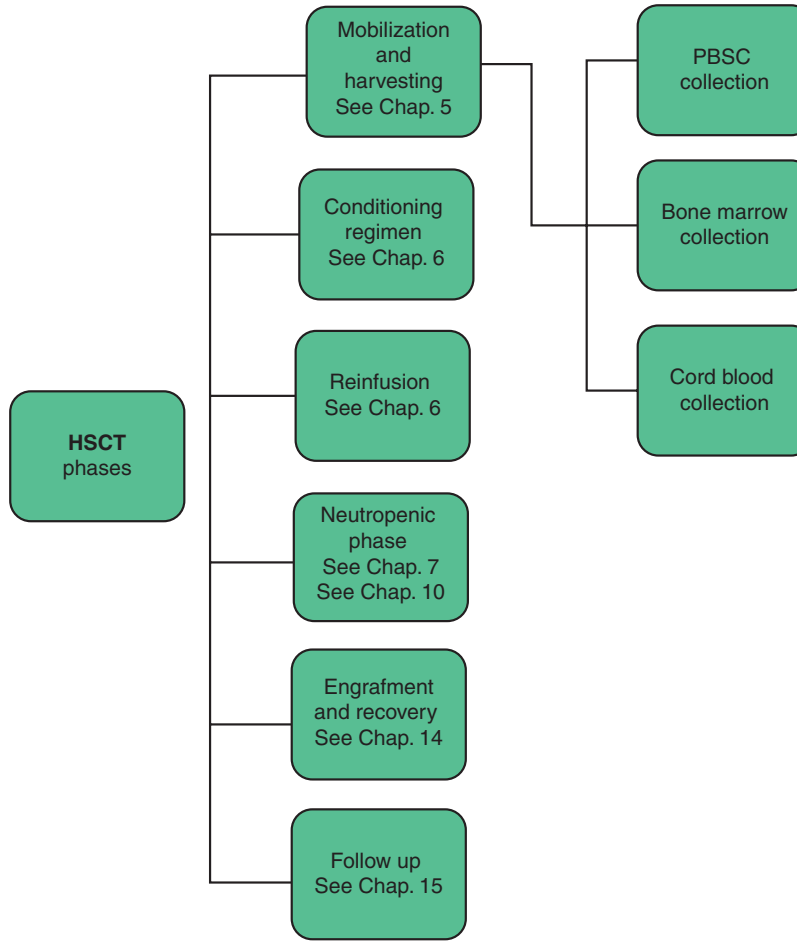


Fig. 2.1 The diagram explains the principal transplantation phases and the number of the chapter in which you can have more information about

chance of each sibling being fully HLA-matched, because siblings inherit 50% haplotype from each parent (see Chap. 3).

If the donor is an identical twin, they are referred to as syngeneic (see Sect. 2.2.2.5).

2.2.2.2 Allogeneic from Unrelated Donor (MUD, MMUD)

If recipient has no sibling or the blood tests confirm that there is no HLA compatibility with the sibling, then a search of "World Marrow Donor Association" registry database (WMDA) is activated (Carreras et al. 2019).

If the donor histocompatibility is fully matched with the recipient (Duarte et al. 2019), the donor is called a matched unrelated donor (MUD); if there is a partial incompatibility, the donor is called a mismatched unrelated donor (MMUD).

The time between the activation of the unrelated donor search and the beginning of transplantation procedure is fundamental. The more time spent in the search phase, the greater is the risk that the high-risk patient's disease will worsen or they may even die (Carreras et al. 2019) (see Chap. 3).

2.2.2.3 Cord Blood Transplantation

Umbilical cord blood transplantation (CBT) provides an alternative donor option for patients who lack a conventional MRD and MUD. Advantages of CBT include the capacity to tolerate greater degrees of HLA mismatch than is possible using MUD (Bashey and Solomon 2014; Ballen 2017).

Disadvantages are due to limitations of cell dose, although there is active research in expanding CB progenitor cells (Fitzhugh et al. 2017). However, delayed engraftment, slow immune reconstitution and acquisition and storage costs remain important challenges (Bashey and Solomon 2014; Ballen 2017).

Even if CBT is still an option, especially for non-malignant diseases in paediatric centres (Passweg et al. 2017), in the past few years the use of CB is decreasing due to increasing safety in the use of haploidentical donors (Duarte et al. 2019) (see Chap. 5).

2.2.2.4 Haploidentical Transplantation

In the case of patients with high-risk haematological malignancies lacking a fully matched HLA-identical sibling, or unrelated donor and who requires HSCT urgently, it is possible to transplant with an available haploidentical donor (compatibility of 50%) (Bertaina et al. 2017; Aversa et al. 2019) (see HLA Chap. 3).

The donor may be a parent, child, brother, sister or other relative that matches for one haplotype and fully mismatched for the other who can immediately serve as an HSC donor (Bertaina et al. 2017). An haploidentical donor may be found more quickly with a potentially reduced overall cost (Gagelmann et al. 2019).

The most important criterion for an haploidentical transplant is the urgency of the transplant in order to avoid early relapse or progression of the disease or the lack of HLA-identical matched donor (Aversa et al. 2019; Gagelmann et al. 2019). The advantages of the haploidentical transplantation are:

- Easy family donor availability (if patients are not fostered or orphans without other relatives).
- Appropriate timing for HSCT.
- Faster graft acquisition.
- Easy access to donor-derived cellular therapies after transplantation (Aversa et al. 2019; Gagelmann et al. 2019).

The use of one single haplotype donor historically developed two main problems: a lethal GvHD and graft rejection. But for some patients this kind of transplant maybe the only chance. So during the last 20 years were developed conditioning regimens associated to different immunosuppressive therapies who gave these high-risk patient the best opportunity to be treated, with a reduced risk of TRM and develops GvHD than in the past.

There are two main approaches to haploidentical transplantation:

- Haploidentical HSC T-replete transplantation with cyclophosphamide in immediate post-transplant phase making haplo-HSCT feasible; it appears to have overcome many of the obstacles historically associated with haploidentical donor transplantation, disadvantages such as high rates of graft rejection, transplant-related mortality, post-transplant infections (Bashey and Solomon 2014; Fitzhugh et al. 2017), promotes a graft versus leukaemia (GVL) therapeutic benefit with improved survival (Maziarz and Slater 2021; Sano et al. 2021), even if remains a higher risk of acute and chronic GvHD and there is a need for prolonged GvHD prophylaxis (Bertaina et al. 2017).
- Haploidentical transplantation with depletion of T-lymphocytes exists in aggressive and severe immune depleting conditioning regimen followed by infusion of mega-doses of highly purified PBSC, so there is no need for any further post-transplant immune suppressive treatment, but there is a prolonged T-cell recovery and require dedicated laboratories and higher costs than conventional unmanipulated HSCT (Bashey and Solomon 2014; Bertaina et al. 2017; Aversa et al. 2019,).

2.2.2.5 Syngeneic Transplantation

Syngeneic is a type of transplantation where the donor is the recipient's monochorionic twin and who is genetically identical to the patient. There is no immunological conflict such as GvHD (graft vs. host disease) (see Chap. 12) but at the same time no beneficial GVL (graft vs. Leukaemia) effect (Mackall et al. 2009).

(See Chaps. 10 and 12 for HSCT complications.)

2.3 The Stem Cell Sources

HSC can be isolated from the BM, PBSC after mobilization and umbilical CB (Maziarz and Slater 2021).

> HSC are capable of repopulating all hematopoietic and lymphocytic populations while maintaining capacity for self-regeneration, assuring long-term immunologic and hematopoietic viability (Carreras et al. 2019; Maziarz and Slater 2021).

The choice of stem cell depends on accessibility to the donor, disease diagnosis, urgency for the transplant, and centre preference (Elfeky et al. 2019).

2.3.1 Peripheral Blood Stem Cells

PBSCs have been increasingly used in both auto- and allo-HSCT. Mobilization of haematopoietic stem cells to the peripheral blood can be achieved by the administration of growth factors such as G-CSF and/or myelosuppressive chemotherapy (Carreras et al. 2019).

An advantage HSCT performed with PBSC is a relatively rapid recovery of haematopoiesis compared to BM and increases the disease-free survival and overall survival in high-risk haematological malignancies. The disadvantage is an increased risk of chronic GvHD in the allogenic HSCT because of an increased number of T cells circulating (Maziarz 2015).

2.3.2 Bone Marrow

BM is traditionally harvested from the posterior iliac crests under general or epidural anaesthesia in a surgical room where trained haematologists or surgeons collect stem cells and blood directly from the bone marrow cavity in the bilateral posterior iliac crest region using aspiration needles.

HSCT performed with BM leads to less cGvHD compared to PBSC source, but has the disadvantage of a slower neutrophil and platelet engraftment (Maziarz 2015). BM is the most used source on children.

2.3.3 Umbilical Cord Blood

CB cells are collected and cryopreserved from the umbilical cord immediately after birth, but generally before the placenta has been delivered in order to avoid clots (Demiriz et al. 2012). They have been used both in related and unrelated HLA-matched and HLA-mismatched allogeneic transplants in children and in adults (Demiriz et al. 2012; Carreras et al. 2019). The advantage is a lower criteria for a match (4/6 match is acceptable) increasing the chance of identifying a suitable cord unit or cord units in a matter of days. Less GvHD is often observed. A key disadvantage is often slower engraftment compared to BM and PBSC and increased infection complications due to slow rate of haematopoietic recovery (Maziarz and Slater 2021) (see Chaps. 3 and 5).

2.3.4 HSCT Phases

2.3.4.1 Neutropenic Phase

Neutropenia occurs when the absolute neutrophil count is <500 cells/mm^3. After the chemotherapy, the blood count decreases and the duration of neutropenic phase varies according to several factors, such as source of cells, type of transplantation, conditioning regimen, and will influence both short-term and long-term immune reconstitution (Carreras et al. 2019). Neutrophil recovery occurs faster among PBSCs (12–19 days) and BM (15–23 days) than single-CB (20–30 days) (see Chap. 14).

During this period, several complications may occur such as:

Increased risk of infections due to a not effective immune system. Infection following HSCT is associated with significant morbidity and mortality, so prevention is critical to improve outcomes (Duarte et al. 2019) (see Chap. 10).

- Bleeding because of thrombocytopenia (platelets have a slow recovery after transplantation).
- Tiredness caused by the decreasing of haemoglobin levels.
- Pain because of mucositis.
  Nutrition. Oral intake is usually severely reduced because of, on one side, the oral mucositis that many patients develop and, on the other side, the prolonged post conditioning nausea. When oral intake is reduced and the body mass index decrease, total enteral/parenteral nutrition may be provided especially for children (see Chaps. 10 and 11).

2.4 Indications for HSC Transplant

The use of reduced-toxicity conditioning regimens, better infection monitoring and management, more sensitive, molecular-based, tissue typing techniques and advances in supportive care have enhanced the safety and efficacy of HSCT. As the outcome of HSCT improved, the number of non-malignant conditions treated by HSCT has continued to grow (Bertaina et al. 2017).

The patient assessment for a transplant procedure is complex and includes several factors such as the patient's overall health and performance status, comorbidities, disease risk/status (e.g. remission state and responsiveness to treatment), graft and donor source. For example, autologous transplantation is not useful for diseases in which normal HSCs cannot be collected as in CML or myelodysplasia (Rowley 2013).

The indications for transplant are based on best available evidence from clinical trials or, where clinical trials are not available, registry, multicentre or single centre observational studies from each centre's research priorities local expertise, cost considerations and easiness of access to particular transplant modalities (Majhail et al. 2015; Duarte et al. 2019). The HSCT specialist determines if transplant should be considered as an option for disease consolidation, but the final decision will be made in conjunction with the patient (Maziarz and Slater 2021).

There have been major changes in indications, such as the rise and fall of autologous HSCT for some solid tumours or of allogeneic HSCT for chronic myeloid leukaemia (CML), and in technology, as illustrated by the change from the bone marrow to peripheral blood, the rapid increase in use of unrelated donors and the introduction of reduced intensity conditioning. It is clear how some guidance is warranted, for transplant teams, hospital administrators, health-care providers and also patients (Apperley et al. 2012).

The HSCT indications are not the same in children and in adults (Table 2.1).

Table 2.1 is a scheme of the main indications for autologous and allogeneic transplantation that combine the recommendations for MMAD, including CB, haploidentical and MMUD, in a single category separate from well-matched related and unrelated donors (Duarte et al. 2019).

2.4.1 Indications for Autologous HSCT

Most autologous transplantations are performed for newly diagnosed multiple myeloma and non-Hodgkin lymphomas. Auto-HSCT remains the standard of care for patients with Hodgkin lymphoma with chemosensitive relapse at first autologous, while in chemosensitive relapse after failure of a prior autograft, allo-HSCT should be considered, and in chemosensitive relapse DLBCL after first-line therapy.

Auto-HSCT is the standard of care for newly diagnosed multiple myeloma (MM) patients, but age and general health should be considered; double autograft has been shown to be superior to one single autologous HSCT, immunomodulatory drugs and bortezomib before transplantation has led to their use as consolidation and maintenance therapies after autologous HSCT and may be an alternative option for these patients; recently also allogeneic HSCT with post-transplant cyclophosphamide has been shown to be a possible treatment in MM, but relapse is still a problem.

Table 2.1 Indication for transplant: Standard of care (S); Clinical option (CO); Developmental (D); MMAD-mismatched alternative donors, MSD-matched sibling donor, MUD well-matched unrelated donor

Disease	Disease status	Adult				Paediatric			
		MSD Allo	MUD Allo	MMAD Allo	Auto	MSD Allo	MUD Allo	MMAD Allo	Auto
Leukaemias									
AML (acute myeloid leukaemia)	CR1 (favourable risk and MRD+)	CO	CO	CO					
	CR1 (intermediate risk	S	CO	CO	CO				
	CR1 (adverse risk)	S	S	S					
	CR1 (high and very high risk)					S	S	CO	
	CR2	S	S	S	CO	S	S	CO	
	>CR2					S	S	CO	
	APL molecular CR2	S	CO		S				
	Relapse or refractory	CO	CO	CO					
ALL (acute lymphoblastic leukaemia)	Ph (−), CR1 (high risk)	S	S	CO					
	Ph (+), CR1 (MRD−)	S	S	CO	CO				
	Ph (+), CR1 (MRD+)	S	S	S					
	CR2	S	S	S					
	Relapse or refractory	CO	CO	CO					
CML (chronic myelogenous leukaemia)	First CP, failing second- or third-line TKI/accelerated phase, blast crisis or >first CP	S	S	CO	CO				
	First CP, failing second- or third-line TKI					S	S	CO	
	Accelerated phase, blast crisis or >first CP					S	S	CO	
Myelofibrosis	Primary or secondary with an intermediate or high DIPSS score	S	S	S					
MDS (myelodysplastic syndromes)	More advanced stages	S	S	S					
MDS and JMML (juvenile myelomonocytic leukaemia)						S	S	CO	
CLL (chronic lymphocytic leukaemia)	Poor risk disease, not transformed	S	S	CO					
Lymphoid malignancies									
DLBCL (diffuse large B cell lymphoma)	Chemosensitive relapse, ≥CR2	CO	CO	D	S				
	Chemosensitive relapse after autoHSCT failure	S	S	CO					
	Refractory disease	CO	CO	CO	CO				

	Primary CNS lymphoma				S				
FL (follicular lymphoma)	Chemosensitive relapse, ≥CR2	CO	CO		S				
	≥CR2 after auto-HSCT failure	S	S	D					
	Refractory	CO	CO	CO					
MCL (mantle cell lymphoma)	CR1				S				
	CR/PR > 1, no prior auto-HSCT	CO	CO	D	S				
	Refractory	CO	CO	D					
WM (Waldenström macroglobulinemia)	Poor risk disease	CO	CO	D					
	Chemosensitive relapse, ≥CR2				CO				
PTCL	CR1	CO	CO		CO				
	Chemosensitive relapse, ≥CR2	S	S	CO	CO				
	Refractory	CO	CO	CO					
Primary CTCL (cutaneous T cell lymphoma)	EORTC/ISCL stages IIB–IV (advanced)	CO	CO	D					
NHL (non-Hodgkin lymphoma)	CR1 (high risk)					S	S	CO	CO
	CR2								
HL (Hodgkin lymphoma)	Chemosensitive relapse, no prior auto-HSCT	D	D		S				
	Chemosensitive relapse, after prior auto-HSCT	S	S	CO	CO				
	Refractory	D	D	D	CO				
	First relapse, CR2					CO	CO	CO	S
MM (multiple myeloma)	Upfront standard risk	CO	CO		S				
	Upfront high risk	S	S	CO	S				
	Chemosensitive relapse, prior autoHSCT	CO	CO	CO	S				
AL (amyloidosis)		CO	CO		CO				
Other diseases									
Acquired SAA (severe aplastic anaemia) and AA (aplastic anaemia)/PNH (paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria)	Newly diagnosed	S	CO			S	S	CO	
	Relapsed/refractory	S	S	CO					
Constitutional SAA (severe aplastic anaemia)/IBMFS inborn marrow failure syndromes		S	S	CO		S	S	CO	
Breast cancer/carcinoma	Adjuvant high risk, HER2 negative				CO				

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Disease	Disease status	Adult				Paediatric			
		MSD Allo	MUD Allo	MMAD Allo	Auto	MSD Allo	MUD Allo	MMAD Allo	Auto
	Metastatic, chemosensitive	D	D		D/ CO				
Germ cell tumours	Second line, high risk				CO				
	Primary refractory, second and further relapse				S				
						CO	CO	CO	CO
MS (multiple sclerosis)	Highly active RR-MS failing DMT	D			S				
	Progressive MS with AIC, and aggressive MS	D			CO				
Systemic sclerosis		D			S				
SLE (systemic lupus erythematosus)		D			CO				
Crohn's disease		D	D	D	CO				
Rheumatoid arthritis		D			CO				
JIA (juvenile idiopathic arthritis)		CO	CO	CO	CO				
Monogenic AD		CO	CO	CO					
Vasculitis/PM-DM (polymyositis-dermatomyositis)					CO				
Autoimmune cytopenias		CO	CO	CO	CO				
Neuromyelitis Optica		D	D	D	CO				
CIDP (chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy), MG (myasthenia gravis) and SPS (stiff person syndrome)					CO				
RCD (refractory coeliac disease) type II					CO				
Primary ID (immunodeficiency)		CO	CO	CO					
	Severe combined ID					S	S	S	
	Other primary ID					S	S	CO	
MPS (mucopolysaccharidosis)	MPS-1H hurler					S	S	CO	
	MPS-VI Maroteaux-Lamy					CO	CO	CO	
Thalassemia and SCD (sickle cell disease) (high risk)						S	CO	CO	
Osteopetrosis						S	S	S	
Sa sarcoma	Ewing's sarcoma (high risk or >CR1)					D	D	D	S
	Soft tissue sarcoma (high risk or >CR1)					D	D	D	CO

Neuroblastoma	High risk or >CR1					CO	CO	D	S
Brain tumours									CO
Wilms' tumour	>CR1								CO
AD (autoimmune disorders)	Including monogenic AD					CO	CO	CO	CO

AIC active inflammatory component, *APL* acute promyelocytic leukaemia, *CNS* central nervous system, *CP* chronic phase, *CR1, 2, 3* first, second, third complete remission, *DIPSS* Dynamic International Prognostic Score System, *DMT* disease-modifying treatments, constitutional SAA (include Fanconi anaemia, dyskeratosis congenita, Blackfan–Diamond anaemia, other inborn bone marrow failure syndromes (IBMFS) and others), *IPI* International Prognostic Index, *MRD* minimal residual disease, *PR* partial remission, *RR-MS* relapsing–remitting multiple sclerosis, *TKI* tyrosine kinase inhibitors

Adapted from: Duarte RF et al. Indications for haematopoietic stem cell transplantation for haematological diseases, solid tumours and immune disorders: current practice in Europe, 2019

Autologous is also consolidation treatment for FL with chemosensitive high-grade transformation.

There is an increased evidence base for autologous HSCT in some indications, including multiple sclerosis (MS), systemic sclerosis (SS), Crohn's disease and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), while allogeneic HSCT has been used in the paediatric setting .

Among solid tumours autologous HSCT is the gold standard for adult patients with refractory primary germ cell tumour and for high-risk neuroblastoma in paediatric setting (Duarte et al. 2019). Neuroblastoma is the most common extracranial solid tumour of childhood and the most common in the first year of life (Tolbert and Matthay 2018). In children with high-risk neuroblastoma consolidation using high-dose chemotherapy with autologous stem cell transplantation (ASCT) is an important component of frontline therapy (Meaghan Granger et al. 2021).

High dose therapy with Autologous stem cell transplant can be regarded as a potential clinical option in selected patients with Ewing's sarcoma and medulloblastoma (Duarte et al. 2019). For further information on HSCT in non-malignant paediatric indication, see Sect. 2.5.

2.4.2 Indications for Allogeneic HSCT

A vast majority of allogeneic transplants are performed for malignant haematologic diseases (Epperla et al. 2018).

Adult patients with acute myeloid leukaemia (AML), Hodgkin lymphoma (HL) and T cell lymphomas should always be considered for allo- or auto-HSCT depending on risk category, complete remission (CR), previous treatments and measurable residual disease (MRD). Allogeneic transplant is not recommended for AML favourable-risk patients, while is the preferred option in AML in CR2 and beyond.

Allo-HSCT is the standard of care in high-risk acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL) even if the use of CAR-T programs are revolutionizing the treatment of advanced forms of ALL. HSCT remains the standard-of-care treatment for children with CR1 ALL carrying high-risk features predicting leukaemia recurrence and for those experiencing high-risk first relapse or multiple recurrences (Merli et al. 2019).

It cannot be recommended as first-line treatment for chronic myeloid leukaemia (CML) and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL) because of the efficacy of the first-line therapy with tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI) such as dasatinib, nilotinib or ibrutinib.

Allo-HSCT at the moment is the only potential curative option for patients with myeloproliferative disorders and is considered the treatment of choice for adult patients with myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS) especially before progression to AML, thanks to MUD, MMAD and reduced intensity conditioning (RIC). In paediatric AML the current practice restricts the use of HSCT in CR1 only to those AML patients with high-risk (HR) features as well as secondary AML or AML evolving form MDS. There is general consensus that standard-risk patients should not be transplanted in CR1 but only after the first relapse and achievement of a second complete remission. In relapsed AML allogeneic HSCT offers the best chance of cure, ideally after the achievement of second CR (Algeri et al. 2021).

Allogeneic HSCT is indicated in several different types of lymphomas such as diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) with relapse after autologous HSCT or in case of chemorefractory disease.

Allo-HSCT following the failure of ibrutinib treatment may be an option in mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) and in follicular lymphoma (FL) with chemosensitive relapse after autologous HSCT.

In non-malignant diseases allo-HSCT from an HLA-identical sibling is the standard of care for adult patients, while MUD is considered as first-line choice for young patients (<18) with acquired severe aplastic anaemia (SAA). MMAD may be considered after failure to respond to immunosuppressive therapy in young patients up to 20 years of age in the absence of MSD or MUD, and is the only treatment for constitutional SAA as Fanconi anaemia.

Allogeneic HSCT has completely revolutionized the natural history of several life-threatening or debilitating non-malignant disorders, including primary immune deficiencies (PIDs), bone marrow failure syndromes and hemoglobinopathies (Duarte et al. 2019; Epperla et al. 2018).

2.5 Indications for Transplant in Non-malignant Diseases (in Children)

More than 20% of allogeneic HSCT are performed in patients below 20 years. However, at least one third of HSCTs in children are performed for rare indications (Sureda et al. 2015b). Allogeneic HSCT can cure several non-malignant disorders in children.

2.5.1 Transplant in Inborn Errors of Immunity

Inborn errors of immunity (IEI) are a group of rare heterogeneous genetic disorders (Lankester et al. 2021) characterized by defective or impaired innate or adaptive immunity. Of these, severe combined immunodeficiencies (SCIDs) are the most severe, leading to death in infancy or early childhood unless treated appropriately (Sureda et al. 2015b).

2.5.2 Severe Combined Immunodeficiencies

Severe combined immunodeficiencies (SCIDs) are a genetically heterogeneous group of rare inherited defects characterized by severe abnormalities of immune system development and function (Gaspar et al. 2013; Gennery 2015) with impaired T-lymphocyte differentiation (Lankester et al. 2021). Most of the genetic defects responsible for SCID are inherited in an autosomal recessive fashion and therefore are more common in infants born to consanguineous parents (Rivers and Gaspar 2015). The incidence of SCID varies according to ethnicity (Booth et al. 2016). The different forms of SCID can have different patterns of lymphocyte development. Nearly all SCIDs have absent T cells but are then further divided by the presence or absence of B and NK cells (Rivers and Gaspar 2015; Booth et al. 2016). If not detected in a neonatal screening program or with an informative family history (Lankester et al. 2021), patients with SCID usually present in early infancy with recurrent, severe or opportunistic infections. Multiple pathogens may coexist, and opportunistic infection, for example, with *Pneumocystis jiroveci*, is common (Gennery 2015). This can also be accompanied by failure to thrive with persistent diarrhoea and persistent oral thrush. Infants that present with lymphopenia should be further evaluated (Rivers and Gaspar 2015).

The severity of the clinical and immunologic situation requires prompt intervention, and for most patients, the only curative treatment is allogeneic HSCT (Gaspar et al. 2013; Gennery 2015). Gene therapy and enzyme replacement therapy are available for some specific genetic subtypes (Gennery 2015). The objective of HSCT in patients with SCID is to provide normal haematopoiesis, facilitating correction of the immune defect. Therefore, it is critical to minimize potential long-term effects of treatment but to establish effective long-term immune function (Gennery 2015). Once the diagnosis of SCID is made, there is an urgency of finding a suitable donor (Gaspar et al. 2013) and proceeding to transplant. Factors that influence the prognosis include the age, the type of SCID and the clinical state at the time of diagnosis, in particular the presence of infection and the degree of HLA matching with the donor (Sureda et al. 2015b).

2.5.3 Non-SCID Inborn Errors of Immunity

The three of the more common non-SCID **IEI** disorders are as follows:

1. Chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) patients with CGD have a reduced ability of phagocytes (particularly neutrophils) to kill bacterial and fungal pathogens.

2. Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) is an X-linked immunodeficiency caused by mutations in the WAS gene, presenting with thrombocytopenia, eczema and immunodeficiency.
3. Haemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis (HLH) is a life-threatening disease of severe hyper inflammation caused by uncontrolled proliferation of activated lymphocytes and macrophages (Booth et al. 2016).

2.5.3.1 Conditioning

There is a debate about the best approach of treatment. Different centres are using a wide variety of conditioning regimes (Booth et al. 2016). The EBMT/ESID (European Society for Immunodeficiencies) have published in 2021 updated guidelines for HSCT for IEI. They recommend, whenever possible, that individual transplant protocol should follow these guidelines (Lankester et al. 2021). In the presence of an HLA-identical family donor, HSCT can be performed in certain types of SCID (particularly those with an absence of NK cells) without any conditioning regimen. These patients can have donor T-cell (and occasionally B-cell) reconstitution, thereby potentially sparing short- and long-term toxicities (Dvorak et al. 2014; Gennery 2015; Sureda et al. 2015b). Overall conditioning increases the likelihood of myeloid engraftment, thymic output and independence from Ig in SCID patients. Therefore conditioning is recommended as a default position in most cases. If patient condition can't tolerate chemotherapy, an unconditioned rescue infusion may be performed, with a risk of absent B cell reconstitution, a decline in thymopoiesis overtime, and high risk of graft failure in T-B-NK+ SCID. In these cases the patient might need a second transplant with conditioning when they recover and don't have evidence of durable immune reconstitution (Lankester et al. 2021).

In contrast to SCID disorders, HSCT in non-SCID IEI always requires conditioning therapy. Over the years, the use of reduced intensity conditioning approaches has been explored in order to reduce acute and late effects (Booth et al. 2016; Lankester et al. 2021).

2.5.3.2 Outcome

In recent years, the outcome of HSCT has improved considerably with overall survival rates now approaching 90% in optimal circumstances (Gennery 2015). This is most likely due to earlier diagnosis; improved supportive care, including the initiation of bacterial and fungal prophylaxis; and early referral for HSCT (Booth et al. 2016). For many patients with IEI, partial donor chimaerism is sufficient to induce cure if the affected recipient cell lineage is replaced completely or partially by donor cells, although complete donor chimaerism is best in some diseases (Gennery 2015). Pai et al. reported the results of 240 infants who received a transplant for SCID, at 25 centres in the USA between January 2000 and December 2009. The overall survival rate at 5 years was 74%; most deaths were within the first year after transplant and were due to infections (39%) or pulmonary complications (37%). Mortality was increased for patients who had active infection at the time of transplantation.

2.5.4 Newborn Screening

Newborn screening (NBS) for SCID was first introduced in the United States. Programmes have now been rolled out in a number of countries around the world, including a growing number of European countries (Elliman and Gennery 2021). NBS tests enable identification of infants with life-threating disorders, which require early intervention shortly after birth (Giżewska et al. 2020). This will significantly improve the outcome for SCID patients, allowing a rapid move to curative therapy before symptoms and infections accrue (Gaspar et al. 2013; Booth et al. 2016). Detection of SCID at birth allows immediate protection with prophylactic Immunoglobulin substitution and antibiotics, thus keeping children free from infection until a definitive procedure can be undertaken (Gaspar et al. 2013). Screening is based on a qPCR assay for T-cell receptor excision circles (TRECs) which can be performed on the dried blood spot tests—Guthrie already taken as part of universal newborn screening for other inherited conditions. TRECs are essentially a

marker of thymic output and their levels are severely reduced in SCID and in a number of other conditions. If low TREC levels are detected, then assay is repeated before the patient is called for further immunological evaluation (Booth et al. 2016).

The optimal way to approach transplant in those infants identified through NBS programs has yet to be determined (Booth et al. 2016). Once diagnosis of SCID has been made there is an urgent need to identify a suitable donor. The use of chemotherapy in pre-symptomatic children with SCID is difficult for physicians and families to accept (Booth et al. 2016) and the challenge is the assessment of the best conditioning regimen at a young age, in order to reduce the chemotherapy-induced toxicity (Haddad and Hoenig 2019).

2.5.5 Inherited Bone Marrow Failure

The inherited bone marrow failure (BMF) syndromes are a rare group of syndromes characterized by impaired haematopoiesis and cancer predisposition. Most inherited BMF syndromes are also associated with a range of congenital anomalies (Mehta et al. 2010). Patients with inherited BMF syndromes are usually identified when they develop haematologic complications such as severe bone marrow failure, myelodysplastic syndrome or acute myeloid leukaemia (Alter 2017).

Fanconi anaemia (FA) is the most common inherited BMF syndrome (Alter 2017; Dufour 2017). It is an autosomal recessive disorder characterized by a wide variety of congenital abnormalities, defective haematopoiesis and a high risk of developing acute myeloid leukaemia and certain solid tumours. The indication for HSCT in FA is the development of bone marrow failure (Tischkowitz and Hodgson 2003). Virtually all patients with FA will require treatment with allogeneic HSCT (Mehta et al. 2010).

Diamond-Blackfan anaemia (DBA) is characterized by erythroid defect, the presence of congenital anomalies and cancer predisposition. The classic presentation of DBA usually includes anaemia with essentially normal neutrophil and platelet counts, in a child younger than 1 year (Vlachos and Muir 2010). HSCT is currently the only option for cure and must be considered early for children with transfusion-dependency (Da Costa et al. 2019).

Dyskeratosis congenita (DC) is a multisystem disorder, with a disruption in telomere biology leading to very short telomeres underpinning its pathophysiology. Bone marrow failure is a key feature in DC and is the leading cause of mortality (Barbaro and Vedi 2016). Many patients are diagnosed during childhood because of thrombocytopenia or aplastic anaemia (Alter 2017). DC is genetically heterogeneous with X-linked, autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive subtypes. The clinical features include cutaneous manifestations of abnormal skin pigmentation, nail dystrophy, mucosal leukoplakia and BMF, pulmonary fibrosis and predisposition to malignancy (Mehta et al. 2010; Alter 2017).

Congenital amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia (CAMT) is a rare autosomal recessive disorder characterized by severe thrombocytopenia at birth due to ineffective megakaryocytopoiesis and progression towards aplastic anaemia during the first years of life (Germeshausen and Ballmaier 2021). HSCT remains the only known curative treatment for CAMT (Mehta et al. 2010; Germeshausen and Ballmaier 2021).

2.5.6 Inherited Diseases: Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Most of the metabolic diseases considered for HSCT are lysosomal storage diseases that rely on transfer of enzyme from donor-derived blood cells to the reticuloendothelial system and solid organs (Sureda et al. 2015b). This group of rare diseases includes mucopolysaccharidosis (MPS) as Hurler's syndrome and leukodystrophy as X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy (X-ALD) and infantile Krabbe disease. The success of SCT in metabolic diseases is determined particularly by the degree of tissue damage present by the time of transplantation and the rate of progression of

the disease (Steward and Jarisch 2005). Patients who are transplanted early or in their presymptomatic phase achieve better results as opposed to children with advanced disease (Chiesa et al. 2016). If damage to the central nervous system is present, it is irreversible and therefore a contraindication for transplant (Boelens et al. 2008).

2.5.7 Haemoglobinopathies

Increasingly, paediatric patients with transfusion-dependent thalassemia (TDT) and sickle cell disease (SCD) have been transplanted in the past years (Passweg et al. 2014). Both diseases are autosomal recessive diseases of the haemoglobin. Early detection of the diseases by newborn screening provides the possibility of starting early with prophylactic therapy, preventing organ damage, and reducing morbidity and mortality (Lees et al. 2000; Peters et al. 2012). In TDT, a β-globin defect leads to anaemia and therefore patients need frequent blood transfusion. Chronic blood transfusion includes the risks of iron overload and allo-immunization, both requiring strict monitoring. Adherence to chelation therapy is important, because of the risks of iron overload, such as cardiomyopathy and liver cirrhosis (Peters et al. 2012). SCD is characterized by the sickling red blood cell, causing vascular occlusion and premature breakdown. Patients can face complications such as anaemia, painful vaso-occlusive crises, acute chest syndrome and organ damage. Supportive care for SCD includes strict adherence to medication, lifestyle recommendations, monitoring and it could also include frequent blood tranfusions or blood exchange (Houwing et al. 2019). Despite improved supportive care, both TDT and SCD are diseases majorly affecting the quality of life and life expectancy; an HSCT offers an established curative option for these haemoglobinopathies. For TDT patients with an available HLA-identical sibling, HSCT should be offered early to prevent iron overload and complications (Angelucci et al. 2014). In case no HLA-identical donor is available, a MUD donor can be considered. With adjustments in preconditioning and reduced-toxicity conditioning, the outcomes post-HSCT have improved. Also, the use of haplo donors in TDT with post cyclofosfamide has increasingly been used and provides the possibility of cure with easy access to a donor if an HLA-identical or MUD donor is lacking (Oikonomopoulou and Goussetis 2021). An HSCT also provides a curative option for SCD patients. Outcomes are excellent in young children transplanted with an HLA-identical donor. It is recommended to transplant young symptomatic SCD patients who have an HLA-identical donor as early as possible (Angelucci et al. 2014). When an HLA-identical donor is lacking and in case of severe disease symptoms according to internationally respected specific criteria (Walters et al. 1996), alternate donor sources can be considered (Angelucci et al. 2014). The safety of haploidentical transplantations in SCD has been improved by adjustments in preconditioning, conditioning, post-HSCT T-cell depletion, and supportive care; nevertheless, graft failure remains a concern (Aydin et al. 2021; Iqbal et al. 2021). HSCT was until a few years ago rarely performed in adults with haemoglobinopathies; recently, adult SCD patients with SCD complications are offered a non-myeloablative HSCT when an HLA-identical donor is available (Hsieh et al. 2009). As future perspective, gene therapy should be listed, providing the opportunity to treat the patients with genetically modified autologous stem cells, not needing a donor and eliminating the risks of GvHD. Especially for TDT, trials are promising (Thompson et al. 2018).

References

Algeri M, Merli P, Locatelli F, Pagliara D. The role of allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in pediatric leukemia. J Clin Med. 2021;10:3790. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcm10173790.

Apperley J, Carreras E, Gluckman E, Masszi T. ESHEBMT handbook; 2012. p. 111, 309, 311.

Aversa F, Pierini A, Ruggeri L, Martelli MF, Velardi A. The evolution of T cell depleted haploidentical transplantation. Front Immunol. 2019;10:2769. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2019.02769. Published 2019 Nov 27.

Ballen K. Update on umbilical cord blood transplantation. F1000Res. 2017;6:1556. https://doi.org/10.12688/f1000research.11952.1. Published 2017 Aug 24.

Bashey A, Solomon SR. T-cell replete haploidentical donor transplantation using post-transplant CY: an emerging standard-of-care option for patients who lack an HLA-identical sibling donor. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2014;49:999–1008.

Bertaina A, Pitisci A, Sinibaldi M, Algeri M. T cell-depleted and T cell-replete HLA-haploidentical stem cell transplantation for non-malignant disorders. Curr Hematol Malig Rep. 2017;12(1):68–78. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11899-017-0364-3. PMID: 28116633.

Carreras E, Dufour C, Mohty M, Kröger N. The EBMT handbook: hematopoietic stem cell transplantation and cellular therapies. 7th ed. Cham: Springer Open; 2019. p. 49-50–55-69. https://link.springer.com/book/10.1007%2F978-3-030-02278-5.

Copelan EA. Hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:1813–26.

Demiriz IS, Tekgunduz E, Altuntas F. What is the most appropriate source for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation? Peripheral stem cell/bone marrow/cord blood. Bone Marrow Res. 2012;2012:834040.

Duarte RF, Labopin M, Bader P, Basak GW, Bonini C, Chabannon C, Corbacioglu S, Dreger P, Dufour C, Gennery AR, Kuball J, Lankester AC, Lanza F, Montoto S, Nagler A, Peffault de Latour R, Snowden JA, Styczynski J, Yakoub-Agha I, Kröger N, Mohty M, European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). Indications for haematopoietic stem cell transplantation for haematological diseases, solid tumours and immune disorders: current practice in Europe, 2019. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2019;54(10):1526. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-019-0516-2. Epub 2019 Apr 5. PMID: 30953028.

Elfeky R, Lazareva A, Qasim W, Veys P. Immune reconstitution following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation using different stem cell sources. Expert Rev Clin Immunol. 2019;15(7):735–51. https://doi.org/10.1080/1744666X.2019.1612746.

Epperla N, Hamadani M, Horowitz MM. Indications for allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in adults. In: Gluckman É, Niederwieser D, Aljurf M, editors. Establishing a hematopoietic stem cell transplantation unit. Cham: Springer; 2018. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-59358-6_7. First Online 07 July 2017 Publisher Name, Springer.

Fitzhugh CD, Abraham A, Hsieh MM. Alternative donor/unrelated donor transplants for the β-thalassemia and sickle cell disease. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2017;1013:123–53. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4939-7299-9_5.

Gagelmann N, Bacigalupo A, Rambaldi A, et al. Haploidentical stem cell transplantation with post-transplant cyclophosphamide therapy vs other donor transplantations in adults with hematologic cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Oncol. 2019;5(12):1739–48. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.3541.

Gratwohl A. Global perspectives on hematopoietic stem cell transplants (HSCTs). In: Gluckman É, Niederwieser D, Aljurf M, editors. Establishing a hematopoietic stem cell transplantation unit. Cham: Springer; 2018. p. 1–11. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-59358-6_1.

Mackall, et al. Background to hematopoietic cell transplantation, including post transplant immune recovery. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2009;44:457–62. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2009.255.

Maedler-Kron C, Marcus VA, Michel RP. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. In: Michel R, Berry G, editors. Pathology of transplantation. Cham: Springer; 2016. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-29683-8_10.

Majhail NS, Farnia SH, Carpenter PA, Champlin RE, Crawford S, Marks DI, Omel JL, Orchard PJ, Palmer J, Saber W, Savani BN, Veys PA, Bredeson CN, Giralt SA, LeMaistre CF. Indications for autologous and allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation: guidelines from the American Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21(11):1863–9.

Maziarz RT. Blood and marrow transplant handbook. 2nd ed. Cham: Springer; 2015. p. 3–11, 29–33.

Maziarz RT, Slater SS. Blood and marrow transplant handbook: comprehensive guide for patient care. Cham: Springer; 2021. p. 1–4, 37–54.

Meaghan Granger M, Naranjo A, Bagatell R, DuBois SG, McCune JS, Tenney SC, Weiss BD, Mosse YP, Asgharzadeh S, Grupp SA, Hogarty MD, Gastier-Foster JM, Mills D, Shulkin BL, Parisi MT, London WB, Han-Chang J, Panoff J, von Allmen D, Jarzembowski JA, Park JR, Yanik GA. Myeloablative busulfan/melphalan consolidation following induction chemotherapy for patients with newly diagnosed high-risk neuroblastoma: Children's Oncology Group Trial ANBL12P1. Transplant Cell Ther. 2021;27(6):490.e1–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtct.2021.03.006. ISSN 2666-6367.

Merli P, Algeri M, Del Bufalo F, et al. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Curr Hematol Malig Rep. 2019;14:94–105. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11899-019-00502-2.

Michel RP, Berry GJ, editors. Pathology of transplantation. Cham: Springer; 2016. p. 401–40.

Mosaad YM. Immunology of hematopoietic stem cell transplant. Immunol Investig. 2014;43:871–3.

Passweg J, Baldomero H, Bader P, et al. Use of haploidentical stem cell transplantation continues to increase: the 2015 European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplant activity survey report. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2017;52:811–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2017.34.

Poirel HA, Vanspauwen M, Macq G, et al. Providing both autologous and allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplants (HSCT) may have a stronger impact on the outcome of autologous HSCT in adult patients than activity levels or implementation of JACIE at Belgian transplant centres. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2019;54:1434–42. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-019-0458-8.

Rowley S. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for malignant diseases. New York: Elsevier; 2013. p. 1020–1.

Sano H, Mochizuki K, Kobayashi S, Ohara Y, Takahashi N, Kudo S, Waragai T, Ikeda K, Ohto H, Kikuta A. Effectiveness of T-cell replete haploidentical hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for refractory/relapsed B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia in children and adolescents. Front Pediatr. 2021;9:743294. https://doi.org/10.3389/fped.2021.743294.

Sureda A, Bader P, Cesaro S, Dreger P, Duarte RF, Dufour C, Falkenburg JHF, Farge-Bancel D, Gennery A, Kröger N, Lanza F, Marsh JC, Nagler A, Peters C, Velardi A, Mohty M. A Madrigal for the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Indications for allo- and auto-SCT for haematological diseases, solid tumours and immune disorders: current practice in Europe, 2015. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015a;50:1037–56. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2015.6. Published online 23 March 2015.

Tolbert VP, Matthay KK. Neuroblastoma: clinical and biological approach to risk stratification and treatment. Cell Tissue Res. 2018;372:195–209. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00441-018-2821-2.

Indications for Transplant in Non-malignant Diseases in Children

Alter BP. Inherited bone marrow failure syndromes: considerations pre- and posttransplant. Blood. 2017;130(21):2257–64.

Angelucci E, Matthes-Martin S, Baronciani D, Bernaudin F, Bonanomi S, Cappellini MD, Dalle JH, Di Bartolomeo P, de Heredia CD, Dickerhoff R, Giardini C, Gluckman E, Hussein AA, Kamani N, Minkov M, Locatelli F, Rocha V, Sedlacek P, Smiers F, Thuret I, Yaniv I, Cavazzana M, Peters C. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in thalassemia major and sickle cell disease: indications and management recommendations from an international expert panel. Haematologica. 2014;99(5):811–20.

Aydin M, Dovern E, Leeflang MMG, de la Fuente J, Kassim AA, Biemond BJ, Nur E. Haploidentical allogeneic stem cell transplantation in sickle cell disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Transplant Cell Ther. 2021;27:1004.e1.

Barbaro P, Vedi A. Survival after hematopoietic stem cell transplant in patients with dyskeratosis congenita: systematic review of the literature. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22:1152–8.

Boelens JJ, Wynn RF, Bierings M. HSCT for inborn errors of metabolism. In: Carreras E, Gluckman E, Gratwohl A, Masszi T, Apperley J, editors. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation, 5th. s.l. Paros: ESH EBMT; 2008. p. 544–53.

Booth C, Silva J, Veys P. Stem cell transplantation for the treatment of immunodeficiency in children: current status and hopes for the future. Expert Rev Clin Immunol. 2016;12:713–23. https://doi.org/10.1586/1744666X.2016.1150177.

Chiesa R, Wynn RF, Veys P. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in inborn errors of metabolism. Curr Opin Hematol. 2016;23(6):530–5.

Da Costa L, Leblanc T, Mohandas N. Diamond-Blackfan Anemia DIAMOND-BLACKFAN ANEMIA AP-HP, Service d' Hématologie Biologique, Hôpital Robert-Debré, Paris. Hôpital Robert Debré Service d'Hématologie Biologique 48 Boulevard Sérurier Running title; 2019.

Dufour C. How I manage patients with Fanconi anaemia. Br J Haematol. 2017;178(1):32–47.

Dvorak CC, Hassan A, Slatter MA, Hönig M, Lankester AC, Buckley RH, Pulsipher MA, Davis JH, Güngör T, Gabriel M, Bleesing JH, Bunin N, Sedlacek P, Connelly JA, Crawford DF, Notarangelo LD, Pai SY, Hassid J, Veys P, Gennery AR, Cowan MJ. Comparison of outcomes of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation without chemotherapy conditioning by using matched sibling and unrelated donors for treatment of severe combined immunodeficiency. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2014;134:935–43.

Elliman DAC, Gennery AR. Newborn screening for severe combined immunodeficiency—coming to a region near you soon. Clin Exp Immunol. 2021;205(3):343–5.

Gaspar HB, Qasim W, Davies EG, Rao K, Amrolia PJ, Veys P. How I treat severe combined immunodeficiency. Blood. 2013;122:3749–58.

Gennery A. Recent advances in treatment of severe primary immunodeficiencies [version 1; referees: 2]. F1000Res. 2015;4:1459. https://doi.org/10.12688/f1000research.7013.

Germeshausen M, Ballmaier M. Congenital amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia – not a single disease. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol. 2021;34(2):101286. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.beha.2021.101286.

Giżewska M, Durda K, Winter T, Ostrowska I, Ołtarzewski M, Klein J, et al. Newborn screening for SCID and other severe primary immunodeficiency in the polish-German Transborder area: experience from the first 14 months of collaboration. Front Immunol. 2020;11:1948.

Haddad E, Hoenig M. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID). Front Pediatr. 2019;7:481.

Houwing ME, de Pagter PJ, van Beers EJ, Biemond BJ, Rettenbacher E, Rijneveld AW, Schols EM, Philipsen JNJ, Tamminga RYJ, van Draat KF, Nur E, Cnossen MH, Beijlevelt M, Gerritsma JJ, Harteveld CL, Heijboer H, Heitink-Polle KMJ, Kerkhoffs JLH, Lankester AC, Makelburg ABU, Mekelenkamp H, Peters M, Rab MAB, Teuben S, Smiers FJ, van Tuijn CFJ, Zwagemaker E, S. Consortium. Sickle cell disease: clinical presentation and management of a global health challenge. Blood Rev. 2019;37:100580.

Hsieh MM, Kang EM, Fitzhugh CD, Link MB, Bolan CD, Kurlander R, Childs RW, Rodgers GP, Powell JD, Tisdale JF. Allogeneic hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation for sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(24):2309–17.

Iqbal M, Reljic T, Corbacioglu S, de la Fuente J, Gluckman E, Kumar A, Yassine F, Ayala E, El-Jawahri A, Murthy H, Almohareb F, Hashmi SK, Cappelli B, Alahmari A, Scigliuolo GM, Kassim A, Aljurf M, Kharfan-Dabaja MA. Systematic review/meta-analysis on efficacy of allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation in sickle cell disease: an international effort on behalf of the Pediatric Diseases Working Party of European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation and the Sickle Cell Transplantation International Consortium. Transplant Cell Ther. 2021;27(2):167.e1–2.

Lankester AC, Albert MH, Booth C, Gennery AR, Güngör T, Hönig M, et al. EBMT/ESID inborn errors working party guidelines for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for inborn errors of immunity. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56(9):2052–62. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-021-01378-8.

Lees CM, Davies S, Dezateux C. Neonatal screening for sickle cell disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2000;(2):CD001913.

Mehta P, Locatelli F, Stary J. Bone marrow transplantation for inherited bone marrow failure syndromes. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2010;57:147–70.

Oikonomopoulou C, Goussetis E. HSCT remains the only cure for patients with transfusion-dependent thalassemia until gene therapy strategies are proven to be safe. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56:2882.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Peters C, Gaspar HB, Cesaro S, Dreger P, Duarte RF, Falkenburg JH, Farge-Bancel D, Gennery A, Halter J, Kroger N, Lanza F, Marsh J, Mohty M, Sureda A, Velardi A, Madrigal A. Hematopoietic SCT in Europe: data and trends in 2012 with special consideration of pediatric transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2014;49(6):744–50.

Peters M, Heijboer H, Smiers F, Giordano PC. Diagnosis and management of thalassaemia. BMJ. 2012;344:e228.

Rivers L, Gaspar HB. Severe combined immunodeficiency: recent developments and guidance on clinical management. Arch Dis Child. 2015;100:667–72.

Steward CG, Jarisch A. Haemopoietic stem cell transplantation for genetic disorders. Arch Dis Child. 2005;90:1259–63.

Sureda A, Bader P, Cesaro S, Dreger P, Duarte RF, Dufour C, Falkenburg JHF, Farge-Bancel D, Gennery A, Kröger N, Lanza F, Marsh JC, Nagler A, Peters C, Velardi A, Mohty M, Madrigal. Indications for allo- and auto-SCT for haematological diseases, solid tumours and immune disorders: current practice. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015b;50:1037–56.

Thompson AA, Walters MC, Kwiatkowski J, Rasko JEJ, Ribeil JA, Hongeng S, Magrin E, Schiller GJ, Payen E, Semeraro M, Moshous D, Lefrere F, Puy H, Bourget P, Magnani A, Caccavelli L, Diana JS, Suarez F, Monpoux F, Brousse V, Poirot C, Brouzes C, Meritet JF, Pondarré C, Beuzard Y, Chrétien S, Lefebvre T, Teachey DT, Anurathapan U, Ho PJ, von Kalle C, Kletzel M, Vichinsky E, Soni S, Veres G, Negre O, Ross RW, Davidson D, Petrusich A, Sandler L, Asmal M, Hermine O, De Montalembert M, Hacein-Bey-Abina S, Blanche S, Leboulch P, Cavazzana M. Gene therapy in patients with transfusion-dependent β-thalassemia. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(16):1479–93.

Tischkowitz MD, Hodgson SV. Fanconi anaemia. J Med Genet. 2003;40:1–10.

Vlachos A, Muir E. How I treat diamond-blackfan anemia. Blood. 2010;116:3715–23.

Walters MC, Patience M, Leisenring W, Eckman JR, Scott JP, Mentzer WC, Davies SC, Ohene-Frempong K, Bernaudin F, Matthews DC, Storb R, Sullivan KM. Bone marrow transplantation for sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med. 1996;335(6):369–76.

Donor Selection

3

Mairéad NíChonghaile

Abstract

Allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) is the treatment of choice for a variety of malignant and non-malignant disorders. The aim of HSCT is to replace the patient's haematopoiesis with that taken from a donor, and a prerequisite is the identification of a suitable donor. It is an intense and demanding process and puts considerable strain on both recipients and donors. The choice of donor has an impact on the transplantation process from scheduling to outcome. There are several common donor issues whether the donor is related or unrelated including eligibility, confidentiality, informed consent and right to refuse consent.

Keywords

Eligibility · Confidentiality · Informed consent · Donation · HLA match · Donor selection

3.1 Introduction

Allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) is the treatment of choice for a variety of malignant and non-malignant conditions. The aim of HSCT is to replace the patient's haematopoiesis with that taken from a donor, and a prerequisite is the identification of a suitable donor. There are three conditions which have to be met for a donor to be considered suitable—the donor needs to be suitably matched, healthy and willing to donate (Kisch 2015). Allogeneic HSCT is an intense and demanding process and puts considerable strain on both recipients and donors.

Donors can be related or unrelated (Fig. 3.1), and the primary consideration is the degree of HLA compatibility of the donor to the recipient and this is considered the most important factor to determining overall success and the transplant-related mortality (adapted from Kulkarni and Treleaven 2009).

3.2 Human Leukocyte Antigens

Human leukocyte antigens (HLA) are part of the major histocompatibility complex and is highly polymorphic, meaning that there are a lot of variations of the HLA type with humans, and they are found on the short arm of chromosome 6. The primary role of HLA molecules is to preserve peptide to T cells, enabling them to recognise and eliminate "foreign" particles present in an individual and also to prevent the recognition of self

M. NíChonghaile (✉)
St James's Hospital, Dublin, Ireland

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_3

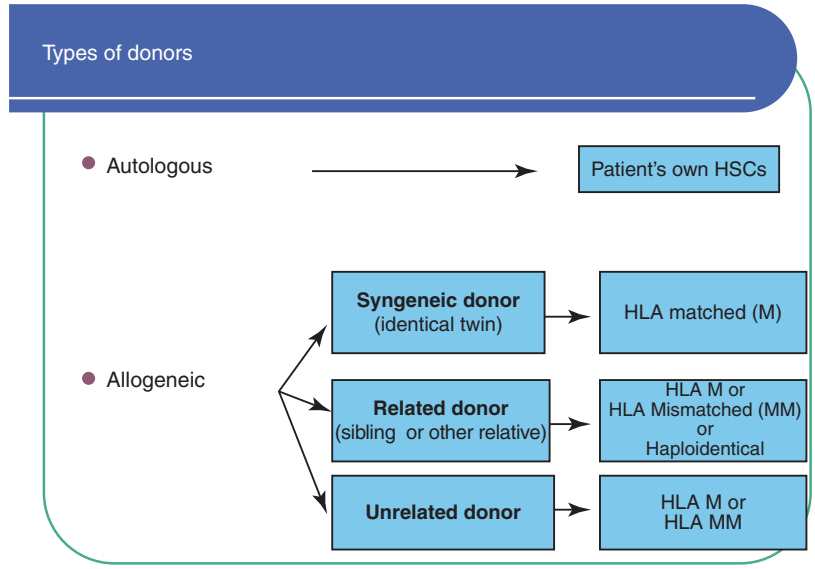


Fig. 3.1 Types of donors

as foreign. Due to the Mendelian[1] inheritance of HLA types, the first place to look for a potential donor is within the immediate family (Fig. 3.2). Our HLA type is inherited from our parents—one haplotype from each parent giving rise to a one in four chance that sibling may match another.

Table 3.1 shows the wide variety and number of HLA alleles (the variant forms of the gene) that have been identified. HLA typing can be serological or DNA based though currently the majority of HLA typing is DNA based.

Table 3.2 shows an example of the nomenclature used for HLA typing. HLA typing looks at matching recipients and donors at HLAs A, B and C (class I typing) and HLAs DR, DQ and DP (class II typing). The nomenclature used is the gene name followed by an asterisk with a four-digit allele name; the first two digits indicated the serological groups and the last two digits the number of the allele within the group.

When we speak of matching, we describe the potential donors as being fully matched (6/6 within the related setting or 10/10 when referring to unrelated donor), a one- or two-antigen mis-

[1]Mendelian inheritance is where a person inherits two alleles, one from each parent. These alleles may be the same or different.

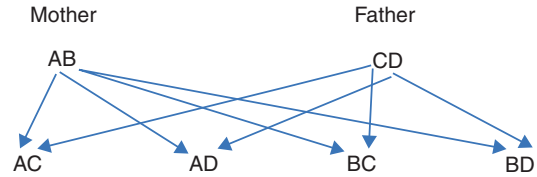


Fig. 3.2 HLA typing

Table 3.1 The number of HLA alleles currently named at each locus (April 2011)

HLA locus	Number of class I alleles	HLA locus	Number of class II alleles
HLA–A	1601	HLA–DRB	1027
HLA–B	2125	HLA–DQA1	44
HLA–C	1102	HLA–DQB1	153
		HLA–DPA1	32
		HLA–DPB1	149

Adapted from EBMT Handbook 6th Edition (2012) page 76

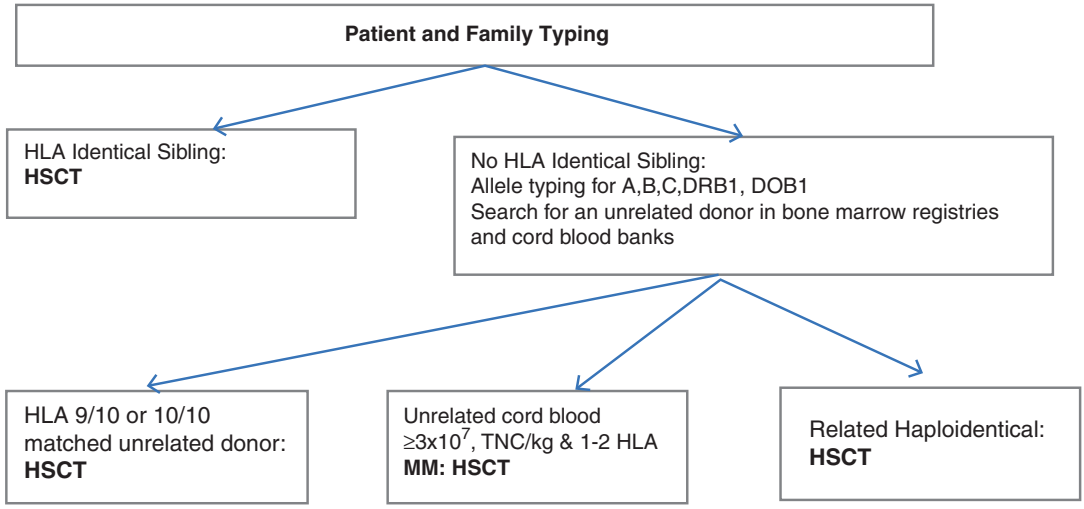
Table 3.2 An example of HLA nomenclature and its relation to HLA typing techniques

Typing method	Nomenclature
Serological	A1
DNA based: Low resolution	A*01
DNA based: Low resolution	A*01:01/01:4 N
DNA based: Low resolution	A*01:01

Adapted from EBMT Handbook 6th Edition (2012) page 77

match or a haplotype match (i.e. 3/6 or 5/10). The example below shows a patient and his potential sibling donors.

Below is a list of examples when describing degrees of HLA matching between recipient and potential donor.



Adapted from EBMT 2012 Handbook page 102

The possibility of having a suitably matched sibling donor varies depending on ethnicity as distinct HLA types that occur differ among ethnic groups and family size. If a suitable matched sibling donor is not available, a search can be undertaken of the volunteer unrelated donor panels that are part of BM Donors Worldwide. There are now in excess of 39 million volunteer unrelated donors and cord blood products registered on these panels.

Gragert et al. (2014) published the chances of identifying a suitable matched donor for a recipient requiring allogeneic HSCT. While a person of Caucasian background has a relatively good chance of identifying a potential donor, some ethnic groups have a much lower probability of finding a match through unrelated donor searching. This has led to an increase in the use of alternate donors, e.g. haploidentical donors or alternative cell sources, e.g. cord blood stem cells. The use of haploidentical transplantation with improved conditioning and GVHD prophylaxis means that nearly all patients will give the potential of a haploidentical donor (Table 3.3).

Table 3.3 Likelihood of identifying HLA-matched adult donors and cord blood units

U.S. Racial and Ethnic Group	Likelihood of identifying an adult donor[a]		Likelihood of identifying a cord-blood unit for patients ≥20 year of age[b]			Likelihood of identifying a cord-blood unit for patients <20 year of age?		
	8/8 HLA match	≥7.8 HLA match	6/6 HLA match	≥5/6 HLA match	≥4/6 HLA match	6/6 HLA match	≥5/6 HLA match	≥4/6 HLA match
				Percent				
White European	75	97	17	66	96	38	87	99
Middle Eastern or North African	46	90	6	46	91	18	75	98
African American	19	76	2	24	81	6	58	95
African	18	71	1	23	81	5	56	95
Black South or Central American	16	66	2	27	82	7	58	96
Black Caribbean	19	74	1	24	81	6	58	95
Chinese	41	88	6	44	91	19	77	98
Korean	40	87	5	39	89	17	73	98
South Asian	33	84	4	41	90	14	73	98
Japanese	37	87	4	37	88	16	72	97
Filipino	40	83	5	42	89	19	76	98
Southeast Asian	27	76	3	37	89	12	70	98
Vietnamese	42	84	6	44	89	20	76	98
Hawaiian or Pacific Islander	27	72	3	32	84	10	64	96
Mexican	37	87	6	45	91	19	75	98
Hispanic South or Central American	34	80	5	43	90	17	73	98
Hispanic Caribbean	40	83	5	40	89	17	71	98
Native North American	52	91	10	54	93	25	80	99
Native South or Central American	49	87	11	53	93	26	79	98
Native Caribbean	32	77	4	35	86	14	66	97
Native Alaskan	36	83	7	47	91	18	75	98

Gragert et al. 2014.

[a]Data are the probabilities of identifying an adult donor who is available

[b]Data are the probabilities of identifying a unit with an adequate cell dose

3.3 Eligibility for HLA Typing of Potential Related Donors

Every institution will have its own requirements regarding eligibility to be HLA typed, and there should be a policy available locally. The main eligibility criteria is willingness to be tested—this does not imply consent to donation—and that the potential donor is not suffering from any conditions that may be a threat or a risk to the recipient or that may be aggravated in themselves by the donation process. As a result potential donors who have had a malignancy previously or have an autoimmune condition should be excluded or given special consideration. Relevant guidance can be found at https://share.wmda.info/display/DMSR/WMDA+Donor+Medical+Suitability+Recommendations+Main+page

Sibling donors actively participate in the quest for a cure for their sibling, but this exposes them to an invasive medical procedure that can lead to stress and anxiety and places them in a complex situation. While it can have a beneficial effect for the donor and the family unit as a whole, donors often feel responsible for the recipient outcome.

With respect to unrelated donors, each registry will have its own inclusion/exclusion criteria, but they usually follow the advice of the WMDA (World Marrow Donor Association) on whose website there is comprehensive guidance with respect to donor eligibility. To be listed as a volunteer donor on a blood stem cell registry, you must be:

- Between 18 and 60 years old (age limits may vary per country).
- In good health.
- Ready to donate stem cells to *any* patient in need.

To donate umbilical cord blood, a future mother must generally be:

- Over 18 years of age.
- In good health.
- Pregnant without complications.
- Registered well before the onset of labour.

3.4 Algorithm of Donor Choice and Selection

Many factors affect the choice of donor, and with the selection of donor sources now available, the possibility of offering HSCT has extended to almost all patients who require it (Apperley et al. 2012).

3.4.1 Donor Selection

The main determinants when selecting a donor whether related or unrelated are as follows:

The "perfect" donor does not exist – no current algorithm will guarantee a positive outcome will always occur.

3.4.2 HLA Match

The most significant factor in success and overall outcome is the degree of match between the donor and recipient.

1. Most data suggest a 10/10 match is the best choice.
2. In many circumstances a 9/10 match can be considered as good as a 10/10 but where the mismatch occurs is important. A mismatch at HLA DQB1 has been shown to have the least likely adverse outcome. Worse outcomes have been seen where the mismatch is at class I. Choosing an HLA A, B or C mismatch should be based on local studies and experience as it can be population- or ethnically dependent.
3. Two or more mismatches are associated with a poorer outcome (Shaw 2009).

3.4.3 Cytomegalovirus (CMV) Status

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) is a common virus that can infect almost anyone. Most people don't know they have CMV because it rarely causes symptoms. However, if you're pregnant or have a weakened immune system, CMV is cause for concern. Once infected with CMV, your body retains the virus for life.

Where possible the donor–recipient pairing should be CMV matched with preference given to a CMV compatible donor, i.e. negative donor in a CMV-negative recipient. The CMV status of the donor is less important in a CMV-positive recipient, but there is some evidence that a CMV-positive donor is preferable in a CMV-positive recipient as it may protect the patient from CMV infection (Rovira et al. 2012). Analysis has shown that prior donor CMV exposure significantly reduces the risk of CMV reactivation in CMV-positive recipients as immunity against CMV seems to be transferred with the donor cells and protects CMV-positive recipients from reactivation.

3.4.4 Blood Group

Blood group mismatch is not a contraindication to HSCT, and there is conflicting data about the role of blood group mismatch in relation to post HSCT relapse, but the majority of research suggest that it does not influence HSCT outcome (Kulkarni and Treleaven 2009).

Matching donor and recipient blood group may benefit the recipient as it may reduce the number of transfusions and the period of transfusion dependency post HSCT. Blood group matching is an important consideration in transplants where BM stem cells are the product of choice as it removes the requirement for the product to be red cell depleted to reduce the risk of intravascular haemolysis in the recipient (Wang et al. 2018).

3.4.5 Gender Match

Donor-recipient gender matching is seen as an important factor of transplant-related mortality (TRM) with the combination of a male recipient with a female donor shown to have an increased risk of chronic GVHD and a higher TRM but not necessarily a reduced relapse risk in all diseases. Therefore where possible a male donor is preferred, particularly for a male recipient. (Ayuk and Balduzzi 2019).

3.4.6 Parity

If only female donors are available, it is recommended where possible to use a nonparous female donor as parous females have a higher chance of having HLA-specific antibodies due to exposure to foetal antigens in utero. It is accepted that recipients (either male or female) who have a HSCT from parous donors have a higher risk of chronic GVHD (Kollman et al. 2001).

3.4.7 Age

The younger the donor at the time of HSCT donation has a favourable outcome after HSCT. It appears that the risk of acute GVHD (Grade 3 or above) and chronic GVHD is higher, and overall survival can be lower with increased donor age (Kollman et al. 2001).

3.4.8 Donor Evaluation

All donors should be medically assessed and consented independently from the recipient medical team. The maxim of "Do No Harm" to the donor is paramount, and no donor should be selected where there is a risk of aggravating or exacerbating a potential medical issue in the donor.

Table 3.4 lists the investigations that should be undertaken for all donors. There is a concern that related donors may not always be forthcoming about their health as they do not wish to jeopardise their relative's transplant. Equally, they may have medical conditions that they have not disclosed to their family. Mandatory virology

Table 3.4 Pre-transplant investigations of the donor

Blood group and antibody screening
Coagulation studies
Complete blood count
Full/confirmatory HLA typing
Liver function tests
Urea and creatinine
Pregnancy test
Viral serology—Cytomegalovirus
Epstein-Barr virus
Hepatitis B surface antigen and core antibody
Hepatitis C antigen
HIV
HTLV
Treponemel screen
Herpes simplex virus
Varicella zoster virus
Toxoplasma
Chest X-ray
Electrocardiogram
Under certain circumstances
Cytogenetic studies (chromosome fragility) if family history
Bone marrow examination
Echocardiogram or MUGA scan
Haemoglobin electrophoresis
Lung function tests
Haemoglobinopathy screen

screening is required on all donors—specific or additional testing may be required in certain countries, e.g. screening for West Nile virus if donor resides in an at-risk area, or if the countries' regulations require it, e.g. Tri-NAT assay.

3.5 Special Considerations

3.5.1 Screening of Elderly Donors

With more than 25% of HSCT now being performed in recipients >55 years of age, the chance of a higher age in matched sibling donors is also greater. This group of donors are more likely to have age-related medical conditions, and additional testing may be required to reduce the risk of donor-derived disease, e.g. transmission of an immune-mediated condition, e.g. asthma or psoriasis to the recipient, and reduce the risk of donation to the donor. Tests include PSA (prostate-specific antigen) in males, occult blood in stools, possible BM aspirate if results are abnormal, protein electrophoresis and CT chest if there is a history of smoking. Worel et al. 2015.

3.5.2 Screening of Paediatric Donors

Paediatric sibling donors are a unique underreported group with special challenges for the HSCT team and the family. Parents of the paediatric donor are in the difficult position of having to consent to both the donation and the transplant. JACIE and other professional regulatory bodies suggest the use of independent assessor and donor advocates in the case of paediatric donors to ensure the needs of the paediatric donors are met and that they are protected. Hutt et al. (2015) state that the intense experience of HSCT has a long-term impact on the whole family indicating the need for follow-up and psychological support. There can be a striking difference between the donors' and parents' view of the situation with the donor feeling a closer relationship with the recipient and also feeling responsible for them as well as the fact that the recipient owes them a debt of gratitude. Parents are concerned with two children and often feel that the donation process has a positive effect on family life not understanding any negative effect it may have on the donor feeling a pressure to donate or having that feeling of responsibility.

The needs of the paediatric donor are sometimes left unmet since parents and healthcare professionals cannot always determine the effect of the donation process on them. This can also be said to be the case in adult donors although they at least have life experience and knowledge which enables them to process and deal with their feelings in a way that a child often cannot.

3.5.3 Confidentiality

Information and care of the HSCT patients and their donor should be kept separate. Healthcare professionals must minimise their influence and that of the recipient and other family members which could complicate the potential donors' decision to donate or not. Families are complex entities, and potential donors and recipients can be estranged or influenced, and donors can feel pressured to donate. A model of care which is independent to the recipient (i.e. independent medical assessment and counselling of the potential donor) increases the potential donors' sense of security and allows for informed consent or refusal of donation. It is essential to separate the care of the donor from that of the recipient so that each individual can be focussed upon. The privacy of the donor must be respected and protected, and all potential donors should be given information at the time of the HLA typing about the overall process.

3.5.4 Donor Consent and Clearance

All donors should be reviewed and consented prior to the recipient commencing conditioning chemotherapy. They should be medically cleared and understand the implications if they withdraw their consent or participation once the recipient's conditioning has commenced.

3.5.5 Stem Cell Source

While this is primarily dictated by the transplant medical assessment and the type of HSCT that the recipient is undergoing, the donor will also influence that decision. The donor has a choice in the type of donation method they prefer, and both should be discussed. The donor may also have medical issues which influence the cell source, e.g. donors with significant back injuries or issues may not be suitable for bone marrow harvest, and unrelated donors who do not have adequate peripheral venous access may be reluctant to have a central access device inserted so would not be suitable for apheresis.

3.6 Conclusion

Allogenic HSCT is a standard therapy in a number of malignant and non-malignant conditions. The choice of donor is a complex issue with far-reaching consequences both for the recipient and the donor.

References

Apperley J, Carreras E, Gluckman E, Masszi T. Haematopoeitic stem cell transplantation. 6th ed; 2012.

Ayuk F, Balduzzi A. Donor selection for adults and pediatrics. In: Carreras E, Dufour C, Mohty M, Kroger N, editors. The EBMT handbook. Switzerland: Springer; 2019.

Gragert L, et al. HLA match likelihoods for hematopoietic stem-cell grafts in the U.S. registry. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(4):339–48.

Hutt D, Nehari M, Munits-Shenkar D, Akalay Y, Toren A, Bielorai B. Haematopoietic stem cell donation: psychological perspectives of paediatric sibling donors and their parents. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50:1–6.

Kisch AM. Allogeneic stem cell transplant. In: Patient and sibling donors perspective. Malmö: Malmo University; 2015.

Kollman C, Howe CW, Ansetti C, et al. Donor characteristics as risk factors in recipients after transplantation of bone marrow from unrelated donors. Blood. 2001;98:2043–51.

Kulkarni S, Treleaven J. Patient selections: preliminary interview and screening of patient and donor. In: Treleaven J, Barrett AJ, editors. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in clinical practice. Churchill Livingstone: Elsevier; 2009.

Rovira M, Mensa J, Carreras E, Infections in HSCT In: Apperley J, Carreras E, Gluckman E, Masszi T. The EBMT Handbook: Haematopoeitic stem cell transplantation. 6th revised ed. 2012.

Shaw B. Human leukocyte antigen matching, compatibility testing and donor selection. In: Treleaven J, Barrett AJ, editors. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in clinical practice. Elsevier; Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 2009.

Wang Y, Wu DP, Liu QF, et al. Donor and recipient age, gender and ABO incompatibility regardless of donor source: validated criteria for donor selection for haematopoietic transplants. Leukemia. 2018;32:492–8.

Worel N, et al. Suitability criteria for adult related donors: a consensus statement from the worldwide network for blood and marrow transplantation standing committee on donor issues. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:2052–60.

Transplant Preparation

4

Caroline Bompoint, Alberto Castagna, Daphna Hutt, Angela Leather, Merja Stenvall, Teija Schröder, Eugenia Trigoso Arjona, and Ton Van Boxtel

Abstract

HSCT is a complex procedure, which involves a long and complicated pathway for the patient and the intervention of many health professionals. Within this multidisciplinary team, the transplant coordinator, usually a nurse, is the 'essential marrow', the heart and the vital backbone of this procedure; they are an essential transplant ingredient facilitating a fluidity of the pathway and a good transmission of information. Written information about the procedure is beneficial for patients either prior to clinic visit or during clinic to allow the patients and relatives to reflect on conversations. Transplantation carries a significant risk of morbidity and mortality, and these should be considered regarding the 'need' to transplant, based upon risk of disease, versus risk of the transplant. Pre-transplant assessments must also be undertaken, and the results of these along with suitable donor medical clearance and cell availability are essential to ascertain that transplant is a valid option and can proceed safely. Dealing with fertility preservation upon diagnosis of cancer is often challenging; this issue is even more complex for paediatric patients. PDWP recommends that counselling about fertility preservation opportunities should be offered to each patient receiving HSCT.

This chapter also focuses on vascular access for optimal treatment of haematology patients because stem cell treatment cannot be performed without it. Constant advances in haematology have raised challenging ethical dilemmas concerning end of life, palliative care, patient information, donor concerns and impartiality and issues related to the risk we run to our patients. Nurses provide a key role in patient education, providing pre- and post-transplant advocacy and counselling, plan

C. Bompoint (✉)
HSCT Unit, Saint Eloi Hospital, Montpellier, France
e-mail: c-bompoint@chu-montpellier.fr

A. Castagna
Pediatric Hemato-Oncology and HSCT Unit, AOUI Verona, Verona, Italy
e-mail: alberto.castagna@aovr.veneto.it

D. Hutt
Department of Paediatric Hematology-Oncology and BMT, Edmond and lily Safra Children Hospital, Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel
e-mail: daphna.hutt@sheba.health.gov.il

A. Leather
The Christie NHS Foundation Trust, Manchester, UK
e-mail: angela.leather@nhs.net

M. Stenvall
Pediatric Hematology, Oncology and Stem Cell Transplantation Unit, University Hospital, Helsinki, Finland
e-mail: merja.stenvall@hus.fi

T. Schröder · E. T. Arjona
Hospital U y Polytechnic "LA FE", Valencia, Spain
e-mail: teija.schroder@hus.fi

T. Van Boxtel
UMC Utrecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands
e-mail: ton@wocova.com

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_4

hospitalisations and consultations. They also act as educators and role models to nursing students and share knowledge in accordance with local policies and JACIE guidelines.

Keywords

Transplant coordinator · Nurse · Multidisciplinary team (MDT) · Ethics · Complex procedure · Venous access

4.1 The Role of Transplant Coordinator

One or more transplant co-ordinators are necessary for the smooth running of the HSCT program. The co-ordinator serves as a facilitator, educator and point of contact for the patient and their family from the time the transplant is being considered until the time the patient is admitted to hospital. The co-ordinator should make the path to HSCT as smooth as possible for the patient and family. The co-ordinator may continue to be involved during the inpatient stay and will often be involved in the co-ordination of the post-HSCT follow-up.

The role of the transplant coordinator (TC) is to ensure that timely events occur for each patient and their families undergoing haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT), ensuring that patients are physically and psychologically prepared for the treatment. Many transplant coordinators are nurse specialists who focus their role on the individual needs of the patient and families; however, some centres have medical staff that organise transplants. TC provide a high level of care and management, inform and educate the patient, have holistic knowledge of the patient, participate in specific or advanced nursing practices (bone marrow sampling, HLA typing, transplant recipient care) and coordinate all the transplant logistics.

The transplant coordinator ensures that a suitable source of cells is available following the high-dose chemotherapy or immunosuppressive treatment that the patient will receive.

The TC supports the patient education and coordination of all care and embodies a clinical nursing function where emphasis is placed on specialisation in a clearly defined area of care.

The TC also takes care of the donor, to welcome and accompany him/her in his procedures: information, assessment, reimbursement of expenses and psychological follow-up. However in some centres this donor support should be carried out by someone who is not caring for the patient to allow for donor confidetiality and lack of coercion ensure that the donor is treated as an individual and not simply as a commodity.

These TCs are involved in the creation of information tools for the patient and the donor which are evaluated in order to have an accurate knowledge of patients' needs. A TC actively participates in the JACIE process of accreditation of transplant centres by writing and evaluating SOPs and ensuring that the standards are met and implemented.

Within the last decade, transplant centres across Europe have invested in new nursing roles allowing quality, continuity and coordination of care, providing a link between all members of the transplant team (physicians, nurses, cell therapy, immunologist, radiotherapists to name a few) and actively participating in the accreditation process.

Transplant coordination is in line with the spirit of advanced practice by recognizing expertise in the coordinating nurse. In hematology, it is an essential link in the pre-allograft process in supporting the patient and the donor, as well as in the articulation of each of the stages and the coordination of the stakeholders. These are new professions that offer nurses stimulating perspectives to express all their organizational and relational skills.

4.2 Information and Consent

Written information is considered to be beneficial for patients either prior to clinic visit or during clinic to allow the patients and relatives to reflect on conversations and an opportunity to build and ask questions (Patient Information Forum 2010). It is good practice to have in-depth discussions with patients on at least two occa-

sions prior to transplant consent and admission. Often the patient resource is the TC, in that they can call and ask questions as they arise. There are many good information leaflets available for patients and their relatives to gain an overview of the procedure, some generic and others disease specific. Information should be offered to the patient early in their transplant journey where appropriate. Consent for transplant must be taken prior to admission and before the donor in allogeneic transplants circumstances starts any mobilisation therapy. Each country will have a different legislation to follow, and guidelines for this will be available within your centre. Consent should be obtained by medical personnel who have received the appropriate, documented training in consenting to medical treatment and examination. Usually, for transplant consent due to its complexity and significant mortality risk, it would be considered as reasonable that this will be taken by the patient's consultant or designated deputy, to ensure all known factors and concerns are addressed appropriately.

Consent and information given to the patient should be balanced against the risk of disease. Indications and suitability of potential transplant candidates are identified, as indicated by EBMT guidelines and local policy. Yet decisions are the responsibility of medical teams with input from other members of the multidisciplinary team (MDT) based around EBMT guidelines; however, the patient needs to be in agreement and fully informed of the process, and the final decision to proceed should always be with the patient, with appropriate support and guidance.

During the consent process, patients should be informed of the reason for transplantation and the risks and potential benefits associated with the procedure; this will vary depending upon conditioning, individual risk factors and the donor chosen. Information should include (but not be exclusive to) the risk of graft versus host disease (GVHD), infection, bleeding, multi-organ damage/failure, infertility, hair loss, pain and possibility of death.

Consent for data collection is also important and is in line with the data protection act since 1998 and allows EBMT to collect anonymous information about the transplant, disease groups and outcomes, enabling future developments, trends and research opportunities. Patients should provide consent for their centre to send this information.

4.3 Information and Consents in the Paediatric Population

Informed consent is an essential part of healthcare practice. Parental permission and childhood assent is an active process that engages both adults and children, in their health care. Paediatric practice is unique in that developmental maturation allows, over time, for increasing inclusion of the child's and adolescent's opinion in medical decision-making in clinical practice and research (Katz et al. 2016).

A paediatric patient or a minor can be defined as a patient who has not reached the legal age of majority (in most countries, 18 years of age), a patient younger than 18 years. An adolescent refers to a person in the transition between childhood and adulthood, classically defined as 13–18 years of age. A child refers to a person from the ages of 1 through 12 years, and an infant refers to a person in the first year of life (Katz et al. 2016).

Children and parents have the right to informed participation in all decisions involving their health care so that they can make informed consent. Participation in decision-making requires advance information about all measures that need to be taken. The right of children to participate in their health care requires that staff members shall create an environment based on trust. Staff members shall have the capacity to listen, share information and give sound guidance. They have to respect the right of children to express their view in all matters affecting them, give due weight to their opinion in accordance with their competence and render a culturally appropriate interpretation of the child's view and accept that children have the right to not express an opinion or to express their views through their parents (European Association for Children in Hospital 2016).

EACH Charter points out that the rights of the children and parents to informed consent require that staff members respect the child's and the parents' ability and competence. The staff need to provide adequate and timely information to the child and the parents regarding their child's health condition, the purpose and value of treatment, the process and the risks. They have to offer adequate, reliable information on alternative forms of treatment. They have to advise and support the child and the parents to evaluate the proposed course of action and acknowledge and take seriously the child's and parents' knowledge and experience relating to their child's general health condition or present condition (European Association for Children in Hospital 2016).

Children have the right to express their views and may disagree with their parents. Providing they are mature enough to make decisions in their own best interests, staff should respect the child's opinion, depending on the stipulations of national laws. Staffs are required to proceed with the utmost care to properly evaluate the situation. Hospital staff should also ensure that the necessary counselling and support is given to the parents (European Association for Children in Hospital 2016).

4.4 Role of Risk Assessment and Co-Morbidity Scores

Transplantation carries a significant risk of morbidity and mortality, and these should be considered regarding the 'need' to transplant, based upon risk of disease, versus risk of the transplant; often this can be finely balanced. Suitability must be individualised to each patient need and requirements and discussed in detail with the patient with regard to the decisions.

Some patients are not solely living with the haematological disease or disorder and may have other factors that need to be taken into account. The presence of one or more diseases or disorders along with a primary diagnosis is called co-morbidity. This may be psychological or physical and may include illnesses such as diabetes, cardiac, respiratory or renal disease. Sometimes social and practical considerations may exclude a patient from undergoing stem cell transplant, yet as nurses we must aim to support where possible to ensure the best treatment options can be delivered.

Co-morbidity index tools have been used to predict outcomes in patients with cancer for several years, and some validated index tools such as Charlson co-morbidity index (CCI) consider medical history to estimate a prognosis or 1-year mortality. Each factor is assigned to a point number of 1, 2, 3 or 6. Patients may have more than one disorder in each group, clearly increasing risk; however, the CCI was felt not necessarily relevant to patients undergoing HSCT because the factors within the groups would often already be considered an exclusion to transplant and did not reflect frequent morbidities experienced by haematology patients (Sorror et al. 2005). Subsequently the HCTI, which is considered more relevant to HSCT, was designed. This tool reflects the conditions that some of the patients face prior to transplant, which may be as a result of previous therapies used to treat the disease or indeed the disease itself and can be used to risk assess potential co-morbidity prior to allogeneic transplant.

Karnofsky Performance Status, also known as KPS, has scores ranging from 0 to 100 (0 being deceased and 100 being normal with no problems with activities of living or disease present).

KPS can be used to infer a patient prognosis and ability to perform activities of normal living. Dependent on the indication for transplant and patient well-being prior to commencing conditioning, a KPS may limit options and be suggestive of outcome (Karnofsky et al. 1948).

100	Normal; no complaints; no evidence of disease
90	Able to carry on normal activity; minor signs or symptoms of disease
80	Normal activity with effort; some signs or symptoms of disease
70	Cares for self; unable to carry on normal activity or to do active work
60	Requires occasional assistance, but is able to care for most of their personal needs
50	Requires considerable assistance and frequent medical care
40	Disabled; requires special care and assistance

30	Severely disabled; hospital admission is indicated although death not imminent
20	Very sick; hospital admission necessary; active supportive treatment necessary
10	Moribund; fatal processes progressing rapidly
0	Dead

Post-transplant performance scores can be used to determine ongoing treatment. Similar to the KPS, the Lansky score is specific to children and activities that they will encounter (Lansky et al. 1987) and may be the preferred tool in the paediatric setting.

100	Fully active, normal
90	Minor restrictions in strenuous physical activity
80	Active, but gets tired more quickly
70	Greater restriction of play *and* less time spent in play activity
60	Up and around, but active play minimal; keeps busy by being involved in quieter activities
50	Lying around much of the day, but gets dressed; no active playing participates in all quiet play and activities
40	Mainly in bed; participates in quiet activities
30	Bedbound; needing assistance even for quiet play
20	Sleeping often; play entirely limited to very passive activities
10	Doesn't play; does not get out of bed
0	Unresponsive

The ECOG scale is also commonly used in centre and often a measurement of performance particularly in clinical trials and CART therapy.

4.4.1 ECOG Performance Status

Developed by the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group, Robert L. Comis, MD, Group Chair[a]

Grade	ECOG performance status
0	Fully active, able to carry on all pre-disease performance without restriction
1	Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry out work of a light or sedentary nature, e.g., light house work, office work
2	Ambulatory and capable of all selfcare but unable to carry out any work activities; up and about more than 50% of waking hours
3	Capable of only limited selfcare; confined to bed or chair more than 50% of waking hours
4	Completely disabled; cannot carry on any selfcare; totally confined to bed or chair
5	Dead

[a]Oken M, Creech R, Tormey D, et al. Toxicity and response criteria of the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group. *Am J Clin Oncol.* 1982;5:649-655

4.5 Fertility Preservation

With advancing treatments more and more women and children are cured of a cancer or haematological disease but may subsequently be deprived of their ovarian function or exposed to premature menopause due to the ovarian toxicity of treatments. Any patient undergoing therapy likely to impair fertility should be referred according to local referral pathway.

Fertility is a well-known and significant concern for patients receiving high-dose chemotherapy +/− radiotherapy. However, the risk to fertility depends on the treatment received and the age of the individual at transplant. Evidence suggests that some young patients under the age of 16 at transplant may recover some gonadal function in later life (Suhag et al. 2015); however, this is dependent upon conditioning therapy, although the majority of the patients treated will be rendered infertile as a consequence of treatment. In male patients, there is some evidence that following induction therapy spermatogenesis may recover after 5–10 years of treatment, but this is very much variable (Tal et al. 2000; Viviani et al. 1999). Azoospermia rates range from 10% to 70% in males following stem cell transplant; again, this is often dependent on conditioning agents employed (Anserini et al. 2002; Jacob et al. 1998).

Fertility options must be discussed prior to initiation of ANY chemotherapy regime, and consequently many patients should have already had a discussion regarding fertility preservation well before transplant discussions are undertaken particularly if they have had induction therapy for their diagnosis. However, it is also essential for this to be clarified and discussed in detail prior to transplant conditioning.

Although ovarian function is more affected by chemotherapy and certainly high-dose

regimes, female fertility preservation remains challenging. Egg harvests are not often viable for later fertilisation. IVF followed by embryo storage can be more effective but takes 2–3 weeks revolving around the menstrual cycle and is not always feasible, especially in newly diagnosed patients with aggressive disease. Post-transplant, donor eggs may be a possibility for some women who may have limited options and should be explored in a full discussion with a fertility specialist.

Male patients should be offered sperm storage before initiation of any treatment. Radiotherapy and alkylating agents amongst others have a severe impact on spermatozoa. Assuming that masturbation is possible, this is much simpler to organise than for female patients. It can usually be arranged and performed quickly in an andrology department. Once collected, the semen is analysed for sperm number, motility and quality. Quality of the sperm may be affected by several factors, including disease and current well-being of the patient.

4.6 Fertility Preservation in the Paediatric Population

The numbers of long-term survivors following haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) have been noticeably increasing in recent years. Preparative regimens are associated with a high risk of infertility. Infertility is considered a major late effect in patients receiving haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) (Borgmann-Staudt et al. 2012).

The infertility induced by cytostatic drugs is dependent on type and dosage of the drug used and also on the patients' age at the time of treatment.

More than two-thirds of former paediatric patients who had received allogeneic HSCT showed signs of impaired fertility. Significant risk factors were total body irradiation (TBI) for males and busulfan (Bu) for females (Borgmann-Staudt et al. 2012).

For radiation therapy, variables for infertility risk also include the:

- Age and developmental maturity of the patient.
- Dose and fractionation of therapy.
- Site of radiation therapy.

The oocyte median lethal dose for radiation therapy is less than 2 Gy and sperm production is susceptible to damage at doses of more than 1.2 Gy; testicular Leydig cell function seems to be present at radiation doses up to 20 Gy (Fallat et al. 2008).

The alkylating agents, such as cyclophosphamide and busulfan, which have frequently been used in the treatment of childhood cancer, are far more gonadotoxic than other chemotherapeutic agents (Schmidt et al. 2010).

Hypogonadism is common after HCT (Sklar et al. 2001; Smith et al. 2014). In both boys and girls, hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (primary gonadal failure) is more common than hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (due to hypothalamic pituitary dysfunction) (Baker et al. 2009).

Children with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism have an absence of sex hormone production, delayed puberty, delayed pubertal growth spurt and a decrease in final adult height (Bourguignon et al. 1988).

The type of presentation depends on the pubertal status at the time of HCT (Dvorak et al. 2011; Sanders et al. 2011). Puberty status is defined in two categories: 'Pre-puberty' for children aged up to 12 years and 'puberty' for children aged 13 years and older at the time of HSCT (Borgmann-Staudt et al. 2012).

The earliest manifestation of impaired sex hormone production is delayed puberty in prepubertal patients, but older patients may show asynchronous or incomplete pubertal development, primary or secondary amenorrhea and infertility due to azoospermia or premature menopause. Sex steroids are also required for the growth spurt during adolescence. Delayed or incomplete puberty occurs in about 57% of females and 53% of males (Dvorak et al. 2011; Sanders et al. 2011).

In prepubertal males, the only option here is testicular tissue freezing. Options for use are autologous transplantation, xenografting or

in vitro maturation. No children have been born from the use of prepubertal test tissue. In postpubertal males, the most common option here is freezing of ejaculated sperm, but storage of testicular tissue is also a possibility (Shenfield 2004).

4.6.1 Fertility Counselling

Studies emphasise the need for comprehensive counselling for patients undergoing HSCT, particularly those receiving TBI- or busulfan-based preparative regimens and their parents regarding fertility-preserving measures (Borgmann-Staudt et al. 2012).

Counselling patients of child-bearing age or their parents regarding future fertility when faced with a life-threatening cancer diagnosis is difficult but extremely important. Therefore, the health-care team has a responsibility to provide screening to identify these patients, provide education so that an informed decision can be made as rapidly as possible and have a team ready to preserve fertility once a decision has been made.

4.6.2 When?

Counselling at the primary diagnosis would be ideal.

In the current treatment era, optimal care for paediatric patients with cancer would include fertility preservation options at diagnosis prior to therapeutic exposures that can cause azoospermia. Sperm banking can be offered to even early pubertal patients, while development of methods to preserve spermatogonia from prepubertal patients represents an area of active research (Dilley 2007).

4.6.3 Issues

Fertility preservation is often possible, but to preserve the full range of options, fertility preservation approaches should be discussed as early as possible, before treatment starts. The discussion can ultimately reduce distress and improve quality of life. The discussions should be documented in the medical record (Loren et al. 2013).

In 2015, the *Nordic Network for Gonadal Preservation after Cancer Treatment in Children and Young Adults* revised its Recommendations on Fertility Preservation (RTP) for girls and young women with childhood cancer:

> 'All girls should be examined regarding pubertal development (Tanner stage and menstrual history) at diagnosis and should be informed of the risk for impaired fertility following the planned treatment'.

4.6.4 Who?

Regarding this, in 2013 the original language used by the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) has been revised: The word 'oncologist' was replaced with 'health-care provider' to include medical oncologists, radiation oncologists, gynaecologic oncologists, urologists, haematologists, paediatric oncologists and surgeons, as well as nurses, social workers, psychologists and other no physician providers.

Regarding the role of health-care providers in advising patients about fertility preservation options, ASCO recommends:

- All oncologic health care providers should be prepared to discuss infertility as a potential risk of therapy. This discussion should take place as soon as possible once a cancer diagnosis is made and before a treatment plan is formulated. (Loren et al. 2013 Recommendations for Fertility Preservation for Patients with Cancer).
- However, what remains unclear is how these discussions are initiated, whether these discussions occur with all patients and which members of the oncology team are responsible for communicating with patients about these risks and available options (Nobel Murray et al. 2015).

In 2008, the bioethics committee, 2006–2007, from the American Academy of Paediatrics (AAP) published in this technical report reviews the Guidance for Counselling of Parents and Patients about Preservation of Fertility Options in Children and Adolescents with Cancer.

'Evaluation of candidacy for fertility preservation should involve a team of specialists, including a paediatric oncologist and/or radiation oncologist, a fertility specialist, anaesthetist, and a mental health professional.

1. Cryopreservation of sperm should be offered whenever possible to male patients or families of male adolescents.
2. Current fertility-preservation options for female children and adolescents should be considered experimental and are offered only in selected institutions in the setting of a research protocol.
3. In considering actions to preserve a child's fertility, parents should consider a child's assent, the details of the procedure involved, and whether such procedures are of proven utility or experimental in nature.

In some cases, after such consideration, acting to preserve a child's fertility may be appropriate.

4. Despite it's not an options for children, instructions concerning disposition of stored gametes, embryos, or gonadal tissue in the event of the patient's death, unavailability, or other contingency should be legally outlined and understood by all parties, including the patient if possible.
5. Concerns about the welfare of a resultant offspring with respect to future cancer risk should not be a cause for denying reproductive assistance to a patient' (Fallat et al. 2008).

However, in 2015, the Nordic Network and Nordic Society of Paediatric Haematology and Oncology (NOPHO) revised the recommendation provided in 2012.

4.6.5 Recommendations on Fertility Preservation for Girls and Young Women with Childhood Cancer

4.6.5.1 After Treatment

All girls who have received alkylating agents or abdominal irradiation should after sexual maturation be offered referral to a gynaecologist or fertility specialist for evaluation, counselling and considering the possibility for ovarian hyper-stimulation and cryopreservation of oocytes.

4.6.5.2 Menstruating Girls

If the girl is menstruating, mature enough to give informed consent and is facing cancer therapy with very high risk of infertility, therapy can be delayed 1–2 weeks, and ovarian hyper-stimulation and cryopreservation of oocytes may be considered. The responsible oncologist must be consulted to make sure that no contraindications, such as bleeding disorders or too long delay of cancer therapy, to such procedures are present. The girl should get information adjusted to her age.

4.6.5.3 All Girls Regardless of Maturational Stage

All efforts should be done to minimise the radiation exposure to the ovary, such as optimal dose planning and irradiation modality, shielding and oophoropexy. Present knowledge indicates that a radiation dose lower than 10 Gy may preserve some ovarian function.

Girls, who are facing or receiving oncological treatments associated with a very high risk of infertility, could be offered the experimental procedure of ovarian cortical tissue cryopreservation.

In menstruating girls, cryopreservation of ovarian tissue can precede controlled ovarian hyper-stimulation (see above). The responsible oncologist must be consulted to make sure that no contraindications to such procedures are present.

4.6.6 Recommendations on Fertility Preservation for Boys and Young Men with Childhood Cancer

4.6.6.1 Pubertal and Post-pubertal Males

All males who are physically mature enough to produce sperm should be offered cryopreservation of sperm before oncological treatment with potentially gonadotoxic effect (i.e. all chemo-

therapy and radiotherapy with the gonads in the radiation field) is started.

All boys should be examined regarding pubertal development (Tanner stage and testicular volume). If the volume of testes is between 6 and 8 mL, there is a reasonable probability of sperm in an ejaculate.

The boy should be informed by a professional, specially assigned for this purpose, e.g. an andrologist, paediatric endocrinologist or fertility specialist, according to local availability and routines. It is important that the autonomy of the boy is respected and that he is offered the opportunity of individual consultation.

If the boy is unable to produce an ejaculate, alternative methods like vibrator stimulation or electro-stimulation during anaesthesia could be offered.

If the boy is unable to produce an ejaculate or has azoospermia, an invasive procedure to retrieve testicular sperm may be considered, provided that the boy is motivated himself. The responsible paediatric oncologist must first be consulted to make sure that no contraindications (such as risk of tumour spread (e.g. in ALL) or bleeding disorder) to such procedures are present.

The boy, as well as his parents, should get verbal and written information about the procedures and the legal implications. The information should be adjusted to the boy's age, and he must give his informed consent to the cryopreservation.

4.6.6.2 Prepubertal Boys

Boys, who are facing oncological treatments associated with a very high risk of infertility, could be offered the experimental procedure of testicular biopsy cryopreservation. At present, there are no methods to ensure fertility after such procedures; thus, further research is warranted. Since the patient number is limited, the cryopreservation and research should be centralised.

The parents and, if old enough, the boy should get verbal and written information about the research project and give informed consent to the cryopreservation and to participate in the research.

4.6.7 Techniques

The objective of ovarian tissues' cryopreservation is to maintain viability of tissue after long-term storage. It is the basis for all forms of fertility preservation for cancer sufferers. Cryopreservation requires cooling tissue from 37 °C to the temperature of liquid nitrogen (−196 °C), storing at this temperature and then rewarming to 37 °C at some later date.

Freezed ovarian cortex segments can be used for later thawing and transplanting either back to the ovarian site (orthotopically) or to some other location (heterotopically). The ovarian cortex is used because it is this part of the ovary that is particularly rich in primordial follicles. In order for cryoprotectants to penetrate the tissue, the cortical strips need to be no more than 2 mm thick. Tissue samples from cancer patients need to be evaluated by a pathologist to detect the presence of any metastatic cancer cells (Agarwal and Chang 2007).

Spermarche occurs over a wide age range and is associated with a highly variable testicular volume, including in individuals with testicular volumes of less than 5 mL, pubic hair stage I or both. As a result, intraoperative assessment of the biopsy sample at the time of tissue retrieval has been suggested to be useful for allocation of tissue to a specific freezing protocol (Anderson et al. 2015).

For pubertal patients in whom complete spermatogenesis has occurred, semen cryopreservation is a well-established option. Recommendations are that all men and teenage boys should be offered semen cryopreservation for prepubertal patients and pubertal patients who are not able to produce a semen sample; approaches for fertility preservation are experimental (Anderson et al. 2015).

Sperm cryopreservation after masturbation is the most established and effective method of fertility preservation in males. Sperm should be collected before initiation of cancer therapy because of the risk that sperm DNA integrity or sample quality will be compromised.

Nevertheless, recent progress in andrology laboratories and assisted reproductive techniques allows successful freezing and future use of a

very limited amount of sperm; collection of semen through masturbation in adolescents may be compromised by embarrassment and issues of informed consent. Alternative methods of obtaining sperm besides masturbation include testicular aspiration or extraction, electro-ejaculation under sedation or anaesthesia or from post-masturbation urine sample. Testicular aspirates do not freeze well and cannot be used as a method of preserving sperm (Fallat et al. 2008).

4.6.8 Fertility Preservation Options for Children and Young Adults with Distinction Between Established and Experimental Options

- In prepubertal boys, before onset of spermatogenesis, testicular biopsy and cryopreservation are options (experimental). In pubertal and post-pubertal male patients, the ability to produce a sperm-containing ejaculate enables sperm cryopreservation (established); if this is not possible, testicular biopsy with cryopreservation of sperm or tissue is needed.
- In prepubertal girls, ovarian stimulation is inappropriate, so ovarian tissue cryopreservation can be offered (experimental). After puberty, cryopreservation is an option, but ovarian stimulation enables recovery of mature oocytes for cryopreservation or of embryos after fertilisation (established) (Anderson et al. 2015).
- *Safety of tissue with regard to contamination with tumour/leukaemia cells*. Cancer contamination in the cryopreserved tissue is a contraindication for re-transplantation. Experimental studies are ongoing regarding the in vitro maturation of oocytes for fertilisation from such tissue. Further research is warranted. The parents and, if old enough, the girl should get verbal and written information about the experimental procedure, its associated risks and legal implications and give informed consent to the cryopreservation (NOPHO).
- In the interest of the child, the PDWP recommends that counselling about fertility preservation (FP) opportunities should be offered to each patient receiving SCT, as part of the pre-stem cell transplant (SCT) workup. The PDWP recommends that those advices should be offered by a dedicated and trained task force that may include medical staff from the stem cell transplant unit as well as fertility preservation specialists. The presence of dedicated nurse staff and psychologists in the counselling task force should be considered to create a broader communication opportunity for the patient, who may be more at ease with non-medical staff (Dalle et al. 2017).

4.6.8.1 Addressing Inequalities

- The costs of fertility preservation are often not covered by insurance. (Klipstein et al. 2020) Experimental fertility preservation options may be covered under a research protocol in some cases such that there may be no or minimal costs to the patient. The therapies themselves can be expensive. Once they are no longer considered experimental, the cost will be borne by the families of children using them in the future to the extent that insurance does not provide coverage. (Klipstein et al. 2020).
- Access to treatment options for Fertility Preservation (FP), as well as their financing, differs significantly throughout Europe (Dalle et al. 2017).
- The EBMT PDWP has established recommendations for the diagnosis and pre-emptive procedures that should be offered to all children and adolescents in Europe who have to undergo life-saving allogeneic SCT and to provide enough scientific evidence for financing these procedures by the health-care systems in Europe (Dalle et al. 2017).
- Considering the complexity and multidisciplinary nature of FP techniques, the PDWP recommends that the FP task force at each centre should be responsible for: Identifying economic support/constraints that may limit the availability of different techniques in different centres and that should be clarified with the families (Dalle et al. 2017).

4.6.9 Sexuality in Adolescents and Young Adults

Children at risk for impaired growth as a result of cancer therapy should be examined regularly, with their growth plotted on the appropriate growth chart.

Monitoring should be more frequent from the time of expected onset of puberty through the fusion of growth plates at full sexual maturation (Nobel Murray et al. 2015).

Although we know that, after the transplant, some adults process experience psychological and social issues, there is an absence of information in the literature about the 'adolescents and young adult' (AYA) HCT population (Cooke et al. 2011).

The AYA cancer population is a vulnerable group due to a variety of social, psychological and developmental reasons. AYA patients also can have disturbed endocrine function, body image disruptions and sexual problems (Cooke et al. 2011).

Who should be in charge of talking with children? It is impossible to consider parent–child interactions on the topic of fertility without framing the issue within the larger, complicated topic of parent–child discussions about sex, given that the two are inextricably linked. Discomfort in the general area of discussing sexuality will impact the parental willingness and perception of competence in discussing fertility, especially at a moment of high stress (Clayman et al. 2007). The growing literature on parent–child discussions of sex reflects the tendency of mothers to discuss this topic more frequently with their children, particularly daughters; even when both parents are involved, they are more likely to talk about sex with daughters rather than sons (Clayman et al. 2007).

In 2006, Sloper's study concludes that there was an emphasis on the need for professionals to raise the subject sooner, more frequently, in a low-key way and without ambiguity. Respondents wished professionals would treat them as partners, therefore prioritising their input over their parents.

4.6.10 Conclusion

Dealing with fertility preservation upon diagnosis of cancer is challenging even for a young adult patient. This issue is even more complex for paediatric patients where decision-making generally falls to the parents but where high cancer survival rates increase the possibility of survivors needing to confront infertility later in life. Parents and adolescent patients report that achieving a healthy state is most important and that while they are interested in fertility preservation options, they may not be willing to delay treatment for pursuit of those options. Optimal care of paediatric cancer patients undergoing gonadotoxic therapy should include enrolment in available trials that will continue to refine knowledge of the effects of therapy on fertility for both male and female patients. Patients and families need information at diagnosis regarding the potential impact of therapy on fertility as well as referral to appropriate specialists for fertility preservation when desired. Studies and resources that allow fertility-sparing interventions such as ovarian cryopreservation should be expanded; adequate education and support for oncology staff who screen for patients at risk will be key. For patients that did not undergo fertility-sparing procedures prior to treatment, careful monitoring of reproductive function is warranted, and current technologies will still allow many of those patients to parent their own biological children (Dilley 2007).

4.7 Transplant Workup

HSCT is often considered as part of a therapeutic pathway, dependent on disease response and initial presentation. It is often proposed as a consolidation treatment to avoid a relapse of the patient's disease. Prior to discussions regarding transplantation, it must be considered that the recipient can withstand the procedure without excessive risk and that there is no contraindication and the disease status is suitable to undergo the procedure. Transplanting patients with relapsed or relapsing disease is unlikely to provide sufficient benefit

for the patient given the risks of the procedure and is often considered as futile. Pre-transplant assessments (disease status, bloods with virology status, radiology, cardiac, pulmonary and renal examinations) must be undertaken, and the results of these along with suitable donor medical clearance and cell availability are essential to ascertain that transplant is a valid option.

The results of this pre-transplant assessment will help to inform and adapt the transplant modality: conditioning regimen, type of graft, stem cell source and post-transplant strategy (immunomodulation, DLI). It also allows doctors to detect any abnormalities that could lead to post-transplant complications. This complete review serves as a reference and facilitates comparison of results of the examinations carried out before and after the transplant. In some cases the pre-transplant workup/assessment may mean that the risk of transplant is considered too great and therefore is no longer a suitable option due to higher-than-acceptable rates of morbidity and mortality and should be discussed with the patient. The previously mentioned morbidity indexes are useful in helping to determine this.

During transplant workup, the patient should be offered to meet other members of the multidisciplinary team such as social worker, dietician, physiotherapist and psychologist where possible.

Transplant workup may vary from centre to centre and will be dependent on clinical indication. The list below is not exclusive but gives indication of workup required prior to transplant admission. The transplant coordinator would usually organise and collate this information and results.

- Full blood count.
- U & E and liver function profile.
- Virology transplant assessment including HIV; Hep B, C, and E; CMV; and EBV status.
- Group and save sample.
- HLA antibody screen.
- Coagulation.
- Tissue typing and verification typing of patient and donor for allogeneic transplants.
- Patients who have been heavily transfused prior to transplant should have serum ferritin levels taken to identify iron overload, >1000 ng/mL.
- Cardiac function is assessed by echocardiography (ECHO) or MUGA scan (ECHO is favourable). Healthy individuals typically have left ventricle ejection fractions (LVEF) between 50% and 65%.
- Calculated creatinine clearance or eGFR to estimate renal function.
- Pulmonary function tests.
- Bone marrow aspirate and trephine +/− cytogenetics, dependent on disease and cytogenetics at diagnosis.
- Lumbar puncture +/− IT chemotherapy if acute lymphoblastic leukaemia or CNS disease/other clinical indication.
- CT/PET scan for lymphoma patients and other clinically indicated patient group.
- Double lumen central venous catheter.
- ECG—a 12-lead electrocardiograph.

Sufficient cell collections are required with a minimum PBSC (HPC-A) of 2×10^6/kg $CD34^+$ or BM (HPC-M) of 2.0×10^8/kg MNC cells for infusion unless instructed otherwise by the transplant consultant for autologous transplantation and PBSC (HPC-A) of 4×10^6/kg $CD34^+$ or BM (HPC-M) of 4.0×10^8/kg for donor harvested cell infusion. Donor cell collection results are not normally known prior to admission as the donor cells are not often cryopreserved and are coordinated a day prior to infusion (local policy may differ slightly), but clearance and agreement of the donor must be confirmed prior to patient admission.

4.8 Venous Access Devices: Principles of Placement and Care

Since the introduction of vascular access devices (VAD) in the seventeenth century and the first intravenous (IV) infusion procedures during the cholera epidemic in 1832 (Rivera et al. 2005), IV therapy is slowly developing towards a part of the

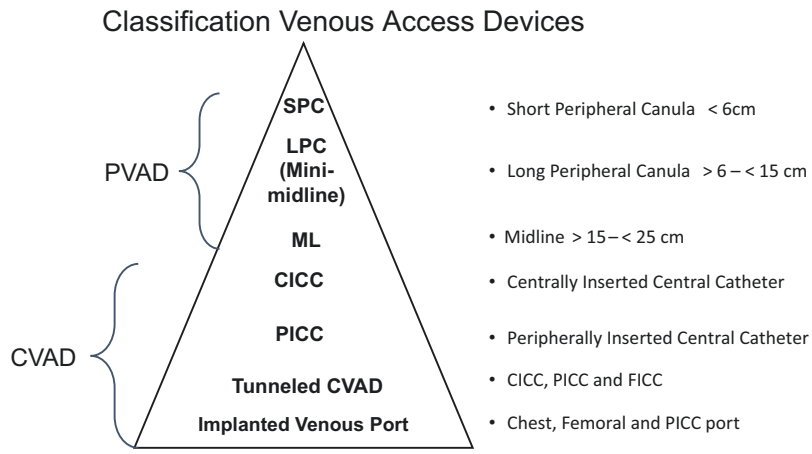


Fig. 4.1 Classification venous acces devices: central and peripheral

treatment that all haematology patients will experience. In most countries infusion therapy is underestimated with a high incidence of complications. Although the positive effect of an infusion team is well proven (Brunelle 2003; Rutledge and Orr 2005), IV therapy still is a major burden for most patients. Health-care workers still miss the state-of-the-art knowledge and skills to make the right choice for the right patients and to use the VAD as it should. For venous access, we now have several VAD options to choose from. The most recent overview of VAD shows all options available now ((Fig. 4.1). (take from slide).

In many centres the first option for vascular access is inserting a peripheral intravenous cannula (PIVC) for the initial IV therapy. If inserted by experienced health professionals in the right vein for the right indication, a PIVC is often the first VAD the patient is offered. Unfortunately PIVC's are still used for irritating infuses for as long as veins are accessible. Even small veins at the back of the hands, wrists and the ante cubital veins are used even if this is restricting the patient in mobility of hands and arms and often causing chemical phlebitis. Once peripheral veins are no longer accessible with conventional techniques and several hospital 'experts' accessed the last veins, an alternative is found in a tunnelled subclavian or jugular central venous access device (CVAD), mainly the so-called Broviac and Hickman catheters, named after the inventors of these VADs. A venous access port (VAP) is hardly seen in haematology treatment. The more invasive procedure for subcutaneous implantation of these VADs and the high risk during explanting of this type of VAD make the VAP in haematology not a real option.

During the EBMT congresses, the attention for vascular access is mainly limited to care and maintenance of CVADs in the annual nurses' group congress program. It is suggested that vascular access gets more attention in the EBMT program both for doctors and nurses and a multidisciplinary approach should be chosen. Vascular access should not be limited to care and maintenance after insertion of the VAD but should be focused on well-being and patient safety. An algorithm for choosing the right VAD for the right patient should start with the diagnosis and treatment plan. The best VAD should be chosen based on the pH and osmolarity of the drugs used during the whole treatment period and the vein condition and should include the option for (partial) home infusion treatment. In 2008 a model was introduced for non-acute patients VAD choice in the UMC Utrecht, the Netherlands (Giesen et al. 2008) (Fig. 4.2).

Extensive expertise, best materials, equipment and skills are needed to offer state-of-the-art insertion of the preferred VAD. The *Infusion Therapy Standards of Practice* suggests establishing or maintaining an infusion team for peripheral and central venous access device (CVAD) insertion, management and removal (Gorski et al. 2016). This chapter mainly focuses on insertion and care for VADs used in haematol-

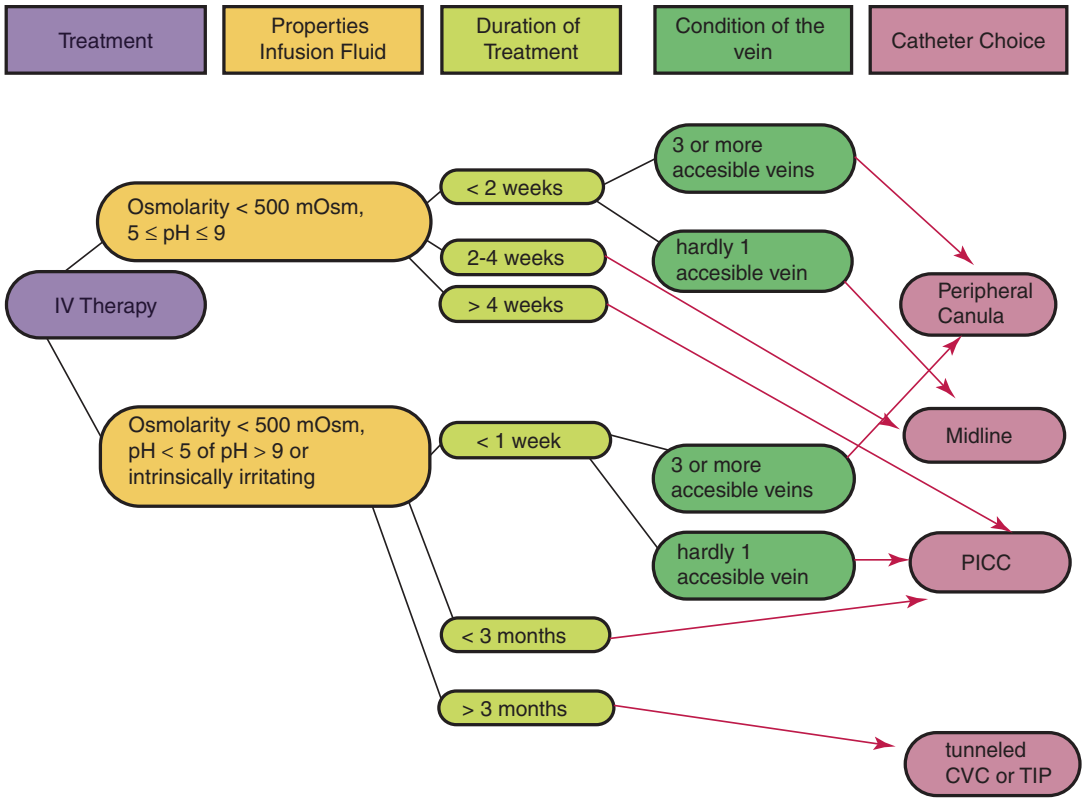


Fig. 4.2 Algorithm intravenous access for non-acute treatment in adults, University Medical Center Utrecht, 2008

ogy patients. Based on haematology patient characteristics, only the tunnelled CVAD such as centrally inserted central catheters (CICCs) and peripherally inserted central catheters (PICCs) will be addressed.

4.8.1 Vascular Access Devices

Access to the venous system is required for all haematology patients. Access can be limited to drawing blood for research and diagnostic purposes and/or for administration of fluids, drugs and blood components. For drawing blood by venipuncture, a steel needle is used that will be removed immediately after the blood samples are collected using a vacuum collecting system.

For IV therapy, there are two options that can be used. Option one is a PIVC (Fig. 4.1a): a short flexible catheter that ends in a peripheral vein with limited blood flow. As seen in Fig. 4.1, a PIVC should only be used for non-vesicant drugs with an osmolarity <600 mOsm/L for a short period of time. An alternative PIVC might be a midline catheter. This VAD is inserted in the upper arm and the tip lies in the cephalic, brachial or basilic vein.

Option two is a CVAD with the tip of the catheter ending in a central vein with high blood flow. The definition for all CVADs is that the distal tip ends in a large vein close to the heart, the superior vena cava (SVC) or inferior vena cava (IVC) for femoral catheters. In adults, both SVC and IVC have a blood flow up to 2–2.5 litre per minute and dilution of drugs happens so fast that the endothelium is not damaged.

Within the range of CVAD, a PICC (Fig. 4.1g) is seen more frequently in haematology patients, often as an alternative for a tunnelled CICC such as a Hickman catheter.

The insertion of a PICC is safe and non-invasive and can be performed even with low

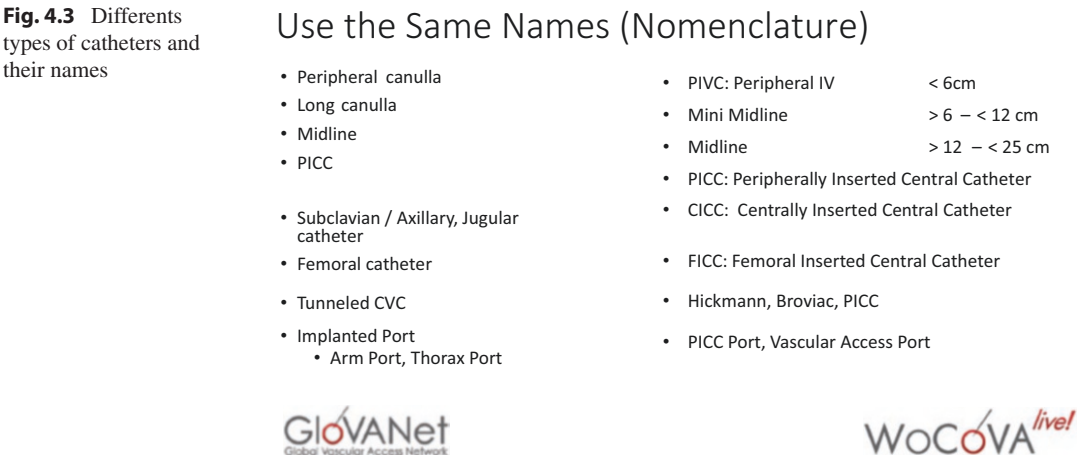


Fig. 4.3 Differents types of catheters and their names

Table 4.1 CRBSI in PICCs

	No. of catheters	Catheter days	No. of BSI	CRBSI per 100 devices	CRBSI per 1000 cath. Days
UMC inpatient	418	13.258	11	2.63	0.82
UMC outpatient	92	4397	1	1.09	0.23
UMC in- and outpatient	510	17.655	12	2.35	0.68
Maki inpatient	625	7137	35	2.4	2.1
Maki outpatient	2813	98.702	15	3.5	1.0
Maki in- and outpatient	3566		112	3.1	1.1

platelet counts. The PICC is first described in 1975 by Hoshal (1975) and has evolved to a VAD that can be the first option if central venous access in haematology patients is needed. A PICC can be used as an alternative to subclavian, internal jugular or femoral venous catheters. CICCs such as subclavian or internal jugular catheters may cause a pneumothorax, and femoral catheters are relatively more prone to infections. PICCs do not have these disadvantages.

A recent published algorithm in the MAGIC paper is based on latest evidence and supported by VA experts from many countries. This and other parts from this publication might also be helpful to use in your practice (Fig. 4.3). (take from the slide).

Early studies show that a PICC is a safe and reliable option for central venous access (Maki et al. 2006; van Boxtel et al. 2008) (Table 4.1).

More recent results even come close to zero infections for PICCs if a bundle of preventive measures are taken (Harnage 2013). This bundle includes:

- Site selection.
- Skin disinfection with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% gluconate.
- Hand hygiene.
- Maximum barrier precautions.
- Daily control on indication.
- Daily control on complications.

Many clinicians still have the old-fashioned ideas that a PICC has a high incidence of infections and thrombosis, often based on their own experience with drum catheters and the Intra Cath. Since the introduction of ultrasound-guided PICC insertion around 2004 and the introduction of ECG tip confirmation techniques, only well-designed studies, later than 2005, should be analysed and used for local policies on VAD selection and insertion.

Table 4.2 Blood flow reduction based on vein diameter versus catheter size

Vein	Initial flow	2 Fr		4 Fr		6 Fr		8 Fr	
Cephalic (4 mm)	10	5	48%	3	28%	1.5	14%	0.5	0.5%
Brachial (5 mm)	25	13	53%	9	36%	6	22%	9	12%
Basilic (6 mm)	52	29	56%	21	41%	15	28%	9	18%
Axillary (8 mm)	164	100	61%	79	48%	62	38%	47	28%
Subclavian (10 mm)	400	256	64%	212	53%	175	44%	143	36%

The correct position of a CVAD tip is at the lower third of the SVC (Gorski et al. 2016), cavo-atrial junction (CAJ) or right atrium (RA), lower third SVC or RA, cavo-atrial region or RA and SVC adjacent to the RA. A CVAD (PICC and CICC) can be used over a prolonged period of time, e.g. for multiple, extensive or long-term chemotherapy regiments, extended antibiotic therapy or prolonged total parenteral nutrition (TPN). The position of the catheter tip is very important in preventing thromboses. The distal tip of the CVAD should be placed at the junction between the superior vena cava and the right atrium to have the lowest incidence of thrombosis (Debourdeau et al. 2009). In a study from Cadman, CVADs with the tip in a distal position (lower third of the SVC or right atrium) had a 2.6% thrombosis. CVADs with tips in a proximal position were 16 times more likely to thrombose than those with the tip in a distal position. None of the 58 CVADs with the tip located in the right atrium thrombosed or caused complications (Cadman et al. 2004).

Another important criterion to prevent thrombosis is the vein–catheter ratio when choosing the catheter size. Based on the Nifong study, the catheter–vein ratio should be at least 1 to 3. For example, for a 4 French catheter, the diameter of the vein should have a minimal diameter of 4 mm. For a 5 French catheter, the diameter should be at least 5 mm, etc. (Nifong and McDevitt 2011) (Table 4.2).

Unfortunately many studies used for preparing guidelines and/or local policies for VAD selection are based on poorly designed retrospective studies. At the 2016 World Congress Vascular Access (WoCoVA), Pittiruti presented a thorough analysis of all published papers on catheter-related thrombosis (CRT). Relevant criteria, such as vein–catheter ratio and tip position, are often not taken as outcome criteria. In the review by Pilker et al., the authors included at least five studies dealing with PICCs inserted without US in their analysis for PICC-related thrombosis.

One of the studies used the same size of PICCs regardless of the vein's diameter. Only three of the studies had declared diagnostic criteria used for thrombosis. No study was prospective and/or randomised (Pikwer et al. 2012). The 'meta-analysis' from Chopra included any type of clinical papers (retrospective, non-randomised, etc.) and even abstracts and papers published on non-peer-reviewed journals. At least 14 of the 64 studies reported are old-fashioned with PICCs inserted without micro-introducer and without ultrasound, at the ante cubital fossa (Chopra et al. 2013). Fallouh and colleagues in their paper have not conducted any systematic assessment of the studies; they just discuss some studies from the literature (Fallouh et al. 2015). The review by Zochios is carried out without any systematic methodology. It describes a few studies about PICC-related thrombosis. Moreover, most of the studies quoted in his review are affected by bias related to the insertion technique, to the type of device used (inappropriate calibre) and to the retrospective design.

In those recent studies on haematology patients with a PICC, the CRT rate varies between 0 and 5.8%. If studies are well analysed, it is still evident that the expected rate of CRT with PICCs is not really different from the expected rate of CRT with CICCs. If an insertion bundle like the GAVeCeLT (Gruppo Aperto di Studio 'Gli Accessi Venosi Centrali) bundle for CRT prevention is implemented, the best options to prevent CRT are given:

1. Proper choice of the vein.
2. Minimal trauma during venipuncture.
3. Appropriate tip location.
4. Proper securement.

Before starting the actual insertion procedure, the selected vein should be well examined, and the diameter of the vein should be documented.

As for all VAD insertion techniques, materials and procedures and care and maintenance are very important. To offer high-quality IV treatment and improve patient safety and satisfaction, insertion and the use of VADs should be limited to well-trained and certified health-care providers. Vascular access should be a specialty based on clear criteria-certified training programs and state-of-the-art materials and procedures (Moureau et al. 2013).

Although the insertion protocol might be slightly different in each country, a state-of-the-art protocol should be available and executed only by VA experts.

4.8.2 Care and Maintenance

If a CVAD is placed in the correct vein and the tip of the catheter is right position, the VAD should function properly with the lowest rate of complications possible. The care professional using the catheter should be sure that the catheter is fully functional before any drugs are administered. One has to be sure about functionality in order to take responsibility for any infusion. A back flash of blood is a good parameter, but not always possible with a poor tip position or minor thrombus at the catheter tip, allowing infusion but no aspiration of blood. If this problem is occurring since the CVAD insertion, it is most likely that the catheter is too short. If occurring after some time and normal functioning in the beginning, it might be a 'little' thrombus at the catheter tip. An x-ray of the chest might be part of the assessment. A urokinase or alteplase instillation in the catheter will help to restore patency if a thrombus at the tip is preventing aspiration of blood. The weekly care of the catheter and insertion site is different for a well-healed tunnelled CVAD with a subcutaneous cuff. This Hickman-type CVAD does not need a dressing covering the insertion site (Gorski et al. 2016). A PICC and other non-tunnelled CVADs need weekly dressing change. If sterile gauze is used in case of skin irritation or allergy, dressing change is every 2 days.

4.8.3 Flushing and Locking

Optimal functioning of a CVAD should be possible by using a strict flushing and locking protocol. In most protocols for preventing occlusion in CVADs, a heparin solution is still used. In a recent study in Leuven, Belgium, a randomised trial concluded that normal saline is a safe and effective locking solution in implantable ports if combined with a strict protocol for device insertion and maintenance (Goossens et al. 2013). This conclusion supports the hypothesis that a catheter lumen will not occlude if materials such as a neutral or positive displacement needle-free connectors are used and the technique of flushing and locking does not allow blood or any drug to stick to the catheter wall. Preventing any adhesion to the catheter wall also reduces the biofilm and bacteremia.

4.8.4 Securement

Use of tape or sutures is not effective for securement or VAD stabilisation. Suturing should be avoided to prevent needle stick injuries and infections. There are different types of securement devices. Frequently used is an adhesive attaching the catheter to the skin covered with a semipermeable folio. These securement devices should be changed together with the weekly dressing change. If dressing change is not well performed, there is a major risk of pistoning of the catheter increasing the risk of insertion site infections. A recently introduced subcutaneous securement device, an anchoring device, holds the catheter in place and stays in situ during dwell time of the catheter. This device is easy to remove after removal of the catheter by folding the base or with a firm pull of each part after cutting the base in two. The nitinol anchor pieces will stretch and not damage the skin or cause any pain. As for all insertion and care protocols, training is required for inserting and removal.

4.8.5 Occlusion

The care professional using the catheter should be sure that the catheter is fully functional before any

drugs are administered. One has to be sure about functionality in order to take responsibility for any infusion. A back flash of blood is a good parameter, but not always possible with a poor tip position or minor thrombus at the catheter tip, allowing infusion but no aspiration of blood. If this problem is occurring since the CVAD insertion, it is most likely that the catheter is too short and aspiration is blocked when the opening of the CVAD is sucked against the vein wall. An x-ray should be made to confirm the diagnoses. If partial occlusion (easy infusion, but no blood return) occurs right after taking blood samples from the catheter lumen, it is most likely that the lumen is blocked by hemolysis of blood in the catheter or it might be a 'little' thrombus at the catheter tip. An x-ray of the chest might be part of the assessment. A urokinase or alteplase instillation in the catheter will help to restore patency if a thrombus at the tip is preventing aspiration of blood. CVADs should be regularly assessed for patency and proper function as defined by the ability to flush the catheter without resistance and the ability to yield a blood return. If the VAD is occluded, restoration should be done after assessment of the origin of dysfunction. If blood return is not possible from right after insertion, it might be that the catheter is too short.

The use of a thrombolytic agent such as urokinase can be used to restore patency. A 10,000ie vial should be diluted in 2 mL saline solution. The estimated volume of the catheter lumen should be instilled and left for 30–60 min before aspirating the solution. Slow infusion of 10,000ie urokinase can also be performed. Using this protocol is only on doctor's order and dependent on the coagulation status of the patient.

For restoration of a totally blocked catheter lumen, a vacuum protocol can be used to restore patency. A three-way stopcock is placed directly at the blocked lumen. An empty 20 mL syringe is connected to one side. A 2 mL syringe with 10,000ie urokinase is connected to the other side. With the stopcock opened between the 2 mL syringe and the lumen, a firm vacuum is created. While vacuuming, the stopcock is switched to the urokinase catheter. Repeat this a second time. Leave this situation for 30–60 min and check patency. If not successful, this procedure may be repeated once. In most cases the patency will be restored when done properly. If not, it might still have an effect after a few hours. This procedure should only be performed after training and doctor's order. It prevents removal of the CVAD and is a safe, cost-effective and patient-friendly method. If the origin of the occlusion is an acidic drug precipitate (low pH, less than 6), use a 0.1 N hydrochloric acid solution for declotting. For alkaline drug precipitate (pH greater than 7), sodium bicarbonate 8.4% or sodium hydroxide 0.1 mmol/L should be used. If the occlusion is from a lipid residue, 70% ethanol in a sufficient volume should been used to fill the catheter lumen; for paediatric patients, a dose of 0.55 mL/kg has been used with no more than 3 mL maximum. Use ethanol with caution with polyurethane CVADs as ethanol may damage the catheter material; refer to vascular access device (VAD) manufacturer's directions for use regarding exposure to any form of alcohol (Gorski et al. 2016).

4.8.6 CVAD Removal

If the indication for the VAD is no longer there or if the VAD is source of unsolvable complications, removal is indicated. Depending on the type of CVAD, removal can be done in the operating suite, bedside or at the patients home.

A venous access port (VAP) removal can only be performed as a sterile surgical procedure, mainly done in the operating suite. Also being an invasive procedure is the removal of a tunnelled, cuffed CVAD. A PICC however, even if the PICC is tunnelled, can be removed at the bedside or outside the hospital. After removing the dressing and the adhesive securement device, the PICC can easily be removed by gently pulling the catheter. After removal and checking on complete removal, there will not be much blood spilling, but compression of the insertion site is needed to prevent air embolism. The insertion site is covered with a dressing of sterile gauze or folio. If there is too much resistance at removal, it might help to apply warmth and try again after 10 min. If still not possible to remove the catheter, a specialised colleague should be consulted. If sepsis is suspected, the 'sterile' tip of the CVAD should be collected and sent for culturing.

If a PICC is removed at the end of indication without problems, the same site might be used for future access through the same vein. Thorough assessment, including scanning the route of the catheter, should be performed prior to insertion of the CVAD.

4.8.7 Pre-transplant Disease Assessment

Diagnosis and prognosis are based on the morphological examination of the blood and bone marrow blasts, the immunophenotype and the cytogenetic and molecular study.

Remission can be defined as the disappearance of clinical signs (anaemia, infections, bleeding, gingival hypertrophy, hepatomegaly, cutaneous leukaemia, etc.), but correction of cytopenias and disappearance of medullary blasts with a normal/normalising maturation of the bone marrow function should be observed. Moreover, recent and sophisticated methods (flow cytometry, molecular biology) can make it possible to follow the 'minimal residual disease' (MRD).

Diagnosis and remission can be determined by one or more of the following:

- Haematological status: review of the blood and bone marrow would indicate percentage of normal/abnormal cell population.
- Cytogenetics: karyotype becomes normal – cytogenetic abnormalities disappear (sensitivity: 1/100).
- Molecular: molecular biology (minimal residual disease) – undetectable transcript (sensitivity: 1/10000 to 1/100000).
- Imaging: CT/PET scan, MRI scan.
- Blood and urine tests (myeloma).

4.9 The Advocacy Role of HSCT Nurses

Patient preparation for HSCT involves the use of chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy to eradicate the underlying disease of the patient. This initial step leads to immunosuppression in order to trigger aplasia of the bone marrow and thus prevent graft rejection (Ortega et al. 2004).

Throughout the procedure, the patient needs special care to overcome the complications associated with treatment. Nurses must be aware of the possible complications in order to play a role in preventing or early detection of alarming signs, such as sepsis, fluid overload and organ dysfunction, taking appropriate measures to minimise adverse effects and restoring the clinical balance of the patient. This care is very complex and requires a high level of skill to be able to provide those (Ortega et al. 2009).

Specific technical care activities require nursing knowledge and specific skills in the field of haematopoietic stem cell transplantation such as instrument manipulation, knowledge of technologies and use of special protocols to effectively intervene in complex situations that deal with acute complications (Dallaire 1999; Dallaire and Dallaire 2008).

Nurses as 'health care providers' (Loren et al. 2013) should be part of the interdisciplinary team. The treatment team should be knowledgeable about fertility preservation so that they can educate patients and families about available fertility preservation options. It is important to consider and discuss all available fertility options with patients at the time of diagnosis (Fernbach et al. 2014).

Health-care providers should be prepared to discuss the negative impact of cancer therapy on reproductive health with their patients in the same way as any other risks of cancer treatment are discussed (Rodriguez-Wallberg and Oktay 2014).

Nurses provide a key role in patient education, providing pre- and post-transplant advocacy and counselling, planning hospitalisations and consultations and responding to patients' telephone calls. They also act as educators and role models to nursing students where appropriate and share knowledge and skills in accordance with local policies and JACIE guidelines. The presence of dedicated nurse staff and psychologists in the counselling task force is a mandatory.

Educating or teaching helps establish a relationship in order to encourage the individual to make free and informed choices. The nature of

the disease and the transplant itself require patients to learn about it in order to cope with the consequences of treatment and to be involved in decision-making processes. Counselling and providing education is mandatory at each stage of the pathway.

Nurses should be able to work within a team, communicating with both the nursing colleagues and doctors, ensuring excellent medical care of the patient giving useful and clear information to the whole team. They help to identify early symptoms and are aware of the treatments to administer and the side effects to monitor and to accurately inform the medical teams of any changes or concerns.

Whatever the department or place of practice, the nurse's missions and activities are diverse and varied. Our primary task is the realisation of care intended to maintain or restore the health of the person.

4.10 Ethical Dilemmas

Ethics involves the meaning of words such as right, wrong, good, bad, ought and duty on a basis where people either individually or collectively decide that actions are right or wrong and whether one ought to do something or has a right to do something (Rumbold 1993).

In 1994, Tschudin states ethical dilemmas have become a major part of nursing with the ever more holistic and patient-centred care. Nurses are often drawn into case discussions, and their views are considered and valued. Medical ethics must allow access to care for all, without discrimination of any kind. Medical confidentiality or patient freedom is part of the rules of medical ethics.

Constant advances in haematology have raised challenging ethical dilemmas concerning end of life, palliative care, patient information, donor concerns and impartiality and issues related to the risk we run to our patients.

In 2009, according to Langlois, ethical dilemmas often experienced by oncology and HCST nurses include:

- Therapeutic relentlessness—continuation of treatment, when the outcome is futile.
- End-of-life intervention leading to death and euthanasia or cessation and withdrawal of treatment.
- Transplantation in complex situation: refractory disease and older people.

To cope with the therapeutic pathway of the patient, nurses must understand these complex situations. Regular staff meetings with a psychologist, palliative care unit and ethical committees and internal discussion in transplant ward will allow nurses to better understand this complex area by giving their nursing perspective to the team.

Ethical competencies in the transplant team allow us to solve new and unforeseen moral problems by knowing how to innovate in order to find the most legitimate and fairest behaviour possible in the face of a specific contextual situation.

The haematological pathway is often complex and uncertain. Treatments such as allogeneic HSCT can be associated with rapid changes in the care from curative to palliative (Howell 2010).

The resolution of an ethical dilemma for the nurse is related to the level of professional competence and understanding of the ethical concern allowing a better understanding of the context and of the complexity of the clinical situation. Ensuring that fully informed consent is provided by the patient is ethical dilemma which often occurs in medicine. Brykczynska (2000) identifies that the problem most often facing the haematology nurse regarding informed consent is not a lack of understanding as to what constitutes 'informed consent', or even how informed a patient needs to be for 'informed consent' to exist, but the vexed issue of conflict of interests.

Cancer invokes strong feelings and passions, and it is not infrequent to find a conflict of interest between members of the family, members of the health-care team and even members of the public as to whether to proceed with treatment or not. Emmanuel Kant's theory cited in Kemp Smith (Kant 1973) states that to act morally always treat other human beings as 'ends in

themselves' and never merely as 'means'; by this Kant means that it is unethical to treat people as if they are objects. According to Kant it is fundamentally immoral to exploit a person without considering them an end in their own right. In transplantation where the side effects initially are extremely difficult and debilitating to the patient, it is sometimes difficult to justify such moral behaviour especially when nurses are striving not to inflict harm and to promote good.

What is often lacking, especially in nursing, is the courage and confidence to go through with a moral decision, which is basically an issue of personal moral development and personal integrity (Brykczynska 1997). It is the personal integrity of a particular nurse that will effect a change for the better or worse for an individual patient (Corner 1997).

4.11 Ethical Issues in Minors

Parents may act to preserve fertility of cancer patients who are minors if the child assents, and the intervention is likely to provide potential benefits to the child. Parents may act to preserve reproductive options of minor children undergoing gonadotoxic treatment as long as the minor assents, the intervention does not pose undue risk and the intervention offers a reasonable chance of net benefit to the child (Ethics Committee, ASRM).

When the child is immature, the decision to cryopreserve (or not) may be taken by the parents, unless it poses grave prejudice to the well-being/welfare of the child. The importance of preserving the possibility of having genetically related offspring in the future is generally recognised, and the parents will have to decide whether this benefit outweighs the current risk of intervention for their child.

Interdisciplinary consulting is mandatory; all specialties present in the caring team (oncologists, paediatricians, reproductive specialists, psychologists/counsellors) should be heard during decision-making about the best procedure. Experimental interventions in children can only be ethical if they can be considered to be therapeutic and in the best interests of the child. These considerations apply especially to development of techniques for prepubertal and peri-pubertal boys; although testicular tissue can be cryopreserved, how it should be used is not known at present (Anderson et al. 2015).

References

Agarwal SK, Chang RJ. Fertility management for women with cancer. Cancer Treat Res. 2007;138:15–27. Review

Anderson RA, Mitchell RT, Kelsey TW, Spears N, Telfer EE, Wallace HB. Cancer treatment and gonadal function: experimental and established strategies for fertility preservation in children and young adults. Lancet Diab Endocrinol. 2015;3(7):p556–67.

Anserini P, Chiodi S, Spinelli S, Costa M, Conte N, Copello F, et al. Semen analysis following allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. Additional data for evidence-based counselling. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2002;30:447–51.

Baker KS, Steffen L, Zhou X, Kelly A, Lee JM, Petryk A, Sinaiko AR, Dengel DR, Mulrooney DA, Steinberger J. Total body irradiation (TBI) increases cardio- metabolic risk and induces carotid vascular stiffness in survivors after hematopoietic cell transplant (HCT) for childhood hematologic malignancies. Blood. 2009;114(22):1291.

Borgmann-Staudt A, Rendtorff R, Reinmuth S, Hohmann C, Keil T, Schuster FR, et al. Fertility after allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in childhood andadolescence. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012;47(2):271–6.

Bourguignon LYW, Jy W, Majercik MH, Bourguignon GJ. Lymphocyte activation and capping of hormone receptors. J Cell Biochem. 1988;37:131–50. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcb.240370202.

Brunelle D. Impact of a dedicated infusion therapy team on the reduction of catheter-related nosocomial infections. J Infus Nurs. 2003;26(6):362–6.

Brykczyńska GM, Jolley M. Caring: the compassion and wisdom of nursing. 1997.

Brykczynska G. In: Grundy M, editor. Nursing in haematological oncology. London: Balliere Tindall; 2000.

Cadman A, Lawrance JA, Fitzsimmons L, Spencer-Shaw A, Swindell R. To clot or not to clot? That is the question in central venous catheters. Clin Radiol. 2004;59(4):349–55.

Chopra V, Anand S, Hickner A, Buist M, Rogers MA, Saint S, Flanders SA. Risk of venous thromboembolism associated with peripherally inserted central catheters: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. 2013;382:311–25.

Clayman ML, Galvin KM, Arntson P. Shared decision making: fertility and pediatric cancers. Cancer Treat Res. 2007;138:149–60.

Cooke L, Chung C, Grant M. Psychosocial care for adolescent and young adult hematopoietic cell transplant patients. J Psychosoc Oncol. 2011;29(4):394–414.

Corner J 1997 The passion of family-focused palliative care using the delphi technique.

Dallaire C Dallaire C. Les grandes fonctions de la pratique infirmière. In: Soins infirmiers et société. Québec: Gaëtan Morin Éditeur; 1999.

Dallaire C, Dallaire M. Le savoir infirmier dans les fonctions infirmières. In: Le savoir infirmier : au cœur de la discipline et de la profession; Chenelière-éducation 2008;488.

Dalle JH, Lucchini G, Balduzzi A, Ifversen M, Jahnukainen K, Macklon KT, Ahler A, Jarisch A, Ansari M, Beohou E, Bresters D, Corbacioglu S, Dalissier A, Diaz de Heredia Rubio C, Diesch T, Gibson B, Klingebiel T, Lankester A, Lawitschka A, Moffat R, Peters C, Poirot C, Saenger N, Sedlacek P, Trigoso E, Vettenranta K, Wachowiak J, Willasch A, von Wolff M, Yaniv I, Yesilipek A, Bader P. State-of-the-art fertility preservation in children and adolescents undergoing haematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a report on the expert meeting of the Paediatric diseases working party (PDWP) of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT) in Baden, Austria, 29–30 September 2015. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2017;52(7):1029–35. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2017.21. Epub 2017 Mar 13

Debourdeau P, Kassab Chahmi D, Le Gal G, Kriegel I, Desruennes E, Douard MC, Elalamy I, Meyer G, Mismetti P, Pavic M, Scrobohaci ML, Lévesque H, Renaudin JM, Farge D. Working group of the SOR; French National Feberation of Cancer Centers.SOR guidelines for the prevention and treatment of thrombosis associated with central venous catheters in patients with cancer: report from the working group. Ann Oncol. 2009;20(9):1459–71.

Dilley KJ. Managing fertility in childhood cancer patients. Cancer Treat Res. 2007;138:50–6.

Dvorak CC, Gracia CR, Sanders JE, Cheng EY, Baker KS, Pulsipher MA, Petryk A. NCI, NHLBI/PBMTC fi rst international conference on late effects after pediatric hematopoietic cell transplantation: endocrine challenges-thyroid dysfunction, growth impairment, bone health, & reproductive risks. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17(12):1725–38. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbmt.2011.10.006.

European Association for Children in Hospital, 2016, last update, EACH Charter & Annotations. Available: https://www.each-for-sick-children.org/each-charter/introduction-each-charter-annotations.html. Accessed 13 Oct 2016.

Fallat ME, Hutter J, The Committee on Bioethics, Section on Hematology/Oncology, and Section on Surgery. Preservation of fertility in pediatric and adolescent patients with cancer. Itasca, Illinois: American Academy of Pediatric; 2008.

Fallouh N, McGuirk HM, Flanders SA, Chopra V. Peripherally inserted central catheter-associated deep vein thrombosis: a narrative review. Am J Med. 2015;128:722–38.

Fernbach MSN, Fernbach A, Lockart B, Armus CL, Bashore LM, Levine J, Kroon L, Sylvain G, Rodgers C. Evidence-based recommendations for fertility preservation options for inclusion in treatment protocols for pediatric and adolescent patients diagnosed with cancer. J Pediatr Oncol Nursing. 2014;31:211–22. First published on May 5, 2014

Giesen MAM, Boxtel AJH, et al. (2008) Keuze intraveneuze toegangsweg voor niet acute behandeling bij volwassenen University Medical Centrum Utrecht. (unpublished).

Goossens GA, Jérôme M, Janssens C, Peetermans WE, Fieuws S, Moons P, Verschakelen J, Peerlinck K, Jacquemin M, Stas M. Comparing normal saline versus diluted heparin to lock non-valved totally implantable venous access devices in cancer patients: a randomised, non-inferiority, open trial. Ann Oncol. 2013;24(7):1892–9.

Gorski LA, Hadaway L, Hagle ME, et al. Infusion therapy standards of practice. J Infus Nurs. 2016;44(suppl 1):S1–S224.

Harnage S. Seven years of zero central-line- associated bloodstream infections. Br J Nurs. 2013;21(21):S6. (IV Therapy Supplement)

Hoshal VL. Total intravenous nutrition with peripherally inserted silicone elastomer central venous catheters. Arch Surg. 1975;110(5):644–6.

Howell DA, Roman E, Cox H, Smith AG, Patmore R, Garry AC, Howard MR. Destined to die in hospital? Systematic review and meta-analysis of place of death in haematological malignancy. BMC Palliative Care. Vol 9.

Jacob A, Barker H, Goodman A, Holmes J. Recovery of spermatogenesis following bone marrow transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1998;22:277–9.

Kant I. Critique of pure reason. In: Kemp Smith N, editor. Immanuel Kant's critique of pure reason. London: Macmillian; 1973.

Karnofsky DA, Abelmann WH, Craver LF, Burchenal JH. The use of the nitrogen mustards in the palliative treatment of carcinoma - with particular reference to bronchogenic carcinoma. Cancer. 1948;1(4):634–56.

Katz SL, Webb SA, Bioethics Committee. Informed consent in decision-making in pediatric practice. Pediatrics. 2016;138(2):e20161484.

Klipstein S, Fallat ME, Savelli S, Committee on Bioethics; Section on Hematology/Oncology; Section on Surgery. Fertility preservation for pediatric and adolescent patients with cancer: medical and ethical considerations. Pediatrics. 2020;145(3):e20193994. https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2019-3994. Epub 2020 Feb 18. PMID: 32071259

Lansky SB, List MA, Lansky LL, Ritter-Sterr C, Miller DR. The measurement of performance in childhood cancer patients. Cancer. 1987;60(7):1651–6.

Loren AW, Mangu PB, Beck LN, Brennan L, Magdalinski AJ, Partridge AH, Quinn G, Wallace WH, Oktay K. Fertility preservation for patients with cancer: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline update. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(19):

2500–10. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2013.49.2678. Epub 2013 May 28. Review
Maki DG, Kluger DM, Crnich CJ. The risk of bloodstream infection in adults with different intravascular devices: a systematic review of 200 published prospective studies. Mayo Clin Proc. 2006;81:1159–71.
Moureau N, Lamperti M, Kelly LJ, Dawson R, Elbarbary M, van Boxtel AJH, Pittiruti M. Evidence-based consensus on the insertion of central venous access devices: definition of minimal requirements for training. Br J Anaesth. 2013;110:347–56.
Nifong TP, McDevitt TJ. The effect of catheter to vein ratio on blood flow rates in a simulated model of peripherally inserted central catheters. Chest. 2011;140(1):48–53.
Nobel Murray A, Chrisler JC, Robbins ML. Adolescents and young adults with cancer: oncology nurses report attitudes and barriers to discussing fertility preservation. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2015;20(4):E93–9.
Ortega ETT, et al. Compêndio de enfermagem em transplante de células-tronco hematopoéticas : rotinas e procedimentos em cuidados essenciais e em complicações. Curitiba: Maio; 2004.
Ortega ETT, et al. Assistência de enfermagem em transplante de células-tronco hematopoéticas. In: Transplante de células-tronco hematopoéticas. São Paulo; 2009.
Patient Information Forum. Making a case for nformation. www.pifonline.org.uk. 2010.
Pikwer A, Åkeson J, Lindgren S. Complications associated with peripheral or central routes for central venous cannulation. Anaesthesia. 2012;67:65–71.
Rivera AM, Strauss KW, van Zundert A, Mortier E. The history of peripheral intravenous catheters: how little plastic tubes revolutionized medicine. Acta Anaesthesiol Belg. 2005;56(3):271–82.
Rodriguez-Wallberg KA, Oktay K. Fertility preservation during cancer treatment: clinical guidelines. Cancer Manag Res. 2014;6:105–17.
Rumbold G. Ethics in nursing practice. 2nd ed. London: Balliere Tindall; 1993.
Rutledge D, Orr M. Effectiveness of intravenous therapy teams. J Clin Innovat. 2005;8(2):1–24.
Sanders JE, Woolfrey AE, Carpenter PA, Storer BE, Hoffmeister PA, Deeg HJ, Flowers ME, Storb RF. Late effects among pediatric patients followed for nearly 4 decades after transplantation for severe aplastic anemia. Blood. 2011;118(5):1421–8.
Schmidt KT, Larsen EC, Andersen CY, Andersena AN. Risk of ovarian failure and fertility preserving methods in girls and adolescents with a malignant disease. BJOG. 2010;117:163–74.
Shenfield F. Ethical aspects of controversies in assisted reproductive technology. Good Clinical Practice in Assisted Reproduction. 2004;26:332.
Sklar C, Boulad F, Small T, Kernan N. Endocrine complications of pediatric stem cell transplantation. Front Biosci. 2001;6:G17–22.
Smith FO, Reaman GH, Racadio JM, et al. Hematopoietic cell transplantation in children with cancer, pediatric oncology. Berlin Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag; 2014. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-39920-6_7.
Sorror M, Maris M, Storb R, Baron F, Sandmaier B, Maloney D, Storer B. Hematopoitic cell transplantation (HCT)—specific cormobidity index: a new tool for risk assessment before allogeneic HCT. Blood. 2005;106(8):2912–9.
Suhag V, Sunita BS, Sarin A, Singh AK, Dashottar S. Fertility preservation in young patients with cancer. South Asian J Cancer. 2015;4(3):134–9.
Tal R, Botchan A, Hauser R, Yogev L, Paz G, Yavetz H. Follow-up of sperm concentration and motility in patients with lymphoma. Hum Reprod. 2000;15:1985–8.
van Boxtel AJH, Fliedner MC, Borst DM, Teunissen SCCM. Peripherally inserted central venous catheters: first results after the introduction in a Dutch university medical center. J Vasc Access. 2008;13(3):128–33.
Viviani S, Bonfante V, Santoro A, Zanini M, Devizzi L, Di Russo AD, et al. Long-term results of an intensive regimen: VEBEP plus involved-field radiotherapy in advanced Hodgkin's disease. Cancer J Sci Am. 1999;5:275–82.

Cell Source and Apheresis

5

Margherita Angelica and Eugenia Trigoso

Abstract

Apheresis involves the separation of whole blood into its component layers via the use of an automated blood cell separator machine and the process of continuous flow centrifugation. This allows for the isolation and collection of a variety of blood cells, including monocytes, lymphocytes, CD34 positive cells and dendritic cells, whilst simultaneously returning the other blood components back to the donor.

The transplantation of haemopoietic stem cells to facilitate the treatment of a variety of haematological and non-haematological diseases is well established (BSBMTCT, 2022) (https://bsbmtct.org/indications-table—accessed Oct 2022).

Peripheral blood stem cells have largely replaced harvested bone marrow-derived stem cells in both autologous and allogeneic transplant settings. Collection of peripheral blood stem cells generally yields a purer, less contaminated and more consistent product with a greater CD34 positive cell dose when compared to those harvested from the bone marrow. Thus shortening engraftment time, limiting infection risks and potentially enhancing the graft versus leukaemia effect in the allogeneic patient. Umbilical cord blood (UCB) provides a further stem cell source, which may be used in allogenic transplantation if appropriate.

In recent years the ability to isolate blood-derived mononuclear cells via apheresis has been instrumental in the development of individually targeted, patient -specific immunotherapies, most notably Chimeric Antigen Receptor (CAR) T cell therapy. These type of cell collections are rapidly becoming a routine activity for many collection facilities.

Successful collection of cellular blood products via apheresis has its challenges and is influenced by a multitude of variables, including patient's clinical condition, vascular access, timing of collection, mobilisation regimes, institutional capacity, staff experience and regulations and accreditations.

Apheresis and Bone Marrow collection facility accreditation by FACT-JACIE (2021) requires compliance and rigorous validation of standards in relation to all collection, processing, storage, distribution and infusion activities.

In 2018 FACT-JACIE incorporated the administration of immune effector cells (IEC) into the scope of accreditation standards, which describes that additional training, poli-

M. Angelica (✉)
Haematology and Transplant Unit, The Christie Hospital, Manchester, UK

E. Trigoso
Paediatric Transplant Unit, Hospital Universitario y Politécnico LA FE, Valencia, Spain

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_5

cies for patient treatment, management of associated toxicities and maintenance of product chain of identity, additional outcome and follow-up reporting to relevant bodies are also an important requisite to fulfil compliance.

Keywords

Apheresis · Cord blood · Mobilisation · Stem cells · CD34 positive · Bone marrow

5.1 Cell Source

Haematopoiesis (Fig. 5.1) refers to the production of all types of blood cells including the formation, development, and differentiation of these cells. In adults, haematopoiesis primarily occurs in bone marrow which is contained in the pelvis, sternum, vertebral column, and skull.

All blood cells are derived from progenitor stem cells—pluripotent stem cells.

These cells have the capacity for unlimited self-renewal and the ability to differentiate into all types of mature blood cells, starting from the common myeloid or the common lymphoid progenitor. This process occurs continually in order to maintain adequate concentrations of circulating components necessary for normal haematopoietic and immune system function.

Cells in the myeloid lineage, such as red blood cells, platelets and white blood cells, are responsible for haemopoiesis (tissue nourishment, oxygenation, coagulation) and immune functions such as innate and adaptive immunity. The lymphoid lineage components, namely, T cells and B cells, provide the foundation for the adaptive immune system.

Haematopoietic stem cell (HSC) products for autologous or allogeneic transplantation are available from bone marrow, peripheral blood, and umbilical cord blood (UCB) sources.

The role of UCB in allogeneic transplantation remains important due to the relative immunologic naiveté of the donor cells which allow for the use of multiple antigen-mismatched donors, particularly when there is no available HLA matched donor . The relatively low cell dose obtained from UCB limited the use in the adult recipient until relatively recently, with concerns primarily focused on the increased risk of delayed engraftment and a resulting increase in infectious

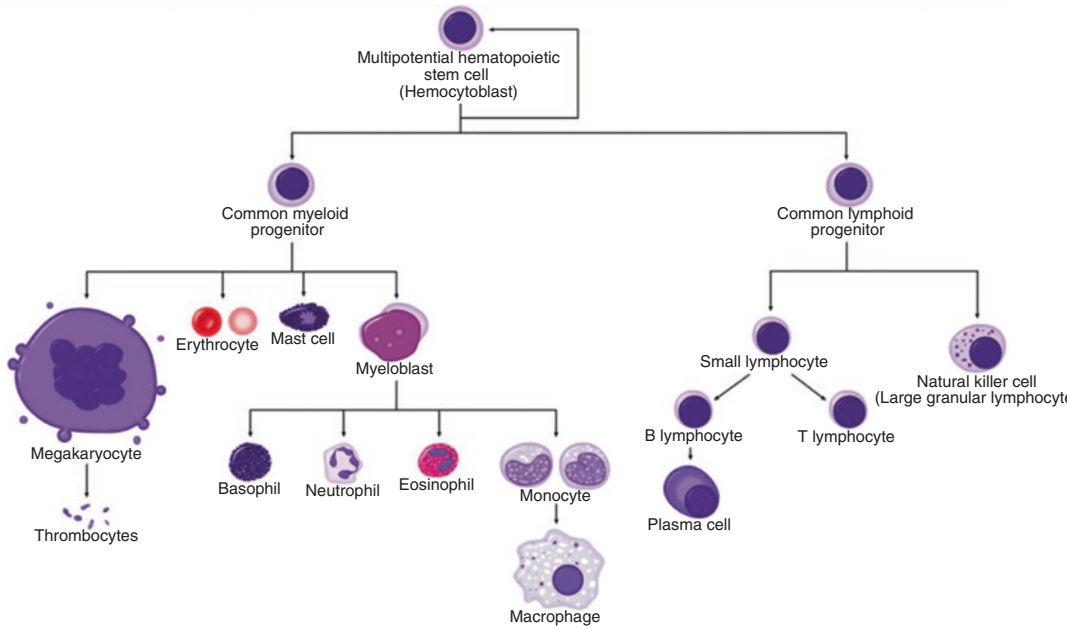


Fig. 5.1 Hematopoiesis in bone marrow. (Adapted from Blood Cell—An Overview of Studies in Haematology Ed: T E Moschandreau 2012 Diagram.pgn A. Rad 2006)

complications. The introduction of 'double cord transplants' has to a certain extent ameliorated some of these difficulties by improving engraftment times. Nevertheless, late infections remain a concern, and lack of available donor lymphocytes means that in some settings, other cell sources are often favoured over UCB (Ballen 2013).

Bone marrow was the original source of cells for transplantation prior to the development of granulocyte colony stimulating factor (GCSF) and apheresis collection procedures . Today peripheral blood stem cells (PBSC) have largely replaced bone marrow in both autologous and allogeneic transplantation setting. The rapid engraftment kinetics of PBSC compared to the bone marrow is widely acknowledged. Median times to achieve an absolute neutrophil count greater than 500/μl after autologous PBSC transplantation are approximately 11–14 days in autologous setting (Klaus 2007).

The choice of cell source in allogeneic transplantation may be influenced by a variety of factors including donor availability, donor donation preference, donor and recipient body weight and recipient disease. In the absence of an HLA-identical sibling donor, the search and identification of a suitably matched unrelated donor may take several months. Depending on recipients underlying disease and required timescales for transplantation, related haploidentical donors or cord blood unit(s) might be selected (Ruggeri et al. 2015).

Donor general health and medical assessment are integral to donor selection and must be completed prior to commencement of any patient conditioning therapy to ensure donor and patient safety and a good transplant outcome. Clear exclusion and eligibility criteria are available for reference and guidance (WMDA, 2022) https://share.wmda.info/display/DMSR/WMDA+Donor+Medical+Suitability+Recommendations (accessed Oct 2022).

5.2 Cell Collection

5.2.1 Bone Marrow Collection

Liquid bone marrow is harvested from both posterior iliac crests under general anaesthetic by two operators, one on each side of the donor, who is placed in the prone position. The most significant risk associated with donating bone marrow is that associated with the general anaesthetic, which for the healthy donor, who has undergone a detailed medical assessment is likely to be minimal (Gottschalk et al. 2011). Other known procedure-related risks include pain, bleeding and injury to nerves, for which the donor is counselled as part of the consent process. A review of bone marrow donors enlisted by the National Marrow Donor Programme indicates that serious adverse events are rare 1.34% with a small number of donors experiencing long-term complications (Miller et al. 2008).

Multiple aspirations are performed by each operator on either side of the pelvis with approximately 5–10 ml of liquid marrow blood obtained via each aspiration. The usual total volume harvested should not exceed 20 ml/kg of donor weight or 1600 ml in order to achieve the desired CD34+ cell doses and avoid complications.

Red cell transfusions are rarely indicated in donors undergoing bone marrow harvest. In the event of a significant fall in haemoglobin, iron supplementation may be considered, although this is not required in the majority of cases. Pain at the site of marrow aspiration may last for several days to weeks following bone marrow donation usually requiring simple analgesia (Miller et al. 2008).

5.2.2 Cord Blood Collection

Umbilical cord blood (UCB) is collected from the placental vein after infant delivery. The umbilical cord is cut and clamped; blood is drawn from the cord with a needle and attached bag (sterile venesection kit). The timing of cord clamping after delivery of the infant correlates with the volume of cord blood collected, with earlier clamping relating to greater collection volumes. Cell dose is an important predictor of outcome after UCB transplantation, and many cord blood units are discarded because of small cell doses. Greater cell quantities are obtained from infants with higher birth weight, independent of gender and gestational age. Many cord

blood banks reduce the volume of the product by depleting red cells and plasma in order to minimize storage space and reduce possible infusion-related toxicities from mature blood cells contained in unfractioned cord blood units. UCB will maintain viability for a period of at least 15 years if appropriately cryopreserved (Schoemans et al. 2006).

Finding a suitably HLA matched adult donor for patients from diverse or mixed ethnic heritage can prove difficult.

Of the 525 patients undergoing combined searches, 10/10 HLA-matched unrelated donors were identified in 53% of those with European ancestry but only 21% of patients with non-European origins. Of note, UCB searches are able to identify 5–6/6 UCB units for the majority of patients in both groups (Barker et al. 2010).

Availability of UCB as a transplant cell source can significantly improve transplant options in designated groups of patients whose HLA type is uncommon or where potential donors are under-represented on the donor panels. The immature nature of cord blood stem cells allows a greater degree of flexibility when looking at HLA matching and thus the ability to offer a transplant to many individuals who would previously not have been treated.

5.2.3 Mononeuclear Cell Collections

These cells are collected via the process of apheresis – this is a broad term covering the withdrawal and separation of blood into its component layers, allowing some portion to be retained and the remainder returned to the patient or donor. Leukapheresis specifically refers to the separation of the white blood cells layers from circulating blood using the above process .

Peripheral blood stem cells express a CD34 positive (CD34+) marker on the cell surface, CD34 positive cells can be found in the umbilical cord and bone marrow and are also evident on other cells such as mesenchymal stem cells and endothelial progenitor cells to name but a few.

The development of a rapid laboratory test to measure circulating levels of CD34+ cells has been instrumental in the ability to monitor cellular collections and enhance the efficiency of peripheral blood stem cell harvesting in the transplant setting. CD34+ cells account for 1–2% of all bone marrow cells. The concentration in the bone marrow being significantly greater than that in the peripheral blood by approximately 18-fold (Korbling et al. 2001).

Therefore to collect sufficient cells to facilitate a transplant procedure it is necessary to 'move' the CD34+ stem cells out of the bone marrow to increase the circulating concentrations in the blood. The movement or mobilisation of haematopoietic stem cells into the peripheral blood can be stimulated by different disease-specific and relatively predictable mobilisation regimens in combination with granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) to produce a relatively predictable rise in white cell counts and CD34+ cells for collection.

The collection and separation of peripheral blood mononuclear cells via leukapheresis is the first step in the process for many novel immunotherapies. These cells once collected from the patient then be genetically modified expanded, and activated ex vivo to facilitate an anti-tumour effect once reinfused into the patient (Zhang 2017). This is a complex therapy but essentially involves the reprogramming of the individual's immune system which can then be used to target their cancer in a personalised manner.

These new treatment modalities include Chimeric Antigen Receptor T -cell therapies (CART-T), Natural Killer cell therapies and cancer vaccine development using dendritic cells.

The demand for apheresis procedures is rapidly increasing in line with increasing demands for these novel targeted therapies. Typically, these cells are collected through the leukapheresis of unmobilised donor or patients for a variety of clinical indications and diseases, depending on specifications, the number of cells required to produce the end product can vary significantly, as can the parameters required from the procedure, such as the amount of blood needed to be processed, product volume requirement and the abil-

ity to undertake one or two day collections to achieve a defined end point. Ensuring a good product has been collected can be challenging (Korell et al. 2020).

As we are currently in the early days of establishing collection protocols, the recommendations for achieving optimum efficiency and best practice are yet to reach a consensus. Many groups are working towards the development of guidelines for standardisation in the procurement of cellular starting materials. The collection process, as indicated, requires a steady state unstimulated apheresis procedure which can present its own challenges. Patients often present for collection with advanced and progressive disease, poor blood counts from previous treatments and poor venous access (Qayed 2022).

5.3 Mobilization of Stem Cells and Apheresis

5.3.1 The Role of CD34+ Cells

CD34+ is the cell surface marker most frequently used in clinical practice to determine the extent and efficiency of peripheral blood stem cell collections (Brando et al. 2000). Target collection endpoints can vary between treating centre though, broadly, these are based on the underlying disease, source of stem cells, and the type of planned transplant. In general, a target level of 2×10^6 CD34+ cells/kg recipient body weight is considered the minimum for transplant with optimal levels being $>5 \times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg for a single transplant and $> 6 \times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg for a tandem transplant (Pierelli et al. 2012).

Pre-collection analysis of CD34 levels in the peripheral blood is a good correlator for end target yields.

5.3.2 Cytokines and Mobilisation Regimes

Several cytokines have been identified to play an important role in haematopoiesis. When progenitor cells are exposed to these cytokines, the maturation cascade producing committed mature blood cell components can occur. These cytokines are administered to patients and donors in an effort to enhance the availability of circulating CD34+ stem cells for collection.

Because of its efficacy compared to other cytokines and its low toxicity profile, G-CSF is the cytokine most commonly used to increase the level of myeloid progenitor cells in the blood. Recombinant methionyl human G-CSF (filgrastim) and recombinant human G-CSF (lenograstim) are the two forms of this cytokine available for clinical use. The end objective of any mobilisation regime is to collect sufficient stem cells to allow the patient to procced to transplantation in a manner minimising risk and optimising outcome (Giralt et al. 2014).In clinical practice, for autologous PBSC, the most frequent mobilization procedure is the administration of filgrastim in combination with chemotherapy for those requiring autologous collections. Alternatively high dose GCSF over 4–5 days is used for donor stem cell collections. A variety of chemotherapy regimes have been utilised to mobilise stem cells from patients, some more efficiently than others, it is not uncommon for disease – directed chemotherapy regimes to be used such as ESHAP (Etoposide, methylprednisolone, cytarabine, cisplatin) or DHAP (Dexamethasone, cytarabine, cisplatin)or mobilisation-specific regimes such as high dose cyclophosphamide to be used both in combination with GCSF. The timing of regime commencement and commencement of CD34 monitoring is crucial to achieve a successful collection with white cell count recovery/rebound varying significantly (Pierelli et al. 2012). For growth factor mobilization alone, the first collection procedure is calculated on days 4–5 when the peak of CD34+ cell count is expected to be achieved. After mobilization with chemotherapy regimens and growth factor, the expected day can vary between days 12 and 15 (Pierelli et al. 2012).

A proportion of patients fail to collect enough stem cells to proceed to autologous transplantation using a combination of G-CSF +/− mobilising chemotherapy (Pusic et al., 2008). Poor stem cell yields after mobilization might occur.

Inadequate stem cell yields or poor mobilisation in patients can be related to previous exposure to myelosuppressive chemotherapy; agents which are toxic to stem cells such as cyclophosphamide (doses >7.5 g), melphalan, carmustine, procarbazine, fludarabine, nitrogen mustard and chlorambucil are particularly detrimental to stem cell collection yields. Other risk factors associated with low CD34+ cell collections include advanced age (>60 years), previous radiation therapy, short time interval between chemotherapy and mobilization, extensive disease burden and tumour infiltration of the bone marrow (Olivieri et al. 2012).

Those groups of patients are defined 'poor mobilizers'. In this case the use of plerixafor, a CXCR4 antagonist used in combination with G-CSF has been shown to improve CD34+ cell collections in lymphoma and multiple myeloma patients (Olivieri et al. 2012). Collection end targets may be multifactorially infucenced by factors such as the mobilisation strategy employed, patient specifics, operator and equipment variables, and procedural complications.

5.4 Leukapheresis Collections

The optimum day for the collection of stem cells is determined by WBC count and predictive CD34+ predictive cell count done on a peripheral blood sample. These thresholds may vary across collection facilities but typically range from 10 to 20 CD34+ cells/ml on the background of a rapidly rising WBC count will trigger a collection procedure. Identifying the correct day for collection should avoid unnecessary procedures for the patient, limit the impact on the processing facility and storage facility and limit unnecessary costs. Leukapheresis collection dates when collecting for immune effector cell therapies are in general defined by the availability of manufacturing slots and if the product is to be shipped fresh or cryopreserved .

When collecting stem cells the objective is to collect a product with the prescribed stem cell dose, which has low cross cellular contamination,in the smallest possible collect volume (approx. 100 ml to minimise DMSO toxicity) and in as few procedures as possible. This will ensure cost optimization of the end product and enhance patient comfort and safety.

The role of the clinical apheresis nurse varies from institution to institution but must include the close monitoring of the collection process and the patients for any adverse reactions, an awareness of the regulatory requirements and standards of practice that should be adhered to in the collection facility.

Patients are connected to the apheresis cell separator machine by their centrally or peripherally inserted venous catheters. One lumen is used to withdraw blood out of the patient and into the machine where the blood is centrifuged in a bowl housed within the machines body. The desired cells are then siphoned off before the remaining blood components are returned to the patient through the second lumen of their catheter. This second lumen can be used to administer intravenous fluids, electrolyte supplements and medications to the patient if necessary. Each apheresis session lasts on average 4–6 h, but this can vary significantly and is influenced by patient size, venous access, procedural complications such as citrate toxicity and the required procedural end points that need to be met. During the procedure an average of 7–12 l of blood, or twice the average total blood volume (as calculated by height weight and gender), is processed.

5.5 Complications and Challenges

5.5.1 Adverse Reactions

Apheresis procedures are relatively safe procedures for the patient and used for a variety of indications, complications are in general classed as mild to moderate, with severe adverse events being rare (Henriksson et al. 2016). In their review of the World Apheresis Registry data they outline clearly the extent of side effects which may occur during apheresis procedures so that appropriate risks can be assessed and precautions

Table 5.1 Advantages and disadvantages of haematopoietic stem cell collection methods

Collection method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Bone marrow	Single collection No need for special catheter placement No need for growth factors	Performed in an acute care setting as it requires general anaesthesia Slower neutrophil and platelet engraftment Associated with higher rates of morbidity
Peripheral blood	Does not require general anaesthesia and can be performed in an outpatient setting Faster recipient neutrophil and platelet engraftment Associated with lower rates of donor morbidity Tumour cell contamination of product may be less	Collection may take several days Sometimes requires placement of large double lumen catheter for collection Citrate toxicity

Adapted from EBMT NG Haematopoietic stem cell mobilisation and apheresis: a practical guide for nurses and other allied health care professionals (EBMT NG 2009)

taken. The most common of which are discussed below:

Table 5.1 also outlines some of the advantages and disadvantages of both collection methods.

The most common of which are discussed below:

5.5.2 Vascular Access

Appropriate catheter selection and placement should be scheduled prior to the first stem cell collection (Toro et al. 2007). Good venous access is essential to the success of a procedure facilitating a good steady blood flow through the cell separator.

Catheters used for apheresis procedures must be able to tolerate large fluctuations in circulating blood volume, Peripheral access is desirable where possible to minimise the need for invasive procedures for the patients. Two separate and distances points of access are required to conduct cellular collections. One to remove blood and a second to return the blood to the patient simultaneously to maintain a continuous flow through the machine. A variety of peripheral devices are available for use, however a wider short gauge needle appropriate to the vein size is preferable for drawing blood from the patient eg fixed backeyed 16–17 g dialysis needle sited in a large vein such as the ante cubital fossae. Large gauge peripheral cannulas sited ideally in the other arm or central venous devices can be used to return blood to the patient.

In the absence of adequate peripheral veins, a large-bore, double lumen device can be inserted for apheresis. These can be placed in the femoral vein or internal jugular by experienced practitioners and may be inserted temporarily for collection only or placed and used for the transplant process.

5.5.3 Citrate Toxicity

One of the most common adverse effects seen during all apheresis procedures is citrate toxicity, frequently manifested by hypocalcaemia.

Sodium citrate is used during apheresis to prevent blood from clotting while it is being processed by the machine. Citrate is known to bind to ionized serum calcium leading to hypocalcaemia. Signs and symptoms of this complication can include:

- Burning sensations.
- Numbness and tingling in the extremities and/or the area around the mouth.
- Muscle twitching, tetany and generalised vibrations.
- Abdominal cramps and nausea.
- Shivering and rigors.
- In severe cases cardiac arrhythmia/arrest and chest pain.

Citrate toxicity can be managed by slowing the apheresis flow rate and providing patients with oral calcium supplements. In severe cases,

intravenous supplementation of calcium may be given to the patient in order to prevent severe reactions such as tetany, seizure, and cardiac arrhythmia. Serum monitoring of calcium levels prior to each apheresis session is often helpful in decreasing the likelihood of hypocalcaemia.

Other effects stemming from citrate toxicity include hypomagnesemia, hypokalaemia, and metabolic alkalosis. Magnesium, like calcium, is a bivalent ion that is bound by citrate. Declines in serum magnesium levels often are more pronounced and take longer to normalize compared to aberrations in calcium levels. Signs and symptoms of hypomagnesemia are muscle weakness or spasm, decreased vascular tone, and abnormal cardiac contractility. Oral and intravenous supplementation with magnesium and potassium is often effective.

5.5.4 Hypovolemia

There is a low extra corporeal volume involved in cellular collections of generally less than 200 ml, some patients do experience symptoms of hypovolemia. Due to fluctuations in blood volume prior to starting a procedure, baseline pulse and blood pressure should be measured and continually rechecked at designated intervals. It is also recommended that haemoglobin and haematocrit be monitored after the procedure as well. Patients at risk for developing hypovolemia include those with anaemia, a previous history of cardiovascular compromise and children or adults with a small frame. Preventative measures are aimed at minimizing the extracorporeal volume shift by priming the apheresis machine with red blood cells and fresh frozen plasma in place of normal saline, Clinical manifestations of hypovolemia can include dizziness, light-headedness, tachycardia, hypotension and diaphoresis. Most concerning is the development of a cardiac dysrhythmia which can be life-threatening.

Sessions should be interrupted and symptoms should subside before proceeding with collections. Hypovolemia may also be managed with providing intravenous fluid boluses and slowing the rate of flow on the apheresis machine.

5.5.5 Thrombocytopenia

Thrombocytopenia is a potential complication encountered during cell collections. Platelets can stick to the bowl used during the centrifugation process or aggregate in the circuit during collection The necessity of pre-procedural blood counts can minimise the likelihood of bleeding related to platelet loss during apheresis. Loss can be assessed and audited by post -procedural full blood count assessment. The need for pre- or post-procedural transfusion should be guided by local policy.

5.6 Apheresis Collection Facility Standards and Quality Management

The Joint Accreditation Committee ISCT Europe and EBMT (http://www.ebmt.org) provides guidance and accreditation for best practice and quality for institutions providing cellular therapy procedures using haematopoietically derived cellular product including the collection of immune effector cells (IEC and genetically modified cellular products). Accreditation requires that the clinical program has access to personnel who are formally trained, experienced and competent in the management of patients undergoing cellular therapy procedures. Apheresis Collection Facility shall be licensed, registered or accredited as required by the appropriate governmental authorities for the activities performed and incorporate a quality management plan which should include and reference, policies and standard operating procedures addressing personnel training requirements for each key position in the Apheresis Collection Facility. It should also include policies to address appropriate allogeneic and Autologous selection, eligibility and management pre, during and post collection procedures.

5.6.1 Training and Competencies

Core competencies are specified within the JACIE standards, and evidence of training in these competencies must be documented. This may be achieved by evidence of in-service train-

ing, attendance at conferences etc. While initial supervised training is easily documented, annual competency maintenance can be difficult to demonstrate. Ongoing training for clinical personnel should reflect their experience, individual competencies and proficiencies, orientation for new staff and necessary training. Training also needs to be undertaken in a timely manner to demonstrate continued competency in practice.

5.6.2 Labelling and Chain of Identity

All cellular therapy products should be labelled at the source of collection to prevent misidentification and according to ISBT 128 standard terminology following a defined and validated process by qualified and competent staff, this includes the application of warning labels as appropriate. Each cellular therapy product is assigned a unique identifier to enable it to be traced back to its donor, relevant documentation and final end point.

5.7 Cell Source and Apheresis in the Paediatric Population

Abstract

Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) has become a well-established treatment for many malignant and non-malignant disorders in children. Small body weight, venous access and ethical dilemmas in minors represent a challenge in the paediatric population.

Keywords

Apheresis • Cell source • Children • Paediatric population • HSCT

5.7.1 Introduction

Indications for paediatric HSCT have expanded considerably and these changes have informed decision-making in health-care planning and counselling (Miano et al. 2007; Merli et al. 2019). HSCT, the oldest immunotherapy used in clinical practice, still represents the gold standard consolidation treatment for a number of paediatric diseases including high-risk/relapsed acute leukaemia (Merli et al., 2019). However There is now also a growing body of evidence for the role of HSCT in non-haematological disorders such as autoimmune diseases (Sureda et al. 2015).

Some other common non-malignant diseases in paediatrics treated with haematopoietic stem cell transplant are identified below (Nuss et al. 2011):

- *Haematologic* (severe aplastic anaemia, Fanconi anaemia, thalassemia, sickle-cell disease, Diamond-Blackfan anaemia, Chédiak-Higashi syndrome, chronic granulomatous disease, congenital neutropenia).
- *Solid tumours* (Ewing's sarcoma, soft tissue sarcoma, neuroblastoma and Wilms' tumour, where there is high risk or 4CR1, osteogenic sarcoma, and brain tumours).
- *Immunodeficiency* (severe combined immunodeficiency disease, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, functional T-cell deficiency).
- *Genetic* (adrenoleukodystrophy, metachromatic leukodystrophy, Hurler syndrome, Hunter disease, Gaucher syndrome).

5.7.2 Cell Sources in the Paediatric Population

The proportion of autologous to allogeneic HSCT is different in the paediatric population (29% autologous) compared with adults (62% autologous). Autologous cell sources are the primary cell source in the treatment of solid tumours (Passweg et al. 2013).

Allo-HSCT in children and adolescents represents over 20% of overall allo-HSCT activity, with a particular use in congenital and non-malignant diseases, many of which are rare (Snowden et al. 2022).

Improvements in high-resolution HLA matching in unrelated donor identification, conditioning regimens and supportive care for infectious and non-infectious complications have progres-

sively reduced mortality and influenced the preference of allogenic transplantation in all settings. There has been a move towards allogenic transplantation at an earlier stage in the course of diseases - where patients exhibit a better performance status rather than as a 'last chance for cure'. Graft versus host disease (GVHD) remains the major risk factor for patients without optimally matched donors. New allo-HSCT strategies should improve outcomes for mismatched alternative donors (MMAD) (Snowden et al. 2022).

Stem cells for use in paediatric transplantation may be collected from the bone marrow (BM), peripheral blood (PBSC), or umbilical cord blood (UCB) as with the adult patient population. Each of these sources has their own advantages and disadvantages some of which are noted above .Despite the increased use of peripheral and umbilical cord blood, bone marrow remains a preferred graft source *in the paediatric setting,* with unrelated donors accounting for 49% of the cell source used in 2013 (Sureda et al. 2015). This can partly be explained by the higher incidence of non-malignant conditions transplanted in this group and the higher risk of chronic GvHD seen with peripheral blood as a stem cell source (Passweg et al. 2013).

The clinical opinion surrounding the optimum cell source for allogeneic transplantation in the paediatric population appears mixed. For children and adolescents aged 8–20, allogeneic transplantation from HLA identical sibling using peripheral blood stem cells was associated with higher mortality, than where bone marrow was used as the cell source (Eapen et al. 2004). Angelucci et al. (2014); evidence indicated that peripheral blood stem cells should be avoided because of the increased risk of chronic GVHD. In contrast, previous work showed that peripheral blood was superior to the bone marrow as a stem cell source for adults and adolescents (aged 12–55) (Bensinger et al. 2001).

However, Anasetti's 2012 NMDP/CIBMTR randomized study comparing the use of unrelated marrow versus PBSC, which included paediatric patients, found that there were no significant differences in mortality between recipients of PBSC compared to the bone marrow. But according to Angelucci (2014), peripheral blood stem cells should be avoided because of the increased risk of cGVHD.

Most recently there has been an increase and improved outcome in the numbers of transplants using haploidentical family donors as opposed to HLA identical siblings. This has been influenced by the successful strategy of administering post cell infusion cyclophosphamide in haploidentical conditioning regimes. In 2014, the numbers of transplants in the USA using Haplo-Identical family donors surpassed the total numbers of umbilical cord transplant performed, accounting for 11% of all US allogeneic transplants (Pasquini and Zhu 2022).

Umbilical cord blood (UCB) characteristically differs from the marrow in a number of ways. The median doses of total nucleated cells (TNC), CD34+ cells and CD3+ cells in UCB unit are approximately ten times lower than that of a bone marrow graft (Moscardo et al. 2004; Barker and Wagner 2003).The indications for the use of UCB as a source for stem cells in children are identical to the indications for matched unrelated donor transplants (Sureda et al. 2015).

However the use of umbilical cord blood now appears to be steadily declining after a peak in 2009, down from 46% to 32% of all unrelated donor transplants performed in this age group (Sureda et al. 2015, Merli et al. 2019).

5.7.3 Apheresis in Paediatric Population

Experience with paediatric peripheral blood stem cell collections is limited. Challenges of apheresis in small children (<20 kg) include:

- Small total blood volume.
- Vascular access issues.
- Concerns about tolerable anticoagulant doses.
- Limitations in product volumes that can be safely collected.

In many countries worldwide, children under the age of 18 years are not permitted to donate

haematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) for unrelated recipients (Sörensen et al. 2013).

Adequate peripheral vascular access is challenging to establish in young children, and often a central venous apheresis catheter (5–7 Fr with double offset lumens) is required with its attendant risks including pain and bleeding. This age group will also often require, general anaesthesia, or conscious sedation for catheter placement which brings with it additional risks. Central line placement should be done by an expert team using ultrasound guidance or interventional radiology.

The apheresis team must consider the size and type of catheter that will yield the highest flow rate during apheresis, as well as patient or donor comfort. Often the catheter used for apheresis may then be used for venous access during high-dose therapy/transplantation, reinfusion of stem cells and recovery phases. A trained expert team in paediatric apheresis is mandatory for a successful and safe procedure.

5.7.4 Key Differences: Paediatric Vs. Adult Apheresis

5.7.4.1 Red Cell Prime

Priming of the apheresis collection tubing with heterologous packed red blood cells is widely undertaken where donors weigh less than 20 kg to avoid the comparative extracorporeal volume shift risks as compared inherently related to the small total blood volume of a paediatric patient or donor. Priming in this manner helps to avoid hypovolemic shock when blood is initially drawn from the patient into the machine.

The risk of heterologous blood product administration in healthy donors, such as transfusion reaction and the risk of system overload if primed blood for some reason is reinfused, must always be taken into consideration. The apheresis circuit is usually primed with red blood cells which are cross-matched, irradiated and leukocyte-depleted.

In the paediatric setting, the most common apheresis-related *adverse event* is pain, observed after placing a central venous catheter (CVC). Pain at the site of puncture occurs more frequently in donors requiring a central line (58%) than those where peripheral vein access is used (38%) (Hequet, 2015).

Other reported side effects after paediatric apheresis are:

- Haematoma formation.
- Hypotension and cyanosis.
- Allergic reaction to red blood cells.
- Thrombocytopenia.

Rarer side effects reported are:

- Low-grade fever during the mobilization.
- Hypovolemic signs: tachycardia >120 (most cases), hypotension, systolic blood pressure <80 mmHg, pallor and diaphoresis.
- Nausea related to citrate effects during the apheresis procedure.

In the absence of consensus and in order to prevent signs and symptoms of hypocalcaemia, some paediatric centers administrate orally calcium gluconate or replace with a continuous infusion of calcium intravenously during the apheresis procedure. Nurses who perform paediatric procedures need to achieve competence in machine settings to ensure the safe and effective anticoagulation of the patient during the procedure. The nurse must be competent in blood priming and in use of diluted or undiluted packed red blood cells, and in prevention of hypocalcaemia and maintenance of fluid balance, etc.

5.7.5 Ethical Considerations

The approach to minor donors is different in many countries. A donor is a person, no matter how small (Styczynski et al. 2012).

Styczynski et al. (2012) compared donor and recipient children's age, donors of smaller body weight than the recipient and thus at higher risk of requiring a blood transfusion, additional apheresis procedures, pain and cardiovascular complications after anaesthesia. Most paediatric

physicians who perform transplants believe it is acceptable to expose minors to the risks of a stem cell donation when donation offers a substantial prospect of benefit to a close family member and when proper consent is obtained (often from parents of both, donor and recipient).

The key issue that must be addressed with childhood procedures is the donor's ability to understand and to voluntarily consent the procedure. Understanding increases with age into an ability to assent and then finally to legally consent. Because their stem cell donation may benefit the recipient more than any other cell source and because the procedure can be performed with limited risk, paediatric sibling donation under parental consent has been considered appropriate to date (Bitan et al. 2016).

Summarizing:

- Advocacy and medical review of donors by a clinician independently of the recipient is highly recommended.
- The recommendation is to focus on avoiding psychological harm to the donor rather than predicting whether donation will result in a psychological benefit to the donor.
- Paediatric donors may be considered for research that carries minimal risk above the standard procedure or studies aimed at improving the safety and efficacy of the donation process.
- Donors with medical conditions that may increase the risk of complications associated with donation should not ever be considered fit for donation.
- Human leukocyte antigen tissue typing should not be undertaken in the first instance on potential donors with medical/psychological reasons not to donate (Bitan et al. 2016).

5.7.6 Psychosocial Risks and Benefits

The primary benefit to the donor is the psychosocial value of helping a sibling or other close family members. This benefit may accrue even if the transplant is unsuccessful, because the donor and family can at least be reassured that they have tried 'their best'. There is a small but growing literature on the psychosocial risks and harms caused by haematopoietic stem cell donation by children. Data show that many children experience distress related to their role as a donor. Many paediatric donors believe that they did not have a choice and felt poorly prepared for the procedures, describing feeling responsible for the recipient's transplant outcome (Weisz 1996). The safety and welfare of the donor are major concerns for the transplantation community, especially for related sibling donors of young recipients who are children and, thus, not able to fully consent (Bitan 2016).

References

Angelucci E, Matthes-Martin S, Baronciani D, Bernaudin F, Bonanomi S, Cappellini MD, Dalle JH, Di Bartolomeo P, de Heredia CD, Dickerhoff R, Giardini C. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in thalassemia major and sickle cell disease: indications and management recommendations from an international expert panel. Haematologica. 2014;99(5):811.

Anasetti C, Logan BR, Lee SJ, Waller EK, Weisdorf DJ, Wingard JR, Cutler CS, Westervelt P, Woolfrey A, Couban S, Ehninger G, Johnston L, Maziarz RT, Pulsipher MA, Porter DL, Mineishi S, McCarty JM, Khan SP, Anderlini P, Bensinger WI, Leitman SF, Rowley SD, Bredeson C, Carter SL, Horowitz MM, Confer DL. Peripheral-blood stem cells versus bone marrow from unrelated donors. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:1487–96. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1203517.

Ballen K, Gluckman E, Broxmeyer H. Umblical cord blood transplantation: the first 25 years and beyond. Blood. 2013;122(4):491–8.

Barker JN. Availability of cord blood extends allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant access to racial and ethnic minorities. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2010;16(11):1541–8. http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1083879110003502

Barker JN, Wagner WJ. Umbilical-cord blood transplantation for the treatment of cancer (review). Nat Rev Cancer. 2003;3(7):526–32.

Bensinger WI, Martin PJ, Storer B, Clift R, Forman SJ, Negrin R, Kashyap A, Flowers ME, Lilleby K, Chauncey TR, Storb R. Transplantation of bone marrow as compared with peripheral-blood cells from HLA-identical relatives in patients with hematologic cancers. New England Journal of Medicine. 2001; 344(3):175–181.

Bitan M, van Walraven SM, Worel N, Ball LM, Styczynski J, Torrabadella M, Witt V, Shaw BE, Seber A, Yabe H, Greinix HT, Peters C, Gluckman E, Rocha V, Halter J, Pulsipher MA. Determination of eligibility in related pediatric hematopoietic cell donors: ethical and clinical considerations. Recommendations from a working Group of the Worldwide Network for blood and marrow transplantation association. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22(1):96–103.

Brando B, Barnett D, Janossy G, et al. Cytofluorimetric methods for assessing absolute numbers of cell subsets in blood. European working group on clinical cell analysis. Cytometry. 2000;42(6):327–46.

British Society of Blood and Marrow Transplantation and Cellular Therapy (2022) Indications table available at https://bsbmtct.org/indications-table. Accessed October 2022.

Eapen M, Horowitz MM, Klein JP, Champlin RE, Loberiza Jr FR, Ringdén O, Wagner JE. Higher mortality after allogeneic peripheral-blood transplantation compared with bone marrow in children and adolescents: the Histocompatibility and Alternate Stem Cell Source Working Committee of the International Bone Marrow Transplant Registry. J Clin Oncol. 2004; 22(24):4872–80.

FACT-JACIE (2021) International Standards for Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Product Collection, Processing, and Administration, Eighth Edition.

Gottsschalk A, Van Aken H, Zenz M, Standl T. Is anesthesia dangerous? Dtsch Arztebl Int. 2011;108(27): 469–74.

Giralt S, Costa L, Schriber J, Persio D, Maziarz R, et al. Optimizing Autolous stem cell mobilisation stratergies to improve patient outcomes: consensus guidelines and Recommmendations. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2014;20(3):295–308.

Klaus J. Effect of CD34. Cell dose on hematopoietic reconstitution and outcome in 508 patients with multiple myeloma undergoing autologous peripheral blood stem cell transplantation. Eur J Haematol. 2007;78(1):21–8.

Haematopoietic stem cell mobilisation and apheresis: a practical guide for nurses and other allied health care professionals (EBMT NG), 2009.

Hequet OJ. Hematopoietic stem and progenitor cell harvesting: technical advances and clinical utility. J Blood Med. 2015;6:55–67.

Henriksson M, Newman E, Witt V, Derfler K. Leitner et al adverse events in apheresis: an update of the WAA registry data. Transfus Apher Sci. 2016;54:2–15.

Korell F, Laier S, Sauer S, Veelken K, Hennemann H, Schubert ML, Sauer T, Pavel P, Mueller-Tidow C, Dreger P, Shmitt M, Scmitt A. Current challenges in providing good Leukaphereis products for manufacturing of CAR-T cells for patients with Relpased/ refractory NHL or ALL. Cells. 2020;9:1225.

Korbling M, Anderlini P. Peripheral blood stem cell versus bone marrow all transplantation: does the source of haemopoetic stem cells matter? Review article. Blood. 2001;98(10):2900–80. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood.V98.10.2900.

Merli P, Algeri M, Del Bufalo F, Locatelli F. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Curr Hematol Malig Rep. 2019;14(2):94–105. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11899-019-00502-2.

Miano M, Labopin M, Hartmann O, Angelucci E, Cornish J, Gluckman E, Locatelli F, Fischer A, Egeler RM, Or R, Peters C, Ortega J, Veys P, Bordigoni P, Ior AP, Niethammer D, Rocha V, Dini G. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation trends in children over the last three decades: a survey by the paediatric diseases working party of the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation for the Paediatric diseases working Party of the European Group for blood and marrow transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2007;39:89–99. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bmt.1705550.

Miller J, Perry E, Price T, Bolan C, et al. Recovery and safety proliles of marrow and PBSC donors: experience of the National Marrow Donor Program. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2008;14(9 suppl):29–36.

Moscardo F, Sanz GF, Sanz MA. Unrelated-donor cord blood transplantation for adult haematological malignancies (review). Leuk Lymphoma. 2004;45(1):11.

National Marrow Donor Programme n.d.. Available at: https://bethematch.org/

Nuss S, Barnes Y, Fisher V, Olson E, Skeens M. Hematopoietic cell transplantation. In: Baggott C, Fochtman D, Foley GV, Kelly KP, editors. Nursing care of children and adolescent with cancer and blood disorders. 4th ed. APHON Association of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology Nurses; 2011. p. 405–66.

Olivieri A, Marchetti M, Lemoli R, et al. Proposed definition of "poor mobilizer" in lymphoma and multiple myeloma: an analytic hierarchy process by ad hoc working group Gruppo Italiano trapianto di Midollo Osseo. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012;47(3):342–51.

Pasquini MC, Zhu X 2022. CIBMTR. Summary slides – HCT trends and survival data current uses and outcomes of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: CIBMTR summary slides. Available http://www.cibmtr.org. Accessed October 2022.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Bregni M, Cesaro S, Dreger P, Duarte RF, Falkenburg JH, Kröger N, Farge-Bancel D, Gaspar HB, Marsh J, Mohty M, Peters C, Sureda A, Velardi A, Ruiz de Elvira C, Madrigal A, European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Hematopoietic SCT in Europe: data and trends in 2011. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2013;48(9):1161–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2013.51.

Pierelli L, Perseghin P, Marchetti M, et al. Best practice for peripheral blood progenitor cell mobilization and collection in adults and children: results of a Società Italiana Di Emaferesi e Manipolazione Cellulare (SIDEM) and Gruppo Italiano Trapianto Midollo Osseo (GITMO) consensus process. Transfusion. 2012;52(4):893–905.

Pusic I, Jiang SY, Landua S, Uy GL, Rettig MP, Cashen AF, Westervelt P, Vij R, Abboud CN, Stockerl-Goldstein KE, Sempek DS, Smith AL, DiPersio J. Impact of mobilization and remobilization strate-

gies on a sufficient stem cell yields for autologous transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2008;14(9):1045–56.

Qayed M, McGuirk J, Myers G, Parameswaran V, Waller E, et al. Leukapheresis guidance and best practices for optimum chimeric antigen receptor T cell manufacture. Cytotherapy. 2022;24:869–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcyt.2022.05.003.

Ruggeri A, Labopin M, Sanz G, et al. Comparison of outcomes after unrelated cord blood and unmanipulated haploidentical stem cell transplantation in adults with acute leukemia. Leukemia. 2015;29(9):1891–900. Epub 2015 Apr 17

Schoemans H, Theunissen K, Maertens J, et al. Adult umbilical cord blood transplantation: a comprehensive review. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2006;38:83–93.

Snowden JA, Sánchez-Ortega I, Corbacioglu S, et al. Indications for haematopoietic cell transplantation for haematological diseases, solid tumours and immune disorders: current practice in Europe, 2022. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2022;57:1217–39. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-022-01691-w.

Sörensen J, Jarisch A, Smorta C, Köhl U, Bader P, Seifried E, Bönig H. Pediatric apheresis with a novel apheresis device with electronic interface control. Transfusion. 2013;53(4):761–5.

Styczynski J, Balduzzi A, Gil L, Labopin M, Hamladji R, Marktel S, Akif Yesilipek M, Fagioli F, Ehlert K, Matulova M, Dalle J-H, Wachowiak J, Miano M, Messina C, Diaz MA, Vermylen C, Eyrich M, Badell I, Dreger P, Gozdzik J, Hutt D, Rascon J, Dini G, Peters C. Risk of complications during hematopoietic stem cell collection in pediatric sibling donors: a prospective European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation Pediatric Diseases Working Party study. Blood. 2012;119(12):2935–42.

Sureda A, Bader P, Cesaro S, Dreger P, Duarte RF, Dufour C, Falkenburg JH, Farge-Bancel D, Gennery A, Kröger N, Lanza F, Marsh JC, Nagler A, Peters C, Velardi A, Mohty M, Madrigal A. Indications for Allo- and auto-SCT for haematological diseases, solid tumours and immune disorders: current practice in Europe, 2015. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50(8):1037–56. Epub 2015 Mar 23

Toro JJ, Morales M, Loberiza F, Ochoa-Bayona JL, Freytes CO. Patterns of use of vascular access devices in patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: results of an international survey. Support Care Cancer. 2007;15:1375–83.

Weisz VR. Risks and benefits of pediatric bone marrow donation: a critical need for research. Behav Sci Law. 1996;14(4):375–91. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9156419

World Marrow Donor Association 2022. WMDA recommendations for donor selection. Accessed 10 2022 www.wmda.info

Zhang C, Liu J, Zhong JF, Shang X. Engineering CAR-T cells. Biomarker Res. 2017;5:22.

Principles of Conditioning Therapy and Cell Infusion

6

Sara Zulu and Michelle Kenyon

Abstract

Prior to haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT), conditioning therapy is used for disease eradication, creation of space for engraftment and immunosuppression. Conditioning therapy includes combinations of chemotherapy, radiotherapy and/or immunotherapy and can be administered in the immediate days leading up to, and sometimes the days immediately following, the cell infusion. Total body irradiation (TBI) is generally used as part of conditioning regimens preceding allogeneic HSCT and is able to target sanctuary sites where some drugs cannot reach. Cancer immunotherapy treatment harnesses the body's natural defences to fight the cancer, by involving components of the immune system. Conditioning therapy can have acute and chronic side effects which vary depending on the intensity of the treatement. Nursing implications include patient education and information, toxicity assessments, close monitoring and protocolised, evidence-based action plans. Stem cell infusion is usually a safe procedure but can cause adverse reactions ranging from flushing and nausea to life-threatening anaphylaxis. There should be written policies for the administration of cellular therapy products, and nurses must have comleted training and achieved competency in order to safely administer haematopoietic stem cells.

Keywords

Haematopoietic stem cell transplant · HSCT · Conditioning therapy · Chemotherapy · Total body irradiation · TBI · Immunotherapy · Stem cell infusion

6.1 Conditioning

Conditioning therapy in haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) is central to the preparation or 'conditioning' of the patient for the transplant. The three main goals of conditioning therapy are:

1. Eradication of disease
2. Creation of 'space' in the bone marrow for donor stem cells to engraft
3. Immunosuppression to decrease the risk of rejection of the donor cells by the host cells

Conditioning therapies include combinations of chemotherapy, radiotherapy and/or immunotherapy, to create different regimes. The aim of conditioning regimens is to reduce relapse and

S. Zulu
Cancer Services, Royal Free Hospital, London, UK
e-mail: sara.zulu@nhs.net

M. Kenyon (✉)
Department of Haematological Medicine, King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK
e-mail: michelle.kenyon@nhs.net

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_6

Table 6.1 Examples of myeloablative, non-myeloablative and reduced intensity regimens

Myeloablative	Non-myeloablative	Reduced intensity
Bu/Cy/Mel (busulfan, cyclophosphamide, melphalan)	Flu/Cy/ATG (fludarabine, cyclophosphamide, ATG)	Flu/Bu (fludarabine, busulfan)
TBI/TT/Cy (TBI, thiotepa, cyclophosphamide)	Flu/TBI (fludarabine, TBI)	Flu/Mel (fludarabine, melphalan)
Cy/VP/TBI (cytarabine, etoposide, TBI)	TLI/ATG (total lymphoid irradiation, ATG)	Flu/Cy (fludarabine, cytarabine)

Adapted from EBMT (2021)

rejection and can be adjusted to reduce treatment-related toxicity. The constituents, administration days and doses can depend on the disease and type of transplant donor. Other factors to consider when deciding the optimal conditioning regime are patient age, comorbidities and prior treatment potentially influencing toxicity risk. Myeloablative (MA) conditioning regimes are the most intense and most toxic, and while still widely used, we now also have the availability of non-myeloablative (non-MA) and reduced intensity conditioning (RIC) regimes. These are less toxic and so better designed for those who would not tolerate or do not require MA regimens. Additionally, the ongoing appraisal and investigation of conditioning chemotherapy approaches has supported the establishment of post-transplant Cyclocophosphamide as a vehicle to promote engraftment in haplo-identical related donor transplants without the extensive GvHD previously associated with the haplo approach (Luznik et al. 2008).

Table 6.1 provides examples of some more commonly used regimes adapted from the EBMT Handbook (Carreras et al. 2019)

6.2 Chemotherapy

Dividing cells such as bone marrow stem cells proliferate and replicate in order to retain their function. Cytotoxic chemotherapy works by destroying rapidly dividing cells, including malignant cells. This is done by preventing the cells from dividing or by causing cell death (apoptosis) during different phases of the cell cycle.

The cell cycle comprises of five phases:

1. G0 phase—This is the resting phase which can last for months.
2. G1 phase—This is the growth phase, where RNA and protein synthesis occurs.
3. S phase—DNA is replicated so that when the cell divides, the new cell will have a copy of the genetic information. This phase lasts from 18 to 20 h.
4. G2 phase—Further protein synthesis occurs preparing the cell for mitosis; this phase lasts from 2 to 10 h.
5. M phase—The cell splits into two new cells. This phase lasts about 30–60 min.

There are three different means of classifying chemotherapy drugs: according to their cell cycle activity, their chemical groups or their mode of action. This chapter focuses on the mode of action classification, which is summarised in the table below 6.2.

6.2.1 Combination Chemotherapy

As previously mentioned all cells go through five phases during the cell cycle. Certain cytotoxic chemotherapy drugs work only at a specific phase of the cycle, whilst other drugs are not phase specific. In cytotoxic drug combinations such as those used in pre-BMT conditioning, it is logical to attack multiple phases of the cell replication cycle to prevent mutation and resistance from occurring. Combination chemotherapy allows for maximum cell kill, as each drug targets cells independently at different stages of the cell cycle.

Table 6.2 Drugs commonly used in conditioning regimes

Cytotoxic classification	Mode of action	Examples
Alkylating agents	They prevent replication by substituting alkyl groups for hydrogen atoms in cells. This inhibits DNA replication and transcription	Melphalan Iphosphomide Busulfan
Antimetabolites	These agents disrupt cellular metabolism resulting in disrupted DNA and apoptosis. Act in the S phase of the cell cycle	Methotrexate Cytarabine Fludarabine
Antimicrotubular agents	They inhibit RNA and DNA synthesis and inhibit DNA repair resulting in blockade of DNA and RNA synthesis	Daunorubicin Doxorubicin
Epipodophyllotoxins	These agents are derived from the root of the mandrake plant and act in the G2 and S phase interfering with topoisomerase II enzyme reaction	Etoposide
Vinca alkaloids	These are extracts from the pink periwinkle plant. They bind to microtubular proteins causing apoptosis acting mainly in the M phase	Vincristine Vinblastine

Adapted from Amjad et al. (2022)

If the toxicities of the chemotherapy drugs when used in are not amplified, the optimal dose can be administered without the high-grade toxicities. Therefore, the deployment of combination chemotherapy agents with different mechanisms of action and also nonoverlapping toxicities can be chosen to decrease resistance and toxicities (Amjad et al. 2022)

In order to understand the principles of conditioning chemotherapy, it is important to appreciate approaches to chemotherapy administration and the role they have in achieving the intended outcomes.

6.2.2 Cycles and Scheduling

Chemotherapy is administered in cycles according to a schedule, in order to allow for recovery of the bone marrow and immune system after administration (Brown and Cutler 2012; Grundy 2006). Malignant cells are expected to have a lengthier time to recover than normal cells. In this way, by scheduling the treatment, 'normal' cells can recover from toxicity, whilst the malignant cells will be reduced with continued cycles of treatment. Administration of chemotherapy in cycles allows for the possibility of a larger dose of drugs to be given over a short period of time.

In leukaemia and lymphoma treatment, chemotherapy is usually divided into different phases:

- Induction: The first aim of the treatment is to achieve remission. Chemotherapy is administered in order to eradicate the malignant cells.
- Consolidation (intensification): After remission is achieved, further treatment is given in order to prevent a recurrence of malignant cells. Consolidation chemotherapy can include radiotherapy or a stem cell transplant.
- Maintenance: Treatment is given in order to 'maintain' remission and prevent relapse. Maintenance treatment may include chemotherapy, hormone therapy or targeted therapy.

6.2.3 Modes of Administration

Cytotoxic therapy can be delivered via different routes. The four most used in HSCT are:

1. *Intravenous* (*IV*): This is the most common route of administration in HSCT. The drug is delivered directly into the blood stream via a cannula or a central venous access device. Risks to IV administration include extravasation and chemical phlebitis (chemical reaction to the vein causing hardening of the view or cording).
2. *Subcutaneous*: This is administered as an injection under the skin. Risks include irritation to the surrounding tissue, trauma (which could be due to low platelet count) or infection.

3. *Oral:* This route is usually self-administered. It is important that the patient is able to swallow, has sufficient manual dexterity and is compliant. Risks including vomiting after a given dose can reduce bioavailability.
4. *Intrathecal* (*IT*): This is administration by lumbar puncture into the cerebrospinal fluid to treat or prevent disease in the central nervous system (CNS). Intrathecal administration can be fatal if the incorrect type of cytotoxic agent is used, i.e. vinca alkaloids. National guidance has been publicised for the safe administration of IT chemotherapy.

6.2.4 Side Effects and Nursing Implications

- Chemotherapy side effects can be acute or chronic.
- Chemotherapy destroys not only malignant cells but also rapidly dividing 'normal' cells. The 'normal' cells that are most frequently affected include bone marrow cells, hair follicles, mucosal lining of the GI tract and skin, fertility and germinal cells.
- Nursing implications involve patient education and information, toxicity assessments, close monitoring and action plans.
- Chapters 10 and 11 discuss acute complications and supportive care in more detail.

6.3 Radiotherapy

Radiotherapy in HSCT is used as part of lymphoma treatment, as prophylaxis and treatment of disease and as palliative treatment for myeloma and lymphoma. Radiotherapy uses ionising radiation to control or kill malignant cells.

6.3.1 Total Body Irradiation

Total body irradiation (TBI) alongside high-dose chemotherapy helps to kill off leukaemia, lymphoma or myeloma cells in the bone marrow. This allows the patient to be in a preparation phase to receive the donor stem cells as part of the recovery stage of the treatment.

TBI is widely used as part of myeloablative, reduced intensity and non-myeloablative conditioning regimens preceding HSCT. As well as eradicating disease, immunosuppressive effect and creating space for donor cells to engraft; TBI is able to target sanctuary sites such as the CNS or gonads where some drugs cannot reach.

Most centres use a linear accelerator machine as a source of radiation. Patients are positioned either on their side or in a lateral position at a calculated distance from the machine. TBI is delivered in various doses and scheduling. The dose can be single (1–8 Gy total dose), fractionated (10–14 Gy total dose over 3 days) or hyperfractionated (14–15 Gy total dose over 4 days). As with chemotherapy scheduling, fractionated doses of TBI minimise toxicity (Carreras et al. 2019).

Some centres use lead shielding blocks to protect parts of the body such as the lungs and eyes; however, shielding organs could potentially shield leukaemic cells, so many centres opt not to do this.

6.3.2 Side Effects and Nursing Implications

Side effects of TBI can be acute or chronic. As TBI is usually given in combination with chemotherapy, it can be difficult to differentiate between the causes of the toxicities. Immediate side effects of TBI include bone marrow suppression, alopecia, nausea, vomiting, parotid swelling and erythema.

Chronic side effects of TBI include cataracts, infertility and interstitial pneumonitis. Nursing implications involve patient education and information, toxicity assessments, close monitoring and action plans (Carreras et al. 2019).

Chapters 9 and 10 discuss acute complications and supportive care in more detail.

6.4 Monoclonal Antibodies in Conditioning Therapy

There are two main agents that may be used to target T-cells prior to cell infusion to support engraftment and reduce risk of GvHD.

Alemtuzumab, otherwise called CAMPATH-1H, is a humanized monoclonal antibody directed against the CD52 antigen of lymphocytes (T-cells) for depletion of donor and recipient T-cells to prevent graft-versus-host disease and graft rejection.

Anti-thymocyte Globulin (ATG) is an important in vivo T-cell depletion strategy, which reduces the risk of graft-versus-host disease in HLA-matched or -mismatched donor allografting.

However, while these approaches effectively target alloreactive T cells, this is at the expense of potentially increasing the risk of post-haematopoietic cell transplantation infections and delayed immune reconstitution (Nishihori et al. 2016).

6.5 Paediatric Considerations

6.5.1 Conditioning

There are differences between adult and paediatric patients' conditioning. Children can generally tolerate side effects better than adults, and higher doses may be used. On the other hand, conditioning regimens affect growth and endocrine development of the child.

Studies so far indicate that reduced intensity conditioning (RIC) in haematopoietic cell transplantation may have an important role in treating children with primary immune deficiencies: such regimens can be used without severe toxicity in patients with pre-transplant infections or severe pulmonary or hepatic disease. RIC has become a standard of care and has extended the offer of allogeneic transplantation to many patients who were previously considered ineligible for this procedure (Chiesa and Veys 2014).

Disease-specific treatment protocols are described in the EBMT Handbook (Ch 13) (Carreras et al. 2019). Chemotherapy and radiation therapy side effects are discussed in more detail in this textbook in Chap. 8.

6.5.2 Chemotherapy

Children in general tolerate side effects better than adults, so higher total doses may be used (Satwani et al. 2008).

When treating paediatric patients, prescriptions should be made by body surface area (BSA) mg/m^2 or mg/kg using *recent weight and height*.

6.5.3 Total Body Irradiation

TBI has severe side effects when administered to children and adolescents, and it should be avoided, whenever possible. The risk for secondary malignancies is significantly higher compared to pharmacological conditioning. Most teams use conditioning regimens that do not involve TBI (Carreras et al. 2019).

When TBI is used, it is commonly given in fractions (two doses per day) to minimise the side effects.

Paediatric patients need age-appropriate preparation for radiotherapy. This can be done by a play therapist, but if there is no such professional, it should be done by a nurse. Preparations should be started well in advance where possible to allow the patient and parents ask questions. Children may choose to listen to music or fairy tales whilst having TBI. Immobilisation is a prerequisite for accurate radiotherapy, so anaesthesia is required for younger children.

6.6 Cell Infusion

Cell infusion processes and procedures are largely the same for adults and paediatrics and are discussed together in this chapter.

Haematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) can be procured from the patient (autologous) or from a donor (allogeneic or cord blood).

HSCs procured from the patient are almost always sourced from peripheral blood during apheresis (see Chap. 5).

HSCs procured from a donor can be sourced from the peripheral blood (apheresis), bone marrow or umbilical cord.

After harvesting, HSCs can be stored using cryopreservation. Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) is a common cryopreservative used in the storage of HSCs.

Documented confirmation of HSCT donor fitness or available cell therapy product is required prior to commencing conditioning therapy to ensure that conditioning therapy is followed by the timely infusion of the intended cellular product. The only exception to this is donor lymphocyte infusion, although confirmed dates of donation and available product are still of course necessary to planning the patient infusion. There are a number of basic principles to follow for safe infusion that are outlined in this section. However, each centre has its own specific Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) which must be referred to for local guidance.

The two main product categories are fresh or cryopreserved with different considerations for each.

There are minimum documentation requirements. These should be signed and with copies filed or scanned to the patient record:

- Prescription: The cell product prescription will specify the number of bags to be infused
- Cell infusion record: Each product infusion must be documented on a cell infusion record or worksheet with cell product information, infusion duration of each bag or unit and any infusion issues at the bedside or side effects observed by the registered nurse.

Prior to commencing the cell infusion there are a number of preparation steps at the patient bedside. The following list is an example of the equipment needed, and each centre will have its own checklist to ensure the correct preparation has taken place.

Equipment

Automatic blood pressure cuff	250mL bag of normal saline (500mL bag if patient is to receive more than 5 bags of the product)
O2 saturation monitor	Blood product infusion Y- tubing with 170 micron filter
O2 and nasal prongs	Emergency trolley with crash medications

Example of procedures between transplant unit nursing team and stem cell laboratory

PROCEDURE for Patient Preparation by Registered Nurse

- On the day of cell infusion, contact stem cell laboratory should confirm cell infusion time (this may be dependent on chemotherapy excretion or cell arrival if fresh unrelated donor cell infusion)
- Administer the pre-medications as per protocol orders
- Prime giving set and filters with normal saline attached to one Y-extension, and attach tubing to the large lumen of patient's Central Venous Catheter Access Device. (CVAD)
- Record baseline oxygen saturation, pulse, blood pressure and temperature
- Once the product arrives on unit, a certified registered nurse checks the infusion record or worksheet accompanying cells to verify the patient information, with the patient notes, the patient and the patient armband

PROCEDURE for Preparation by Stem Cell Laboratory Technician

- Set up dry shipper and water bath outside patient's room.
- Stem cell technician verifies the cell therapy product with the nurse or physician

Infusion: Key Points

For cryopreserved products, thaw one bag at a time

Upon completion of thawing perform visual inspection of bag and contents

Infuse cells quickly after thawing to optimise viability, documenting infusion start and finish time for each bag on the cell infusion record aiming to complete each bag in <10 min

Monitor vital signs throughout the cell infusion and continue to monitor once complete

6.6.1 Adverse Reactions

An adverse reaction is defined as a noxious and unintended response suspected or demonstrated to be caused by the collection or administration of a cellular therapy product or by the product itself (EBMT 2021).

The stem cell infusion is a generally safe procedure, but it can cause a variety of adverse reactions ranging from flushing and nausea to life-threatening reactions. It is imperative that the healthcare team is trained for early identification and managing of possible adverse reactions. Nurses must obtain baseline vital signs including temperature, breath sounds, pulse oximetry, weight and fluid status prior to and during the cell infusion.

Possible adverse reactions associated with stem cell infusion vary according to whether the cells have been cryopreserved or are infused as fresh:

- *Fresh*
  - Allergic reaction
  - Haematolytic transfusion reaction
  - Fluid overload
  - Micropulmonary emboli
  - Infection
- *Preserved*
  - Bad taste in the mouth, nausea and vomiting (DMSO)
  - Arrhythmia hypertension
  - Haemoglobinuria
  - Allergic reaction
  - Haemolytic transfusion reaction
  - Fluid overload
  - Micropulmonary emboli
  - Infection (Costa Bezerra Freire et al. 2014; Tomlinson and Kline 2010; Truong et al. 2016; Vidula et al. 2015)

6.6.2 Nursing Care: Pre-, During and Post Stem Cell Infusion

6.6.2.1 Pre-infusion Assessment

Maintain a Safe Environment

Ensure that your patient is prepared and the room is organised out in a way that you have access to the patient and you have access to everything you need including oxygen and suction. The patient should be nursed on a bed during the stem cell infusion, in case of severe allergic reaction.

Baseline Observations

Record baseline observations in order to assess the patient's physiological status during and post infusion.

Patient Preparation for Infusion

If patients are receiving cells previously cryopreserved with DMSO, they should receive a premedication with antihistamine, antipyretics and anti-emetics. The nurse should discuss the procedure including length of time, how the patient may feel and what to tell the nurse if they experience any of the common side effects. Encourage your patient to tell you how they feel during the entire procedure, to ensure adverse incidents are spotted, to offer reassurance or to ensure side effects are managed.

IV Line Care

Check the IV line for patency. On the whole, patients undertaking a stem cell infusion will have a permanent, central line in situ. Common lines used for this treatment are PICC lines and Hickman lines. Ensure aseptic non-touch technique is used to prevent the risk of infection.

Toileting

Discuss with the patient and encourage toileting prior to starting the procedure in order to minimise interruption to the stem cell infusion and also ensure safety for the patient.

Psychological Support

Day zero can be a momentous occasion for someone who requires a stem cell transplantation. Patients may experience a range of emotions,

from elation through to distress, anxiety, vulnerability and helplessness. Using simple techniques such as discussing the procedure, and listening and offering reassurance may help to reduce patients anxiety.

6.6.2.2 During Stem Cell Infusion

IV Line Care

Ensure aseptic non-touch technique is used to prevent the risk of infection.

Physiological Monitoring

Should be carried out at least every 10–15 min and increased if there are any concerns with the patients' condition during the infusion. O_2 saturations are monitored constantly during infusion. Report and treat problems as they arise (i.e. drop in saturations, give O_2 as prescribed)

Assess for Potential Side Effects

Patients can have mild to severe reactions to a cell infusion. Autologous stem cells tend to be cryopreserved. Patients can experience allergic reactions including nausea, flushing, rash, chest tightness, shortness of breath and chills. For anaphylaxis, follow your centre guidelines for managing an anaphylaxis event. For other side effects, the infusion can be slowed down according to how the patient tolerates the infusion. Reassure the patient and treat the side effects as they occur.

6.6.2.3 Post Stem Cell Infusion

Physiological Monitoring

Assess for later effects of the cell infusion. Observations should be performed half hourly for the next 2 h, then hourly for another 2 h, and four hourly thereafter.

Documentation

In addition to completing the cell infusion record and signing the prescription for cell infusion, the bedside nurse should document the care event in patients' medical records.

6.6.3 JACIE Standards

The JACIE process has been explained in detail in Chap. 1. JACIE Standards give clear and detailed information around safe administration of cell therapy products. Nurses must have training and have achieved competency for administration of cellular therapy products.

Each centre should have written policies addressing safe administration of cellular therapy products. This includes policies for determining the appropriate volume and the appropriate dose of red blood cells, cryoprotectants and other additives as well as for the infusion of ABO-incompatible red blood cells in allogeneic cellular therapy products. Two qualified persons shall verify the identity of the recipient, the product and the order (prescription) for administration (JACIE standards B7.6).

For more detailed information, please visit the www.jacie.org.

References

Amjad MT, Chidharla A, Kasi A. Cancer chemotherapy. [Updated 2022 Mar 3]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island: StatPearls Publishing; 2022. Available from https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK564367/.

Carreras E, Dufour C, Mohty M, Kröger N, editors. The EBMT handbook hematopoietic stem cell transplantation and cellular therapies. Berlin: Springer Open; 2019. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-02278-5.

Brown M, Cutler T. Haematology nursing. Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell; 2012.

Chiesa R, Veys P. Reduced-intensity conditioning for allogeneic stem cell transplant in primary immune deficiencies. Expert Rev Clin Immunol. 2014;8:255–67. https://doi.org/10.1586/eci.12.9.

Costa Bezerra Freire N, et al. Adverse reactions related to hematopoietic stem cell infusion. J Nurs UFPE Online. 2014;9:391–8.

EBMT, editor. FACT-JACIE International Standards for hematopoietic cellular therapy product collection, processing, and administration. 8th ed. Paris: EBMT; 2021. https://www.ebmt.org/8th-edition-fact-jacie-standards.

Grundy M. Nursing in haematological oncology. 2nd ed. Edinburgh: Ballière Tindall; 2006.

Luznik L, O'Donnell PV, Symons HJ, Chen AR, Leffell MS, Zahurak M, Gooley TA, Piantadosi S, Kaup M,

Ambinder RF, and Huff CA. HLA-haploidentical bone marrow transplantation for hematologic malignancies using nonmyeloablative conditioning and high-dose, posttransplantation cyclophosphamide. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2008;14(6):641–50.

Nishihori T, Al-Kadhimi Z, Hamadani M, Kharfan-Dabaja MA. Antithymocyte globulin in allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation: benefits and limitations. Immunotherapy. 2016;8(4):435–47. https://doi.org/10.2217/imt.15.128. PMID: 26973125.

Satwani P, Cooper N, Rao K, et al. Reduced intensity conditioning and allogeneic stem cell transplantation in childhood malignant and non-malignant diseases. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;46:173–82.

Tomlinson D, Kline NE. Pediatric oncology nursing: advanced clinical handbook. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2010.

Truong TH, Moorjani R, Dewey D, Guilcher GMT, Prokopishyn NL, Lewis VA. Adverse reactions during stem cell infusion in children treated with autologous and allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51:680–6.

Vidula N, et al. Adverse events during hematopoietic stem cell infusion: analysis of the infusion product. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2015;15:157–62.

Further Reading

Systemic Anti Cancer Therapy (SACT) Passport – a standardised and portatbale approach to training and competency. https://www.england.nhs.uk/atlas_case_study/systematic-anti-cancer-therapy-sact-passport-a-standardised-and-portable-approach-to-training-and-competency/.

Good practice guide for pediatric radiotherapy. The Royal College of Radiologists, 2018. https://www.rcr.ac.uk/publication/good-practice-guide-paediatric-radiotherapy-second-edition.

Cell Therapy, Nursing Implications and Care

7

Ruth Clout, John Murray, Maria Farrell, Daphna Hutt, and Michelle Kenyon

Abstract

Over recent years cellular therapy has seen substantial progress across Europe, particularly cell-based immunotherapy/ immune effector cells (IECs), with the approval of autologous CD19 CAR-T products for patients with relapsed/refractory B-cell malignancies-diffuse large B cell lymphoma, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (paediatric, teenage and young adult) and mantle cell lymphoma). Whilst this development has delivered benefit to patients with poor risk disease, there is potential for associated toxicities which require careful patient selection, assessment, monitoring, treatment and follow-up care. Nurses play a crucial role in supporting patients throughout this pathway. This chapter focuses on autologous cell-based immunotherapies (CAR-T) process, infusion, toxicities, management and the patient pathway, whilst also exploring non-cell-based immunotherapies, cell therapy in solid tumours and the role of clinical trials.

Keywords

Chimeric antigen receptor therapy (CAR-T) · Tumour infiltrating lymphocytes (TILS) · T cell receptor (TCR) · Immunotherapy · Immune effector cells (IECs) · Cytokine release syndrome (CRS) · Immune effector cell associated encephalopathy syndrome (ICANS) · Nursing management

7.1 What Is Cellular Therapy

The term cellular therapy is a label that can be applied to treatments that aim to introduce new, healthy cells into the recipient's body to replace diseased or missing one. The cells may be stem cells, progenitors, or mature cells, such as T lymphocytes; and these T lymphocytes may be unmanipulated, such as donor lymphocyte infusion (DLI) or sorted and/or cultured and/ or genetically manipulated, such as CAR-T cells.

Cell-based immunotherapies add to the broader field of immunotherapies, now populated with monoclonal antibodies including immune checkpoint inhibitors, immune-conjugates, and

R. Clout (✉) · J. Murray · M. Farrell
The Christie NHS Foundation Trust, Manchester, UK
e-mail: ruthelizabeth.clout@nhs.net; j.murray10@nhs.net; maria.farrell1@nhs.net

D. Hutt
Department of Paediatric Haematology-Oncology and BMT, Edmond and Lily Safra Children Hospital, Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel
e-mail: dhutt@sheba.health.gov.il

M. Kenyon
Department of Haematological Medicine, King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK
e-mail: michelle.kenyon@nhs.net

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_7

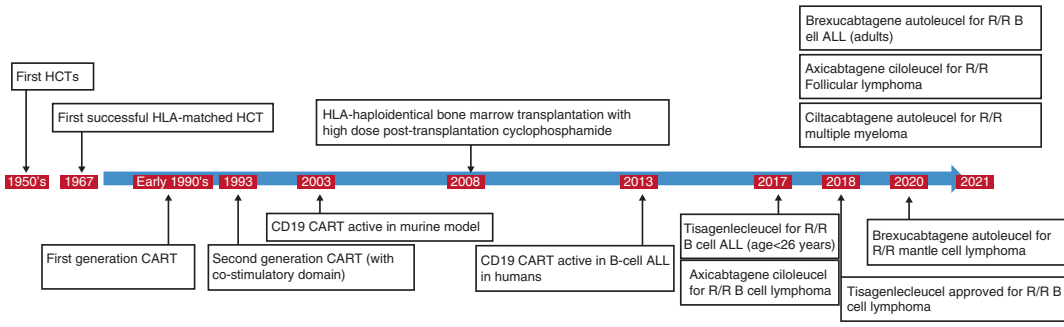


Fig. 7.1 Advances in HCT and IEC (from Jain et al. 2021)

bi- and tri-specific antibodies (Kröger et al. 2022), which are briefly described below.

Chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy (CAR-T) represents a new class of medicinal products that are genetically engineered from T cells. This is a rapidly evolving field, as outlined in the timeline in Fig. 7.1 against the backdrop of HSCT. It is expected that many other forms of immune effector cells-based therapies will follow.

Basic Principles

The immune system has a natural ability to detect and destroy abnormal cells and in doing so prevents the development of many cancers.

However, cancer cells are sometimes able to avoid detection and destruction by the immune system by using a variety of strategies.

Cancer Cells May

- Reduce the expression of tumour antigens on their surface, making it harder for the immune system to see them
- Express proteins on their surface that inactivate or neutralise immune cells
- Encourage cells in the surrounding environment to release substances that suppress immune responses and help to promote tumour cell growth and survival

Non-cell-Based Immunotherapy

This is a type of cancer treatment that is designed to harness the body's natural defences to fight the cancer by involving or using components of the immune system.

Some cancer immunotherapies consist of antibodies that bind to, and inhibit the function of, proteins expressed by cancer cells. Other cancer immunotherapies include vaccines and T cell infusions.

Several approaches are described briefly below.

Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies, also known as mAbs, are substances developed in a laboratory that seek out and bind to specifically selected proteins wherever they may be in the body. The mAbs are structured by the binding of two heavy and two light polypeptide chains by a disulphide bond.

There are four different types of monoclonal antibodies outlined (see Table 7.1) (from Bayer 2019).

Several mechanisms of action exist including impeding tumour cell survival cascades, inhibiting tumour growth by interfering with tumour angiogenesis, eluding programmed cell death, and evading immune checkpoints (Bayer 2019).

Adverse reactions to mAbs are most often experienced by treatment-naïve patients. While anaphylactic reactions are rare with mAbs, infusion reactions are relatively common and while usually mild, they manifest as chills, urticaria, dyspnoea, nausea, headache or abdominal pain (Guan et al. 2015)

Table 7.1 4 Different types of monoclonal antibody (from Bayer 2019)

Type	Key concepts	Example
Murine	Uses harvested B lymphocytes from mice that are fused with an immortal myeloma cell line lacking the hypoxanthine-guanine-phosphoribosyl transferase gene Allergic reactions are common in humans, with potential limited benefit because of a short half-life	Blinatumomab
Chimeric	Approximately 65% human derived, 35% murine derived, uses murine antigen-specific variable region, and heavy and light chains of human sp Demonstrate extended half-life in humans with reduced immunogenicity; still able to induce anti-drug antibodies	Rituximab
Humanised	Murine hypervariable regions of the light and heavy chains are fused onto a human Ab framework approximately 95% human Has decreased production of anti-drug antibodies; limitations because the process to create is difficult	Alemtuzumab
Human	Fully human monoclonal antibodies Less antigenic and better tolerated; appear to have the longest half-life in humans	Daratumumab

Immune Checkpoint Inhibitors

Immune checkpoints are pathways embedded into the immune system that keep immune responses in check. They help to limit the strength and duration of immune responses and prevent strong responses that might damage normal as well as abnormal cells. Tumours appear to hijack certain immune checkpoint pathways and their proteins and use them to suppress normal immune responses.

This therapy targets the immune checkpoint pathways so that when the immune checkpoint proteins are blocked, the 'brakes' on the immune system are released and it behaves normally once again and destroys the cancer cells.

Immune checkpoint inhibitors with antibodies that target cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) and the programmed cell death protein 1 pathway (PD-1/PD-L1) have shown promising results in a variety of malignancies. Examples include Nivolumab - CTLA-4 and Pembrolizumab – PD-1, both active in Hodgkin Lymphoma.

Therapeutic Antibodies

Therapeutic antibodies are 'drug'-based antibodies produced to destroy cancer cells.

One group of therapeutic antibodies is called antibody–drug conjugate (ADC). An antibody is connected to a toxic ingredient such as a drug, toxin, or radioactive substance. When the antibody–drug conjugate (ADC) binds to the cancer cell, it is absorbed, and the toxic substance is released killing the cell.

Not all therapeutic antibodies are connected to toxic substances. Some antibodies cause cancer cells to commit suicide (apoptosis), and others can make the cancer cells more recognisable to certain immune cells (complement) and help to facilitate cell death. Examples include Inotuzumab (anti-CD22 ADC) and Gemtuzumab (anti-CD33 ADC).

Therapeutic Cancer Vaccines

Another approach to immunotherapy is the use of cancer vaccines. These vaccines are usually made from a patient's own cancer cells or from substances produced by cancer cells. It is intended that when a vaccine containing cancer-specific antigens is injected into a patient, these antigens will stimulate the immune system to attack cancer cells without causing harm to normal cells.

Cell-Based Immunotherapy or Immune Effector Cell Therapy

Cell-based immunotherapies use the cells of our immune system to eliminate cancer. Some approaches use our own selected immune cells

Table 7.2 Different types of cell-based immunotherapy (adapted from Waldman et al. 2020, Cancer Research Institute accessed Feb 2021 https://www.cancerresearch.org/en-us/immunotherapy/treatment-types/adoptive-cell-therapy)

Therapy	Description
Tumour-Infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs)	Uses naturally occurring T cells that have already infiltrated a tumour. These are isolated from biopsy, activated and expanded
Engineered T Cell receptors (TCRs)	Uses T cells from the patient and equips them with a new T cell receptor so they can target specific cancer antigens
Chimeric antigen receptor T (CAR-T) cells	Uses T cells from the patient and genetically modifies them to express a synthetic receptor known as a CAR. Here CARs bypass MHC restriction and can bind to cancer cells even if their antigens are not presented on the surface by using a target molecule e.g., CD19 on the surface of the malignant cell
Natural killer (NK) cells	Uses NK cells rather than T cells. Potential to equip NK cells with CARs is under investigation

and expand their numbers, while others involve engineering our immune cells via gene therapy to enhance their capability to fight cancer.

There are several different types of cell-based immunotherapies (see Table 7.2) (adapted from Waldman et al. 2020, Cancer Research Institute accessed Feb 2021 https://www.cancerresearch.org/en-us/immunotherapy/treatment-types/adoptive-cell-therapy).

The main focus of the chapter is primarily on CAR-T cell therapy.

7.2 Indications for Use

This is an evolving field with new indications, products and accompanying experience continuing to grow. This section offers an outline of developments to date.

In 2018 Europe saw the approval of two CD19 CAR-T products for patients with B Cell malignancies:

- Tisagenlecleucel (Kymriah®, Novartis) for relapsed/refractory paediatric B-ALL and adult large B cell lymphoma;
- Axicabtagene ciloleucel (Yescarta®, Gilead), for r/r adult large B cell lymphoma, or primary mediastinal lymphoma

European Approvals in 2021

Brexucabtagene autoleucel (Tecartus, Gilead), for r/r adult mantle cell lymphoma (Hayden et al. 2022).

- Idecabtagene Vicleucel (Abecma, BMS) for r/r multiple myeloma. It is used in adults who have received at least three prior therapies, including an immunomodulatory agent, a proteasome inhibitor and an anti-CD38 antibody and whose disease has worsened since the last treatment (European Medicines Agency 2021)

European Approvals in 2022

- Lisocabtagene Maraleucel (Breyanzi, BMS) for diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL); primary mediastinal large B cell lymphoma (PMBCL); follicular lymphoma grade 3B (European Medicines Agency 2022a)
- Ciltacabtagene Autoleucel (Carvykti, Janssen-Cilag, R/R Multiple Myeloma. It is used in adults who have received at least three prior therapies, including an immunomodulatory agent, a proteasome inhibitor and an anti-CD38 antibody and whose disease has worsened since the last treatment (European Medicines Agency 2022b)

The target for the B cell malignancies (DLBCL, mantle cell lymphoma and ALL) is CD19. Whereas for the multiple myeloma the target is the protein called B cell maturation antigen (BCMA).

CAR-T and other cell therapies are also being investigated in clinical trials for other haematological malignancies such as multiple myeloma, chronic lymphocytic leukaemia and also solid

tumours. It is expected that other forms of immune effector cells-based therapies will soon reach the market (Kröger et al. 2022).

7.3 The Role of Cellular Therapy in Solid Tumours: TCR/TILS

In the setting of solid tumour cancers immune effector cell products known as TCRs (engineered T cell receptors) and TILs (tumour infiltrating lymphocytes) are more commonly used (Li et al. 2019).

Engineered T Cell Receptors Similar to CAR-T cell therapy, TCRs are genetically engineered with a viral vector to produce an extracellular receptor which recognises molecules on the surface of cancerous cells. To do this TCR therapy utilises the cell's human leukocyte antigen (HLA), as cancers in the solid tumour setting do not have cell surface 'CDs', as seen in haematological cancers. Engineered T cell receptors will be manufactured to recognise a specific combination of cell surface HLA and neoantigens, specific to the tumour they are targeting (Zhao and Cao 2019). T cells are collected for this product in the same way as that for CAR-Ts, through the process of apheresis. Currently TCR therapy has been used in the clinical trial setting in lung, melanoma and synovial sarcomas (Clinical Trials 2022a).

Tumour Infiltrating Lymphocyte (TIL) TIL therapy utilises naturally occurring lymphocytes already found in the tumour itself and are expanded in the manufacturing laboratory to develop a product specific to that tumour and patient. As TILs come directly from the patient's tumour they are already equipped to recognise many of its surface targets (Boldt 2021).

TILs are manufactured quite differently to the products previously discussed. Initially samples of tumour tissue will be extracted and sent to the manufacturing lab. In the lab the tumour will be cut into many pieces and broken down to release the lymphocytes. These lymphocytes are then grown and expanded over time, in a medium called interleukin-2 (IL-2), with the result being an infusible product (Boldt 2021). Currently TILs have been used in the clinical trial setting in melanoma, lung and breast cancers (Clinical Trials 2022b).

Both the above products will be returned to the treatment site frozen, and after thawing are infused back to patients in the same way as CAR-T or a stem cell infusion. The toxicity profile, inclusive of cytokine release syndrome and immune cell associated neurotoxicity syndrome, is expected to be similar, and in some cases milder, to that of CAR-T cell therapy.

Currently, CAR-T cells are not used in the setting of solid tumour cancers, other than in clinical trials, due to various factors negating their success. These have been seen to include the inability to successfully navigate the complex tumour microenvironment, increased evidence of 'on target off tumour' toxicities and also, trafficking and infiltration into tumour tissue. Although many clinical trials are working to overcome these obstacles, through the blocking of cytokines and immunosuppressive cells, they are still in the early stages (Zhao and Cao 2019).

7.4 The Role of Clinical Trials/ Academic Products

The commissioning of commercial CAR-T cell products would not have been possible without the promising clinical data demonstrated in early phase trials. Many of the treatments given daily in haematology and cell therapy transplant all have a rooting in clinical trials.

Clinical trials are important for a variety of reasons. Initially their main aim is to establish if a treatment works in the way it is intended to, and what side effects it may cause. This is done

through progressing phases, starting from animal model trials to Phase 1, 2 and 3 in human clinical trials. Following this, some treatments will also be tested in a randomised control trial to establish if they work better than currently available treatments.

Aside from this, trials also play an important role in establishing the logistics of a new treatment, for example, if medicines are administered to patients in a new way, how feasible is this for both the patient and the treating team (HealthTalk.org 2019).

Currently there are over 2000 clinical trials running worldwide for the three most common products in the field of IECs (1051 for CAR-Ts, 606 for TILs and 652 for TCRs), and this isn't counting various other products under investigation, such as CAR-NK cells (Clinical Trials 2022b). TILs have the longest running history of trial activity, with their clinical significance being established as early as 1994 (Rohaan et al. 2019).

The current and future aim of IEC clinical trials is to continue to develop a solely personalised cell therapy product for a wide application of malignancies, whilst negating the known toxicity profile and obstacles of the individual products efficacy. The current landscape of clinical trials shows a range of development opportunities, which can be seen in the genetic engineering of TIL therapy to improve its functionality, the continued development of 4th Generation CARs to improve their in vivo durability, and also randomised control trials, used to establish if IECs products are more effective than currently available treatments (Rohaan et al. 2019). Additionally, research is also focused on access to "off-the-shelf" allogeneic CAR-T products, simplifying the manufacturing process and mitigating side effects, among other aims (Kröger et al. 2022).

Clinical trials have supplied a vast amount of important data, both scientifically and holistically, on the improving efficacy of IEC products. However, this data has also been able to highlight the areas in which significant progression is still required.

7.5 Patient Selection and Referral:

Patients who are considered eligible for CAR-T therapy should be assessed and discussed at local multi-disciplinary team meetings and a referral made to the CAR-T treatment centre. A National screening board may also sit to determine if the patient is suitable, review images and histology and approve that the patient is able to enter the program. Health insurance considerations may need to be satisfied in some countries. Criteria to go ahead are outlined by EBMT/EHA/JACIE (Hayden et al. 2022) and include the physical condition which should be an ECOG<2, Karnofsky or Lansky >60%. Have a life expectancy of more than 6–8 weeks, the absence of an active malignancy and not be on immunosuppressive treatment. Be free from infection, particularly viral infections.

Once accepted onto the program this triggers referral to the apheresis team with manufacturing slots booked, laboratory informed and the provisional booking of an infusion date.

7.6 Apheresis/Manufacturing/Laboratory/Chain of Identity

7.6.1 Apheresis

The production of autologous CAR-T cells requires collection of non-mobilized mature lymphocytes through apheresis of mononuclear cells (MNCs) (Tuazon et al. 2019; Mahadeo et al. 2019). Absolute lymphocyte count (ALC) thresholds to proceed with leukapheresis can vary between different CAR-T products (Mahadeo et al. 2019). The leukapheresis is similar to apheresis for extracorporeal photopheresis or for the collection of allogeneic mononuclear cells intended for post-transplant immunotherapy (donor lymphocyte infusions); no specific apheresis protocols have so far been proposed by cell processor manufacturers or by the CAR-T cell manufacturers (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018).The apheresis procedure might be technically chal-

lenging, as patients are heavily pre-treated with multiple lines of previous therapy and often have low leukocyte and lymphocyte counts (Ceppi et al. 2018). The targeted cell dose for leukapheresis can vary depending on the specific product and manufacturing process (Mahadeo et al. 2019).

Timing for apheresis is critical in most patients and should be closely coordinated with the primary physicians and CAR-T cell team, as it should be when patients recover but prior to the need for additional chemotherapy and after an appropriate washout period. This is especially challenging for patients with relapsed disease and a high blast count. The apheresis must be coordinated with the pharmaceutical company to ensure the availability of the production slot. Some products are sent fresh to the production facility where others are sent frozen.

Paediatric apheresis procedures are considered safe but challenging as it has potentially more side effects than in adults due to the small body mass and unique physiology of children. The main problems are the extracorporeal volume of the cell separator device, poor venous access and metabolic complications due to citrate toxicity (Del Fantea et al. 2018).

- The extracorporeal volume of the cell separator device is static. In low weight children (weighing less than 20–25 kg) there is a need for blood priming of the cell separator according to institutional policy.
- Good venous access is essential for the success of the apheresis procedure. The slow inlet rates may lead to delays in establishing and maintaining a stable interface, increasing both total volumes processed and procedure time. Apheresis centres have various policies regarding the required venous access. Paediatric patients may need a leukapheresis catheter for cell collection (Mahadeo et al. 2019).
- Citrate toxicity- In children, symptoms related to citrate-induced hypocalcemia must be promptly recognized and treated immediately. Aside from the classic symptoms of hypocalcaemia in low body weight children abdominal pain and restlessness may be the first signs. Children need Ca supplement IV or PO throughout the procedure.

Pre-apheresis Consultation

- Age-appropriate preparation for the procedure
- Verification of consent/assent prior to apheresis
- Coordination of the best timing for apheresis
- Assessment by apheresis nurses of patient adequacy of peripheral veins
- In low weight children assessment of the need for blood priming- according to centre policy
- CD3 enumeration for potential assessment of duration and timing of apheresis.

7.6.2 Manufacturing/Laboratory/Pharmacy/Chain of Identity

The Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer centre in New York describes how to build a CAR-T cell program, having eight essential tasks to success: Patient intake; CAR-T cell consultation service; collection, ordering, shipping and receiving; Bridging strategy; Cell infusion; Post infusion care day 0–30; Post infusion care day 30 onwards; Financing, regulatory and reporting requirements (Perica et al. 2018). This process may differ across countries and continents, but broadly speaking following this outline would result in a positive outcome for the patient and the institution.

Defined procedures aid the tracking and verification of the product identity from the point of harvest via any manipulation on site and storage prior to shipping for production. Once the T cells have been delivered to the commercial facility the product is manipulated, expanded, cryopreserved and delivered back to the host institution for infusion into the patient. Manufacturers work very closely with each centre to ensure that a chain of identity is maintained and accurate; this requires an extensive quality program and engagement from multiple MDT members (Perica et al. 2018).

CAR-T cell manufacture occurs following leukapheresis. The T cells once isolated are transduced with the CAR gene. The cells are treated, expanded in culture over approx. 1 month and sent back to the transplant centre for re-infusion. During the processing stages the cells are monitored for viability and are screened for bacterial contamination. The process may sometimes fail to produce enough product and the apheresis may need to be performed again. Once CAR-T cells are manufactured and genetically modified they become an advanced therapy medicinal product (ATMP), and the responsibility of the hospital pharmacy. Under current European Union regulations, CAR-T cell therapies fall under the advanced therapy medicinal products (ATMPs) framework. ATMPs represent a category of medicinal products defined in EU Regulation 1394/2007 (Kröger et al. 2022). Therefore, the process has tightly regulated coordination between the medical and nursing team, cellular therapy laboratory, manufacturing site and pharmacy.

7.7 Patient Preparation and Consent

All eligible patients should be counselled in clinic and provided with written and verbal information regarding the procedure. Opportunities for questions are important and the input from the specialist nursing team is vital. Prior to apheresis patients require a series of tests and assessments, the 'Work-up'. These will include a thorough examination of treatment history, physical assessment, imaging, bone marrow examination and routine blood tests, including virology. A COVID-19 screen which will need to be valid within 30 days of harvest. An absolute lymphocyte count of $>0.2 \times 10^9$/L is recommended to ensure an adequate collection. Nursing staff will perform a vein assessment and potentially the patient may require the insertion of a central venous catheter if peripheral access is poor. Once all pre-assessment tests have been satisfied the patient will be passed as eligible and suitable for treatment and then consented in clinic.

7.8 Bridging Therapy

From apheresis to infusion of CAR-T is approx. 4–6 weeks. This has obvious problems for patients, especially those with rapidly progressive and aggressive disease. In order that patients can receive CAR-T therapy they may require bridging therapy following apheresis and prior to the lymphodepleting conditioning treatment. Ideally bridging therapy should be commenced within 3 days of apheresis. The choice of therapy is determined by the MDT and considers the overall tumour burden and anatomical site of disease. The aim is for disease and symptom control rather than remission induction. Bridging therapy can be split into four categories; high dose chemotherapy; low dose chemotherapy; radiotherapy; novel agents. There should be a focus on minimal organ toxicity and infection (Hayden et al. 2022). These therapies may all be employed and each institution will have a preference, please refer to your own SOP. Examples of bridging therapy; in high grade lymphoma frequently used bridging therapies include radiotherapy to bulky disease and Polatuzumab with Rituximab and Bendamustine; in mantle cell lymphoma frequently used bridging therapies including a BTK inhibitor with radiotherapy to bulk; in acute leukaemia frequently used bridging therapies include Inotuzumab or a Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors. CD19 targeted bridging therapy should, however, be avoided.

7.9 Product Receipt

Once the CAR-T products are genetically modified there will be coordination between the manufacturing facility and cellular therapy centre. The unit receiving the CAR-T cell products will need to have suitable storage containers and facilities for genetically manipulated material; depending on national legislation, a storage site may need regulatory approval as gene therapy medicinal products are also genetically modified organisms (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018). On receipt of the cells from the manufacturing facility the laboratory will need to ensure the following: (1)

inspection of the dry shipper seal for breaches; (2) review of the temperature log throughout transportation; (3) inspection of product integrity; (4) CAR-T identity label checks, prior to completion of receipt forms (Hayden et al. 2022).

7.10 Lymphodepleting Chemotherapy (LD), Product Thawing and Infusion

7.10.1 Lymphodepleting Chemotherapy (LD)

The patient will be admitted to either an ambulatory care or ward setting in a qualified cellular therapy unit. If the centre does not have established policies and infrastructure to allow for safe outpatient-based administration, hospitalization is recommended during this period to ensure close monitoring and optimal hydration (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018).

The patient will receive lymphodepleting chemotherapy (also known as conditioning chemotherapy) which is used prior to product infusion. The purpose of LD is to help create space in the immune system for the infused CAR-T cells to expand and proliferate. Patients in most protocols will receive lymphodepleting chemotherapy, which creates a favourable immune environment for adoptively transferred CAR-T cells, improving their in vivo expansion, subsequent persistence, and clinical activity (Hay and Turtle 2017).

The choice of LD is dependent on the CAR-T product or clinical trial protocol. Fludarabine and cyclophosphamide are the two main chemotherapy drugs used in combination. Fludarabine dosing is consistent between products and indications (25–30 mg/m^2/day ×3 days) whilst cyclophosphamide schedules differ. Other chemotherapy agents can be used depending on the product or trial, these include drugs such as Bendamustine, or Cytarabine & Etoposide. LD conditioning is usually administered on a 3-to-5 days schedule prior to the infusion of the CAR-T cells (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018), allowing two rest days prior to product infusion.

The medical and nursing team should ensure the patient has received all appropriate investigations that are required on admission before commencing LD. Considerations prior to commencing LD are set out in the Management of Adults and Children receiving CAR-T cell therapy EBMT guidelines (Hayden et al. 2022) these cover blood parameters, disease status, cardiac function, clinical condition and receipt of CAR-T product.

7.10.2 Product Thawing and Infusion

The patient will receive a medical review and need to be deemed fit to proceed. Complications following LD can develop; The EBMT guidelines (Hayden et al. 2022) outline complications which should be ruled out prior to infusion.

There will be coordination between the laboratory, pharmacy and the clinical area, agreeing a time for infusion. Patients will have been informed and consented prior to admission. However further preparation of the patient and reconfirmation of information prior to product infusion is considered good practice. The patient will have appropriate intravenous access (a central line or peripheral cannula), written, verbal information and confirmation of consent and an explanation of the procedure ensuring any questions are answered.

Product infusion has some differences to stem cell infusion; these should be outlined in the local standard operating procedure. Centres will have a thawing device and an agreed process on where thawing takes place, and which staff are responsible and competent for this. Product thawing is performed in a pharmacy clean room, cell therapy unit or patient bedside, double wrapped in a watertight plastic bag, using thawing devices according to manufacturer's instructions and local regulations (automated thawing device, 37 ± 2 °C water bath, or dry-thaw method) (Hayden et al. 2022). The current licensed products are in bags; however clinical trials may differ with the use of vials requiring syringing. The trial protocol needs to be followed ensuring that thawing and infusion meet the requirements of the trial.

Table 7.3 Process of product infusion

Confirmation of infusion time, ideally in daytime hours
Premedication with paracetamol and antihistamines (avoiding corticosteroids)
Attach appropriate giving set to central line or cannula (standard blood transfusion 170–200 microns sets are acceptable). There should not be a leucocyte depletion filter, and fluid infusion sets are not suitable
Check if patient identifiers match with the prescription and product documentation
Remove the product and verify if it matches the patient, prescription and documentation
The product should be inspected prior to thawing to ensure bag integrity and placed in sterile outer bag
If thawing is conducted in a water bath, the spike ports that protrude out of the water must be carefully massaged to ensure that they thaw in synchrony with the rest of the product. Additionally the much smaller volumes of CAR-T cell products only require very short thawing times. (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018)
Once the product is thawed the bag should be carefully be connected to the giving, using aseptic non-touch technique ANTT
The patient should have observations recorded before, during and after the infusion, with care taken to the recognition of reactions. Documentation of timings are recorded, this includes removal of product from the shipper, thawing start and end time, infusion start and end time
Following infusion, the vial/bag and giving set should be disposed of as a GMO biohazard in compliance with institutional policies and country-specific regulations (Hayden et al. 2022)
Confirmation of infusion time, ideally in daytime hours

Product Infusion

The process of product infusion is outlined, see Table 7.3.

7.11 Potential Complications and Nursing Implications

Patients are at risk post CAR-T infusion of complications; there are short term (up to 30 days) and long term (post 30 days). The nurse requires knowledge and understanding of when these may occur, what monitoring is required, appropriate interventions and escalation, playing an essential role in patient education and management.

Short-Term Effects

During the immediate phase following infusion there are clear documented toxicities that nurses need to be aware of. These include tumour lysis syndrome, infection, neutropenia, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, cytokine release syndrome (CRS), immune effector cell associated neurological syndrome (ICANS) and haemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis (HLH)/Macrophage Activation Syndrome (MAS). It is recommended that patients are admitted to hospital during the early post-infusion period unless high-level ambulatory care and rapid readmission pathways are already well established, as in centres already providing ambulatory haematopoietic cell transplantation (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018).

7.11.1 Tumour Lysis Syndrome (TLS)

There were some cases of TLS reported in the pivotal CAR-T trials (Maude et al. 2018; Neelapu et al. 2017; Schuster et al. 2019). For patients with significant disease burden, especially ALL with extensive marrow infiltration or Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma with bulky adenopathy, many groups start allopurinol for TLS prophylaxis prior to chemotherapy or cell infusion (Brudno and Kochenderfer 2016). There should be careful monitoring of the patient for TLS following CAR-T infusion utilising standard protocols.

7.11.2 Infection Risk, Neutropenia, Anaemia and Thrombocytopenia

Most patients who present for CD19 CAR-T cell immunotherapy have poor immune function due to both the effects of their malignancy and prior cytotoxic treatments (Hill et al. 2017).

Patients will have received lymphodepleting chemotherapy and therefore develop neutropenia, anaemia and thrombocytopenia. Their risk

factors should be assessed and appropriate management and supportive treatment commenced during this phase. During the period of neutropenia the patient is at most risk of bacterial infections, or respiratory viral infection. Invasive fungal infections are rare; however there are increased risk factors for B-ALL with prior allo-HCT; prior fungal infection and prior long-term/high-dose steroid exposure (Gudiol et al. 2021). Prophylaxis medication will be commenced on admission as per the cellular therapy centres local policy and should include Antiviral (Aciclovir), anti-pneumocystis (Co-trimoxazole or Pentamidine). Systemic anti-fungal prophylaxis if the patient has risk factors for developing a fungal infection. Recommendations for prophylaxis and timings are set further detailed in the EBMT best practice guidelines (Hayden et al. 2022).

The nurse needs to respond promptly to the development of a fever or other signs of infection, ensuring that appropriate intravenous antibiotics are commenced. This is particularly important given the overlap in some of the cellular therapy related toxicities.

7.11.3 Cytokine Release Syndrome (CRS)

The nurse has a fundamental role in understanding, recognising and the management of CRS. CRS is the most common acute adverse event associated with CAR-T cell therapy. It's a systemic inflammatory response triggered by the release of cytokines by CAR-T cells following their activation upon tumour recognition in vivo (Lee et al. 2018). The cytokines implicated in CRS may be directly produced by the infused CAR-T cells, or other immune cells such as macrophages that might produce cytokines in response to cytokines produced by the infused CAR-T cells (Brudno and Kochenderfer 2016). There are many cytokines which can be released in CRS; one of the notable ones is interleukin 6, which has been shown to correlate to severe CRS. Other cytokines and chemokines such as IL-8, IL-10, IL-15, IFN-g, and MCP-1 have also been shown to associate with severe CRS (Neelapu 2019), additionally CRS can lead to increased C-reactive protein (CRP) and hyperferritinemia are useful laboratory markers. CRS can progress to life-threatening vasodilatory shock, capillary leak, hypoxia and end-organ dysfunction (Frey and Porter 2019).

The cases of CRS varies dependent on the product, the disease characteristics and the grading system which has been used, the reported incidence has ranged from 30–100% and for CRS grade 3 or 4 from 10–30% (Frey and Porter 2019). These variations will continue due to more clinical trials and potential future licensed products.

There have been varying grading systems used to recognise and grade CRS. The ASTCT consensus grading (2018) modified other grading systems and is widely used across cellular therapy centres; however other grading systems may be used in clinical trials for example. The ASTCT guidelines for the diagnosis of CRS are applicable to adults and children alike; however, high vigilance for diagnosis might be especially important among children and AYAs (Ragoonanan et al. 2021).

The Common Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events CTCAE. Nurses caring for cellular therapy patients will need to know how to use the grading system, and necessary interventions and escalation.

CRS is characterised by fever ≥38 °C, haemodynamic instability and hypoxemia. Severity is graded according to the ASTCT consensus criteria (below) and the differential diagnosis includes neutropenic sepsis. Empiric, broad-spectrum IV antibiotics should be commenced (Hayden et al. 2022). Local standard operating procedures will outline the management, intervention and appropriate escalation. The common symptoms of CRS are not unique to CRS. Practitioners must be cautious and exclude other causes of fever, hypotension, hemodynamic instability, and/or respiratory distress, such as an overwhelming infection (Lee et al. 2018).

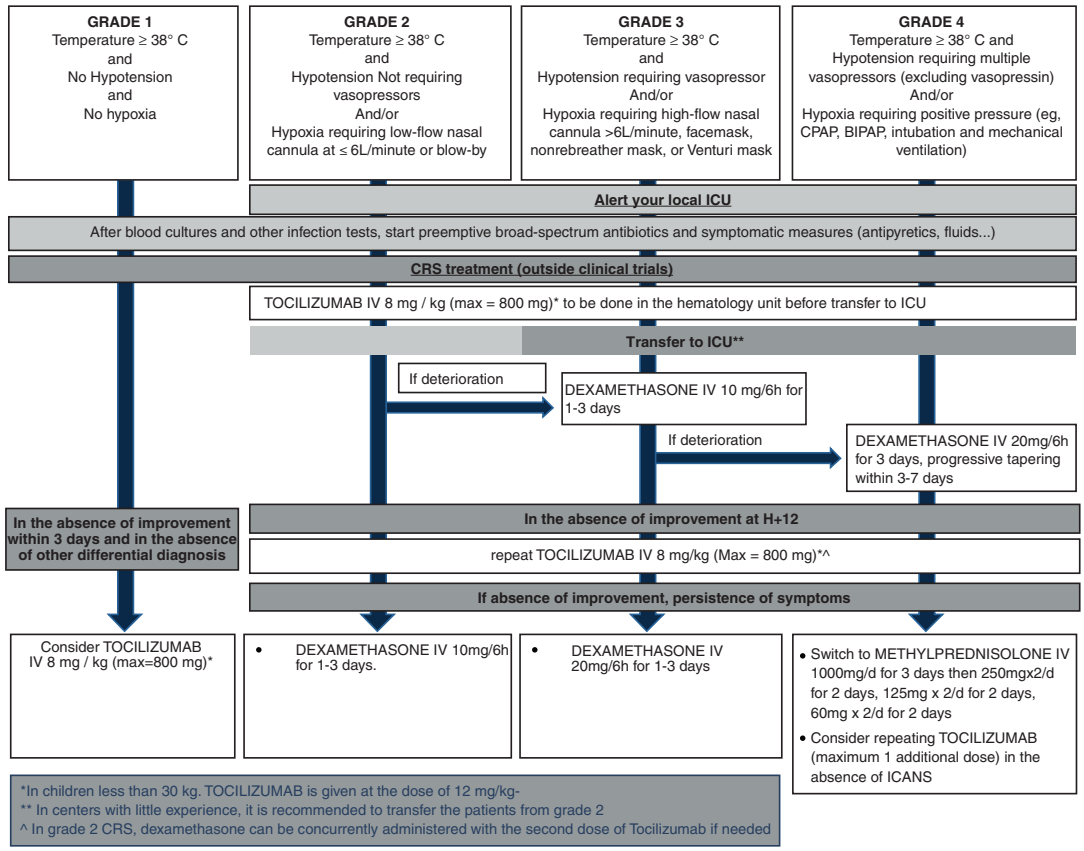


Fig. 7.2 Algorithm outlining the grading and management of cytokine release syndrome (CRS) (adapted from Hayden et al. 2022)

CRS can either be self-limited (requiring only supportive care with antipyretics and intravenous fluids) or it may require intervention with anticytokine-directed therapy such as corticosteroids or tocilizumab (Frey and Porter 2019).

Tocilizumab is licensed for first line use and is a monoclonal antibody treatment against IL6 receptor. It has been shown to be effective for most patients; those who do not respond to an initial dose often clinically improve with a second administration and/or the addition of corticosteroids. In addition to being an effective tool to manage CRS, tocilizumab is attractive because blocking the IL-6 receptor may provide toxicity management without impacting the antitumor effect of the CAR-Ts (Frey and Porter 2019).

Cellular therapy centres should have doses of Tocilizumab readily available for patients at risk of developing CRS. Corticosteroids are used for second line treatment. In early CAR-T studies, they reported reduced expansion and lacking persistence of CAR-T cells in patients who received corticosteroids (Davila et al. 2014). However, in subsequent studies early steroid use has not been associated with detrimental effects on clinical remission rates or CAR-T cell persistence (Topp et al. 2019; Liu et al. 2020). Figure 7.2 is an algorithm outlining the grading and management of cytokine release syndrome (CRS) (EBMT/EHA/JACIE best practice guidelines; Hayden et al. 2022)

Grade 1 The patient will have a temperature >38 °C, and no hypotension or hypoxia.

Nursing management will consist of blood cultures and infection management starting broad spectrum antibiotics, regular recording of vital signs, CRS grading, fluid balance monitoring.

Patient will have their bloods monitored for full blood count, urea and electrolytes, and liver function, C-reactive protein, ferritin and coagulation.

Grade 2 The patient will have a temperature >38 °C, and hypotension (not requiring vasopressors) and/or hypoxia requiring low flow nasal cannula at <6 l/min or blow by.

Nursing management will be the same as grade 1, with rationale for increasing the frequency of vital signs and fluid monitoring. Hypotension can be supported with careful fluid replacement which should be monitored cautiously given the risk of vasodilatation, capillary leak and consequent oedema in patients with progressive CRS (Schuster et al. 2019). In children hypotension should be accounting to age and the patient's individual baseline. Indications for Tocilizumab are met at grade 2. The patient can be managed on the CAR-T unit; however, there should be discussions with critical care colleagues and careful monitoring to assess for deterioration. When two doses of tocilizumab (8 mg/kg) fail to control CRS, dexamethasone should be administered (Hayden et al. 2022).

Grade 3 The patient will have a temperature >38 °C, and hypotension requiring vasopressors and/or hypoxia requiring high flow nasal cannula at >6 l/min, facemask, non-rebreather mask or venturi mask. The patient should be managed in a critical care unit, where there is support to deliver vasopressors and or high flow oxygen.

Grade 4 The patient will have a temperature >38 °C, and hypotension requiring multiple vasopressors (excluding vasopressin) and/or hypoxia requiring positive pressure (e.g. CPAP, BiPAP intubation and mechanical ventilation). The patient will be on critical care for further intervention, due to capillary leak leading to pulmonary oedema and impairment of ventilation in addition to oxygenation. These patients tend to respond to positive pressure ventilation, which may be accomplished in several ways, up to and including intubation and mechanical ventilation (Lee et al. 2018).

If CRS does not respond to tocilizumab/corticosteroids, alternative therapeutic options include siltuximab and anakinra, but limited clinical data is available (Maus et al. 2020). Corticosteroids should be subject to rapid taper once CRS is controlled (Hayden et al. 2022).

The ASTCT consensus states that the resolution of CRS has less clarity than the onset this is because temperature often normalizes within a few hours after tocilizumab administration, whereas the other components of CRS take longer to resolve. Once such therapies are used, the patient is considered to still have CRS, even in the absence of fever, until all signs and symptoms leading to the diagnosis of CRS have resolved (Lee et al. 2018). Most patient have had resolution of CRS within 14 days.

7.11.4 Haemophagocytic Lymphohistiocytosis or Macrophage Activation Syndrome (HLH/MAS)

HLH/MAS is a life-threatening hyperinflammatory syndrome that can occur in patients with severe infections, malignancy or autoimmune diseases. It is also a rare complication of haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT), with high mortality and has additional been observed in CAR-T therapy (Sandler et al. 2020).

Patients may have symptoms which overlap meaning there is a differential diagnosis. HLH/MAS are a syndrome which can overlap with CRS. HLH is also an inflammatory syndrome which occurs from pathological T cell and macrophage activation. Hence, the CAR-T cell CRS picture overlaps the commonly known clinical scenario of HLH including elevated ferritin levels (peak ferritin levels of >10,000 ng/ml), coagulopathy, liver dysfunction, and other end organ involvement (Shalabi et al. 2021). It may occur at

the same time as CRS or after it has resolved. Patients should be monitored closely with an increase in blood test including full blood count, liver function, ferritin, CRP and coagulation. HLH/MAS can be seen in severe CRS and the patient and likely to be in intensive care if organ support is required.

A survey in EBMT centres reported an absence of standard protocols (Sandler et al. 2020). Neelapu et al. (2019) also reported there are no formal guidelines for the management of CAR-T-associated HLH/MAS which currently exist. Throughout the literature the general recommendations are for anakinra) a recombinant humanised IL-1 receptor antagonist) and corticosteroids. The EBMT best practice guidelines outline a table from expert opinion based on a literature review with timings and dosage detailed. The nurse's role is fundamental for vigilance in monitoring and prompt escalation to the medical team.

7.11.5 Immune Effector Cell-Associated Neurotoxicity Syndrome (ICANS):

Neurological toxicity is the second most reported toxicity following CAR-T treatment (Neelapu et al. 2017). The incidences vary depending on the clinical trial reporting and ranges from 20–60% of CD19 CAR-T patients (grade ≥3, 12–30%). Onset is typically 3 to 5 days after CAR-T but can occur concurrently with/shortly after CRS, and 10% of patients develop 'delayed ICANS' more than 3 weeks after infusion (Hayden et al. 2022). Patients that have early and severe CRS are at risk for ICANS, showing that the severity and early onset of CRS as measured by the extent of fever within 36 h of the infusion, hemodynamic instability, tachypnea and hypoalbuminemia reflecting loss of vascular integrity and capillary leakage (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018). Therefore careful monitoring and vigilance of patients is essential in nursing care.

Initially neurological toxicity was named CAR-T cell-related encephalopathy syndrome (CRES); however, the ASTCT consensus grading 2018 renamed the syndrome immune effector cell-associated neurotoxicity syndrome (ICANS). This was more inclusive of other symptoms, as well as to acknowledge other cellular immunotherapies and therapeutics, such as bispecific antibodies, that may have similar neurologic side effects (Lee et al. 2018).

ICANS is less well understood and the pathophysiology is likely to be due to the combination of inflammatory cytokines increasing vascular permeability; endothelial activation leading to blood-brain barrier breakdown (Hayden et al. 2022).

ICANS can present with a subtle onset. The utilisation of the ASTCT immune effector cell encephalopathy (ICE) score is an essential tool for nurses to effectively grade ICANS. Similar to CRS grading, it consists of a grade 1–4. This grading consists of a series of nine questions and a written sentence, with 1 point for every question the patient answers correctly. The patient will be asked these usually twice a day, or more frequent if they deteriorate. An example of assessment is below (Table 7.4):

The grade will be calculated based on the patients score. The first signs for example could be difficulty in word finding in changes in their writing. The nurse has a fundamental role in ensuring clear documentation and effective communication between each shift and to the medical team.

Grade 1: This constitutes an ICE score of 7–9, meaning the patient has at between 1–3 questions wrong. The patient requires close monitoring, and investigations such as MRI, EEG and LP as clinically indicated.

Grade 2: The ICE score is 3–6. Investigations will be as grade 1. Medications should be reviewed in case there are any difficulties in swallowing or increased confusion. Corticosteroid therapy with a rapid taper is indicated for grade ≥2 ICANS (Hayden et al. 2022). There will need

Table 7.4 ICANS assessment table

ICE	Question
1	Year
2	Month
3	City
4	Hospital
5	Follow commands e.g., close your eyes
6-8	Name 3 objects (one point for each)
9	Write a standard sentence (patient can choose but use the same one each time)
10	Count backwards from 100 in 10's
Grade	Score
0	10
1	7–9
2	3–6
3	0–2 (see also other signs below)
4	Patient critical/obtunded
Grade 1	
ICE score 7–9	
Level of consciousness–AVPU A	
Grade 2	
ICE score 3–6	
Level of consciousness–AVPU V	
Grade 3	
ICE score 0–2	
Level of consciousness–AVPU P	
Seizure–any clinical seizure focal or generalized that resolves rapidly or non-convulsive seizures on EEG that resolve with intervention	
Elevated ICP/Cerebal oedema—focal/local oedema on neuroimaging	
Grade 4	
ICE score 0 (unable to perform)	

to be discussion with a neurologist and also intensive care.

Grade 3: The ICE score is 0–2. The patient should be managed in intensive care, due to altered level of consciousness and potential seizures. Patients with grade 3 ICANS have severe global aphasia and do not speak or follow commands even when wide awake and thus may be unable to answer any of the ICE questions (Lee et al. 2018). Imaging may show local/focal oedema. Steroids are indicated at grade 2 and the patient should be commenced on levetiracetam if seizures clinically or on EEG and status epilepticus with benzodiazepines (Hayden et al. 2022).

Grade 4: The ICE score is 0 on the ICE assessment due to being unarousable and unable to perform the ICE assessment. This depressed level of consciousness should be attributable to no other causes, for example, no sedating medication (Lee et al. 2018). Seizures are described as life-threatening prolonged seizure (>5 min); or repetitive clinical or electrical seizures without return to baseline in between. The may be deep focal motor weakness such as hemiparesis or paraparesis. There is also potential for elevated ICP/Diffuse cerebral oedema on neuroimaging; Decerebrate or decorticate posturing; or Cranial nerve VI palsy; or Papilledema; or Cushing's triad (Lee et al. 2018). The patient should be managed in intensive care and may require mechanical ventilation for airway management and seizures.

Whilst Tocilizumab is effective for CRS, there is limited efficacy for ICANS due to not crossing the blood brain barrier (Schubert et al. 2020) and should only be administered if the patient has concurrent CRS. Corticosteroids are the main recommended treatment, with agents such as Siltuximab and Anakinra but clinical data on their utility in ICANS is limited (Hayden et al. 2022).

ICANS is a complex and challenging toxicity and patients can deteriorate rapidly. Most patients, however, do respond to treatment and it is considered a reversible toxicity. Due to the possibility of late ICANS, patients should be advised not to drive for up to 8 weeks post product infusion, this is recommended by all the current licensed products.

The EBMT best practice guidelines (Hayden et al. 2022) illustrated in Fig. 7.3 outlines management of the patient with ICANS.

The use of ICE in children may be limited to those age ≥12 years with sufficient cognitive ability to perform it. In children age <12 years,

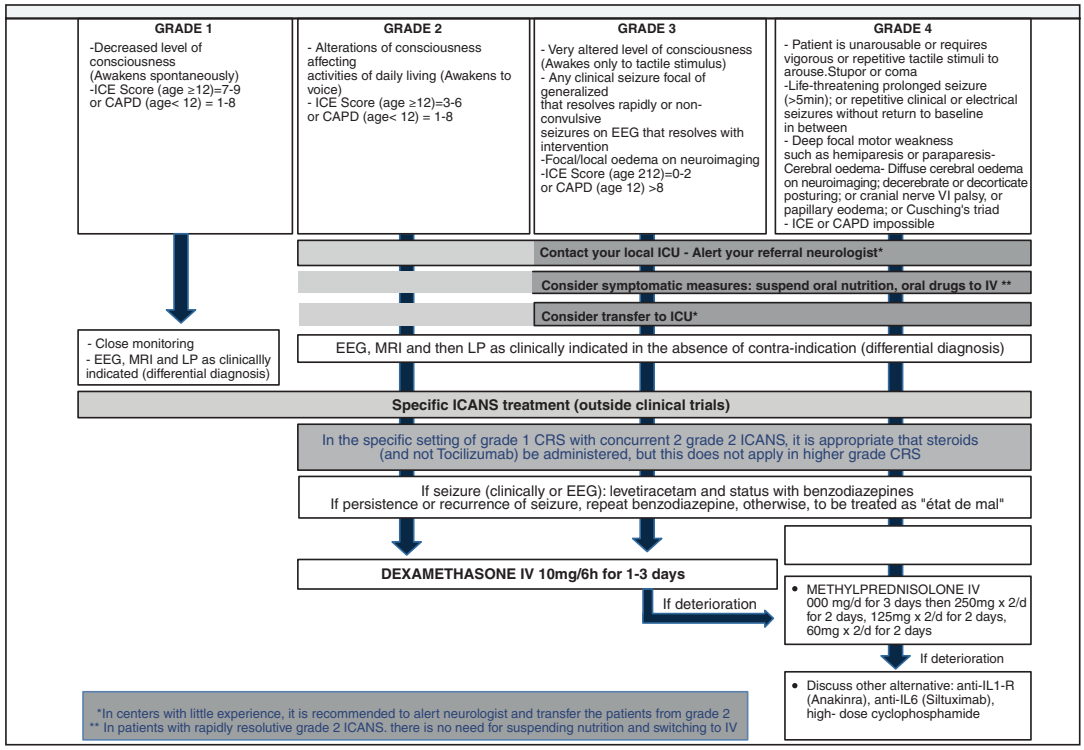


Fig. 7.3 The EBMT best practice guidelines (adapted from Hayden et al. 2022)

	always	often	sometimes	rarely	never
Eye contact with caregiver	0	1	2	3	4
Purposeful actions	0	1	2	3	4
Aware of their surroundings	0	1	2	3	4
Being restless	4	3	2	1	0
Being inconsolable	4	3	2	1	0
Being underactive	4	3	2	1	0
Slow response to interactions	4	3	2	1	0
Communicating needs and wants	4	3	2	1	0

Fig. 7.4 Cornell assessment of pediatric delirium (CAPD) to assess encephalopathy in children <12 years. Adapted from Lee et al. (2018)

the Cornell Assessment of Pediatric Delirium (CAPD) is recommended to aid in the overall grading of ICANS (Lee et al. 2018) (see Fig. 7.4).

7.12 Discharge

Discharging the patient can be arranged when they are deemed medically fit and has recovered from any toxicities. The patient and family should be appropriately prepared and supported with information to go home with.

- On discharge, they should be instructed to remain within 1 h travel of the treating hospital for at least 4 weeks following the infusion, during which time a caregiver should always be present (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018).
- They should receive all their going home medication with written and verbal instructions on what the medications are, what they are for, when and how to take them.
- They must be advised not to drive for 8 weeks following the infusion of cellular product.

- They should be reviewed in either an ambulatory care, or day unit facility to assess their bloods and any potential toxicities, for example, ICANS. This should be within a few days of discharge. Additionally outpatient clinic appointment should be arranged. Centres should have a follow-up local policy to support this pathway.
- They should have contact numbers of the clinical team (e.g. nurse specialist) and also contact for out of hours.
- Patients must be advised to keep their Patient Advice Card with them at all times and to show it to any health care professional they encounter, especially if they are admitted to another hospital (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018).

7.13 Follow Up Process

Follow up for CAR-T recipients can be considered in three phases

Short term	Admission to D+28
Medium term	D+28 to D+100
Long term	From D+100

The process for admission to D+28 is described in previous sections.

7.13.1 Medium-Term Follow-Up

Information provided to the patient and carers at discharge should include complications, signs to report and to who and advice on delayed TLS/CRS and ICANS. While rare, these can occur at this stage and should be managed according to standard unit protocols.

Testing can vary according to disease, product and unit, however the table, patient monitoring during medium-term follow-up (Hayden et al. 2022) offers a standardised approach in line with EBMT/EHA recommendations.

7.13.2 Infectious Complications

Prior treatment with HCT, bridging and CRS/ICANS therapy contribute to infection risks. Prolonged neutropenia beyond D+30 affects approximately a third of patients while lymphopenia can take as long as 2 years to resolve (Burstein et al. 2018) and even then, only in 86% of patients.

Most infections in the first 30 days are bacterial and respiratory viruses with viral infections predominating beyond D+30 (Strati et al. 2021).

Anti-viral and anti-pneumocystis prophylaxis are routinely recommended while anti-bacterial is only considered in cases of prolonged neutropenia.

Prolonged Cytopenias: Patients receiving cellular therapy treatments may have issues with prolonged cytopenias. Haematological recovery after lymphodepletion and CAR-T cell infusion varies across CAR-T cell products; however, haematological recovery for CD19-directed CAR-T cell therapies may be more delayed (Maus et al. 2020). Early cytopenias can be attributed to LD chemotherapy; however, the pathophysiology remains poorly understood and there may be product-intrinsic and/or disease-specific factors. Bone marrow biopsy may be useful beyond day 28 to exclude recurrent disease, hemophagocytosis and, rarely, myelodysplasia (Hayden et al. 2022)

Reports of cytopenias lasting more than 30 days have been reported in both patients receiving both axicabtagene ciloleucel and tisagenlecleucel (Neelapu et al. 2017; Schuster et al. 2019). Therefore providing ongoing potential challenges for both the patient and clinical teams. Prophylactic antimicrobials against bacterial and/or fungal infections should be considered in patients with prolonged grade 4 neutropenia. In addition, if the conditioning therapy included fludarabine, prophylaxis against herpes zoster and *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia is recommended for at least 1 year (Neelapu 2019). Cellular therapy centres will a have local policy to support post CAR-T prophylactic medications.

Patient will continue to be supported in the outpatient setting requiring regular blood tests and assessment for toxicities. GCSF can be used in prolonged cytopenias, G-CSF can be used for severe neutropenia ($<0.5 \times 10^9$/L) from day +14 onwards, following as long as CRS/ICANS has resolved (Hayden et al. 2022). Local policy

should be followed for support with anaemia and or thrombocytopenia. These cytopenias usually resolve in most patients, and they do not seem to place patients at a major risk of late-onset complications (Locke et al. 2019).

The patient should have regular follow -up support and information on risk factors of cytopenias such as infective complications. There may be shared care between the referring centre and cellular therapy centre, therefore clear lines of communication between both and the patient are required.

7.13.3 B Cell Aplasia and Hypogammaglobulinemia

B cell aplasia is ongoing in about a quarter of responders at 12 months (Frigault et al. 2019) and hypogammaglobulinemia can result in serious or recurrent/chronic infections necessitating replacement therapy. Both B cell aplasia and hypogammaglobulinemia can be seen in patient post cellular therapy and is well documented in CAR-T therapy when CD-19 is the target. The on-target off-tumour effect of CD19-directed CAR-T cells on normal B cells, B cell aplasia and hypogammaglobulinemia are expected toxicities after CD19-directed CAR-T cell treatment (Schubert et al. 2020). This means the CAR-T cells are targeting normal B cells as well as malignant ones. It occurs in all responding patients and can persist for several years (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2018).

7.13.4 Vaccinations

Vaccination guidance follows similar principles to that used following HSCT starting from 3 months after infusion with influenza and SARS-COV-19, inactivated vaccines later from 6 months and live vaccines from 1 year or later depending on status of immune reconstitution or if allo-HSCT history or immunoglobulin replacement. Vaccine responses are likely to be lower in this group; however, the consensus view is that vaccination may reduce infection rates and improve clinical outcomes (Hayden et al. 2022).

7.14 Psychological Care

Patient-reported outcomes from 40 patients 1–5 years after CAR-T therapy revealed depression, anxiety and cognitive difficulty in 19/40 with 7/19 reporting difficulty in two areas and 2/19 patient reporting difficulty in all three areas (Ruark et al. 2020). In this study, having more post-CAR-T cognitive difficulties appeared to be associated with worse global mental health and global physical health. Furthermore, that almost 50% of the patients in this cohort reported at least 1 clinically meaningful neuropsychiatric outcome, strongly indicates that a significant number of patients would likely benefit from some form of psychological support or mental health service following CAR-T therapy.

A multi-disciplinary team approach that takes a comprehensive clinical and holistic view of these patients is essential. This should include CAR-T physicians, disease-specific physicians, specialist nurses, data managers and clinical trial staff as well as psychosocial health professionals to capture the range of needs that may be experienced by these patients in the long-term follow-up period.

Complementary and essential to this is the ongoing relationship and liaising with the referring centres which is just as critical to patient care as at the initial time of referral. Distributing protocols and policies and providing continued opportunities for referral staff education can help to sustain shared care arrangements which are especially important for those patients referred from a greater distance.

7.15 Post 30–100 Days: Relapse/Non-response/Disease Progression/Therapy

Post day 28 patients should be reviewed regularly. In contrast to post autologous and allogeneic transplant patients, little is known about the long-term effects of CAR-T cell therapy beyond 1–2 years. Only a small cohort of patients has been followed for more than 2 years. The identified complications include prolonged cytopenias, hypogammaglobulinaemia and delayed B and T cell immune reconstitution with consequent atypical infection. Other longer term toxicities may

emerge with longer term follow-up of larger cohorts of patients. Exact timing of discharge will be based on the clinical condition of the patient, availability of carers, pre-existing co-morbidities, distance from home to hospital and suitability for ambulatory discharge care.

Routine blood tests will be taken at each follow-up clinic within the first 100 days and should include, FBC, biochemistry, liver profile, fibrinogen, CRP and viral pcr of CMV and EBV, and immunoglobulin levels. Assessing immune recovery with Immunophenotyping monthly for 3 months followed by 3 monthly for 1 year is recommended alongside flow cytometry for CAR-T persistence (Hayden et al. 2022). Relapse of the original disease is the largest risk, but patients may develop new problems such as a second malignancy, neurological, immune or haematological disorders. Similar to allograft patients, CAR-T recipients also require lifelong irradiated blood products and they should be given patient information and an alert card upon discharge. Patients must be made aware of the potential symptoms of delayed neurological toxicity and advised that they should refrain from driving or operating heavy or potentially dangerous machines until at least 8 weeks post infusion or until resolution of neurologic adverse reactions if longer. Patients experiencing a seizure should inform their countries driving regulators and refrain from driving until authorised to do so.

To prevent opportunistic infections, prophylaxis with anti-viral, anti-biotics and anti-fungal medication common to the HCT patient is employed for at least 12 months or until lymphocyte count is consistently >1 and CD4 >200, whichever is longer. IV immunoglobulins are used routinely in children (for IgG levels <400) and are considered in adults with recurrent infections with encapsulated organisms and hypogammaglobulinaemia <4 g/L (Hayden et al. 2022).

Once clinically stable and having responded to treatment the patient can be referred back to their local teams for follow-up. Requirements for monitoring and follow-up must be shared with the referring team. Patients will also be followed up at the treating centre (in person or via remote consultation) every 6 months (in year 1) and then annually in order to monitor progress and to collect data required for EBMT. Additional follow-up appointments at the treating centre may be required in the event of complications arising from treatment, suspected relapse or as requested by the referring team.

An example of routine monitoring post D+30, this is not exhaustive, and centres will have local SOP and policies to follow, see Table 7.5.

Table 7.5 Routine monitoring post day 30

Day	Disease/complication monitoring	CAR-T monitoring
+30	NHL—PET scan (and marrow or MRD if indicated) ALL—bone marrow, MRD, imaging as indicated Ferritin/CRP/LDH Virology (parvovirus, JC/BK, HHV 6/7/8) if positive at consent visit	Immune monitoring HIV viral load CMV/EBV PCR Immunoglobulins
+60	ALL—marrow, MRD, imaging as indicated Ferritin/CRP/LDH	Immune monitoring HIV viral load CMV/EBV PCR Immunoglobulins
+100	NHL—PET scan (and marrow or MRD if indicated ALL—marrow, MRD, imaging as indicated Vitamin B12, vitamin D, folate	Immune monitoring HIV viral load CMV/EBV PCR Immunoglobulins
Later follow-up	ALL—marrow, MRD, imaging as indicated every 3 months until 24 months post treatment NHL—PET scan at 12 months and thereafter only if concerns about disease progression	Immune monitoring HIV viral load CMV/EBV PCR Immunoglobulins All performed 3 monthly to 24 months post treatment
Further specific investigations may be undertaken as clinically indicated		

NHL Non Hodgkin lymphoma, *ALL* acute lymphoblastic leukaemia

In patients who relapse, of which this occurs in approx. 40–60%, many have undetectable CD19 disease with CAR-T still present in the peripheral blood (Perica et al. 2018). There is no standard of treatment in the post-CAR-T relapsed setting. Patients should be enrolled in clinical trials if they are available. Other options may include salvage chemotherapies or check point inhibitors. A second treatment with CAR-T may be considered if relapse occurs more than 3 months later and tissue biopsy reveals a viable target is still evident.

7.16 Long-Term Follow-Up (LTFU):

Unlike the HSCT setting, the LTFU period starts much earlier at D+100. Hypogammaglobulinemia, infection and prolonged cytopenia are common (Cordeiro et al. 2020). In the same late events paper, reporting patients who survived at least 1 year after treatment, subsequent malignancies occurred in 15% of patients including 5% with MDS.

Screening for second malignancies is recommended through the standard cancer screening programmes (cervical, breast, colorectal) with monitoring of full blood counts for late cytopenia and a low threshold for bone marrow biopsy to exclude secondary MDS/AML (Hayden et al. 2022).

7.17 JACIE

Since the approval of CAR-T in Europe and the expanding role of immune effectors cells, the standards have changed to reflect this. Chapter 1 covers JACIE and Quality Management in HSCT: Implications for Nursing.

7.18 EBMT/EHA/GoCART-Further Education

Immune effector cells have seen progression in recent years. The complexity and rapid changes in the field of cellular therapies demands wide collaboration to maintain up-to-date education on the entire pathway from collection to the manufacturer and back to the clinical unit. GoCART, a multistakeholder coalition launched by EBMT and EHA, offers a platform to provide the required diversified and topic-specific education on CAR-T cell therapies (Kröger et al. 2022). There are many resources available for nurses to learn more about this complex area. EBMT/EHA and GoCART provide excellent European educational opportunities of CAR-T and other immunotherapy treatments.

- www.ebmt.org/education/e-learning
- www.ehacampus.ehaweb.org
- https://thegocartcoalition.com/

References

Bayer V. An overview of monocolonal antibodies. Semin Oncol Nurs. 2019;35:150927. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.soncn.2019.08.006.

Boldt C. What is tumour infiltrating lymphocyte therapy – 6 things to know. MD Anderson – Cancerwise. 2021. Available https://www.mdanderson.org/cancerwise/what-is-tumor-infiltrating-lymphocyte-til-therapy-6-things-to-know.h00-159460056.html. Accessed 14 January 2022.

Brudno JN, Kochenderfer JN. Toxicities of chimeric antigen receptor T cells: Recognition and management. Blood. 2016;127:3321–30. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2016-04-703751.

Burstein DS, Maude S, Grupp S, Griffis H, Rossano J, Lin K. Cardiac profile of chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy in children: a single-institution experience. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2018;24(8):1590–5.

Cancer Research Institute. 2021. https://www.cancerresearch.org/en-us/immunotherapy/treatment-types/adoptive-cell-therapy. Accessed February 2021.

Ceppi F, Rivers J, Annesley C, et al. Lymphocyte apheresis for chimeric antigen receptor T-cell manufacturing in children and young adults with leukemia and neuroblastoma. Transfusion. 2018;58:1414–20.

Clinical Trials. T Cell receptor Clinical Trials. 2022a. Available https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?cond=&term=TCR&cntry=&state=&city=&dist. Accessed 14 January 2022.

Clinical Trials. Tumour infiltrating lymphocyte clinical trials. 2022b. Available https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?cond=&term=TILs&cntry=&state=&city=&dist. Accessed 14 January 2022.

Cordeiro A, Bezerra ED, Hirayama AV, Hill JA, Wu QV, Voutsinas J, Sorror ML, Turtle CJ, Maloney DG, Bar M. Late events after treatment with CD19-targeted

chimeric antigen receptor modified T cells. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2020;26(1):26–33.
Davila ML, Riviere I, Wang X, et al. Efficacy and toxicity management of 19-28z CAR T cell therapy in B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Sci Transl Med. 2014;6:224–5.
Del Fantea C, Seghatchianb J, Perotti C. Reflections on methodical approaches to hematopoietic stem cell collection in children. Transfus Apher Sci. 2018;57:425–7.
European Medicines Agency. 2021. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/medicines/human/EPAR/abecma. Accessed September 2022.
European Medicines Agency. 2022a. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/medicines/human/EPAR/breyanzi. Accessed September 2022.
European Medicines Agency. 2022b. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/medicines/human/EPAR/carvykti. Accessed September 2022.
Frey N, Porter D. Cytokine release syndrome with chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2019;25(4):e123–7.
Frigault MJ, Dietrich J, Martinez-Lage M, Leick M, Choi BD, DeFilipp Z, Chen YB, Abramson J, Crombie J, Armand P, Nayak L. Tisagenlecleucel CAR T-cell therapy in secondary CNS lymphoma. Blood. 2019;134(11):860–6.
Guan M, Zhou Y-P, Sun J-L, Chen S-C. Adverse events of monoclonal antibodies used for cancer therapy. Biomed Res Int. 2015;2015:428169. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/428169.
Gudiol C, Lewis RE, Strati P, Kontoyiannis DP. Chimeric antigen receptor T-cell therapy for the treatment of lymphoid malignancies: is there an excess risk for infection? Lancet Haematol. 2021;8:e216–28.
Hay K, Turtle C. Chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells: lessons learned from targeting of CD19 in B cell malignancies. Drugs. 2017;77(3):237–45. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40265-017-0690-8.
Hayden PJ, Roddie C, Bader P, Basak GW, Bonig H, Bonini C, Chabannon C, Ciceri F, Corbacioglu S, Ellard R, Sanchez-Guijo F, Jäger U, Hildebrandt M, Hudecek M, Kersten MJ, Köhl U, Kuball J, Mielke S, Mohty M, Murray J, Nagler A, Rees J, Rioufol C, Saccardi R, Snowden JA, Styczynski J, Subklewe M, Thieblemont C, Topp M, Ispizua ÁU, Chen D, Vrhovac R, Gribben JG, Kröger N, Einsele H, Yakoub-Agha I. Management of adults and children receiving CAR T Cell therapy: 2021 best practice recommendations of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT) and the Joint Accreditation Committee of ISCT and EBMT (JACIE) and the European Haematology Association (EHA). Ann Oncol. 2022;33(3):259–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annonc.2021.12.003.
HealthTalk.org. What are clinical trials and why do we need them? 2019. Available https://healthtalk.org/clinical-trials/what-are-clinical-trials-and-why-do-we-need-them. Accessed 16 January 2022.
Hill JA, Li D, Hay KA, Green ML, Cherian S, Chen X, Turtle CJ. Infectious complications of CD19-targeted chimeric antigen receptor-modified T-cell immunotherapy. Blood. 2017;131:121–30. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2017-07-793760.
Jain T, Knight T, Alencar MC, Davis L, Rao K, Im A, Malone AK. American Society for Transplantation and Cellular Therapy guidelines for fellowship training in hematopoietic cell transplantation and immune effector cell therapy. Transp Cell Ther. 2021;28(3):125–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtct.2021.12.011.
Kröger N, Gribben J, Chabannon C, Yakoub-Agha I, Einsele H. The EBMT/EHA CAR-T cell handbook. Cham: Springer; 2022.
Lee DW, et al. ASBMT consensus grading for cytokine release syndrome and neurologic toxicity associated with immune effector cells. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2018;25(4):625–38. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbmt.2018.12.758.
Li D, et al. Genetically engineered T cells for cancer immunotherapy. Signal Transduct Target Ther. 2019;4:35. Available https://www.nature.com/articles/s41392-019-0070-9#citeas. Accessed 14 January 2022.
Liu S, Deng B, Yin Z, et al. Corticosteroids do not influence the efficacy and kinetics of CAR-T cells for B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood Cancer J. 2020;10:15.
Locke FL, Ghobadi A, Jacobson CA, et al. Long-term safety and activity of axicabtagene ciloleucel in refractory large B-cell lymphoma (ZUMA-1): a single-arm, multicentre, phase 1-2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2019;20(1):31–42.
Mahadeo KM, Khazal SJ, Abdel-Azim H, et al. Management guidelines for paediatric patients receiving chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2019;16(1):45–63.
Maude SL, Laetsch TW, Buechner J, et al. Tisagenlecleucel in children and young adults with B-Cell lymphoblastic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2018;378:439–48.
Maus MV, Alexander S, Bishop MR, et al. Society for Immunotherapy of Cancer (SITC) clinical practice guideline on immune effector cell-related adverse events. J Immunother Cancer. 2020;8:e001511.
Neelapu SS. Managing the toxicities of CAR T-cell therapy. Hematol Oncol. 2019;37(1):48–52.
Neelapu SS, Locke FL, Bartlett NL, et al. Axicabtagene ciloleucel CAR T-cell therapy in refractory large B-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2017;377(26):2531–44.
Neelapu SS, Tummala T, Kebriaei P. Chimeric antigen receptor T-cell therapy - assessment and management of toxicities. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2019;15(1):47–62.
Perica K, Curran KJ, Brentjens RJ, Giralt SA. Building a CAR garage: preparing for the delivery of commercial CAR T products at Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2018;24(6):1135–41. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbmt.2018.02.018.
Ragoonanan D, Khazal SJ, Abdel-Azim H, McCall D, Cuglievan B, Tambaro FP, Ahmad AH, Rowan CM, Gutierrez C, Schadler K, Li S, Di Nardo M, Chi L, Gulbis AM, Shoberu B, Mireles ME, McArthur J, Kapoor N, Miller J, Fitzgerald JC, Tewari P,

Petropoulos D, Gill JB, Duncan CN, Lehmann LE, Hingorani S, Angelo JR, Swinford RD, Steiner ME, Hernandez Tejada FN, Martin PL, Auletta J, Choi SW, Bajwa R, Dailey Garnes N, Kebriaei P, Rezvani K, Wierda WG, Neelapu SS. Diagnosis, grading and management of toxicities from immunotherapies in children, adolescents and young adults with cancer. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2021;18(7):435–53.

Rohaan MW, Wilgenhof S, Haanen J. Adoptive cellular therapies: the current landscape. Virchows Arch. 2019;474(4):449–61. Available https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6447513/. Accessed 16 January 2022.

Ruark J, Mullane E, Cleary N, Cordeiro A, Bezerra ED, Wu V, Voutsinas J, Shaw BE, Flynn KE, Lee SJ, Turtle CJ, Maloney DG, Fann JR, Bar M. Patient-reported neuropsychiatric outcomes of long-term survivors after chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2020;26(1):34–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbmt.2019.09.037. Epub 2019 Oct 9. PMID: 31605820; PMCID: PMC6951812.

Sandler R, et al. Diagnosis and management of secondary HLH/MAS following HSCT and CAR-T Cell therapy in adults; a review of the literature and a survey of practice within EBMT centres on Behalf of the Autoimmune Diseases Working Party (ADWP) and Transplant Complications Working Party (TCWP). Front Immunol. 2020;11:534.

Schubert M, Schmitt M, Wang L, Ramos CA, Jordan K, Muller-Tidow C, Dregar P. Side-effect management of chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cell therapy. Ann Oncol. 2020;32(1):34–48. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annonc.2020.10.478.

Schuster SJ, Bishop MR, Tam CS, et al. Tisagenlecleucel in adult relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2019;380:45–56.

Shalabi H, Gust J, Taraseviciute A, Wolters PL, Leahy AB, Sandi C, et al. Beyond the storm - subacute toxicities and late effects in children receiving CART cells. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2021;18(6):363–78.

Strati P, Varma A, Adkins S, Nastoupil LJ, Westin J, Hagemeister FB, Fowler NH, Lee HJ, Fayad LE, Samaniego F, Ahmed S, Chen Y, Horowitz S, Arafat S, Johncy S, Kebriaei P, Mulanovich VE, Ariza Heredia E, Neelapu SS. Hematopoietic recovery and immune reconstitution after axicabtagene ciloleucel in patients with large B-cell lymphoma. Haematologica. 2021;106(10):2667–72. https://doi.org/10.3324/haematol.2020.254045.

Topp M, Meerten T, Houot R, et al. Earlier steroid use with axicabtagene ciloleucel (axi-cel) in patients with relapsed/refractory large B cell lymphoma. Blood. 2019;134:243.

Tuazon SA, Li A, Gooley T, et al. Factors affecting lymphocyte collection efficiency for the manufacture of chimeric antigen receptor T cells in adults with B-cell malignancies. Transfusion. 2019;59(5):1773–80.

Waldman AD, Fritz JM, Lenardo MJ. A guide to cancer immunotherapy: from T cell basic science to clinical practice. Nat Rev Immunol. 2020;20:651–68. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41577-020-0306-5.

Yakoub-Agha I, Chabannon C, Bader P, Basak GW, Bonig H, Ciceri F, Corbacioglu S, Duarte RF, Einsele H, Hudecek M, Kersten MJ, Köhl U, Kuball JR, Mielke S, Mohty M, Murray J, Nagler A, Robinson S, Saccardi R, Sanchez-Guijo F, Snowden JA, Srour M, Styczynski J, Urbano-Ispizua A, Hayden PJ, Kröger N. Management of adults and children undergoing chimeric antigen receptor T-cell therapy: best practice recommendations of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT) and the Joint Accreditation Committee of ISCT and EBMT (JACIE). Haematologica. 2018;105(2):297–316.

Zhao L, Cao YJ. Engineered T cell therapy for cancer in the clinic. Front Immunol. 2019;10:2250. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2019.02250.

BMT Settings, Infection and Infection Control

8

John Murray, Emanuela Samarani, Chiara Renica, Iris Agreiter, Laura Orlando, and Daphna Hutt

Abstract

Despite improvements over the past several decades, infection remains a significant risk to all haematological patients receiving therapy. Those requiring allogeneic transplant and especially those that have HLA disparity or T-cell-depleted grafts have an even higher risk of infective complications due to delayed recovery of T- and B-cell function. Patients receiving CAR-T therapy also present unique problems related to their B cell aplasia. Early identification with prompt effective treatment is paramount to improve all patients' survival. The recent pandemic has further highlighted patient safety through robust adherence to hand hygiene and maintenance of the environment with cleaning and disinfection as the backbone of an effective infection preventative program. Basic nursing care and a sound knowledge base of the risks, presentation, diagnosis and treatment will improve patient care.

Keywords

Viral infection · Bacterial infection · Fungal infection · Handwashing · Isolation

8.1 Introduction

Infection is a major cause of mortality and morbidity in haematopoietic cell transplantation (HCT) and chimeric antigen receptor T-cell (CAR-T) recipients due to regimen-related toxicity. Improvements over the past couple of decades especially in supportive care have helped to reduce this risk. The development of neutropenic fever is a frequent occurrence, and centres have algorithms for identifying and treating infection promptly. In this chapter we discuss the common viral, bacterial and fungal infections that our patients develop.

Mackall et al. (2009) displays the variety of infections in Fig. 8.1 that may occur and the approximate timeframe for their development which aids the clinical team to refine and direct investigations and potential treatments appropriately.

J. Murray (✉)
Haematology and Transplant Unit, The Christie NHS Foundation Trust & The University of Manchester, School of Medical Sciences, Manchester, UK
e-mail: j.murray10@nhs.net

E. Samarani · C. Renica
Unit of Blood Diseases and Stem Cell Transplantation Department of Clinical Oncology, ASST Spedali Civili di Brescia, Brescia, Italy

I. Agreiter · L. Orlando
Istituto Oncologico della Svizzera Italiana, Bellinzona, Switzerland

D. Hutt
Department of Pediatric Hematology-Oncology and BMT, Edmond and lily Safra Children Hospital, Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel
e-mail: dhutt@sheba.health.gov.il

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_8

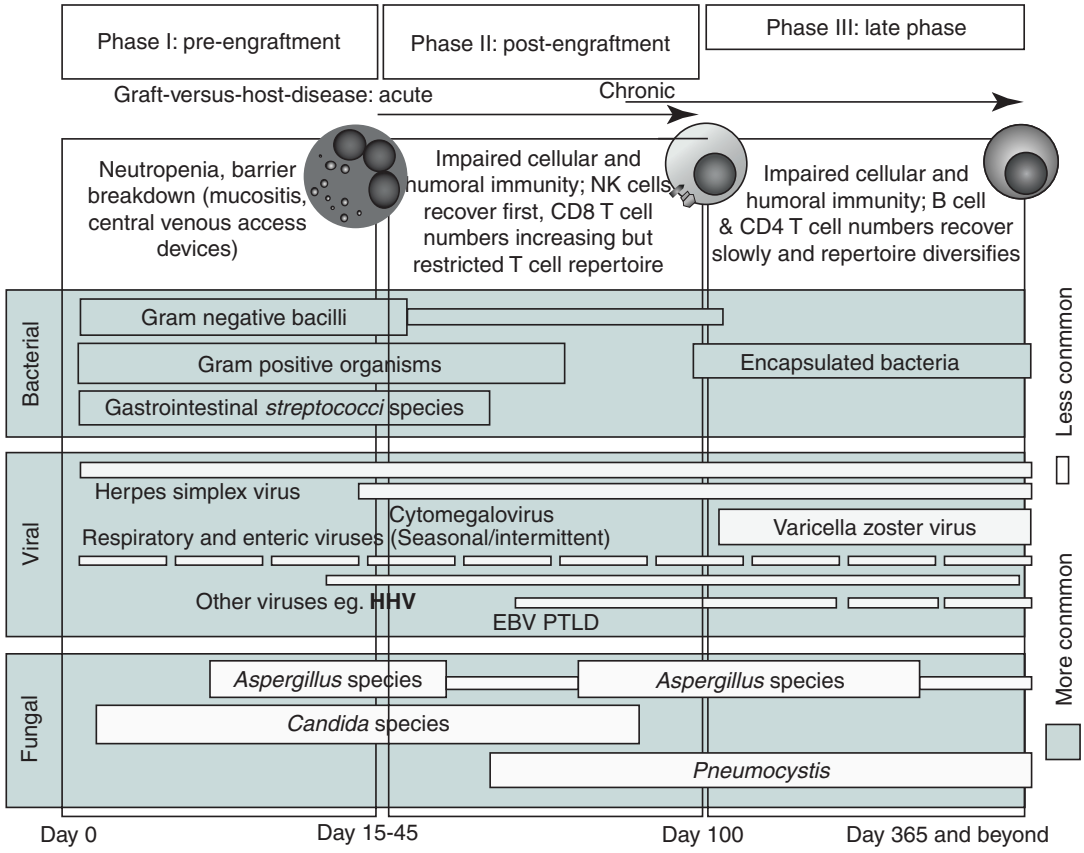


Fig. 8.1 Phases of opportunistic infections among allogeneic HCT recipients. *HHV6* human herpesvirus 6, *NK* natural killer, *PTLD* post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (Mackall et al. 2009)

8.2 Viral Infections

Viral infection is spread by close contact with infectious secretions, either by large particle aerosols, formites or subsequent self-inoculation. Coughing and sneezing will produce aerosol particles, and a virus can also be picked up after contact with contaminated surfaces.

8.2.1 Cytomegalovirus

8.2.1.1 Introduction

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) disease is a serious potential complication of HCT leading to life-threatening complications. CMV is usually acquired in childhood. It is a virus that is present worldwide, and whilst in developed countries approximately 50% of the population is seropositive, this rises to almost 100% in developing countries. CMV is shed intermittently from the oropharynx and from the genitourinary tract of both immunocompetent and immunosuppressed people. Prior to allograft the serostatus (IgG) of the patient and potential donors are assessed to gauge risk (Zaia et al. 2009).

CMV belongs to the human herpes virus family HHV5 and comes from the subfamily betaherpesvirinae. Betaherpesvirinae infects the mononuclear cells, establishes latency in the leukocytes and once reactivated replicates slowly. CMV is able to lie dormant for protracted lengths of time, and immunity to the CMV complex involves both the humoral and cell-mediated pathways. Patients treated with HSCT in the context of haematological malignancies can reactivate the latent virus, either from native host leucocytes, from those derived from the donor, or

from both (Girmenia et al. 2019). The risk of reactivation varies dependent upon the patient and/or donor's previous exposure to CMV. CMV status can be shown as follows:

	Recipient	Donor
High risk	Positive	Negative
Medium risk	Negative	Positive
Medium risk	Positive	Positive
No risk	Negative	Negative

Risk factors for *CMV reactivation*

- CMV serostatus of recipient/donor (+/− or +/− > > −/+)
- Previous CMV reactivation
- Time post-transplant—increased in early post-transplant period (to day 100)
- T-cell-depleted transplant conditioning protocols (e.g. Campath 1-H)
- Systemic immunosuppression (particularly corticosteroids, antibodies directed against T-cells, e.g. ATG/Campath 1-H)
- Recipient age—increased in older patients
- Graft versus host disease

Risk factors for *primary CMV infection*

- Person-to-person transmission
- Low risk in use of blood not screened negative for CMV (Meijer et al. 2003)

8.2.1.2 Presentation

CMV can occur as a primary infection or as a reactivation of the previously latent virus. When a CMV IgG-negative patient develops CMV, this is termed a primary infection. When a patient, or donor, is known to be CMV antibody positive and then develops CMV, this is termed reactivation. The diagnosis of CMV disease requires the presence of symptoms and signs compatible with end-organ damage, together with the detection of CMV. If left untreated, asymptomatic CMV infection can progress to CMV disease.

8.2.1.3 Diagnosis

It is important to diagnose reactivation early and institute timely treatment; therefore, regular monitoring of CMV levels is of paramount importance. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is the most sensitive and quantitative method of monitoring at-risk patients especially in the early post-transplant period (until at least day 100 post transplant) and longer in those on systemic immunosuppression.

CMV infection most commonly affects the lung, gastrointestinal tract, eye, liver or central nervous system, with CMV pneumonia being the most serious complication with >50% mortality (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

All HCT patients and donors will have their CMV status tested in clinic pre-transplant along with the CMV status of the donor.

8.2.1.4 Monitoring and Surveillance

For disease monitoring post transplant, all patients who are seropositive themselves or whose graft is seropositive must receive at least weekly monitoring by whole blood (EDTA sample) PCR. This monitoring must continue whilst the patient is considered high risk of reactivation; the first 100 days post transplant or until systemic immunosuppression has been discontinued, and there is no evidence of graft versus host disease (Girmenia et al. 2019).

Prophylaxis

Letermovir

In solid organ transplant, ganciclovir and valganciclovir are often used, however, due to high levels of myelosuppression in HCT this course of treatment is not followed. In a pivotal registration Phase 3 clinical trial, prophylaxis with letermovir significantly reduced the incidence of clinically significant CMV infection after allo-HCT and was approved for use as prophylaxis in adult CMV seropositive recipients in 2017 and is undergoing further studies in children (Marty et al. 2017). Letermovir has been adopted by many centres as prophylaxis https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/11798/smpc#gref (accessed 25 October 2021).

8.2.1.5 Treatment

Treatment of CMV reactivation will be undertaken following two consecutive positive CMV PCR levels at, or greater than, the limit of sensi-

tivity, 500 copies/ml or one result of greater than 1000 copies/ml (or depending on local policy). Treatment will also be initiated regardless of PCR if signs of organ-specific disease are identified. Some centres may adopt a policy of preemptive treatment; please refer to your own institution guidelines for advice (Girmenia et al. 2019).

The treatment regimen is often undertaken as an in-patient. In which case, first-line therapy is with intravenous ganciclovir. An outpatient oral alternative is valganciclovir, but can lead to significant bone marrow suppression (neutrophil count less than 1×10^9/l) or treatment failure with rising viral levels or evidence of viral resistance after at least 1 week of treatment (Maffini et al. 2016).

Second- and third-line treatments are with foscarnet and cidofovir. Foscarnet may be adopted as a first-line treatment if the patient reactivates within the first month of transplant when blood counts have not fully recovered as it is less myelotoxic than ganciclovir. It does, however, have more renal complications, and regular electrolyte replacement is often required. Maribavir is a phase 3 trial drug that is waiting for approval but has shown to have less renal toxicity or marrow suppression and may be a substitute (Maffini et al. 2016).

Cidofovir leads to renal impairment, and a urine sample should be tested prior to infusion for the presence of protein. If proteinuria is greater than 2 on dipstick, or renal function has deteriorated (please refer to hospital/unit guidelines), then cidofovir should not be given.

Ganciclovir and Valganciclovir, Dosing and Administration for Nursing Staff

For detailed instructions consult the summary of product information at these website addresses

https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/10242#gref

https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/medicine/9315#gref (accessed 15 October 2021)

Ganciclovir is an irritant; it is alkaline and may cause chemical phlebitis, so care should be taken to observe the cannula and ensure that it is functioning well prior to each use.

Valganciclovir is the oral prodrug of ganciclovir, so the same considerations should be made as when using ganciclovir.

Ganciclovir and valganciclovir treatment commonly results in cytopenias, and extreme caution should be applied when using it in patients with impaired bone marrow function (neutrophils $<1 \times 10^9$/l or platelets $<50 \times 10^9$/l), and the drug is contraindicated with severely impaired bone marrow function (neutrophils $<0.5 \times 10^9$/l or platelets $<25 \times 10^9$/l).

Toxicity

Teratogenicity has been shown in animal models and therefore care should be taken in handling the drug. It should not be administered by pregnant staff.

Gastrointestinal toxicity is common with nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea and should be recorded. Other drugs, e.g. ciclosporin, amphotericin B or MMF, may also potentiate the toxicity of ganciclovir; for further details consult the SmPC email link or discuss with your pharmacist or lead clinician.

Foscarnet Dosing and Administration for Nursing Staff

For detailed instructions consult the summary of product characteristics at this website address

https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/874/smpc#gref (accessed 15 October 2021)

Foscarnet is an irritant; it is alkaline and causes chemical phlebitis; therefore it must be diluted if administered via a peripheral vein; the undiluted solution may be used if administered via a central venous catheter.

Toxicity

Nephrotoxicity is a major side effect, with 12–30% of patients showing a significant decline in renal function. Electrolyte disturbance occurs frequently with low magnesium, calcium, phosphate and potassium most commonly requiring regular monitoring at least once daily whilst on treatment and following therapy. Local ulceration in the genital area may also occur in both men and women due to irritants excreted in the urine, and patients should be informed of this at the start of treatment and asked to be vigilant and inform staff if and when this occurs. Strict hygiene should be advised to reduce risk of skin ulceration.

Treatment with Cidofovir Dosing and Administration for Nursing Staff

For detailed instructions consult the summary of product characteristics at this website address

https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/11151/smpc#gref (accessed 15 October 2021)

Cidofovir is administered once weekly for two consecutive weeks then given as maintenance two weeks after the completion of induction treatment, administered once every 2 weeks.

Toxicity

Renal dysfunction is the major dose-limiting toxicity and may be irreversible, to minimize this, hydration and probenecid must be administered with each dose of cidofovir. In patients with hypersensitivity to probenecid or sulpha-containing drugs, cidofovir is likely to be contra-indicated. Eighty percent of patients develop proteinuria due to tubular dysfunction whilst on therapy.

Treatment with Maribavir Dosing and Administration for Nursing Staff

For detailed instructions consult the summary of product characteristics at this website address

https://www.sps.nhs.uk/medicines/maribavir/ (accessed 25 October 2021).

Maribavir inhibits DNA replication, maturation and nuclear egress a distinct mechanism of action. It is given as 400 mg twice daily oral medication. In a phase 3 Solstice trial, Maribavir was found to be superior compared to conventional antiviral therapies in refractory resistant CMV patients post transplant. At the time of writing, it is an investigational treatment waiting for approval (Marty 2021).

8.2.2 EBV

8.2.2.1 Introduction

Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) is a latent herpesvirus that is thought to infect as much as 95% of the adult population by the age of 40 years. It is an enveloped and double-stranded DNA virus human herpesvirus 4 (HHV4). Primary infection with EBV usually results in mild, self-limiting illness of the oropharynx in childhood and the clinical syndrome of infectious mononucleosis in adults and is often asymptomatic (Hamad et al. 2020).

During the primary infection, an immunocompetent individual will mount a vigorous response. Once the initial infection has cleared, the linear EBV genome becomes circular, forming an episome in the preferentially infected B cells and becomes established as a latent infection awaiting reactivation for life (Hamad et al. 2020). Antiviral agents such as ganciclovir inhibit the replication of the linear EBV-DNA but are ineffective against episomal DNA. These drugs therefore fail to prevent B-cell proliferation and are of no clinical use in treatment plans (Rasch et al. 2014).

Epstein-Barr virus post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (EBV-PTLD) results from outgrowth of EBV-infected B cells (that are normally controlled by an effective EBV-specific cytotoxic T-cell response) that occurs in the immunocompromised host (Deeg and Socie 1998; Heslop 2009). PTLD are classified as either early-onset lesions which develop within 1 year or late onset occurring greater than a year post transplant (Ibrahim and Naresh 2012).

8.2.2.2 Risk, Presentation and Manifestations

Post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (PTLD) is a rare but potentially life-threatening disease with an incidence of 0.5–17%. There are several risks that lead to increased likelihood of developing EBV-PTLD. These include over 50 years of age, splenectomy, reduced intensity conditioning, HLA mismatch, EBV donor and recipient serology mismatch, umbilical cord or haploidentical transplant, use of ATG or alemtuzumab, acute GvHD and CMV reactivation (Hamad et al. 2020).

The clinical manifestations of PTLD vary widely and may include nonspecific symptoms such as fever, malaise, sweats, weight loss and in some cases obvious enlargement of lymphoid tissue (Ibrahim and Naresh 2012).

EBV viral load surveillance by PCR in whole blood is widely accepted as the preferred method of monitoring patients (Hamad et al. 2020). The

European Conference on Infectious Diseases (ECIL-6) has no specific recommendations. However, ECIL guidelines advise starting monitoring within 4 weeks of transplant until cellular reconstitution, approximately 4 months. This will be longer in those who received alemtuzumab or ATG and had haplo transplants or developed GvHD (Styczynski et al. 2016). It is presumed that EBV is transmitted from donor to recipient via the graft at a time of considerable immunosuppression for the recipient, or the patient develops primary EBV infection unrelated to donor EBV status. It is, therefore, advisable if possible to choose a seronegative donor if one is available. Reactivation is common but does not always lead to end-organ disease requiring treatment (Styczynski et al. 2009).

8.2.2.3 Diagnosis

The pathological diagnosis of PTLD is based on the WHO classification and includes four main categories and is the basis for the UK BCSH guidelines (Swerdlow et al. 2008):

Early lesions	Show features when biopsied of infectious mononucleosis and plasmacytic hyperplasia. These are the first signs in the spectrum of PTLD diagnosis
Polymorphic PTLD	Comprises small- and medium-sized lymphocytes and Reed-Sternberg like cells. Underlying cell structure is destroyed and may show malignant features
Monomorphic PTLD	Comprises large lymphocytes and plasma cells that are uniform in appearance with most being B cells with a clonal abnormality
Classic Hodgkin Lymphoma	This is a rare form of PTLD usually found in renal transplant patients

In practice, a clear separation between the different subtypes is not always possible, Styczynski et al. (2009) published definitions of EBV that are in common use across Europe.

EBV DNA-aemia	Detection of EBV DNA in the blood
Primary EBV infection	EBV detected in a previously EBV seronegative patient
Probable EBV disease	Significant lymphadenopathy (or other end organ disease) with high EBV blood load, in the absence of other aetiologic factors or established diseases
Proven EBV disease	PTLD or other end organ disease: EBV detected from an organ by biopsy or other invasive procedures with a test with appropriate sensitivity and specificity together with symptoms and/or signs from the affected organ

Early diagnosis is important so that treatment can be initiated promptly. The exact copy or log number to commence therapy has not yet been fully established. Action from a blood test alone is not indicated and should be in parallel with clinical symptoms such as fever and lymphadenopathy and imaging studies (Heslop 2009).

Whether PTLD presents as localized or disseminated disease, the tumours are aggressive and rapidly progressive and often are fatal if untreated in a timely manner (Deeg and Socie 1998).

8.2.2.4 Treatment

Withdrawal of immunosuppression in the first instance to allow recovery of the host's immune system to control the disease works in 0–73% of patients; an extremely variable response. This also may come at considerable risk of graft rejection or GvHD. An alternative option is to switch a calcineurin inhibitor to an m-TOR inhibitor. If patients are still positive then treatment with rituximab monoclonal antibody (anti-CD20) once a CT scan and if possible biopsy has been taken (Hamad et al. 2020).

Rituximab has been shown to improve outcome when initiated early as it targets B-cell-specific surface antigens present on the EBV-transformed malignant cells. Rituximab is a chimeric murine/human monoclonal anti-CD20 antibody. As CD20 cells are expressed not only on malignant cells, normal B cells are destroyed in a patient who will already be immunocompromised and may lead to other viral infections. The effect of rituximab on the B-cell compartment can be up to 6 months following treatment and should, therefore, be used with caution and under strict surveillance in specialist centres. Rituximab

used alone has response rates reported as 60–80%.

Adoptive T-cell therapy with CTLs has been used for several years and it shows good responses around 60%. There are trials ongoing to explore this further such as III MATCH. Failure to respond to removal of immunosuppression and single-agent rituximab as well as failure of adoptive cellular immunotherapy leads to the option of chemotherapy in the form of CHOP (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine and prednisolone), although this is associated with a mortality of 27% in this setting (Hamad et al. 2020; Rasch et al. 2014).

8.2.3 HHV6

8.2.3.1 Introduction

There are two species of human herpes virus, HHV6, A and B. Human herpesvirus 6B (HHV6) is a ubiquitous virus, and more than 90% of the population over the age of 2 years are seropositive as it is easily passed person to person via saliva (Ward et al. 2019). Unlike other viruses, HHV6B can integrate into chromosomes as a mechanism of latency. This results in a condition referred to as inherited chromosomally integrated HHV-6 (iciHHV6-6). Almost all HHV6 reactivations post allograft are type B (Hill 2019).

8.2.3.2 Presentation

HHV6B may be associated with the development of encephalitis (Ward et al. 2019). Clinically patients present 2–6 weeks post allograft with delirium, amnesia, confusion, ataxia and seizure. During the transplant process, HHV6 has been cited by Zerr et al. (2005) to cause a delay in engraftment with up to 60% more platelet requirements in those who become positive.

8.2.3.3 Diagnosis

Diagnosis is made from PCR testing in symptomatic patients. On magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the head, there are hyperintense lesions noted, and these are referred to as post-transplant acute limbic encephalitis (PALE). Upon examination of the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), HHV6 DNA is observed (Ward et al. 2019).

8.2.3.4 Treatment

Foscarnet and ganciclovir are the recommended treatments and should be started as soon as possible following symptoms suggestive of HHV6 (Hill 2019).

8.2.4 Varicella Zoster Virus

8.2.4.1 Introduction

Varicella zoster virus (VZV) infection or chickenpox is usually a childhood disease, and transmission is either by inhalation of respiratory secretions or direct physical contact. Following exposure the virus remains latent in the dorsal root ganglion, and when it reactivates, it is referred to as "shingles" or herpes zoster. Herpes zoster is grouped painful vesicular lesions that can affect several dermatomes in immunocompetent people. In the setting of allogeneic HSCT, VZV carries a major risk of morbidity and mortality with 18–52% patients having clinically apparent infection related to reactivation of latent virus; however, with the use of aciclovir, this number has decreased (Thomson et al. 2005). Complications such as post-herpetic neuralgia, skin scarring and bacterial superadded infection are factors in morbidity (Steer et al. 2000; Boeckh et al. 2006).

8.2.4.2 Risk Factors

All HSCT patients should receive prophylaxis for VZV with oral aciclovir or valaciclovir for 6 months to 1 year (according to local policy) or until immunosuppression is discontinued (Kanda et al. 2001). Transmission of VZV is difficult to prevent as the period prior to symptoms where an individual is contagious can be up to 48 h before the appearance of a rash. The incubation period varies from 10 to 21 days, and an individual remains contagious until all of the vesicles have crusted over. If the immunocompromised patient is in contact with an individual with VZV infection (varicella or HZ), they are at significant risk

of developing varicella themselves and will require prompt action from the transplant team (Styczynski et al. 2009).

HSCT will probably destroy any previous immunity to VZV. Immunization of family contacts especially children is advised to reduce risk.

8.2.4.3 Presentation

VZV infection occurs in 40–50% if prophylaxis stopped at 6–12 months, with a peak incidence around 5 months and a spread of 2–10 months, usually occurring within 5 weeks of cessation of oral prophylaxis (Steer et al. 2000). Risk factors include unrelated donors, myeloablative conditioning, GvHD and the use of systemic corticosteroids. The rash may spread to more than 1–3 dermatomes in patients with visceral dissemination and is more difficult to treat.

8.2.4.4 Diagnosis

The best method for diagnosing VZV is by PCR testing of blood or a glass slide touched to a vesicle as the DNA is highly specific and sensitive.

8.2.4.5 Treatment

Treatment with high-dose aciclovir, valaciclovir or famciclovir (nucleoside analogues that interfere with viral thymidine kinase activity) can be employed.

Post treatment for VZV, it is advisable to restart prophylactic aciclovir if this was previously discontinued. The length of time prophylaxis should be continued will be guided by local policy and may range from 1 year to lifelong.

8.2.4.6 Vaccination

Shingrix can be used in patients who are immunocompetent post transplant and are aged over 50 years, this is a non-live vaccine given as two doses, 2 months apart (Kamboj and Shah 2019). There is a non-live adjuvanted recombinant zoster vaccine (RZV) which has been developed to prevent herpes zoster, but there are no recommendations for use in allogeneic patients (Baumrin et al. 2021). EBMT guidelines from 2005 and CIBMTR in 2009 do allow the use of a live varicella vaccine in selected patient groups starting at 24 months post HCT (Chou et al. 2011).

8.2.5 Hepatitis B

8.2.5.1 Background

The hepatitis B virus (HBV) is a DNA virus classified in the hepadna virus family. Patients infected by HBV prior to transplantation have a higher risk (70–86%) of HBV reactivation 5 years after HSCT transplantation. An active immunization of donors and early post-transplant vaccination of recipients have been suggested to avoid HBV reactivation. Donors should optimally receive more than one immunization, a rather high Ag dose and a highly immunogenic vaccine (Lindemann et al. 2016).

The use of chemotherapy and immunosuppression can reactivate latent hepatitis B. Further, HBV infection or reactivation contributes to liver-related morbidity and mortality; it occurs in 21–53% of patients. Transplantation of HBV-negative patients with stem cells from an infected donor (HBsAg positive) is associated with a high risk of transmission; some patients develop chronic hepatitis B. Donors with active HBV (DNA detection) should receive, if possible, antiviral treatment (Ullmann et al. 2016).

8.2.5.2 Clinical Features

Post transplant at the time of immune reconstitution or during reduction of immunosuppressive drugs, there is a rise in serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT) levels. Other clinical symptoms are jaundice and fulminant liver failure as a result of HBV (liver-related mortality) (Lau et al. 2003).

8.2.5.3 Treatment

Lamivudine (100 mg/day) is the first choice for antiviral therapy for treatment, which should be continued for at least 6 months following discontinuation of immunosuppressive drugs (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

8.2.5.4 Prevention

Patients who undergo HCT for haematological malignancy are an “at-risk” population because of the prolonged immunosuppression following the conditioning chemotherapy.

The nucleoside analogue antiviral drugs lamivudine, adefovir, telbivudine, entecavir and teno-

fovir may all be of potential use in the prevention of HBV reactivation in such patients. The majority of reports describe the use of lamivudine or entecavir, and both drugs appear to reduce the incidence of HBV reactivation. However, entecavir (and potentially tenofovir) may be superior to lamivudine because of more potent viral suppression and lower risk of antiviral resistance.

Prophylaxis for HBV reactivation with antiviral nucleoside analogues should be commenced in susceptible individuals before the initiation of chemotherapy (Pattullo 2016).

8.2.6 Hepatitis C

8.2.6.1 Background

The hepatitis C virus (HCV) is a double-stranded RNA virus classified within the Flaviviridae. Six major genotypes have been identified, from HCV1 to HCV6. It can be responsible for several systemic complications. The extrahepatic manifestations include vasculitis, fatigue, cryoglobulinemia and autoimmune disorders. HCV replication is significantly increased by immunosuppression and may cause a direct cytopathic effect in infected cells. The identification of pretransplant HCV infection appears clinically relevant. Being infected with HCV has been indicated as an independent risk factor for post-transplant veno-occlusive disease (VOD) of the liver. Reactivation of chronic HCV infection after tapering immunosuppressive therapy can sometimes lead to fulminant hepatic failure (Locasciulli et al. 2009).

8.2.6.2 Clinical Features

HCV adversely impacts on platelet recovery, non-relapse mortality and overall survival. Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (SOS), liver GvHD and hepatic problems are more likely to be severe and fatal in recipients with HCV. Pretransplant HCV infection is associated with a lower rate of platelet recovery.(Nakasone et al. 2013).

8.2.6.3 Treatment

All HCT recipients with HCV infection should be evaluated for HCV therapy before the start of conditioning therapy. Whenever possible, HCV-infected HSCT candidates should commence and complete HCV therapy before transplant. If there is an oncologic imperative for moving quickly to transplant, a therapy with direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs) should be able to clear extrahepatic HCV from donors more quickly than interferon and ribavirin.

Treatment of post-transplant HCV infection must be an urgent consideration for patients with fibrosing cholestatic HCV, patients with cirrhosis whose condition is deteriorating and patients who underwent HSCT for HCV-related lymphoproliferative disorders. Once HCV therapy is initiated, treatment interruption is not recommended because it is associated with increased risk of treatment failure.

8.2.6.4 Prevention

A vaccination against HCV does not exist. However, to prevent the complication of coinfection, people with hepatitis C should be vaccinated against hepatitis A and B. Standard precautions are recommended for the care and treatment of all patients (ASHM 2012).

HCV-infected donors should be evaluated for HCV therapy and treated before cell harvest, in order to prevent transmission of HCV to uninfected recipients (Torres et al. 2015).

8.2.7 Hepatitis E

8.2.7.1 Background

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) is a single-stranded, non-enveloped RNA virus. In areas with poor sanitation, HEV 1 and 2 are spread orofaecally between humans, usually via contaminated water. In developed countries, HEV 3 and HEV 4 are transmitted from animal reservoirs. In Western Europe the food chain is the main source of infection, (Marano et al. 2015).

There are two types of infections: acute and chronic.

Acute

Acute HEV is mostly caused by genotypes 3 and 4. Jaundice occurs in about 75% of patients.

Table 8.1 Extrahepatic manifestations of acute and chronic hepatitis E

Systemic	Neurological system	Haematological system	Other organs
Malaise/lethargy	Guillain-Barré syndrome	Thrombocytopenia	Acute pancreatitis
Nausea/vomiting	Brachial neuritis	Lymphopenia	Arthritis
Abdominal pain	Transverse myelitis	Monoclonal immunoglobulin	Autoimmune thyroiditis
Loss of appetite	Bell's palsy		
Fever			
Loss of weight			
Myalgia	Vestibular neuritis		

Chronic

No studies have assessed the prevalence or incidence of HEV infection among haematological patients receiving chemotherapy. A small number have been found to have a chronic HEV infection and include a patient with untreated hairy cell leukaemia, a patient with idiopathic CD4 T lymphopenia and patients treated for lymphoma, chronic myelomonocytic leukaemia and B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukaemia.(Kamar et al. 2014).

8.2.7.2 Clinical Features and Developing Countries

The incubation period varies between 2 and 6 weeks; the most common symptom of HEV is jaundice(frequency of 40%). Extrahepatic manifestations of acute and chronic hepatitis E involve the following systems and organs (Dalton et al. 2015) (Table 8.1).

8.2.7.3 Treatment

In haematological patients, pegylated interferon alone and ribavirin alone for 3 months have been used (Kamar et al. 2014).

8.2.7.4 Prevention

Immunocompromised patients should be screened for HEV antibodies and RNA not only prior to transplantation but also post transplantation and during episodes of liver enzyme abnormalities (De Keukeleire and Reynders 2015).

8.3 Adenovirus

8.3.1 Introduction

Adenovirus (ADV) is a ubiquitous non-enveloped double-stranded DNA virus. It currently has more than 100 serotypes and is divided into six subgroups A–G (Lion 2019). Adenovirus is more prevalent in children but is becoming more prevalent in adults in the transplant population.

8.3.2 Risk Factors

Adenovirus is spread by aerosolization or the faecal oral route with approx. 80% of children aged 1–5 years old seropositive. Risk factors include mismatched or unrelated donor, acute GvHD and isolation of ADV from multiple sites (Ljungman et al. 2003).

8.3.3 Presentation

In healthy individuals, infection is self-limiting causing conjunctivitis and upper respiratory tract, urinary tract or gastrointestinal infections and remains latent in lymphocytes post exposure. Chakrabarti et al. (2002) report a 5–29% incidence of ADV after allogeneic HSCT. Occurrence post transplant can be associated with life-threatening clinical manifestations, multi-organ failure leading to death (Lion 2019).

8.3.4 Diagnosis

Samples taken from nasopharyngeal, rectal and corneal secretions, urine and unfixed biopsy tissue can be examined with PCR to assess viral load. Low level of ADV infection does not carry a high mortality. However, those patients that develop invasive disease, such as ADV colitis, have a significant mortality of 20–80% (Robin et al. 2007).

8.3.5 Treatment

If possible immunosuppressive therapy should be tapered as the first step (Lion 2019). Cidofovir is first-line treatment and is a monophosphate nucleotide analogue of cytosine. Cidofovir inhibits viral DNA polymerase and has a low bioavailability with 90% of the drug excreted in the urine. Patients require hyper hydration and oral probenecid pre, during and post cidofovir to protect nephrons.

8.4 Coronavirus

Coronaviruses (CoVs) primarily cause enzootic infections in birds and mammals. Humans have become infected in the last few decades. There was an outbreak of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) in 2003 with 8000 cases and 700 deaths. Then in 2012, in Saudi Arabia there was an outbreak of Middle-East respiratory syndrome (MERS) that also claimed eight hundred deaths. Both of these infections were proven to be lethal when they crossed the species barrier and infected humans (Schoeman and Fielding 2019).

The infection in humans causes disease to varying degrees, from upper to lower respiratory tract infections that lead to symptoms of a cold, bronchitis, pneumonia and even SARS (Schoeman and Fielding 2019).

8.4.1 SARS-Cov-2 Virus

8.4.1.1 Introduction

A new coronavirus *SARS-CoV-2* was first reported on 1 December 2019 from Wuhan in China and spread worldwide. The outbreak was possibly linked to a zoonotic transmission at a large seafood market and is also associated with bat-derived severe acute respiratory syndrome (Fei Zhou et al. 2020). It is the causative agent of Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) (Orchard et al. 2021). By March 11, 2020, the World Health Organization (WHO) declared a SARS-CoV-2 pandemic (WHO Director General 2020). Most countries imposed restrictions on everyday life (Ljungman et al. 2020).

8.4.1.2 Risk Factors

Risk factors include increasing age, deprivation and being from black and Asian minority groups. Comorbidities such as obesity, diabetes, cancer and poorly controlled asthma were associated with increased risk of death (NHS England Green Book 2021).

8.4.1.3 Presentation

Transmission is via person to person spread through respiratory aerosols and direct human contact and fomites. There is a wide clinical picture described from asymptomatic to death (Fei Zhou et al. 2020). Estimates of the basic reproduction number [R] were initially between 2 and 3 although a recent estimate was as high as 5.7 (Orchard et al. 2021). In efforts to reduce infection, measures using active surveillance, physical distancing, early quarantine and contact tracing were employed to lesser and greater effect across the world, ideally avoidance in the first place was the most effective strategy. Time from exposure to symptoms ranged from 2–14 days (Ljungman et al. 2020).

8.4.1.4 Diagnosis

Typically symptoms occur within 5–6 days (incubation period) of exposure, although about 20% of patients remain asymptomatic throughout infection (NHS England Green Book 2021). Those with symptoms suggestive of COVID-19 require testing with PCR as per National guidelines. Isolation and the use of PPE are required until the test result is known (Orchard et al. 2021). Many individuals are likely to have mild symptoms and may be asymptomatic at the time of diagnosis. Symptoms include a new onset of cough and fever, headache, loss of smell, nasal obstruction, lethargy, myalgia, taste dysfunction, sore throat, diarrhoea, vomiting and confusion.

8.4.1.5 Treatment

No antiviral drug has so far proven to have an impact on the death rate following multiple worldwide trials. Lower mortality has been shown in patients given corticosteroids (Ljungman et al. 2020). Of paramount importance is supportive care from the wider multidisciplinary team.

There are several vaccines targeting the S protein authorised for use; two use an mRNA platform (Pfizer BioNTech COVID-19 mRNA vaccine BNT162b2 or Comirnaty® and Moderna mRNA-1273 COVID-19 vaccine or Spikevax®) and two use an adenovirus vector (AstraZeneca COVID-19 vaccine/Vaxzevria® and COVID-19 vaccine Janssen Ad26 COV2-S [recombinant]). None of the studies have included HSCT or CAR-T recipients (BSBMT 2021).

NHS England has been working with the British Society of Blood and Marrow Transplantation and Cellular Therapy (BSBMTCT) and Anthony Nolan to ensure that those who have received a HCT or CAR-T therapy are offered COVID-19 re-vaccination. In patients who receive HSCT or CAR-T therapy, any protective antibodies from exposure or vaccination prior to transplantation are likely to be lost and it is unclear whether the recipient acquires the donor's immunity. Any previous COVID-19 vaccination is to be discounted and it is recommended that the individual is re-vaccinated as if they have never received a COVID-19 vaccine. Those that should receive a third primary dose are patients within 24 months of transplant at the time of their first or second dose, ideally at least 8 weeks after the second dose. Patients over 24 months should receive a booster dose no earlier than 6 months after completion of the primary dose (EBMT 2021; NHS England Green Book 2021).

December 2021 saw the release of two novel agents aimed at the management of non-hospitalised patients using neutralising monoclonal antibodies or antivirals in adults and children >12 years. Data showed that sotrovimab when given to non-hospitalised patients with mild to moderate disease and at least one risk factor resulted in a relative risk reduction in hospitalisation or death by 85% (Gupta et al. 2021). MOVe-OUT a phase 3 trial from Merck and Ridgeback (2021) also revealed a reduction in relative risk of 30% in the composite primary outcome of hospitalisation or death by day 29. Sotrovimab a neutralising Mab that both blocks viral entry into healthy cells and clears infected cells is administered intravenously (500 mg once only) and Molnupiravir (800 mg 12 hourly for 5 days) an antiviral therapy is given orally if sotrovimab is contraindicated or not possible. Inclusion criteria are SARS-CoV-2 infection confirmed by PCR within 5 days. Onset of symptoms of COVID-19 within the last 5 days and a member of the highest risk group. This risk group includes autologous, allogeneic and CAR-T patients. Exclusion criteria are that the patient would require hospitalisation for their infection, or new supplemental oxygen requirement specifically for the management of COVID-19 symptoms. Children under 12 years and less than 40 kg are also excluded (NHS England Green Book 2021).

8.4.1.6 Nurse Implication

Globally, there are 43.5 million healthcare workers (HCW), 2 million of whom are nurses (World Health Organisation 2020).

During the pandemic period, HCW suffered physical and emotional stress. Diagnosis included moral distress (Turale et al. 2020), anxiety, depression and post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) (Morley et al. 2020). These conditions required psychological, emotional and physical support. Furthermore, the re-allocation of personnel has increased the state of anxiety, potentially due to the lack of familiarity in the new role (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2020). These factors may result in suppressing the natural process of grief and loss and, in the long term, may lead to faster professional burnout (Ayanian 2020).

During this period the International Code of Ethics (ICN 2012) states that within nursing;

> there is a respect for human rights, including cultural rights, the right to life and choice, to dignity and to be treated with respect (Turale et al. 2020)

The HCW trying to balance their obligations of beneficence and duty to care for patients with rights and responsibilities to address inadequacies within their healthcare systems in ways that are consistent with rights and duties to protect themselves and their loved ones (Morley et al. 2020).

Nurse staffing is also a critical concern during a pandemic. While there is a need to be context

specific and fluid due to the inability to predict exactly how many nurses might become unwell or need to be quarantined, there is very little guidance regarding optimal or minimum staffing levels for preparation phases, for the initiation of triage, or for adequate provision of crisis care (Morley et al. 2020). The patient outcome is directly related to nurse staffing levels (Aiken 2011, 2017).

The healthcare systems and policy responses to COVID-19 are evolving rapidly, nurses and other HCW play an important role, taking a proactive approach with multidisciplinary teams to participate in the pandemic planning within their health organizations. It is critical that nurses regularly review and follow institutional, specialist college, state level and government recommendations. Measures should be subject to an ongoing review that will reflect organizational, local, state-wide and national policies (including, criteria for COVID-19 testing, self-isolation, social distancing, quarantine and personal protective equipment [PPE]) (Paterson et al. 2020; Table 8.2).

The advent of the pandemic has caught many unprepared at an organisational level, but despite this, the management of patients has been optimal during this period, through a reorganization of activities and a management of available resources.

There are significant opportunities to learn from this pandemic situation, starting from improving nursing practice and contributing to policy-making through evidence-based research and empowerment strategies. We also "need to improve understanding of the ethically justified expectations regarding what the public, employers, and co-workers can reasonably expect from nurses during public health emergencies". Nurses will continue to need strong moral courage and resilience to work during this COVID-19 pandemic, in hospitals, clinics, care homes and communities around the world, and across borders and cultures (Turale et al. 2020).

At the time of writing, SARS-CoV-2 remains a significant problem. All patients are screened prior to admission, local practices may differ with exact timeframes. If a patient tests PCR positive, the transplant will be placed on hold even if asymptomatic. In the general population, the infection is considered not infective after 10 days. Recommendations from the CDC in the USA suggest patients may continue to produce replication-competent SARS-CoV-2 beyond 20 days and recommend a test-based strategy for management including two negative tests at least 24 h apart after resolution of symptoms for at least 24 h and improvement of other symptoms and if a patient has been persistently PCR positive beyond 30 days consider additional testing (EBMT 2021).

8.5 Respiratory Complications

Pulmonary complications are a leading cause of post-transplant complications and death in HSCT recipients (Alsharif 2009; Roychowdhury et al. 2005). Post-transplant pulmonary complications are classified as either infectious or noninfectious. The rate of complications is significantly lower for autologous transplant recipients than for allogeneic transplant recipients. This is because of the absent risk of GvHD in autologous transplants, the infrequent use of immunosuppressive medications such as ciclosporin or tacrolimus and the absence of radiation therapy in the preconditioning regimen (Ho et al. 2001; Kotloff et al. 2004). Methods that healthcare professionals can use to improve patient outcomes in autologous and allogeneic recipients include raising clinical awareness, improving diagnostics, shortening time to medical intervention and continuing multidisciplinary research (Stephens 2013). The spectrum of pulmonary complications for transplant recipients will continue to change, due in part to rapid advances in supportive care, the increasing age of transplant recipients, new antiviral and antifungal agents and an increasing use of prophylactic broad-spectrum antibiotics post transplant (Sharma et al. 2005). The real key, however, to decreasing morbidity and mortality in adult and paediatric HSCT patient populations remains in effective diagnostic techniques (Stephens 2013).

Table 8.2 PPE recommendations from Paterson et al. (2020)

Oncology Nursing Society (ONS) interim recommendations for use of PPE during care delivery and administration of hazardous cancer drugs

PPE	ONS Recommendation	COVID-19 Interim recommendation
Gowns	Disposable poly-coated	Regular disposable gown (water resistant) Cloth gown (facility laundered)*
Masks	Mask with face and eye protection required only if splashing is likely and for cleaning of spills	N95 masks should be reserved for symptomatic or COVID-19– + patients, hazardous spills and clean-up Powdered air purifying respirators (PAPRs) Full face piece air purifying respirators or PAPRS
Eye protection	Mask with eye protection or goggles if splashing is likely and for cleaning of spills	
Gloves	Double chemotherapy-tested gloves	Single chemotherapy-tested gloves, double standard exam gloves, or single standard exam glove
Shoe covers	Use in compounding areas onl	Work-only washable shoes
Safe handling of NIOSH drugs	Poly-coated gown and double chemotherapy tested gloves (single use to hang or take down chemotherapy)	Use one gown per patient - hang gown inside-out near patient and away from surfaces between uses One nurse performs all takedowns of chemotherapy Use gloves only (no gown) for lower hazardous risk drugs

* For infection control and non-hazardous drugs.

Reprinted from Seminars in Oncology Nursing, Volume 36, Issue 3, C. Paterson, et al. Oncology Nursing During a Pandemic: Critical Reflections in the Context of COVID-19, 151028, Copyright 2020, with permission from Elsevier

Pulmonary infections are the largest cause of post-HSCT infective morbidity and have been reported in most recipients, carrying a mortality rate of 20% (Cooke et al. 2008; Zuccotti et al. 2005). The principal cause of infection is the severe immunocompromised status of the patients from the disease process (malignant or non-malignant), conditioning regimens (non-myeloablative and myeloablative) and immuno-suppressive prophylaxis to prevent and treat GvHD. A study by Escuissato et al. (2005) reviewed CT findings of transplant patients and found that viral infections (51%) were the most common in post-transplant recipients, followed by bacterial infections (23%), fungal infection (19%) and protozoal infections (less than 1%). In 5% of the cases examined, patients had two or more infectious agents concurrently.

8.5.1 Typical Onset of Pulmonary Complications Following Stem Cell Transplantation

Typical onset of pulmonary complications following HSCT divided into three stages based on information from Antin and Raley (2009) Camus and Costabel (2005), Coomes et al. (2010), Polovich et al. (2009) and Soubani and Pandya (2010)

Day 0 to day 30	
Infections and complications related to conditioning regimen and neutropenia	Pulmonary oedema Pleural effusion Transfusion-related acute lung injury Idiopathic pneumonia syndrome Engraftment syndrome Diffuse alveolar haemorrhage Aspergillosis Candidaemia (*Candida* sepsis) and candidiasis (general *Candida* infections) Respiratory viruses—respiratory syncytial virus, parainfluenza, influenza Bacteraemias of gastrointestinal origin Infections of central venous catheter origin Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) Chemotherapy-associated pulmonary toxicity
Day 31 to day 100	
Classic opportunistic infections and complications	Pulmonary veno-occlusive disease (due to hepatic sinusoidal obstructive syndrome) Diffuse alveolar haemorrhage Cytomegalovirus Aspergillosis *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia Respiratory viruses—Respiratory syncytial virus, parainfluenza, influenza Toxoplasmosis ARDS Idiopathic pneumonia syndrome Chemotherapy-associated pulmonary toxicity
Greater than day 100	
Infections from encapsulated organisms	Aspergillosis Respiratory viruses—Respiratory syncytial virus, parainfluenza, influenza Varicella zoster virus Cytomegalovirus *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia Post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder Pneumonia ARDS Bronchiolitis obliterans Bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia Chemotherapy-associated pulmonary toxicity

8.5.2 Diagnostics

Diagnostic techniques for pulmonary disease in HCT patients are similar to that for non-transplant patients. Chest radiograph (X-ray) and thoracic computed tomography (CT) scan remain the most popular and less-invasive options. CT scans are particularly useful when compared with two-dimensional X-rays because they can expose acute and chronic changes in the lung parenchyma. Respiratory CT scans involve taking pictures of cross-sections of lung tissue using high special-frequency reconstruction during inhalation and exhalation (Stephens 2013).

Changes such as nodules, "white out" and a "glassy" appearance signal the physician and radiology staff to consider additional diagnostics (Truong et al. 2010). This could include collecting sputum samples, bronchoscopy with or without bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL), open lung biopsy and needle biopsy (Kaplan et al. 2011; Truong et al. 2010).

Sputum samples can be collected by nurses, physicians or respiratory therapists according to transplant program protocols. Respiratory virus detection is highly dependent on the type of sample collected, the time of collection after the onset of clinical symptoms, the age of the patient and the transport and storage of the sample prior to testing. Several different upper respiratory tract specimens are applicable for testing, including nasopharyngeal (NP) washes, NP aspirates and NP swabs placed in virus transport media (Specter 2009; Storch 2000). Expectorations in the early morning or after a respiratory procedure can be the easiest for the patient to produce because of the natural accumulation of secretions at these times. About 15 ml of sputum is usually required for adequate laboratory analysis (Murray et al. 2010). Sputum can also be collected during a bronchoscopy. In some cases, bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) will be performed during the bronchoscopy. BAL involves the flushing of fluid (usually a sterile normal saline solution) into a localized area of the lower respiratory tract and then immediately suctioning the fluid up the bronchoscope and into a sterile specimen container. BAL allows for the detection and characterization of several respiratory pathogens, including viral, fungal and bacterial agents, and is

Table 8.3 Other virus that cause infections in allo-HCT patients

Rhinovirus	Role of treatment is limited by lack of agents and RCT
Influenza	Oseltamivir +/− zanamivir (research and some limited European areas use IV peramivir, favipiravir)
Respiratory syncytial virus	Ribavirin (research and Europe use palivizumab)
Parainfluenza	Ribavirin +/− IVIg in some centres
Metapneumovirus	Ribavirin +/− IVIg in some centres
Coronavirus	Role of treatment is limited by lack of agents and RCT
Bocavirus	Role of treatment is limited by lack of agents and RCT

considered a major diagnostic mechanism for *Pneumocystis carinii* (now called *Pneumocystis jirovecii*) pneumonia (PJP) (Forslöw et al. 2010). In patients with focal pulmonary lesions, aspergillosis or pulmonary GvHD, fine-needle aspiration biopsy is considered the first-line diagnostic method (Gupta et al. 2021).

In the patients after allo-HCT there are other common viruses that cause infections (listed in Table 8.3) that may lead to significant illness and ultimately hospitalisation. Many centres screen for these on a PCR panel when assessing an unwell patients with coryzal or respiratory symptoms. There are often limited treatments available with a lack of robust data to support usage.

8.6 Bacterial Infections

8.6.1 Gram-Positive and Gram-Negative Bacteria

In the first phase post allo-HCT there are two main sources of bacterial infections: endogenous gastrointestinal flora (prevalently $Gram^-$) and vascular catheters (prevalently $Gram^+$).

In the early stages, antibacterial prophylaxis, as well as hand washing and oral hygiene plays a very important role.

The recommended strategies to prevent healthcare associated transmission of bacteria are prompt laboratory-based identification, adherence to contact precautions and strict hand hygiene. More expensive approaches include dedicated equipment and staff.

Bacterial infections most commonly occur in the first month but can occur at any time. Both gram-negative and gram-positive organisms can cause pneumonia and have significant morbidity and mortality in HCT recipients (Tripathi and Sapra 2021). The most common being *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter*, *Acinetobacter*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus viridans* and *Enterococcus*. One also needs to recognize the risk of *Mycoplasma* and Chlamydia infections, although the common use of fluoroquinolones will empirically treat these organisms. Other causes of late pneumonia that should not be missed include *Nocardia*, *Listeria* and *Actinomyces*.

The group of Enterococci are gram-positive aerobes and include Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci (VRE), Coagulase-negative Staphylococcus (CNS), *Staphylococcus aureus*, Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), *Streptococcus viridans* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. These are facultative anaerobes which are seen microscopically as single pairs and short chains and are part of the normal flora of the gastrointestinal tract. In transplant recipients, enterococcal infections are usually nosocomial and occur generally as invasive infections in the immediate post-transplant period, mostly as a consequence of endogenous gram-positive translocation.

Multi-drug Resistant Organism (MDRO), are an organism with resistance to antibacterial compounds and they represent an emerging problem in public health. Resistant *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* bacteraemia and carbapenemase producing *K. pneumoniae* (KPC) are prevalent in haematology populations. There is an increase in the rates of vancomycin-resistant *Enterococci* that are responsible for up to 41% of all gram positive bacteraemias (Trubiano et al. 2013).

In 2020 the World Health Organization declared antimicrobial resistance a worldwide threat that requires urgent action.

Table 8.4 describes the main characteristics for each named bacteria and if it is a $Gram^+$ or $Gram^-$ organism and if it is classed as an MDRO.

Table 8.4 Bacterial characteristics

	Gram+/ gram−	MDRO (Y/N)	Main characteristics
Enterococci	Gram+	Y	Part of the normal flora of the gastrointestinal tract. Infections are usually nosocomial and occur generally as invasive infections in the immediate post-transplant period
Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci (VRE)	Gram+	Y	VRE are the predominant organisms causing pre-engraftment bacteraemia among HSCT recipients Infection control efforts should include contact precautions, and the need for active surveillance testing (Kamar et al. 2014) Contact isolation can be associated with anxiety and depression that occur in these patients (Alanio et al. 2016)
Coagulase-negative Staphylococcus (CNS)	Gram+	N	Members of Micrococcaceae family, patients with CVC are particularly vulnerable to CNS infections
Staphylococcus aureus	Gram+	Y	Methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* (MSSA) and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) are major causes of infections after transplantations (Garzoni 2009)
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)	Gram+	Y	Strain of *S. aureus* that resists methicillin It causes skin lesion, osteomyelitis, endocarditis and furuncolosis HSCT centres should follow stringent infection control practices handwashing, contact precautions MRSA is indeed transmitted via ad infected or colonized patient or by a colonized healthcare worker
Streptococcus viridans	Gram+	N	Part of the normal microflora, found mainly in the oral cavity but also in the upper respiratory, gastrointestinal and female genital tract. Septicaemia is the most common manifestation in bone marrow transplant recipients (Ihendyane et al. 2004)
Streptococcus pneumoniae	Gram+	N	It causes significant morbidity and mortality in all age groups This is a community-acquired infection, months or years following the transplantation as meningitis or fulminant sepsis
Enterobacteriaceae	Gram−		Intestinal colonizers, which are divided into two groups: lactose fermenters and non- lactose fermenters
Klebsiella pneumoniae	Gram−	N	Colonizing the gastrointestinal tract, skin and nasopharynx *K. pneumoniae* is a notorious "collector" of multidrug resistance mechanisms, such as the "carbapenemases" (Tzouvelekis et al. 2012)
Carbapenemase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (CP-kP)	Gram−	Y	They are emerging in immunosuppressed patients, representing a challenge in terms of outcomes and management (Girmenia et al. 2019). For more information refer to CDC guidance https://www.cdc.gov/hai/organisms/cre/cre-facilities.html
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Gram−	Y	Globally has the ability to acquire resistance to all traditionally effective agents Patient with severe gastrointestinal colonization as an important reservoir for endogenous infection, as well as the source of horizontal transmission to other patients; in patients with haematological malignancies, enteric colonization by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* occurs typically after chemotherapy
Acinetobacter baumannii	Gram−	N	Has the ability to survive on dry and inanimate surfaces for long periods. It can be resistant to many antibacterials drugs To prevent this bacteria it is important to identify and eliminate the common sources of contamination, optimizing contact isolation and hand hygiene (Lin et al. 2014)
Clostridium difficile	Gram−	Y	The principal symptom of *C. difficile* infection (CDI) is diarrhoea Risk factors for CDI are exposure to broad-spectrum antibacterials drugs, total body irradiation, long hospitalization, immunocompromised state, older age and irritation of the intestinal mucosa by chemotherapy drugs (Gu et al. 2015). Management of this bacteria requires particular attention, the indication that is reported in the "Infection and Control Management" paragraph First-line treatment is given by oral metronidazole and/or vancomycin (Kamboj and Shah 2019)

8.7 Infection Control Management

Adapted from Weston (2013).

8.7.1 Isolation

- In the event of confirmation of a *Clostridium difficile* (CD) toxin-positive and MDRO result in a patient with diarrhoea, who is not already isolated, the patient must be moved to a single room with en suite bathroom or dedicated night commode.
- An isolation notice must be displayed on the door.
- The nurse looking after the patient should inform the infection prevention control team.
- Isolation can be discontinued once the patient has been asymptomatic for 48 h and is passing "normal" stools.

8.7.2 Equipment and Cleaning

- Dedicated patient equipment must be used, including disposable blood pressure cuffs and tourniquet.
- Floors, night commodes, toilets and bedframes are subject to the heaviest faecal contamination; it is important that the ward environment should not be cluttered in order to facilitate thorough and effective ward cleaning.
- On discharge or transfer of the patient, it is important that an accurate cleaning of the room is undertaken using 1000 ppm available chlorine and/or a sporicidal agent.

8.7.3 Hand Hygiene

- The patient should be assisted with hand hygiene after using the toilet or night commode and before eating if unable to wash his or her hands independently.
- Healthcare workers must wash their hands with soap and water after contact with the patient or his/her environment. Alcohol hand rubs or gels are not effective against *Clostridium difficile* spores and MDRO.

8.7.4 Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

- Wear gloves and apron before entering the patient's room.
- Remove apron and gloves before leaving the patient's room.
- Hands must be decontaminated before putting on and after removing gloves.
- Ensure that all healthcare workers and visitors wear and dispose of PPE appropriately.

8.7.5 Waste and Linen

- Any clinical waste and linen, including bedding and, if present, curtains, should be considered contaminated and managed properly.

8.7.6 Movement of Patients

- Patients with CD and MDRO should not be transferred to other wards in the hospital, except for isolation purposes or if they require specialist care on another ward.
- When patients need to attend departments for essential investigations, the nurse looking after the patient is responsible for informing the receiving area in advance of the patient's CD positive status; if possible, symptomatic patients should be seen at the end of the working session and should be sent for only when the department is ready to see them; it should be avoided to leave them in a waiting area with other patients.
- CD spores are known to contaminate the environment, are resistant to standard disinfectants and are capable of surviving for long periods on dry surfaces. 10% bleach solutions are sporicidal and should be used for environmental decontamination during outbreaks.

The combination of strict hand hygiene and contact precautions (gloves and apron) significantly reduces the incidence of CD (Dubberke and Riddle 2009).

Further treatments of recurrent CDI are fidaxomicin, probiotics, intravenous immunoglobulin and faecal transplants.

8.8 Faecal Microbiota Transplant

Gut microbiota is a complex community of microorganisms that live in the digestive tract; over the past decade, the faecal Microbiota Transplant is gaining momentum (Gomaa 2020).

The treatment with faecal microbiota therapy is done by a technique that involves transfer of fresh stool from a healthy donor to the gastrointestinal tract.

In particular faecal microbiota transplantation (FMT) has emerged as a remarkably successful treatment for recurrent *Clostridioides difficile* infection that cannot be cured with antibiotics alone (Khoruts et al. 2021).

8.9 Fungal Infections

Invasive fungal diseases are a major obstacle to patients after transplant and are a major cause of pulmonary-related mortality (Ji et al. 2011). Patients are at risk at several points; in the neutropenic pre engraftment period, particularly when suffering with oral mucositis and the mucosal barrier is compromised. During engraftment when T cell immunity has not returned, and later if there is concomitant chronic GvHD leading to a delay in immune reconstitution. *Aspergillus* is the most common and most virulent fungal cause of pneumonia following HCT (Blaes et al. 2009; Wilson et al. 2009). Other fungal respiratory infections in post-HCT patients, particularly those receiving myeloablative conditioning, include *Malassezia*, *Zygomycetes* and *Candida* species (Wilson et al. 2009). Signs and symptoms may include fever, pleuritic chest discomfort and dyspnoea.

8.9.1 Diagnosis

- Imaging shows nodules or cavitating infiltrates.
- The classic "halo sign" may be seen on chest CT, but imaging may not be helpful.
- BAL may be useful.
- Galactomannan and beta glucan testing may be helpful but are not always informative.

8.10 Mycobacteria

Testing with purified protein derivative (PPD) is often not helpful after allogeneic stem cell transplantation because of depressed delayed-type hypersensitivity reactions. Therefore a skin reaction with PPD will likely not occur.

8.10.1 Diagnosis

Cultured sputum sample/BAL various indirect assays such as Quantiferon gold are helpful.

8.11 *Pneumocystis jirovecii*

8.11.1 Introduction

Pneumocystis jirovecii (PJP) is an atypical fungus that causes severe pneumonia in immunocompromised patients. Recognized as a protozoan initially and reclassified in 1988 as a fungus, pneumocystis cannot be propagated in culture, and few treatment options exist for those with PJP pneumonia. It is ubiquitous with almost universal seropositivity by 2 years of age (Thomas and Limper 2004).

8.11.2 Risk Factors

It is recommended that all allograft patients are adequately covered with prophylaxis for PJP for at least 6 months and up to 1 year or more if on immunosuppression with combination trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) as this has reduced incidence of infection to approximately 5% (Castro et al. 2005). Prophylaxis usually starts at the point of engraftment or upon discharge, as TMP-SMX can cause engraftment delay.

If the patient develops any sensitivity to TMP-SMX then alternatives are pentamidine nebulizer, atovaquone and oral dapsone. (Gea-Banacloch et al. 2009).

8.11.3 Presentation

Those with PJP present with symptoms of subtle onset dyspnoea, a low-grade temperature and a non-productive cough, and when examined, the chest is clear on auscultation. However, this may rapidly change with the onset of hypoxia requiring admission to a critical care unit. Imaging of the chest with X-ray reveals bilateral perihilar interstitial infiltrates that become increasingly homogenous and diffuse as the disease progresses. Computed tomography (CT) scans show extensive ground-glass attenuation or cystic lesions (Thomas and Limper 2004).

8.11.4 Diagnosis

Prompt diagnosis and treatment are warranted with adherence to prophylactic cover. Diagnosis should not rely only on clinical criteria or imaging. Due to the difficulties of culturing samples, the diagnosis of PJP is made through microscopic examination of sputum or bronchoalveolar fluid or by PCR (Alanio et al. 2016).

8.11.5 Treatment

Treatment is with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and the addition of systemic steroids to reduce the inflammatory lung processes. For those that are intolerant to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, atovaquone or a combination of clindamycin with primaquine is licenced for use (Chen et al. 2003; Alanio et al. 2016).

8.12 BMT Setting, Infection and Infection Control

8.12.1 Introduction

HCT using chemotherapy and radiotherapy leads to a reduced and compromised immune status. The administration of immunosuppressant to prevent graft rejection contributes also to the high risk of infections in this patient group (Brown 2010).

In recent years, improvement in HCT supportive care measures have decreased infectious morbidity and mortality. However, there is still scope for improvement since infection remains a leading cause of morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing HCT (Gratwohl et al. 2005).

8.12.2 Reverse Barrier Nursing and Protective Isolation

It is crucial to have a skilled nursing team to assess, prevent, detect and treat infections. Delays in diagnosing an infection that results from a depressed inflammatory response may lead to increased susceptibility to a broad range of potentially life-threatening organisms. For this reason, in addition to antimicrobial prophylaxis, there are other important strategies to prevent infections, for example, building a multi-professional network team specialized in infection control measures (Masszi and Mank 2012).

8.12.2.1 Protective Isolation and Cleaning

The large number of patients considered at risk requires an evaluation of all proposals of protective systems, in relation to the effectiveness, applicability and cost benefit (Pizzo 1981).

The Centres for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in 2009 made very specific recommendations regarding precautions to be taken in HCT. These included measures such as protective isolation, the use of a single room and filtered air entering through a central or portable high-efficiency filter (HEPA), capable of removing 99.97% of ≥0.3 uM in diameter particles.

For autologous HCT, there is no specific indication other than the reference to “standard” precautions (as shown in Table 8.5) for each interaction with the patient. Protection with lab coat, gloves and mask is not indicated in the absence of suspected or confirmed infection of patients (Tomblyn et al. 2009). The effectiveness of specific precautions in preventing infections in patients undergoing autologous HCT has not

Table 8.5 Standard precautions of infection control (https://www.dhs.wisconsin.gov/ic/precautions.htm)

Standard precautions	Standard precautions are a set of infection control practices used to prevent transmission of diseases that can be acquired by contact with blood, body fluids, non-intact skin (including rashes) and mucous membranes. These measures are to be used when providing care to all individuals, whether or not they appear infectious or symptomatic
Hand hygiene	Hand hygiene refers to both washing with plain or antibacterial soap and water and to the use of alcohol gel to decontaminate hands. When hands are not visibly soiled, alcohol gel is the preferred method of hand hygiene when providing healthcare to clients
Personal protective equipment (PPE)	PPE includes items such as gloves, gowns, masks, respirators and eyewear protectors used to create barriers that protect the skin, clothing, mucous membranes and the respiratory tract from infectious agents PPE is used as a last resort when work practices and engineering controls alone cannot eliminate worker exposure The items selected for use depend on the type of interaction a public health worker will have with a client and the likely modes of disease transmission Wear gloves when touching blood, body fluids, non-intact skin, mucous membranes and contaminated items. Gloves must always be worn during activities involving vascular access, such as performing phlebotomies Wear a surgical mask and goggles or face shield if there is a reasonable chance that a splash or spray of blood or body fluids may occur to the eyes, mouth or nose Wear a gown if skin or clothing is likely to be exposed to blood or body fluids remove PPE immediately after use and wash hands. It is important to remove PPE in the proper order to prevent contamination of skin or clothing
Needle stick and sharp injury prevention	Safe handling of needles and other sharp devices is a component of standard precautions that are implemented to prevent healthcare worker exposure to blood-borne pathogens. The Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act (link is external) mandates the use of sharps with engineered safety devices when suitable devices exit
Cleaning and disinfection	Client care areas, common waiting areas and other areas where clients may have potentially contaminated surfaces or objects that are frequently touched by staff and clients (doorknobs, sinks, toilets other surfaces and items in close proximity to clients) should be cleaned routinely with EPA-registered disinfectants, following the manufacturer's instructions for amount, dilution and contact time
Respiratory hygiene (cough etiquette)	Clients in waiting rooms or other common areas can spread infections to others in the same area or to local public health agency staff. Measures to avoid spread of respiratory secretions should be promoted to help prevent respiratory disease transmission. Elements of respiratory hygiene and cough etiquette include: Covering the nose/mouth with a tissue when coughing or sneezing or using the crook of the elbow to contain respiratory droplets Using tissues to contain respiratory secretions and discarding in the nearest waste receptacle after use Performing hand hygiene (handwashing with non-antimicrobial soap and water, alcohol-based hand rub or antiseptic handwash) immediately after contact with respiratory secretions and contaminated objects/materials Asking clients with signs and symptoms of respiratory illness to wear a surgical mask whilst waiting in common areas or placing them immediately in examination rooms or areas away from others. Provide tissues and no-touch receptacles for used tissue disposal Spacing seating in waiting areas at least three feet apart to minimize close contact among persons in those areas Supplies such as tissues, wastebaskets, alcohol gel and surgical masks should be provided in waiting and other common areas in local public health agencies. Place cough etiquette signs (link is external) where the general public can see them
Waste disposal	
Safe injection practices	Outbreaks of hepatitis B and hepatitis C infections in US ambulatory care facilities have prompted the need to re-emphasize safe injection practices. All healthcare personnel who give injections should strictly adhere to the CDC recommendations

been evaluated but must follow the standard precautions for every patient contact.

Some centres use additional protection in an effort to reduce the risk of infection, but there are insufficient data to recommend such behaviours (Tomblyn et al. 2009). Consistent with the organization of the department, it would be advisable to hospitalize the patient in a single room with attached bathroom. The ventilation system should ensure at least 12 air changes per hour; preferably with HEPA filters for prevention of airborne fungal infections, especially Aspergillus (Ifversen et al. 2021). The rooms, housing highly immunocompromised patients, need to be placed under positive pressure to prevent the entry into the room of airborne pathogens in the hallway or in adjacent spaces. In the rooms it is forbidden to keep fresh flowers and/or dried and potted plants (Tomblyn et al. 2009). Although it is unlikely that exposure to plants causes invasive fungal infections in patients undergoing HCT, it is recommended that plants and dried or fresh flowers do not enter the room during hospitalization (conditioning phase included) because of the *Aspergillus* sp., isolated from soil of ornamental plants and flowers. In addition it was found a high proportion of gram-negative bacteria is in the water of cut flower vases (*Pseudomonas*) (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

For the patient hospitalized in a protective environment, exits from the room should be restricted just for the execution of diagnostic tests and for a short period. If a construction site is present nearby the hospital, it is indicated to use a filter mask (N95) to prevent inhalation of spores. There are no recommendations regarding use of the mask with filter in the absence of the construction work (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

8.12.2.2 Handwashing

The most important point in the prevention of infections in hospitalized patients, being in protective isolation, remains handwashing. Hand hygiene is a key element of the standard precautions for all types of patients (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

All staff and visitors must wash their hands before entering the patient's room in order to reduce the risk of cross infection.

Follow your institution's guidelines for hand hygiene. The five moments of hand hygiene as defined by the World Health Organisation (2020) are:

1. before touching the patient
2. before a clean/aseptic procedure
3. after body fluid exposure risk (blood, body fluids or excretions, mucous membranes, non-intact skin or dressing)
4. after touching a patient
5. after touching patient's surrounding

It is also advisable not to wear false nails or extensions during direct contact with the patient and maintain the natural nails short. Furthermore hand hygiene cannot be done in a perfect way if you wear bulky rings. The experts' recommendation is to strongly discourage the use of rings during assistance (World Health Organisation 2020).

Nurses have an important role in educating the family, patient and visitors in effective handwashing and to provide all relevant information to reduce the risk of contracting infections.

8.12.2.3 Environmental Cleaning

Environmental cleaning plays an important role in the prevention of nosocomial infections, particularly in patients with haematological cancers and diseases undergoing HCT. The cleaning staff must be well prepared and need to be informed and trained, with particular attention to the problems of immunosuppressed patients. It is preferable to assign stable staff to the division, in order to ensure a continuity of service. The hospital room must be cleaned more than once a day, with special dust control, which must be removed by damp.

The light fixtures and outdoor ventilation grills, vents and all horizontal surfaces should be cleaned with pre-moistened disposable cloths with a disinfectant FDA and Environmental Protection Agency approved. The design and selection of the furniture of a transplant program should be focused in creating and maintaining an environment: free of dust and the floors and finishes should be brushable, waterproof, easy to disinfect and antistatic (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

To verify that hospital rooms are at effective reduced environmental load, periodic monitoring of the environments must be guaranteed.

8.12.2.4 Management of Linen

All linen should be changed daily and pillows and mattresses should have protective coatings. During the hospital stay for the patient undergoing HCT, it is enough to wash clothes and linens at high temperatures in a washing machine (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

8.12.2.5 Access to Low Environmental Loading Department

Each centre has its own policy on the number of visitors allowed and the frequency of visits. However, all centres are in agreement in pointing out that they cannot come into contact with the patient when suffering from infections, rashes, nausea and/or vomiting or recent exposure to exanthematous diseases such as chickenpox or measles (Tomblyn et al. 2009).

8.12.2.6 Personal Hygiene

Personal hygiene is a key aspect for the patient undergoing HCT. It represents the most effective way to reduce infections caused by endogenous organisms. It is important to explain the importance of personal hygiene and its role in preventing infections as seen in Table 8.6.

Table 8.6 Recommendations for personal hygiene (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2020)

When	How	What
Take a shower every day using mild liquid soap in dispensers Thorough intimate hygiene must be performed after each evacuation, especially in case of diarrhoea	Patients are advised to gently rub the skin and dry it accurately especially at the level of the armpits and groin, where the body microorganisms can proliferate if they find a moist environment	Do not use sponges or knobs (only if disposable) For teeth cleaning, it is recommended to use synthetic brushes with soft bristles
Towels need to be replaced every day	The material for the toilet must be new and in closed packs For dry and peeling skin, it may be useful to apply moisturizer on the body	During the hospitalization period, the following products should not be used: soaps, perfumes, deodorants and aftershave containing alcohol, cotton sticks for ear cleaning (patient should clean the external pinna with soap and water only), lipsticks
Patients should be advised to cut the nails of the hands and feet before admission, as, during aplasia, they are more susceptible to infections and bleeding. Also keeping short nails facilitates good hand hygiene. Enamel or false nails should be removed	Thorough personal hygiene will allow the patient to evaluate daily the state of his/her skin and promptly notify the physician and nursing staff of any changes such as erythema, desquamation, haematomas	For men an electric razor is recommended; razor blades and scissors are forbidden due to their increased bleeding risk

8.12.2.7 Oral and Gastrointestinal Mucositis

Oral and gastrointestinal mucositis caused by high-dose chemotherapy and/or radiation continues to be an important clinical problem.

Oral care is an important aspect in the control of infections in transplant patients (Quinn et al. 2008) (see Chap. 10).

8.12.2.8 Central Venous Devices

The use of central venous catheters (CVC) is linked to the need to infuse complex therapies for a long time, having available a valid and secure access. The goals of care, for the CVC management, must aim to ensure prevention of infections and maintenance of the patency (see Chap. 4).

8.12.2.9 Low Bacterial Diet

The low bacterial diet (LBD), also known as neutropenic diet or low microbial diet, is a diet aimed at reducing the ingestion of bacterial and fungal contaminants excluding it from foods such as fresh fruits and vegetables, raw eggs, raw meat and fish, unpasteurized dairy products, ice and yogurt that will be excluded from any type of diet

Table 8.7 Handling of food items during allogeneic haematopoietic cell transplantation

Steps	Handling and preparing food items	Selecting the lower risk option of food items	
		Low risk	High risk
Clean	Wash hands and surfaces often Rinse fruits and vegetables, and rub firm-skin fruits and vegetables under running tap water	Washed fresh vegetables including lettuce/salads; cooked vegetables	Unwashed fresh vegetables including lettuce/salads
Separate	Separate raw meat, poultry, seafood, and eggs from other foods to avoid cross-contamination (e.g. in the refrigerator, using different cutting boards for raw foods and ready-to-eat food)		
Cook	Cook to safe temperatures, consider using a food thermometer to measure the internal temperature (e.g., beef, lamb, pork, veal and fish to at least 63 °C, ground meat to at least 70 °C, eggs until yolks and whites are firm) Reheat hot dogs and luncheon meats until steaming hot or 75 °C	Sufficiently cooked meat, poultry, seafood and eggs; canned fish and seafood; pasteurized milk, milk products, egg and egg products	Raw or undercooked meat, poultry, seafood; unpasteurized (raw) milk and milk products Hot dogs and luncheon meats that have not been preheated
Chill	Refrigerate promptly and follow cold storage charts for refrigerator (below 4 °C) and freezer (<−16 °C) Never thaw food at room temperature		

or raw food containing probiotics. The consumption of fruits with thick skin, if peeled and washed, in accordance with good hygienic practices has low probability to be contaminated (Todd et al. 1999).

For decades, a LBD implied a strict limitation of foods allowed for consumption. The rationale was to limit the introduction of potentially harmful bacteria into the gastrointestinal tract by the restriction of certain foods that might harbour those organisms (Fox and Freifeld 2012).

However, there is no clear evidence that this actually decreases the number of infections. Many studies have limitations and conclude that there are no differences in terms of infectious episodes and survival when comparing a normal to a neutropenic diet (Van Tiel et al. 2007; Gardner et al. 2008; Trifilio et al. 2012).

A more liberal diet could bring benefits in terms of palatability, cholesterol reducing, use of parenteral nutrition and an improvement in quality of life. Increasingly, centers are replacing the strict LBD with safe food handling guidelines (https://www.fda.gov/food/buy-store-serve-safe-food/safe-food-handling). Four essential steps "clean, separate, cook and chill" are highlighted, and detailed recommendations regarding washing hands and surfaces "clean", how to prevent cross-contamination from one food product to another "separate", how to cook different food items to safe temperatures "cook" and how to refrigerate properly "chill" are given. A recent paper published by the Pediatric Diseases Working Party of the EBMT concluded that replacing the strict neutropenic diet in HCT recipients with a more palatable diet should not result in an increased risk of infection and would improve the quality of life and further result in an increase in oral intake of calories and protein, helping to prevent undesirable weight loss (Ifversen et al. 2021). An example of handling foods items in HCT are in Table 8.7.

8.13 Psychological Support

Protective isolation can have significant psychological effects on the patient. Patients are encouraged to personalize their rooms with family pictures. Some may have computer access and are able to maintain communication with family members and friends in this way. However, the length of time spent in isolation does lead to many patients having feelings of anxiety, fear for the future, concerns about the family and worry about whether engraftment will occur (Brown 2010). Nurses should be aware of the potential effect that both the transplant and the isolation can have on patients. For further information see Chap. 11

Increasing implementation of ambulatory treatment has the potential to decrease patient exposure to MDRO in the hospital and to provide patients with the possibility to spend the neutropenic phase at home and to facilitate more admissions to the haematology ward (Mank et al. 2015).

8.14 Health Education at Discharge

Going home is the "most difficult time" in the course of treatment. The patient and family will have to face everyday life far from a safe hospital environment. In fact, in the hospital, the continued support of the multidisciplinary team makes them feel protected; in hospital, doctors, nurses and other professionals are always present to clarify doubts, give advice and also try to reduce anxiety and fears. Being aware of the risks of infection means that going home can be stressful (Brown 2010).

Nurses should spend time with the patient, identify and explore any concerns before discharge. In some cases, the patient may become overdependent on nursing staff, and this may need to be addressed. Allogeneic transplant patients have a high risk of readmission as a result of infection, and it is critical that discharge planning provides patients with the understanding and information on how best to minimize the risk of infection (Grant et al. 2005).

The patient will require a great deal of information before and at discharge, and this would include information on follow-up treatment. See also Chap. 11.

8.15 Nursing Implications

All patients undergoing HCT are at risk for pulmonary complications. Bedside nurses are the most likely to observe subtle changes in the patient's condition, and for this reason it is critical that nursing staff working with the HCT population be highly trained in oncology and critical care interventions. Prompt reporting of symptoms can ensure proper and timely medical intervention and facilitate improved patient outcomes. This has been found particularly true in identifying GvHD, with clinical nurses at the forefront of identifying and reporting suspicious symptoms to the healthcare team (Mattson 2007). Nurses take a central role in patient and family education regarding the course of treatment, complications and other key pieces of the HCT process, including caring for a central line (Stephens 2013). By educating patients on what to expect after transplant with regard to troubling symptoms, nurses ensure patient participation in identifying developing complications early and improving HCT outcomes. A thorough assessment can assist the nursing staff in detecting changes indicative of developing complications. Vital signs, including the rate and quality of respirations, and oximetry should be performed per program protocols, usually every 4 h and more frequently for patients at risk for pulmonary insufficiency. Taking the patient's temperature every 4 h or as necessary is another critical respiratory intervention, as most post-HCT complications are infectious in nature (Stephens 2013). Nurses are crucial in assessing patients for symptoms of bacterial infection and should perform routine laboratory tests as necessary.

Regarding pulmonary infections, nurses should closely monitor patients for symptoms of progressing respiratory disease, such as decreased auscultation of air sounds in the lungs, increasing fevers and appearance of a productive cough with coloured sputum. Antibiotics should be started as soon as possible in these patients. A nursing study of neutropenic patients in the early HCT phase showed that commencement of antibiotics within 1 h of the onset of infectious symptoms can significantly reduce infectious complications, including sepsis (Hyman 2005).

It is important that patients in the post-transplant period are encouraged to pace their activity with their level of ability. Coughing and deep breathing exercises accompanying the regular use of an incentive spirometer constitute critical ways to open deep alveolar tissue and encourage pulmonary toileting on patients prone to fatigue and malaise and whose blood counts are very low (Stephens 2013).

8.16 BMT Settings, Infections and Infection Control for Paediatric Patients Be Aware

8.16.1 Inborn Errors of Immunity Patients

Immunization with live viral or bacterial vaccines is a known hazard to patients with serious immunodeficiencies (Shearer et al. 2014). They have no protective immune response and therefore are at risk of developing the disease itself (Marciano et al. 2014).

Avoid immunization with live Bacillus Calmette-Guerin (BCG), rotavirus vaccine or live poliovirus since they can cause persistent and disseminated infection (Shearer et al. 2014; Rivers and Gaspar 2015; Lankester et al. 2021). Patients with SCID that received BCG vaccine prior to diagnosis will need to start prophylactic treatment with two antimycobacterial drugs in the absence of symptoms (Rivers and Gaspar 2015; Lankester et al. 2021).

Breast-feeding from a CMV positive mother should be avoided (Lankester et al. 2021).

8.16.2 BCGitis

If BCG vaccine is given to infants with severe primary immune deficiencies, they will develop BCGitis. It is characterized by local erythema and purulent regional lymph node enlargement,

BCG-osis. The more severe form is disseminated infection, which could be fatal. It involves distant lymph nodes, bone, liver and spleen (Shrot et al. 2016). In case of BCGitis administration of four antimycobacterial drugs has been recommended (Lankester et al. 2021).

References

Aiken L. Effects of nurse staffing and nurse education on patient deaths in hospitals with different nurse work. Environ Crit Med. 2011;49(2):1047–53.

Aiken L. Nursing skill mix in european hospitals: cross-sectional study of the association with mortality, patient ratings, and quality of care. BMJ Qual Saf. 2017;26:559–68.

Alanio A, Hauser PM, Lagrou K, WJG M, Helweg-Larsen J, Matos O, Cesaro S, Maschmeyer G, Einsele H, Donnelly JP, Cordonnier C, Maertens J, Bretagne S, 5th European Conference on Infections in Leukemia (ECIL-5), a joint venture of The European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), The European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC), the Immunocompromised Host Society (ICHS) and The European LeukemiaNet (ELN). ECIL guidelines for the diagnosis of Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia in patients with haematological malignancies and stem cell transplant recipients. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2016;71(9):2386–96.

Alsharif M. Time trends in fungal infections as a cause of death in hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients: an autopsy study. Am J Clin Pathol. 2009;132:746–55.

Antin JH, Raley DY. Manual of stem cell and bone marrow transplantation. New York: Cambridge University Press; 2009.

ASHM. Nurses and hepatitis C. Darlinghurst: ASHM; 2012. http://www.aph.gov.au/DocumentStore.ashx?id=4799afa2-cddb-46cd-a393-f23719622ef8&subId=303939.

Ayanian JZ. Mental health needs of health care workers providing frontline COVID 19 care. NAMA Network. 2020. Available at https://jamanetwork.com/channels/healthforum/fullarticle/2764228. Accessed 25 April 2020.

Baumrin E, Izaguirre NE, Bausk B, Feeley MM, Bay CP, Yang Q, Ho VT, Baden LR, Issa NC. Safety and reactogenicity of the recombinant zoster vaccine after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Blood Adv. 2021;5(6):1585–93.

Blaes A, Cavert W, Morrison V. Malassezia: is it a pulmonary pathogen in the stem cell transplant population? Transpl Infect Dis. 2009;11:313–7.

Boeckh M, Kim HW, Flowers MF, Meyers JD, Bowden RA. Long-term acyclovir for prevention of varicella zoster virus disease after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation—a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled study. Blood. 2006;107(5):1800–5.

Brown M. Nursing care of patients undergoing allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Nurs Stand. 2010;25(11):47–56.

BSBMT. 2021. https://bsbmtct.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/05/BSBMTCT-SARS-CoV-2-vaccination-statement-27-5-21-FINAL.pdf. Accessed 18 October 2021.

Camus P, Costabel U. Drug-induced respiratory disease in patients with hematological diseases. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2005;26:458–81.

Castro ND, Neuville S, Sarfati C, Ribaud P, Derouin F, Gluckman E, Sociè G, Molina JM. Occurrence of Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia after allogeneic stem cell transplantation: a 6-year retrospective study. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;36:879–83.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Coronavirus (COVID-19). 2020. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/index.html. Accessed 24 April 2020.

Chakrabarti S, Mautner V, Osman H, Collingham KE, Fegan CD, Klapper PE, Moss PAH, Milligan D. Adenovirus infections following allogeneic stem cell transplantation: incidence and outcome in relation to graft manipulation, immunosuppression, and immune recovery. Blood. 2002;100(5):1619–27.

Chen CS, Boeckh M, Seidel K, Clark JG, Kansu E, Madtes DK, Wagner JL, Witherspoon RP, Anasetti C, Appelbaum FR, Bensinger WI, Deeg HJ, Martin PJ, Sanders JE, Storb R, Storek J, Wade J, Siadak M, Flowers MED, Sullivan KM. Incidence, risk factors, and mortality from pneumonia developing late after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2003;32:515–22.

Chou J, Nancy MS, Kernan A, Prockop S, Heller G, Scaradavou A, Kobos R, Knowles MA, Papadopoulos EB, Copeland C, TorokCastanza J, Zakak N, Ruggiero J, Small TN. Safety and immunogenicity of the live attenuated varicella vaccine following T replete or T cell depleted related and unrelated allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation (alloHCT). Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17(11):1708–13.

Cooke KR, Jannin A, Ho V. The contribution of endothelial activation and injury to end-organ toxicity following allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2008;14(Suppl 1):23–32.

Coomes SM, Hubbard LL, Moore BB. Impaired pulmonary immunity post-bone marrow transplant. Immunologic Research. Advance online publication. 2010.

Dalton HR, Saunders M, Woolson KL. Hepatitis E virus in developed countries: one of the most successful zoonotic viral diseases in human history? J Virus Erad. 2015;1(1):23–9.

De Keukeleire S, Reynders M. Hepatitis E: an underdiagnosed, emerging infection in nonendemic regions. J Clin Transl Hepatol. 2015;3:288–91.

Deeg J, Socie G. Malignancies after haematopoietic stem cell transplantation: many questions, some answers. Blood. 1998;91(6):1833–44.

Dubberke ER, Riddle DJ. Clostridium difficile in solid organ transplantation recipients. Am J Transplant. 2009;9(4):S35–40.

EBMT. COVID-19 task force guidance. 2021. https://www.ebmt.org/covid-19-and-bmt. Accessed 22 November 2021.

Enrico Maffini E, Giaccone L, Festuccia M, Brunello L, Busca A, Benedetto BB. Treatment of CMV infection after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Expert Rev Hematol. 2016;9(6):585–96.

Escuissato D, Emerson G, Marchiori E, de Melo RG, Inoue C, Pasquini R, Muller N. Pulmonary infections after bone marrow transplantation: high-resolution CT findings in 111 patients. Am J Roentgenol. 2005;185:608–15.

Fei Zhou MD, Ting Yu MD, Ronghui Du MD, Guohui Fan MS, Ying Liu MD, Zhibo Liu MD, Jie Xiang MS, Bin Song MS, Xiaoying Gu PD, Lulu Guan MD, Yuan Wei MS, Hui Li MD, Xudong Wu MS, Jiuyang Xu MD, Shengjin Tu MD, Yi Zhang MD, Hua Chen MD, Cao PB, MD. Clinical course and risk factors for mortality of adult inpatients with COVID-19 in Wuhan, China: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet. 2020;395(10229):1054–62.

Forslöw UU, Remberger M, Nordlander AA, Mattsson JJ. The clinical importance of bronchoalveolar lavage in allogeneic SCT patients with pneumonia. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2010;45:945–50.

Fox N, Freifeld AG. The neutropenic diet reviewed: moving toward a safe food handling approach. Oncology. 2012;26(572–575):580–2.

Gardner A, Mattiuzzi G, Faderl S, Borthakur G, Garcia-Manero G, Pierce S, Brandt M, Estey E. Randomized comparison of cooked and noncooked diets in patients undergoing remission induction therapy for acute myeloid leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26:5684–8.

Garzoni C. Multiply resistant gram-positive bacteria Methicillin-Resistant, Vancomycin-Intermediate and Vancomycin-Resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA, VISA, VRSA) in solid organ transplant recipients. Am J Transplant. 2009;9(4):S41–9.

Gea-Banacloch J, Masur H, Arns da Cuhna C, Chiller T, Kirchoff L, Shaw P, Tomblyn M, Cordonnier C. Regionally limited or rare infections: prevention after hematopoietic cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2009;44:489–94.

Girmenia C, Lazzarotto T, Bonifazi F, Patriarca F, Irrera G, Ciceri F, Aversa F, Citterio F, Cillo U, Cozzi E, Gringeri E, Baldanti F, Cavallo R, Clerici P, Barosi G, Grossi P. Assessment and prevention of cytomegalovirus infection in allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant and in solid organ transplant: a multidisciplinary consensus conference by the Italian GITMO, SITO, and AMCLI societies. Clin Transpl. 2019;33(10):e13666.

Gomaa EZ. Human gut microbiota/microbiome in health and diseases: a review. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek. 2020;113:2019–40.

Grant M, Cooke L, Bhatia S, Forman S. Discharge and unscheduled readmissions of adult patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: implications for developing nursin interventions. Oncol Nurs Forum. 2005;32(1):E1–8.

Gratwohl A, Brand R, Frassoni F, Rocha V, Niederwieser D, Reusser P, Einsele H, Cordonnier C. Cause of death after allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) in early leukaemias: an EBMT analysis of lethal infectious complications and changes over calendar time. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;36:757–69.

Gu SL, Chen YB, Lv T, Zhang XW, Wei ZQ, Shen P, Li LJ. Risk factors, outcomes and epidemiology associated with Clostridium difficile infection in patients with haematological malignancies in a tertiary care hospital in China. J Med Microbiol. 2015;64:209–216.

Gupta A, Gonzalez-Rojas Y, Juarez E, et al. Early treatment for Covid-19 with SARSCoV-2 neutralizing antibody sotrovimab. N Engl J Med. 2021;385(21):1941–50.

Hamad R, Bazarbachi AH, Mohty M. Epstein-Barr virus-related post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (EBV-PTLD) in the setting of allogeneic stem cell transplantation: a comprehensive review from pathogenesis to forthcoming treatment modalities. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2020;55:25–39.

Heslop H. How I treat EBV lymphoproliferation. Blood. 2009;114:4002–8.

Hill J. Human herpesvirus 6 in transplant recipients: an update on diagnostic and treatment strategies. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2019;32(6):584–90.

Ho V, Weller E, Lee S. Prognostic factors for early severe pulmonary complications after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2001;7:223–9.

Hyman J. Neutropenic patients-Are they receiving their antibioticson time? Nurs Monogr. 2005;2005:15–8.

Ibrahim HAH, Naresh KN. Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorders. Adv Hematol. 2012;2012:230173.

Ifversen M, Meisel R, Sedlacek P, Kalwak K, Sisinni L, Hutt D, et al. Supportive care during pediatric hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: prevention of infections. A report from workshops on supportive care of the paediatric diseases working party (PDWP) of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Front Pediatr. 2021;9:705179.

International Council of Nurses. The ICN Code of Ethics. Geneva, Switzerland. 2012.

Paterson C, Gobel B, Gosselin T, Haylock PJ, Papadopoulou C, Slusser K, Rodriguez A, Pituskin E. Oncology nursing during a pandemic: Critical reflections in the context of COVID-19. Semin Oncol Nurs. 2020;36(3):151028–S0749208120300437 151028. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.soncn.2020.151028.

Ihendyane N, Sparrelid E, Wretlind B, Remberger M, Andersson J, Ljungman P, Ringden O, Henriques Normark B, Allen U, Low DE, Norrby-Teglund A. Viridans streptococcal septicaemia in neutropaenic patients: role of proinflammatory cytokines. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2004;33(1):79–95.

Ji Y, Xu LP, Liu DH, Chen YH, Han W, Zhang XH, Huang XJ. Positive results of serum galactomannan assays and pulmonary computed tomography predict the higher response rate of empirical antifungal therapy in patients undergoing allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17:759–64.

Kamar N, Dalton HR, Abravanel F, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus infection. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2014;1(27):116–38.

Kamboj M, Shah M. Vaccination of the stem cell transplant (SCT) recipient and the hematologic malignancy patient. Infect Dis Clin N Am. 2019;33(2):593–609.

Kanda Y, Mineishi S, Saito T, Saito A, Yamada S, Ohnishi M, Chizuka A, Niiya H, Suenaga K, Nakai K, Takeuchi T, Makimoto A, Tanosaki R, Kami M, Tanaka Y, Fujita S, Watanabe T, Kobayashi Y, Tobinai K, Takaue Y. Long-term low-dose acyclovir against varicella-zoster virus reactivation after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2001;28:689–92.

Kaplan R, Bashoura L, Shannon VR, Dickey BF, Stover DE. Noninfectious lung infiltrates that may be confused with pneumonia in the cancer patient. In: Safdar A, editor. Principles and practice of cancer infectious diseases. London: Churchill Livingstone; 2011. p. 153–65.

Khoruts A, Staley C, Sadowsky MJ. Faecal microbiota transplantation for Clostridioides difficile: mechanisms and pharmacology. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2021;18:67–80. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41575-020-0350-4.

Kotloff R, Ahya V, Crawford S. Pulmonary complications of solid organ and hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Am J Respir Crit Care. 2004;170:22–48.

Lankester AC, Albert MH, Booth C, Gennery AR, Güngör T, Hönig M, et al. EBMT/ESID inborn errors working party guidelines for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for inborn errors of immunity. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56(9):2052–62.

Lau GKK, Strasser SI, McDonald GB. Hepatitis virus infections in patients with cancer. In: Wingard JR, Bowden RA, editors. Management of infection in oncology patients. London: Martin Dunitz; 2003. p. 322–3.

Lin M, Weinstein R, Hayden MK. Multidrug-resistant organisms: epidemiology and control. In: Jarvis WR, editor. Bennett & Brachman's hospital infections. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2014. p. 198–9.

Lindemann M, Koldehoff M, Fiedler M, Schumann A, Ottinger HD, Heinemann FM, Roggendorf M, Horn PA, Belen DW. Control of hepatitis B virus infection in hematopoietic stem cell (HSC) recipients after receiving grafts from vaccinated donors. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51:428–31.

Lion T. Adenovirus persistence, reactivation, and clinical management. FEBS Lett. 2019;593(24):3571–82.

Ljungman P, Ribaud P, Eyrich M, Matthes-Martin S, Einsele H, Bleakley M, Machaczka M, Bierings M, Bosi A, Gratecos N, Cordonnier C. Cidofovir for adenovirus infections after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a survey by the infectious diseases working Party of the European Group for blood and marrow transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2003;31:481–6.

Ljungman P, Mikulska M, de la Camara R, Basak GW, Chabannon C, Corbacioglu S, Duarte R, Dolstra H, Lankester AC, Mohty M, Montoto S, Murray J, de Latour P, Snowden JA, Yakoub-Agha I, Verhoeven B, Kröger N, Styczynski J. The challenge of COVID-19 and hematopoietic cell transplantation; EBMT recommendations for management of hematopoietic cell transplant recipients, their donors, and patients undergoing CAR T-cell therapy. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2020;55:2071–6.

Locasciulli A, Montante B, Morelli E, Gulino V, Proia A, Pinazzi MB. Hepatitis B and C in hematopoietic stem cell transplant. Med J Hemat Infect Dis. 2009;1:3.

Mackall C, Fry T, Gress R, Peggs K, Storek J, Toubert A. Background to hematopoietic cell transplantation, including post transplant immune recovery. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2009;44:457–62.

Maffini E, Giaccone L, Festuccia M, Brunello L, Busca A, Bruno B. Treatment of CMV infection after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Expert Rev Hematol. 2016;9(6):585–96.

Mank APM, Schoonenberg C, Bleeker K, Heijmenberg S, de Heer K, Marinus H, van Oers J, Kersten MJ. Early discharge after high dose chemotherapy is safe and feasible: a prospective evaluation of 6 years of home care. Leuk Lymphoma. 2015;56(7):2098–104.

Marano G, Vaglio S, Pupella S, Facco G, Bianchi M, Calizzani G, Candura F, Catalano L, Farina B, Lanzoni M, Piccinini V, Liumbruno GM, Grazzini G. Hepatitis E: an old infection with new implications. Blood Transfus. 2015;13:6–20.

Marciano BE, Huang CY, Joshi G, Rezaei N, Carvalho BC, Allwood Z, Ikinciogullari A, Reda SM, Gennery A, Thon V, Espinosa-Rosales F, Al-Herz W, Porras O, Shcherbina A, Szaflarska A, Kiliç Ş, Franco JL, Gómez Raccio AC, Roxo P Jr, Esteves I, Galal N, Grumach AS, Al-Tamemi S, Yildiran A, Orellana JC, Yamada M, Morio T, Liberatore D, Ohtsuka Y, Lau YL, Nishikomori R, Torres-Lozano C, Mazzucchelli JT, Vilela MM, Tavares FS, Cunha L, Pinto JA, Espinosa-Padilla SE, Hernandez-Nieto L, Elfeky RA, Ariga T, Toshio H, Dogu F, Cipe F, Formankova R, Nuñez-Nuñez ME, Bezrodnik L, Marques JG, Pereira MI, Listello V, Slatter MA, Nademi Z, Kowalczyk D, Fleisher TA, Davies G, Neven B, Rosenzweig SD. BCG vaccination in patients with severe combined immunodeficiency: complications, risks, and vaccination policies. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2014;133(4):1134–41.

Marty F. A phase 3 randomized study of maribavir (MBV) versus investigator-assigned antiviral therapy (IAT) for the treatment (Tx) of refractory/resistant (R/R) cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection in hematopoietic cell transplant (HCT) or solid organ transplant (SOT) recipients. In: The 2021 TCT meetings digital experience. 2021. Abstract LBA2.

Marty FM, Ljungman P, Chemaly RF, Maertens J, Dadwal SS, Duarte RF, Haider S, Ullmann AJ, Katayama Y, Brown J, Mullane KM, Boeckh M, Blumberg EA, Einsele H, Snydman DR, Kanda Y, DiNubile MJ, Teal VL, Wan H, Murata Y, Kartsonis NA, Leavitt RY, Badshah C. Letermovir prophylaxis for cytomegalovirus in hematopoietic-cell transplantation. N Engl J Med. 2017;377:2433–44.

Masszi T, Mank AP. Chapter 10. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. In: Handbook EBMT supportvive care page. Cham: Springer; 2012. p. 157–9.

Mattson M. Graft-versus-host disease: review and nursing implications. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2007;11:325–8.

Meijer E, Bolland GJ, Verdonck LF. Prevention of cytomegalovirus disease in recipients of allogeneic stem cell transplants. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2003;16:647–57.

Merck A and Ridgeback A. Biotherapeutics provide update on results from MOVe-OUT study of molnupiravir, an investigational oral antiviral medicine, in at risk adults with mild-to-moderate COVID-19. Business Wire. 2021. Accessed 24 December 2021.

Morley G, Grady C, McCarthy J, Ulrich CM. Hastings Cent Rep. 2020. https://doi.org/10.1002/hast.1110.

Murray MP, Doherty CJ, Govan JR, Hill AT. Do processing time and storage of sputum influence quantitative bacteriology in bronchiectasis? J Med Microbiol. 2010;59:829–33.

Nakasone H, Kurosawa S, Yakushijin K, Taniguchi S, Murata M, Ikegame K, Kobayashi T, Eto T, Miyamura K, Sakamaki H, Morishima Y, Nagamura T, Suzuki R, Fukuda T. Impact of hepatitis C virus infection on clinical outcome in recipients after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Am J Hematol. 2013;88:477–84.

NHS England Green Book. 2021. https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/1018444/Greenbook_chapter_14a_16Sept21.pdf. Accessed 18 October 2021.

Orchard K, Dignan FL, Lee J, Pearce R, Desai M, McFarlane E, Patkin A, Shearn P, Snowden JA. The NICE COVID-19 rapid guideline on haematopoietic stem cell transplantation: development, implementation and impact. Br J Haematol. 2021;192:467–73.

Pattullo V. Prevention of hepatitis B reactivation in the setting of immunosuppression. Clin Mol Hepatol. 2016;22:219–37.

Pizzo PA. The value of protective isolation in preventing nosocomial infections in high risk patients. Am J Med. 1981;70(3):631–7.

Polovich M, Whitford JM, Olsen M. Chemotherapy and biotherapy guidelines and recommendations for practice. 3rd ed. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society; 2009.

Quinn B, Potting C, Stone R, Blijlevens NM, Fliedner M, Marquiles A, Sharp L. Guidance for the assessment of oral mucositis in adult chemotherapy, radiotherapy and haematopoietic stem cell transplant patients. Eur J Cancer. 2008;44(1):61–72.

Rasch L, Kapp M, Einsele H, Mielke S. EBV-induced post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorders: a persisting challenge in allogeneic haematopoietic SCT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2014;49:163–7.

Rivers L, Gaspar HB. Severe combined immunodeficiency: recent developments and guidance on clinical management. Arch Dis Child. 2015;100:667–72.

Robin M, Marque-Juillet S, Scieux C, Peffault de Latour R, Ferry C, Rocha V, Molina J, Bergeron A, Devergie A, Gluckman E, Ribaud P, Socié G. Disseminated adenovirus infections after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: incidence, risk factors and outcome. Haematologica. 2007;92:1254–7.

Roychowdhury M, Pambuccian S, Aslan D, Jessurun J, Rose A, Manivel J. Pulmonary complications after bone marrow transplantation: an autopsy study from a large transplantation center. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2005;129:366–71.

Schoeman D, Fielding BC. Coronavirus envelope protein: current knowledge. Virol J. 2019;16:69. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12985-019-1182-0.

Sharma S, Nadrous H, Peters S, Tefferi A, Litzow M, Aubry M, Afessa B. Complications in adult blood and marrow transplant recipients. Chest. 2005;128:1385–92.

Shearer WT, Fleischer TA, Buckley RH, Ballas Z, Ballow M, Blease M, Bonilla F, Comley M, Cunningham C, Filipovich A, Fuleihan R, Gelfand E, Hernandez-Trujillo V, Holland S, Hong R, Lederman H, Malech MS, Notarangelo L, Ochs H, Orange J, Puck J, Routes J, Stiehm E, Sullivan K, Torgerson T, Winkelstein J. Recommendations for live viral and bacterial vaccines in immunodeficient patients and their close contacts medical advisory Committee of the Immune Deficiency Foundation. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2014;133:961–6.

Shrot S, Barkai G, Ben-Shlush A, Soudack M. BCGitis and BCGosis in children with primary immunodeficiency—imaging characteristics. Pediatr Radiol. 2016;46:237. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00247-015-3464-z.

Soubani AO, Pandya CM. The spectrum of noninfectious pulmonary complications following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Hematol Oncol Stem Cell Ther. 2010;3:143–57.

Specter S. Clinical virology manual. 4th ed. Hoboken: Wiley; 2009.

Steer CB, Szer J, Sasadeusz J, Matthews JP, Beresford JA, Grig A. Varicella-zoster infection after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation: incidence, risk factors and prevention with low-dose aciclovir and ganciclovir. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2000;25:657–64.

Stephens JML. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. A manual for nursing practice. 2nd ed. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society; 2013.

Storch GA. Essentials of diagnostic virology. 1st ed. New York: Academic; 2000.

Styczynski J, Einsele H, Gil L, Ljungman P. Outcome of treatment of Epstein-Barr virus-related post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder in haematopoietic stem cell recipients: a comprehensive review of reported cases. Transpl Infect Dis. 2009;11:383–92.

Styczynski J, van der Velden W, Fox CP, Engelhard D, de la Camara R, Cordonnier C. Management of Epstein-Barr Virus infections and post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorders in patients after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: sixth European conference on infections in leukemia (ECIL-6) guidelines. Haematologica. 2016;101:803–11.

Swerdlow AJ, Webber SA, Chadburn A, Ferry JA. WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. 4th ed. Lyon: World Health Organisation Press; 2008.

Thomas CFJ, Limper AH. Pneumocystis pneumonia. N Engl J Med. 2004;350:2487–98.

Thomson KJ, Har DP, Banerjee L, Ward KN, Peggs KS, Mackinnon S. The effect of low-dose aciclovir on reactivation of varicella zoster virus after allogeneic haemopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;35:1065–9.

Todd J, Schmidt M, Christian J, Williams R. The low-bacteria diet for immunocompromised patients reasonable prudence or clinical superstition? Cancer Pract. 1999;7(4):205–7.

Tomblyn M, Chiller T, Einsele H, Gress R, Sepkowitz K, Storek J, Wingard JR, Young JH, Boechk M. Guidelines for preventing infectious complications among Haematopoietic cell transplantation recipients: a global perspective. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2009;15:1143–238.

Torres HA, Chong PP, Lima M, Friedman MS, Giralt S, Hammond SP, Kiel PJ, Masur H, McDonald GB, Wingard JR, Gambarin-Gelwen M. Hepatitis C virus infection among hematopoietic cell transplant donors and recipients: American Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation Task Fore Recommendations. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:1870–82.

Trifilio S, Helenowski I, Giel M, Gobel B, Greenberg D, Mehta J. Questioning the role of a neutropenic diet following Hematopoetic stem cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2012;18(9):1385–90.

Tripathi N, Sapra A. Gram staining. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island: StatPearls Publishing; 2021.

Trubiano JA, Worth LJ, Thursky KA, Slavin MA. The prevention and management of infections due to multidrug resistant organisms in haematology patients. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2013;79(2):195–207.

Truong MT, Sabloff BS, Ko JP. Multidetector CT of solitary pulmonary nodules. Radiol Clin N Am. 2010;48:141–55.

Turale S, Meechamnan C, Kunaviktikul W. Challenging times: ethics, nursing and the COVID-19 pandemic. Int Nurs Rev. 2020;67:164–7.

Tzouvelekis LS, Markogiannakis A, Psichogiou M, Tassios PT, Daikos GL. Carbapenemases in Klebsiella pneumoniae and other Enterobacteriaceae: an evolving crisis of global dimensions. Clin Microbiol. 2012;25(4):682–707.

Ullmann AJ, Schmidt-Hieber M, Bertz H, Heinz WJ, Kiehl M, Kruger W, Mousset S, Neuburger S, Neumann S, Penack O, Silling G, Vehreschild JJ, Einsele H, Maschmeyer G. Infectious diseases in allogenic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation: prevention and prophylaxis strategy guidelines 2016. Ann Hematol. 2016;95:1435–55.

Van Tiel F, Harbers MM, Terporten PH, van Boxtel RT, Kessels AG, Voss GB, Schouten HC. Normal hospital and low-bacterial diet in patients with cytopenia after intensive chemotherapy for hematological malignancy: a study of safety. Ann Oncol. 2007;18(6):1080–4.

Ward KN, Hill JA, Hubacek P, Camara R, Crocchiolo R, Einsele H, Navarro D, Robin C, Cordonnier C, Ljungman P. Guidelines from the 2017 European Conference on Infections in Leukaemia for management of HHV-6 infection in patients with hematologic malignancies and after hematopoietic stem

cell transplantation. Haematologica. 2019;104(11): 2155–63.
Weston D. Clostridium difficile. In: Fundamentals of infection prevention and control. Theory and practice. 2nd ed. Chichester: Wiley; 2013. p. 332–9.
WHO Director General. 2020. https://www.who.int/director-general/speeches/detail/who-director-general-s-opening-remarks-at-the-media-briefing-on-covid-19. Accessed 27 October 2021.
Wilson D, Drew R, Perfect J. Antifungal therapy for invasive fungal diseases in allogeneic stem cell transplant recipients: an update. Mycopathologia. 2009;168:313–27.
World Health Organisation. Health workforce nursing and midwifery. 2020. Available at https://www.who.int/hrh/nursing_midwifery/en/. Accessed 23 April 2020
Zaia J, Baden L, Boeckh MJ, Chakrabarti S, Einsele H, Ljungman P, McDonald GB, Hirsch H. Viral disease prevention after hematopoietic cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2009;44:471–82.
Zerr DM, Corey L, Kim HW, Huang M, Nguy L, Boeckh M. Clinical outcomes of human herpesvirus 6 reactivation after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40(7):932–40.
Zuccotti G, Strasfeld L, Weinstock DM. New agents for the prevention of opportunistic infections in haematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2005;6:1669–79.

9 Transplantation Through the Generations

Alberto Castagna, Hilda Mekelenkamp, Lisa Mcmonagle, Michelle Kenyon, Corien Eeltink, and Sarah Jayne Liptrott

Abstract

Whilst the basic principles of HSCT remain the same, regardless of the age of the patient, there are a number of important additional considerations relating to transplantation of our younger and older patients and those of adolescent age. The principles outlined in this chapter serve as a valuable reminder supporting age-appropriate patient-centred care delivery. This chapter initially focuses on transplanting the child and its physiological and psycho-social aspects. Subsequently, the nursing challenges in the AYA population will be addressed. This chapter ends with considerations for treatment and care for the older adult.

Keywords

HSCT · Paediatric · AYA · TYA · Older patients · Fragile · Geriatric problems · Geriatric assessment · Patient information · Decision making

9.1 Transplanting the Child

HSCT offers the ability to cure pediatric patients with blood cell diseases. In Europe, around 5000 children are transplanted on an annual basis. Different stages of growth and development can be identified during childhood. Undergoing HSCT has a major impact on children, their parents and siblings, especially when they have a double role

A. Castagna
Paediatric Hematology-Oncology and HSCT Unit, Ospedale Donna e Bambino – Azienda Ospedaliera Universitaria Integrata (AOUI) Verona, Verona, Italy
e-mail: alberto.castagna@aovr.veneto.it

H. Mekelenkamp (✉)
Willem-Alexander Children's Hospital, Department of Pediatrics, Leiden University Medical Centre, Leiden, The Netherlands
e-mail: h.mekelenkamp@lumc.nl

L. Mcmonagle
Children and Young Peoples Cancer Service, University College London Hospital, London, UK
e-mail: lisa-marie.mcmonagle@nhs.net

M. Kenyon
Department of Haematological Medicine, King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK
e-mail: michelle.kenyon@nhs.net

C. Eeltink
Centrum voor Oncologie, Dijklander Ziekenhuis, Hoorn, The Netherlands
e-mail: c.m.eeltink@dijklander.nl

S. J. Liptrott
Ospedale Regionale Bellinzona e Valli and Istituto Oncologico della Svizzera Italiana. Ente Ospedaliere Cantonale, Bellinzona, Switzerland
e-mail: SarahJayne.Liptrott@eoc.ch

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_9

as family member and family donor. The ability to cure children with acquired or inherited disorders of the hematopoietic system has radically improved over the recent decades. Today, more than 80% of children with cancer are cured of their disease (Gatta et al. 2014). This incredible achievement is one of the greatest triumphs in the history of medicine and is the result of numerous factors, including developments in paediatric haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT). Treatment advances for the sick child have been accomplished in various treatments, including chemotherapy, surgery, radiotherapy, HSCT and CAR T-cell therapy. While these therapies have vastly improved outcomes in childhood diseases, there remains scope for further improvement.

9.1.1 The Role of EBMT in Paediatric HSCT

Changes in HSCT approaches are responsible for progress in this particular area. The role and status of transplantation have evolved. It is no longer considered a salvage therapy for patients in desperate circumstances but is now the treatment of choice for many diseases. The history of paediatric HSCT in Europe began in Poland in 1949 (Raszek-Rosenbusch), with therapeutic transfusion of bone marrow in children with leukaemia and other blood diseases. Subsequent developments in paediatric HSCT were driven on by the creation in 1974 of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). The goal of the society remains to promote all aspects associated with HSCT. Since the launch of the EBMT Society in 1974, several working parties were established, and in 1995, the Board of the EBMT founded the Paediatric Diseases Working Party (PDWP). Shortly after, the registry of the EBMT began to analyse transplant outcomes in children and adolescents, increasing our understanding, which in turn informed changes and developments in the field. The continuous progressions and evolution of paediatric HSCT in Europe have resulted in the establishment of HSCT as a standard therapeutic procedure in paediatric haemato-oncology and immunology.

The number of children and adolescents undergoing HCST has been steadily increasing since the 1980s. It is clear that close national and international collaboration between HSCT units helps resolve common difficulties with this complex treatment. The scale of collaboration within the EBMT members is underpinned by EBMT's annual transplant activity surveys.

Over the last 30 years, more than 800,000 HSCTs in 715,000 patients have been reported (Passweg et al. 2021). Between 2016 and 2020, the annual amount of paediatric HSCTs varied between 4690 and 5368, of which around 25% were autologous (Passweg et al. 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022).

Main indications for pediatric HSCTs are myeloid and lymphoid malignancies and non-malignant disorders (Passweg et al. 2021, 2022). The high proportion of allogeneic transplants in paediatrics is largely due to the characteristics of paediatric diseases that are amenable to transplantation such as haemoglobinopathies, immune deficiencies, immune dysregulation and metabolic diseases.

9.1.2 Child Growth and Development

It is important to know and understand the developmental stages of infants and children because appreciation of the ages, stages, common milestones and abilities allows nurses to relate to the children and their relatives appropriately. The knowledge of the normal growth and development equips the nurses to identify any developmental delay. Growth and development are a single process, which begins during pregnancy and continues throughout childhood and into adolescence. Growth is a change in the body size and structure, whilst development is a change in the body function.

Child growth refers to progressive structural and physiological changes in the size of a child body. Physical growth includes gaining full height and appropriate weight and increasing in size of all organs. The measurements of weight, length, head circumference, body composition

and tooth eruption aid in assessment of normal and standard physical growth (Mona 2015).

Child development concerns a child's ability to undertake more complex processes as they mature. Child development is subdivided into specific areas, such as motor, language, cognitive, behavioural and emotional.

9.1.3 The Child and the Experience of Disease

The child is aware of the condition and often the severity of their disease whatever his age (Badon and Cesaro 2015). This consciousness derives primarily from their perception of the body and wellness state changes. Furthermore, a child's disease awareness is determined by the child's own level of cognitive function, previous experiences, psycho-emotional structure and the quality of relationships established with reference figures. These factors impact upon a child's ability to understand the meaning and significance of what is happening and how they respond on it.

9.1.3.1 Hospitalisation

The child is sensitive to the experience of disconnection that disease imposes. The disease acts as a breaking event in the life of the child and alters the way the body is considered and treated. Hospitalisation changes the physical and relational environment and modifies the emotional climate and the usual style of education.

During hospitalisation, the child's world is changed; for instance, they are relieved of responsibilities, and many rules disappear or are replaced. They become the target of therapeutic measures, sometimes with little consideration for privacy or confidentiality, and the child becomes separated from their own world. If this disconnect remains within the child's limits of tolerance, it is absorbed into their normal development. However, if this disconnect exceeds their tolerance, it results in a traumatic experience and becomes in itself a source of anxiety and distress (Badon and Cesaro 2015).

The child often does not have the ability to understand the causes and the logic of the events that lead suddenly to being excluded from their family environment, separated from significant figures and entrusted to the care of strangers. The child will tend to experience hospitalisation with a sense of danger that derives primarily from the inability to understand and control the absent parent (Badon and Cesaro 2015).

9.1.4 The HSCT Experience

HSCT is usually an elective, planned treatment. Children who suffer from malignant disease and undergo transplantation often have experienced previous treatments and hospitalisations for treatment of complications such as fever, pain, mucositis, nausea and vomiting as well as periods of isolation. This disease experience is different for patients with non-malignant diseases. Children with non-malignant diseases and their caregivers sometimes are shortly before HSCT confronted with a severe disease without any treatment experience. However, many non-malignant diseases have an inherited condition, meaning that patients were confronted with (the burden of) the illness from early childhood. The hospitalised child receives important support from their family. Caregivers are invited to actively participate in the care of their child, and during the period of transplant, a caregiver usually stays with the child for the duration of hospitalisation. The experience of HSCT should not hinder the psychosocial growth of the child and may even aid in the promotion of development and self-esteem. Nurses have a principal role in providing emotional support to the child and the family caregiver and can assist the child in understanding their condition and overcoming negative emotions.

9.1.4.1 The Paediatric Patient Experience of HSCT

HSCT is an intensive treatment process and offers the chance of a cure, but at the same time, it can generate a range of feelings including anxiety, depression, behavioural issues, psychosocial issues and post-traumatic stress reactions (Packman et al. 2010).

Many of these concerns arise from lengthy hospitalisations away from home, school and friends, isolation and an uncertain future. These factors contribute to high levels of emotion at admission and are reported to escalate until 1 week post-HSCT (Phipps et al. 2002). The paediatric HSCT patient can experience multiple hospitalisations, which can occasionally last up to 1 year or longer, depending on the severity of the complications. HSCT and its immediate and late consequences have substantial impact on the child's physical, emotional, cognitive and social well-being and consequently severely compromise the child's quality of life (QoL).

QoL

QoL is potentially affected during all stages of HSCT, including pre-transplant, during the acute post-HSCT time and during isolation and reintegration to life outside the hospital. Pre-transplant predictors of QoL include family functioning and individual resources. It is reported that during hospitalisation, children undergoing HSCT present low baseline levels of QoL. However, QoL improves as early at some months post-HSCT, returns to baseline within some years from HSCT (Tremodala et al. 2009) and is comparable for most children compared to healthy peers (Di Giuseppe et al. 2020).

Cognitive Impact

The effect of HSCT on cognitive abilities may differ depending on age at HSCT and conditioning regimens, Total Body Irradiation (TBI) containing regimes versus non-TBI. The younger the child is at HSCT, the higher the risk for deficits in intelligence quotient, academic achievement, fine motor skills and memory. The child with good cognitive developmental level at the time of HSCT can be at lower risk for cognitive deterioration (Barrera et al. 2007).

Mental Health and Emotional Concerns

Many paediatric HSCT patients demonstrate stable psychosocial adjustment or return to baseline functioning 1–2 years after HSCT. However, psychiatric morbidity in HSCT survivors is reported in some studies as higher than in the general population and appears to correlate with lower educational level and shorter post-HSCT period. Furthermore, shorter time post-HSCT, higher numbers of major infections, high symptomatology score and low educational level are predictive factors of higher psychosocial distress (Tremolada et al. 2009).

Such psychosocial distress is not unique to the immediate post-transplant period. There are concerns later post-HSCT as well. At 1-year post-HSCT, when many survivors return to school, they function at a lower academic level than what is expected for their age. They can be described by peers as absent from school more, less likely to be chosen as a best friend, less athletic and less attractive, and those who experience extensive periods of isolation may demonstrate development decline in socialisation and communication (Packman et al. 2010). There is a further possibility of long-term emotional and social behavioural problems.

Depression and Anxiety

Children undergoing HSCT are a high-risk group for developing depression and anxiety (Chang et al. 2012; Manookian et al. 2014). Contributing factors include:

- Intense medical treatments
- Single room isolation (Packman et al. 2010)
- Parental concern (Asadi et al. 2011
- Uncertainty and loss of control (Manookian et al. 2014)

Support and Fostering Healthy Coping Strategies

Transplantation should be viewed as a chance of hope for a healthy future and long-lasting happiness for the child. If the child maintains this positive attitude being hopeful about recovery, he/she can have a positive response from the treatment and overcoming complications (Manookian et al. 2014).

As expected, most children experience a sense of fear during their HSCT process. This feeling can be related to a lack of information or understanding regarding the child's condition and transplantation process. Providing clear and

understandable answers to the child's questions about the illness, treatment and prognosis can help them feel reassured and more relaxed. Information seeking is an important coping strategy for children undergoing HSCT. Developmental status and psychological state should be considered to enable appropriate communication and provision of information.

Coping strategies used to address a perceived medical or psychosocial stressor may change over time depending on personal factors and context. The child can use several different coping strategies, which are often categorised:

- Approach (i.e. information seeking)
- Avoidance (i.e. distraction or distancing)
- Problem-focused (i.e. problem solving)
- Emotion-focused (i.e. seeking emotional support)

Additionally, Bingen et al. (2012) observed wishful thinking, distraction, cognitive restructuring and social support being used both pre- and post-HSCT. Music therapy can support children during their hospital stay and can have a positive effect on experienced QoL (Uggla et al. 2018, 2019; Yates et al. 2018).

Social Support

Social support is the individual's perception of positive regard from relationships with others, the feelings to being loved, being part of a group, reassurance of self-worth and reliable alliance with others (Barrera et al. 2007). Social support is reported to be the most efficacious, for a child undergoing a HSCT, whether this is from family, friends, teachers, classmates and medical, nursing and psychosocial providers. It is both instrumental and emotional and may be provided directly to the child in the form of hospital visits or via telecommunication (e.g. video calls, phone conversation or texting, online social networking sites and e-mailing). Higher or more positively perceived social support has been identified to be associated with positive adjustment, lower distress and higher self-esteem in paediatric patients undergoing HCST (Barrera et al. 2007).

It is important for the child to benefit from sibling support. This can increase tolerance of difficult conditions encountered during the HSCT and aid in progress and recovery. During this time, they can develop deep sibling friendships, fed by a desire to be more helpful especially when the ill sibling feels lonely. When stem cells are donated by one sibling, the ill child experiences more positive feelings about him/her (Manookian et al. 2014).

9.1.4.2 The Parent Experience of HSCT

The experience of HSCT is an unfamiliar, frightening, worrying and stressful experience for the parents of the child undergoing this treatment (Asadi et al. 2011).

Several patient-centred reasons are known, including:

- Family and financial pressures
- Feelings of guilt
- Loneliness
- Hopelessness
- Fear of disease recurrence
- Transplant centre relocation
- Living in two separate households
- Commuting between home and transplant centre
- Other family member's and carer's responsibilities
- Work-related changes
- Lengthy hospital stays
- Parental informed consent for the HSCT procedure
- Medication adherence
- HSCT-related complications

During HSCT, parents develop high expectation about a successful outcome and are afraid of possible failure. The child's condition can cause parental distress, anxiety and depression. Physical, emotional and cognitive exhaustion or burnout in parents may adversely affect their ability to meet the needs of their child. They could be in extreme crisis and be unable to care for their children or perform traditional parental roles and consequently have feeling of hopelessness, concern and guilt. Parental psychological

reactions may in turn negatively affect the child. The psychological load on parents continues when the child is discharged from the ward. Burnout in mothers and fathers is associated with the child's number and severity of late effects up to 5 years after HSCT (Norberg et al. 2014). It is recommended that parents of child that underwent HSCT should be followed up and receive specialist psychological support, particularly for those whose child suffers from late effects.

The common coping strategy amongst families is with the use of social support. Parents' interactions with their support network can alleviate stress and enable parents to adapt. Some parents feel that communication with family members of other patients aids in acquiring information and in sharing of experiences and helped take control of their emotions to reduce fear and become adaptive (Badon and Cesaro 2015). Caregivers also attempt to cope by actively participating, engaging in and asking questions pertaining to their child's medical illness and the procedures involved in helping them. Parents who received cognitive-behavioural stress inoculation training in a group format had lower anxiety scores and higher positive self-statement scores (Packman et al. 2010).

Increasingly, parents function as haploidentical donors for their sick child. Being a parent and a donor creates a dual role. Depending on outcomes of the HSCT, this can be differently experienced. The dual parental role demands specific guidance and follow-up (van Walraven et al. 2012; Aguilera et al. 2022; Schaefer et al. 2022).

Creating a Therapeutic Alliance

Parents and the healthcare team need to unite to form a therapeutic alliance. Parents should be integrated into the multidisciplinary healthcare team as appropriate. The healthcare team's explanations regarding the transplant process can help them better understand their conditions and, consequently, can alleviate parental anxiety and fear of uncertainty and help further reducing their emotional burden. Parents can be supported by professionals in discussing their 'good parent' beliefs. These beliefs include personal definitions of parents on how to be a 'good parent' during the treatment process, such as in decision-making (Neumann et al. 2021).

9.1.4.3 Sibling Donor Experience in HSCT

Matched sibling donors are often preferred over unrelated donors due to decreased risk of complications. Most family members find the experience of donation as beneficial, despite some concerns about the donation process itself (Pentz et al. 2014). Sibling donors actively participate in the effort to achieve cure for their sick sibling. They have a dual role; as family members, they experience the difficulties of a life-threatening illness of one of their siblings. As donors, they are exposed to an invasive medical procedure, which adds anxiety, stress and uncertainty and places them in a complex situation (Munzenberger et al. 1999; Williams et al. 2003). When a close relationship exists between siblings, one can more safely assume that the donation will be of psychological benefit to the donor (Vogel 2011). However, sibling donors are at risk of developing emotional disturbances such as post-traumatic stress reactions, anxiety and low self-esteem and can potentially lead to the development of long-term distress responses (Packman et al. 2010). Attention should be paid to the possibility of these issues. During the pre-transplant workup, potential donors may experience anxiety and fear about the processes used to determine donor eligibility as well as during the donation process itself (Bauk and Andrews 2013). Although matched siblings may feel content and proud that they are able to be a donor, the unmatched siblings may feel inadequate or rejected and uninvolved in the transplant process. Once HLA typing has confirmed a sibling match, the workup for most haematopoietic stem cell donors involves determining both the risks to the recipient and the risks to the donor. It is also important to consider that these various tests may be overwhelming to the paediatric donor, and the importance of explaining their necessity cannot be understated. The workup process may have a significant impact on the family. In 2010, the American Academy of Pediatrics published a policy statement on children as haematopoietic

stem cell donors. Children may ethically serve as donors if five criteria are fulfilled:

1. There is no medically equivalent histocompatible adult relative who is willing and able to donate.
2. There is a strong personal and emotionally positive relationship between the donor and recipient.
3. There is a reasonable likelihood that the recipient will benefit.
4. The clinical, emotional and psychosocial risks to the donor are minimised and are reasonable in relation to the benefits expected to accrue to the donor and to the recipient.
5. Parental permission and, when appropriate, child assent are obtained. It is also recommended that the donor child will have a donor advocate or some similar mechanism, with expertise in paediatric development, that should be appointed for all individuals who have not reached the age of majority (Committee on Bioethics 2010).

The HSCT process can enhance family closeness, improve relationships with the unwell sibling and create a sense of pride and happiness about donating (Vogel 2011; Hutt et al. 2015). Wiener et al. (2007) found that younger donors focus more on the pain of the donation and tend to experience low self-esteem, anxiety and depression. Conversely, older sibling donors report lower levels of anxiety probably because they are able to think more globally about the donation process.

Studies of physical aspects and the safety of stem cell collection in paediatric sibling concluded that it is a safe procedure even in young children (Pulsipher et al. 2005; Styczynski et al. 2012). There are potential physiological risks and side effects of donation, with the most common being pain, fatigue and transient changes in the white blood count, haemoglobin and platelet values. In the immediate days following the donation, staff must closely assess the donor for evidence of bleeding, infection and other acute complications of the donation procedure. Feeling responsible for the transplant outcome is of notable concern for sibling donors. Maladjustment and poor coping in sibling donors may be attributed in part to a lack of information about the transplant process (Wiener et al. 2007).

The nurse can have a significant role in decreasing the sibling donor's stress and anxiety about the impending donation. Providing accurate and age-appropriate information about the procedure, the nurse may also help the child prepare for the experience and adapt to it more rapidly. This information increases the predictability of frightening medical procedures, thereby increasing the probability of a less stressful experience and a more rapid recovery. The nurse can also create opportunities to express emotion, concerns and questions in order to manage anxiety and guilt, involve parents in the donor's preparation and follow-up to ensure family's communication during HSCT and organise a tour of the hospital and an introduction to staff.

9.1.5 Centred Nursing Care of Patients and Caregiver's Undergoing HSCT

Psychological and emotional aspects of the paediatric experience are complex and intricate. Health workers who take care of the sick child should be the privileged listeners of the child and be receptive to the child's point of view, creating opportunities to talk.

9.1.5.1 The Relationship Between Nurse, Caregiver and Child

The approach of the paediatric team is strongly characterised by interpersonal and communication methods that are centred on empathic understanding, smiling, patience and gentleness. The relationship between nurses and children, but especially amongst nurses and parents, is difficult to summarise. However, this triangulation involves many mechanisms, roles and functions and impact on different aspects of personality and character.

9.1.5.2 Nursing Involvements in Care of Children Undergoing HSCT

To employ an effective communication, professionals need to improve their listening and obser-

vation skills and exercise the ability to transmit ideas and feelings to others.

Information and Reassurance

It is through age-appropriate dialogue that healthcare professionals can explain to the sick child the sense of what is happening, the need for frightening interventions, recognition and meaning of fears. The child must know that they will never be left alone and nothing will happen that was not first controlled or decided by someone else in whom they are confident (Manookian et al. 2014).

The opportunity for the child to be properly informed allows them to become aware of what is happening to him in his life, to have greater familiarity with hostile hospital setting and be able to work together in their treatment path. Communication about the transplant process between the care staff, child and family can be further complicated by the different opinions with respect to what it is to be explained to the sick child. In general, it is preferred to adopt an attitude that respects the will of the parents, but this can lead to difficulties when it is the child themselves asking or looking for other information. The information, however, allows a reduction of the perception of pain, an increase in the child's compliance and a general improvement of the quality of life in the hospital (Badon and Cesaro 2015). The child who reports more free expression of emotion in their family in turn experiences lower levels of distress throughout the transplant period. Openness and honesty in communication in the family environment can encourage the emotional well-being of the child and further promote their resiliency after the HSCT procedure is complete (Packman et al. 2010).

Listening

The ability to listen allows us to establish constructive relations. A real attitude to listening implies the attention, interest, tolerance, understanding and acceptance of the other. All of these are necessary preconditions for the establishment of an open relationship in which it is easier for the child to express and give information about himself. It is useful to encourage the patient to express themselves freely because, in addition to containing their distress, it is possible for the nurse to better understand the organisation of their personality and the defences put into place to cope with the situation (Badon and Cesaro 2015).

Psychological Support Service

Psychological support services are well developed and considered the standard of care in paediatric HSCT settings. Psychological support is configured, therefore, as the accompaniment's relationship of an entire family system in all phases of the transplant path. The presence of psychologist with the child who undergoes HSCT:

- Enables meaningful relationships to develop
- Facilitates understanding the illness of the child in all its complexity
- Makes request for help, expressed or implied, in view of practical difficulties, organisational, relational and emotional that may arise.

The intervention must be thought according to age, and even if the parent is always present in the isolation room, one can try to find some private moments between patient and psychologist. The attention to psychological and psychopathological aspects is not realised only through specialised interventions, but it must be realised every day by all staff members. Even the nursing staff, if trained, may perform work in the role of counsellor or coach (Barrera et al. 2007).

9.1.5.3 Decision-Making

An essential part of the treatment and care for children undergoing HSCT and their caregivers is decision-making. Several decisions about treatment and care will be made, starting with the decision for HSCT. Parents can experience HSCT decision-making as a physician's guided plan, which they follow (Pentz et al. 2012; Mekelenkamp et al. 2020). For others, the decision is approached or experienced as a more shared model, such as in sickle cell disease (Bakshi et al. 2017; Khemani et al. 2018; Mekelenkamp et al. 2021). As an

HSCT is an intensive treatment including possible severe risks, it is important to discuss personal preferences for current and future care with children and their caregivers. Spending appropriate time to discuss all options, including its pros and cons, is necessary, followed by a conversation about preferences and values, to include these into the decision.

9.2 Transplantation Through the Ages: Adolescents and Young Adults

9.2.1 Introduction

In the years that follow the onset of puberty, a young person will undergo perhaps the most rapid and formative changes of their life. The journey of transitioning from child to adult can be severely impacted when undergoing hospital treatment for a HSCT. Adolescent/teenager or young adult patients present health professionals with a unique set of challenges, and it is important that care settings are designed to address and respond to the particular needs of young people and their families. The definition of an adolescent/teenager or young adult in healthcare settings varies globally. In the UK, adolescent and young adults (AYA) or teenage and young adults (TYA) are considered between 13 and 24 years or 16 and 24 years of age; however, in some countries, it can include people in their 30s. A cancer diagnosis in young people is rare, representing less than 1% of all new cancers in the UK, but it is the second leading cause of death in this age group (TCT 2016). Numbers have grown by 10% since 1990 but have remained stable in the past decade (Cancer Research 2022). Cancers in this age group present differently compared to children and older adults and can be more difficult to treat. The infrequency of an AYA with cancer presenting to local services causes delays in diagnosis—Healthcare Professionals do not recognise the red flags (NHS England 2013). AYAs require support tailored to this age group; treating them within paediatric or adult services does not address their holistic. In response to this, guidance such as that published by the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) aims to shape services and care to the needs of the TYA patient, which spans the ages of 13–24 years old (National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence 2014). Patients undergoing HSCT require long-term clinical care beyond the acute phase of transplant and will be in regular contact with transplant clinicians and the multidisciplinary team (MDT) for a significant amount of time after bone marrow recovery and discharge from inpatient care. Care must be delivered within age-appropriate surroundings by health professionals experienced in caring for AYAs.

9.2.2 Special Indications for HSCT in AYA

The most common indication for HSCT is in the treatment of malignant haematological diseases lymphoma and acute leukaemia (Sureda et al. 2015). For patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia or acute myeloid leukaemia, HSCT will be considered if they have high-risk, refractory or relapsed disease. In the case of Hodgkin's lymphoma, guidelines for teenagers indicate avoiding HSCT if the patient manages to get into complete remission (CR) following first line of chemotherapy as this alone or combined with radiotherapy usually yields successful long-term outcomes. However, once a patient requires second- or third-line treatment, the need for HSCT becomes more important (Sureda et al. 2015). Standard recommendations are for an autologous transplant following successful CR after second-line treatment. Failure to get into remission at this stage opens up the possibility of allograft, but this would require further discussions at local MDT meetings. Full-intensity allografts are more routinely used in the younger adult patients as opposed to the older population as they tend to not have comorbidities associated with getting older, e.g. heart disease, and as such can tolerate stronger conditioning.

A small number of HSCTs are carried out every year for solid tumours. According to British

Society for Bone Marrow Transplant (BSBMT) data, there were 117 transplants carried out on solid tumour patients of any age in 2020 within the UK and Ireland, all of which were autografts (BSBMT 2020). The most common solid tumours for which HSCT is indicated include neuroblastoma, germ cell and Ewing's sarcoma, with clinicians using transplants to increase dose intensity although this is reducing as other lines of treatment open for these diseases (Gratwohl et al. 2004).

9.2.3 Considerations for Care

9.2.3.1 Risk-Taking Behaviour and Non-compliance

Becoming a teenager can herald a time of risk-taking behaviours as adolescents push the boundaries of their growing independence. At a time when peers are being afforded greater freedoms, often, a cancer diagnosis re-establishes the dependency relationship between the young person and their family. Smoking, drinking alcohol, use of recreational drugs and engaging in unsafe sexual practices can allow the young person to regain some control, as can determining how compliant they choose to be with treatment. In the context of HSCT, indulging in unsafe behaviours can increase the risk of organ toxicity and infections. Failing to comply with supportive medications such as anti-infectives and immunosuppressives increases the morbidity and mortality rate of HSCT. As teenagers often focus on short-term outcomes and if the effects of non-compliance are not immediately obvious, this can reinforce the behaviour. Similarly if there have been immediate side effects to therapy, e.g. nausea and weight gain, the patient may be less likely to adhere to medical advice. This will have an effect on the success of treatment; patients who are compliant are almost three times more likely to have a better outcome than those who are not (Taddeo et al. 2008).

Gender, socio-economic status and ethnicity do not have an impact on whether a patient adheres to care (Kondryn et al. 2011) although financial difficulties can affect patients travelling long distances for treatment. Depression and lowered self-esteem can increase rate of non-compliance, as can the perception of the illness severity. The relationship between the patient and their family can impact on how compliant a young person is, with family conflict increasing the risk of non-adherence. Young patients who are treated in specialist young adult ward are more likely to be compliant compared to those who are treated in an adult cancer unit, further supporting the development of clinical areas dedicated to the care of the adolescent and young adult. This will be discussed further in the chapter.

Health professionals should be aware of the signs of non-compliance and facilitate an open and honest conversation with the patient. Confidentiality should be respected although in the instances where risky behaviour is disclosed, patients should be made aware if it is necessary to inform other members of the team or external agencies. Healthy lifestyle choices should be promoted but within a non-judgemental environment. It is important that young patients are aware of appropriate boundaries whilst in hospital and local conduct, and operational policies must support staff in challenging risk-taking behaviours within the care environment (TCT 2012). Healthcare professionals who are struggling to get their patients to comply should present the case to psycho-social MDTs for a full discussion.

9.2.3.2 Fertility

Fertility has been covered elsewhere in this book, but there are challenges unique to this age group, which will be addressed in this section. TBI and high-dose conditioning chemotherapy are highly likely to cause infertility. As often the type of transplant for the TYA patient is a full-intensity approach, this makes the risk of infertility a likely side effect of transplant. If applicable, patients must be advised about the options of fertility preservation as part of transplant workup and given the opportunity to explore fertility preservations options although the urgency of the transplant may make this difficult.

Johson and Kroon (2013) found that as many as 54% of oncologists did not discuss fertility

with AYA patients. Barriers to communication include a mutual awkwardness between the TYA patient and health professional when it comes to the topic of fertility. Clinicians can employ a jocular approach to young patients and find it difficult to broach sensitive topics (Quinn et al. 2009). Patients can feel confused and frightened about the potential effects of cancer treatment, or they are unable to envisage how fertility issues will impact them in the future (TCT 2012).

For post-pubertal males, fertility preservation can be achieved through obtaining a sperm sample. Prior to attending fertility sessions, it should be clearly explained that the sample is obtained through masturbation, so they are prepared for the process. Sperm banking can potentially be an embarrassing process. Failing to bank a sample can leave the young person feeling disappointed and letdown, and it should be reinforced that not all attempts at sperm banking are successful particularly in the context of a high burden of disease.

Female fertility preservation is a more complex process. Ovarian stimulation and oocyte collection may be considered, but currently, such methods have yielded limited success. Embryo collection can be difficult in this age group as they are unlikely to be ready to consider their current partners as a potential lifelong spouse (Levine and Stern 2010). Furthermore, there is the added issue of time as it can take 2–4 weeks to harvest reproductive material from females. An option for other cancer treatments is the use of a gonadotropin-releasing analogue hormone, triptorelin, to suppress menstruation, reduce toxicity to fertility and reduce haemorrhage risk. In other cancer treatments, it has been shown to reduce ovarian failure, but in the HSCT population, this is less successful. Female patients should partake in a full discussion about fertility preservation and be offered the opportunity to be referred to fertility experts as part of HSCT workup.

Discussions about fertility preservation should take place as early as possible, and parents should be included in order to support the teenager in their decision-making. Psychological input should be offered, as infertility can be one of the most impacting aspects of long-term survivorship, and there are many cultural, religious and social stigmas attached to being unable to bear a child.

9.2.3.3 Impact of Treatment on the Family Unit

Healthcare professionals looking after the TYA population must also care for the family unit and approach care holistically. During the ages of 13–24, young people undergo many developments in relation to the family unit. They may still be dependent on their parents, or they themselves may have their own children and responsibilities. Care needs to be adapted accordingly.

With TYA patients who are parents, often, children will be babies and preschoolers. Moore and Rauch (2006) described what parents can expect from this age group in the context of a cancer diagnosis; even with age-appropriate explanation, under 5s will have little awareness of the diagnosis and aims associated with HSCT. What they will be aware of is the absence of a parent, stress in the household and changes to their routine. Rather than understand that these are caused by illness, the child may believe that they are somehow responsible for the absence. Parents may also recognise regression in the child's behaviour, such as bed-wetting in previously toilet-trained children.

Parents of HSCT patients can find their relationship health with their partners placed under considerable strain. In Long and Marsland (2011) study, the authors noted that the needs of the parents were put on hold to prioritise the needs of the TYA patient. In the case of hospitalisation, separation between parents places even further strain as there is a decrease in communication, interaction and closeness between spouses. Reaction to the treatment process can vary between partners. One partner may try to withhold emotion to remain strong for their families, leaving the other feeling quite isolated. Differences in approach can cause emotional distance and feelings of loneliness. However, in some partnerships, going through the experience of having a child with cancer can make the partnership stronger, with spouses being viewed as the main source of support.

Siblings of young cancer patients experience chaos within their family lives, which affects family dynamics and their self-esteem (Yang et al. 2013). Siblings should be considered in the discussion about HSCT. They may need input from psychologists or youth support workers to help them adjust to the changes in their family dynamics. Spending time with an unwell sibling can increase empathy from the well child and improve the family relationship. Centres caring for TYA should encourage a family environment and include siblings in activities where possible.

Unlike other areas of medicine, family members may be directly involved in the treatment of HSCT patients by becoming the stem cell donors and as such a second patient. Siblings are usually the first option for a stem cell source. This can create an ethical dilemma for parents and healthcare staff, especially if the potential donor is a minor. What if the child refuses? What are the limitations of parental decision? What are the consequences for the child who does donate? The Human Tissue Authority provides guidance on consenting a minor for stem cell collection in their 2017 guidelines (Human Tissue Authority 2015).

There is a significant potential for psychological impact on those siblings who undergo HLA tissue typing, regardless of whether they actually turn out to be a match or not. In Macleod et al. (2003) study, siblings reported feeling as if they had 'no choice' about being tested and donating if matched. Reluctance was often not because they did not want to help but rather the fear of the procedure. In the case of siblings who were not matched, they described feelings of relief but also guilt. If they were matched but the sibling died during or post treatment, donors felt angry and blamed themselves, especially in the context of graft failure or graft-versus-host disease. Siblings in Pentz et al. (2014) study felt that there was no choice but to donate if they were matched, and concerns centred initially more around the procedures associated with donation. More than half interviewed felt they had benefited from giving their cells although they could have been provided with more information.

A further family stem cell source is the parent. In the case of failing to find a suitable donor through siblings or the register, often, parents will make a motivated stem cell donor. However, as in the case of the sibling, parents can also be left with profound feelings of guilt if the transplant fails (Barfield and Kodish 2006).

Health professionals have a duty to care for the family as a unit. Healthcare professionals should guide patients and their families on appropriate open communication although needs will vary depending on the family. Donors, whether siblings or parents, should be involved in the HSCT process from the start, and the complex variables associated with transplant success be carefully explored. Members of the MDT, such as psychologists, youth support workers, school teachers, social workers, etc., should be involved early in the journey with patient consent. Creating a family-friendly space in the clinical environment will encourage children and siblings to visit. Key workers should be aware of support networks and resources locally to refer or signpost as appropriate.

Case Study

A 14-year-old girl was treated in a TYA unit for acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. From an early point in treatment, it was clear that disease was high risk from unfavourable cytogenetics and poor response at disease reassessment. She was placed on chemotherapy but experienced complications including methotrexate encephalopathy and drug reactions to asparaginase and the alternative, Erwinase. Treatment was suboptimal. The clinical team decided to test her brother and sister to plan for a sibling allograft when a repeat bone marrow showed a significant amount of minimal residual disease after 6 months of treatment. Her sister was found to be a 10/10 HLA match. However, her mother struggled greatly with the fact that her 'healthy' child would be put through procedures, especially as she was only 10 years old. The younger child was clear on her intention to help her sister but did experience distress when subjected to blood tests. This exacerbated the inner turmoil felt by her mother as she worried about the eventual bone marrow harvest and openly discussed refusing consent for the procedure in front of her 14-year-old daughter, despite

knowing that finding an alternative stem cell source was unlikely as the patient was from a mixed ethnic background. With the help of the available psychological team and youth support workers at the paediatric and TYA centre the patient, her sibling, mother and family received separate counselling and access to play specialists and youth support workers, and the resulting harvest was successful.

9.2.3.4 Body Image

Side effects of drugs used in the HSCT process can cause significant physical changes to a patient's appearance. This is not exclusive to the TYA patient but can be more psychologically harmful as they are at an age when feeling different from peers can have a negative impact on self-esteem (Smith et al. 2012). Issues such as weight gain and alopecia can have a psychological impact, which is greater compared to the older adults. Appearance concerns amongst TYA cancer patients have been linked to depression, anxiety, feelings of loneliness, suicide and decreased treatment compliance (Fan and Eiser 2009).

Weight loss is often a part of the acute and recovery phase of HSCT as patients struggle with the gastrointestinal side effects of treatment. Traditionally literature on body image has focused on the female perspective, but for young men, muscle wastage that comes with prolonged hospital treatment, paired with fatigue, poor appetite and reduced exercise tolerance, can leave the patient feeling deconditioned. In Rodgers et al. (2010) study, participants described reduced appetites until day 50 post-HSCT, by which point, they were able to see an improvement, and by day +100 appetite was notably increased. Participants were able to correlate the link between improved eating habits and appetite with returning to their 'normal selves', advising future patients to have some control over what they eat and portion size rather than being forced into eating by parents and health professionals.

For patients receiving high-dose steroids, for example, in the treatment of graft-versus-host disease, a typical side effect includes development of facial swelling, known as 'moon face' and unwanted facial hair. This can drastically alter appearance and be devastating for a young person. This can also lead them to become non-compliant to the treatment with poor consequences for their treatment success.

Alopecia is a common and well-known side effect of chemotherapy. Hair is often very much tied into identity, and the idea of losing it can be extremely distressing at any age. Youth support workers and nurse specialists can help organise a replacement before hair loss starts to occur (usually 2 weeks after the start of chemotherapy). Wigs made of real hair can be much more realistic compared to synthetic versions. However, a lot of hair replacement focuses on females, with male patients finding options to be limited.

Conditioning regimens containing TBI can impact on the growth of patients who are treated at a young age (Jackson et al. 2018). This is due to the radiation administered to the hypothalamic-pituitary axis and the resting reduction to the growth hormone. Poor growth is further compounded by chronic GvHD, corticosteroid use and malnutrition (Chow et al. 2016). Replacement therapy can aid to reduce further loss of height, but cannot reverse loss. Clinicians need to carefully monitor growth of patients to ensure early intervention.

9.2.3.5 Impact on Life

Approximately 60% of children and adolescents who are long-term survivors of HSCT experience late effects, both of the physical and psychological nature (Forinder and Posse 2008). Fertility and growth issues have been covered already in this chapter, and organ toxicity associated with HSCT is written about in other sections of this book. There are other ways that HSCT impacts life, which are unique challenges to the AYA patient.

For the adolescent and young adult, peers are an important feature of life. However, patients of this age undergoing HSCT experience social isolation from their friends and community. This is not only due to physical absence from school, university and work but also a difficulty on the part of the healthy young person to understand and empathise with the experiences of their

unwell friend (TCT 2012). From the perspective of the survivor of a HSCT, they can find it difficult to relate to their peers after what they have been through. Young people can feel that undergoing such serious medical treatments changes their perspective on life and makes it harder to relate to peers (Forinder and Posse 2008). Also they become conscious of their change in appearance and upset at looking different to those in their social network, which can cause further alienation.

The relationship between the parents and the unwell adolescent is difficult to navigate. Increased dependency is at odds with the need for autonomy that is typical at this age. This can lead to direct conflict between the two parties, especially once the AYA patient has completed the acute phase of the transplant. A sharp difference of priorities can exist between parent and patient (Grinyer 2009). AYA patients may not have fully developed executive function due to regression and cognitive development delay, which adds to the tension between the parent and patient relationship (Kaufman 2006).

Survivorship is a growing area of research as outcomes from cancer treatment improve. Health professionals and researchers recognise that completion of cancer treatment is the start of a difficult journey of adjustment and transition. Clinical staff need to consider the fallout of treatment, and patients should be aware that they can continue to access support. Treatment within dedicated TYA clinical areas can help patients access peer support, which is tailored more to their development needs.

9.2.4 Teenager as a Child vs. Adult

Under 18s present legal challenges for healthcare professionals as the young person must be assessed on their ability to make appropriate decisions about their care on an individual basis. In the following section, issues of consent, confidentiality and guardian roles are discussed. Much of this part will discuss current legislation within the UK. Health professionals should refer to national legislation for further clarity.

9.2.4.1 Consenting for Treatment

Informed consent is a cornerstone of medical practice. Violation of this has legal implications for clinicians but more importantly jeopardises the ethical rights of the patient (Bayer et al. 2011). In order to satisfy the principles of informed consent, it must be given freely and with full comprehension. Patients must be provided with adequate information in understandable terms. Treatment options should be reviewed, and a discussion about the risks, benefits and alternatives to the proposed treatment should take place and be documented. Signing of a consent form is symbolic, representing completion of the consenting process.

Informed consent is a relatively straightforward process when concerning over 18s as long as the individual has capacity. In the UK, patients between 16 and 18 can consent for treatment but may not be able to refuse treatment in the case of saving their lives or preventing serious harm. Under 16s may legally consent if they meet certain criteria of being Gillick competent. This principle is based on a case in the 1980s where Victoria Gillick took her local authority to court to prevent them from providing contraception to her children without her knowledge (Wheeler 2006). The high court determined that minors under 16 have the potential to independently consent to treatment if deemed competent to do so. However, it is a good practice to involve the young person's family in the process. In the case of under 18s who are deemed Gillick competent but refusing treatment, it is possible for the decision to be overturned where it will lead to death or serious injury (Department of Health 2009).

In the case where a minor cannot independently consent and parental involvement is required, the Oviedo Convention recommends the use of the term 'authorisation' rather than 'consenting on behalf of a child' as the former relates to the concept of a third authority, i.e. the parent, and is slightly different from informed consent. As informed consent is an expression of personal choice, it can only relate to the person being treated. Authorising treatment is acknowledging that it is in the best interests of the young person. Furthermore, the Oviedo Convention

requires that the opinion of the minor must still be taken into consideration. Thus, the decision-making process involves three parties: the clinicians, the person with parental responsibility and the child undergoing treatment (Nicolussi 2015). According to the Children Act 2004, parental responsibility extends to both parents if married at the time of conception or birth, the child's father if not married to the mother but who features on the birth certificate or the child's legally appointed guardian or a local authority who has been granted a care order in respect of the child.

Disputes between parties involved in treatment decisions are rare but do occur. This can be between patients and their parents, between health professionals and the family or between parents. An example is when parents who are Jehovah's Witnesses refuse blood transfusions on behalf of their child. Cultural beliefs should be respected, but bone marrow failure can be a life-threatening complication of HSCT. In instances such as this, which can be pre-empted, plans should be made about how to deal with the complication before it arises, i.e. the use of erythropoietin as an alternative. Unfortunately, not every eventuality can be considered, and advice may need to be sought through legal channels, which will provide protection to the patient, family and the health professionals concerned.

9.2.4.2 Communication

Regardless of whether a minor is able to consent, they should be present to participate in discussions about their care, and information should be directed at them. Healthcare professionals should give the same time and respect to young people as they would do to adult patients. Information should be provided using language that is understandable, giving all involved parties the opportunity to ask questions. Discussions should be truthful and open, with consideration given to confidentiality. The information provided should be appropriate to the age of the young person and include a discussion about:

- Their illness and proposed treatment
- The purpose of investigations and treatments and what they involve
- Benefits and risks, including of not having treatment
- Who will be responsible for their care
- Their right to ask for a second opinion or retract consent if deemed capable (GMC 2007)

It is justifiable to keep the above information from the young person if you think that it will cause them serious harm (this does not include concerns about upsetting them) or if the patient asks you not to tell them, preferring to leave someone else to make the decision for them. The treating team should continue to revisit this decision by the young person as participation in their care will enable them to better process their treatment journey.

Often guardians and young people can struggle to have honest discussions together as they are afraid of upsetting each other especially in the context of sensitive subjects. Although the young person is entitled to have consultations on their own, it is better if they can be supported by somebody as the HSCT journey can be difficult and lonely. The MDT are in a position to break down the barriers of communication and help the young person and their support network navigate this difficult time.

9.2.4.3 Confidentiality

Respecting confidentiality is important in harbouring good relations with young people, making them feel confident about seeking care and advice. If required to share information with parents or other health professionals, the young person should be made aware and agree. If they refuse, there are still circumstances where information should be disclosed including where it would be in the public's best interest, when it is in the best interests of the young person, when they lack capacity and when disclosure is required by law. Examples include if the information would help prevent or prosecute in the case of a serious crime (usually against the young person) and if the patient is engaging in activities that might put them at risk, e.g. serious addiction or self-harming.

9.2.5 TYA Cancer Care in Europe: A General Review

Across Europe, cancer is the second cause of death amongst 15–24-year-olds (Gatta et al. 2009). Despite this, the services for this population remain in the developing stage in comparison to that of children or older adults. This is a strive for change, and an example of this is the European Network for Cancer Research in Children and Adolescents (ENCCA) programme, which aims to share knowledge and services across the continent. Stark et al. (2016) summarised the work across individual countries and set out guidelines with collaborative aims to:

- Not necessarily have agreed age cut-offs set across Europe, rather treat according to the needs of their population
- Provide an age-appropriate environment for TYA patients to complete their care, with services tailored to the needs of the patient and family
- Have an active relationship between paediatric and adult oncologists or a dedicated TYA team, including specialist health professionals such as nurses, social workers, psychologists, teachers and activity coordinators
- Have a fertility preservation programme
- Have a transition programme for those moving from child to TYA services and TYA to older adult care
- Have clinical trials available to the TYA population in varying tumour groups

Stark et al. (2016) also summarised progress of individual countries in regard to TYA care.

The UK pioneered the TYA model back in the 1990s through collaboration between the Teenage Cancer Trust (TCT) and National Health Service (NHS). As such, the pathway is well defined. All TYA patients with a cancer diagnosis must be discussed at a TYA MDT, and those between 13 and 18 must be treated in a dedicated TYA centre. The service undergoes yearly peer review, and lead clinicians are at the forefront of specialist networks. There is a separate TYA clinical studies group with the aim of including the availability of trials to this patient group. TYA health professionals have their own UK professional membership organisation, which provides peer support and sharing of information between services. There are 25 TYA centres across the county, and development of such services is discussed in detail in the next section.

In Germany, there is separate infrastructure for paediatric and adult cancer patients with a strict age barrier of 18 years separating them. The majority of adolescent care is performed within paediatric oncology. However, practice is changing, and a collaborative approach is happening, with some centres creating TYA-specific MDT programmes.

In Italy, the Committee on Adolescents was formed by the Associazione Italiana Ematologia Oncologia Pediatrica in 2010 to ensure TYA cancer patients have prompt, adequate and fair access to the best care. Since then, two TYA units have been opened. A national task force dedicated to teenagers and young adults with cancer was set up in 2013 to push the agenda for TYA care further.

In France, research by Desandes et al. (2012) showed that 82% of 15–18-year-olds with cancer were treated in an adult environment, and few were enrolling clinical trials. This prompted the initiation of an improvement plan. Since then, eight TYA units and three specialist centres have been opened with dedicated teams; improvements have been made to the inclusion of TYA patients in clinical trial, and a specific psychosocial programme has been initiated. The Institut de France planned to create localised care pathways and has started a national association to focus on cancer care for patients between 15 and 25 years old.

In Spain in 2011, the Adolescents with Cancer Committee was set up by the Spanish Society of Paediatric Haematology; however, a survey in 2014 showed that over 14-year-olds were still generally being treated in adult care settings (Lassaletta et al. 2013). TYA oncologists and patients have founded the charity 'Spanish Association of Adolescents and Young Adults with Cancer' to create support for young people with cancer and push the TYA agenda.

In Denmark, a TYA project started by nurses commenced in 2000 at Aarhus University. A national initiative is also being planned to bring together the collective view of young patients, to create TYA-focused unit and to specialise treatment.

In 2013, in the Netherlands, health professionals started a national TYA project dedicated to the care of 18–35-year-olds and focused on quality of life, late effects and fertility.

In Portugal, there is no national project yet, but in Lisbon, a project has commenced to create a TYA unit for patients aged between 16 and 25.

9.2.6 Development of TYA Cancer Units: The UK Experience

It was first recognised that young UK patients had specific needs in the 1950s with the publication of the Platt Report (Ministry of Health 1959). Publication of the Calman-Hine report in 1995 particularly acknowledged the issues faced by young cancer patients. Treating 13–18-year-olds in the same units as toddlers or over 18s with older adults fails to provide care that meets their needs. The UK has been at the forefront of developing TYA-specific treatment areas; however, age-appropriate care is still not available to all.

The Teenage Cancer Trust charity was set up over 10 years ago to act as support and advocate for young people facing cancer. Alongside other charity organisations internationally including CanTeen Australia, CanTeen New Zealand, LIVESTRONG and SeventyK, they created the International Charter of Rights for Young People with Cancer, which states that young people with cancer should:

- Receive education about cancer and its prevention
- Be taken seriously when seeking medical attention to ensure that they receive the earliest possible diagnosis and referral for a suspected cancer
- Have access to suitable qualified health professionals with significant experience in treating patients with cancer in this age group
- Access to suitable clinical trials
- Receive age-appropriate support
- Empowered in making decisions
- Fertility preservation
- Access to specialised treatment and services in age-appropriate facilities
- Financial support
- Long-term survivorship support

The Teenage Cancer Trust was set up over a decade ago and works in partnership with the National Health Service to open inpatient and outpatient cancer units, providing education, specialist staff and annual meetings to raise awareness of the issues associated with caring for this age group. In 1990, they opened the first dedicated unit at the Middlesex Hospital in London and currently have 28 units operating across the UK. Development of TYA-dedicated units is down predominantly to initiatives in response to local needs rather than a general coordinated health policy.

During the development stage of a new unit, often, patients will be asked for their opinion and input into the facilities and design. Use of the Internet is important in this age group as a means of staying in touch with normality whilst staying in the hospital, so facilities should be provided. Patients have access to equipment such as game consoles, pool tables, computers, etc. Designated recreational areas can provide a space for patients to socialise and relax away from their hospital beds. This can also encourage peer support as patients interact in communal spaces. Support for the young person can be gained by having somebody staying with them, and clinical areas should be able to accommodate. This is often possible in paediatric and teenage settings but can be difficult to provide in adult units.

The ethos of AYA care is to approach holistically. This is achieved by presenting each new patient at weekly AYA MDTs. During AYA MDTs, health professionals from across the service attend to participate in discussions about new patients and their planned treatments. All AYA patients, irrespective of place of treatment, should be discussed at an AYA MDT to ensure that they have the opportunity to receive the cor-

rect support. Barriers to setting up a TYA MDTs, including time constraints, perceived duplication and resources (TCT 2012). However, uses of MDTs are thought to improve clinical trial recruitment, outcomes and multi-agency working.

Due to duration of follow-up post-HSCT, patients may be required to transition as they pass landmark birthdays. This should be a planned process that addresses the needs of TYA patients with chronic health problems as they move from child-centred care to the TYA setting or TYA care to the adult health system. This can be a difficult time for patients and their families as they leave behind the team that has moved them through the acute phase of the HSCT process and with whom they have built up a strong bond. Planning may take a number of months and should be approached sensitively. The process can be helped by patients visiting the new units and good communication between all parties.

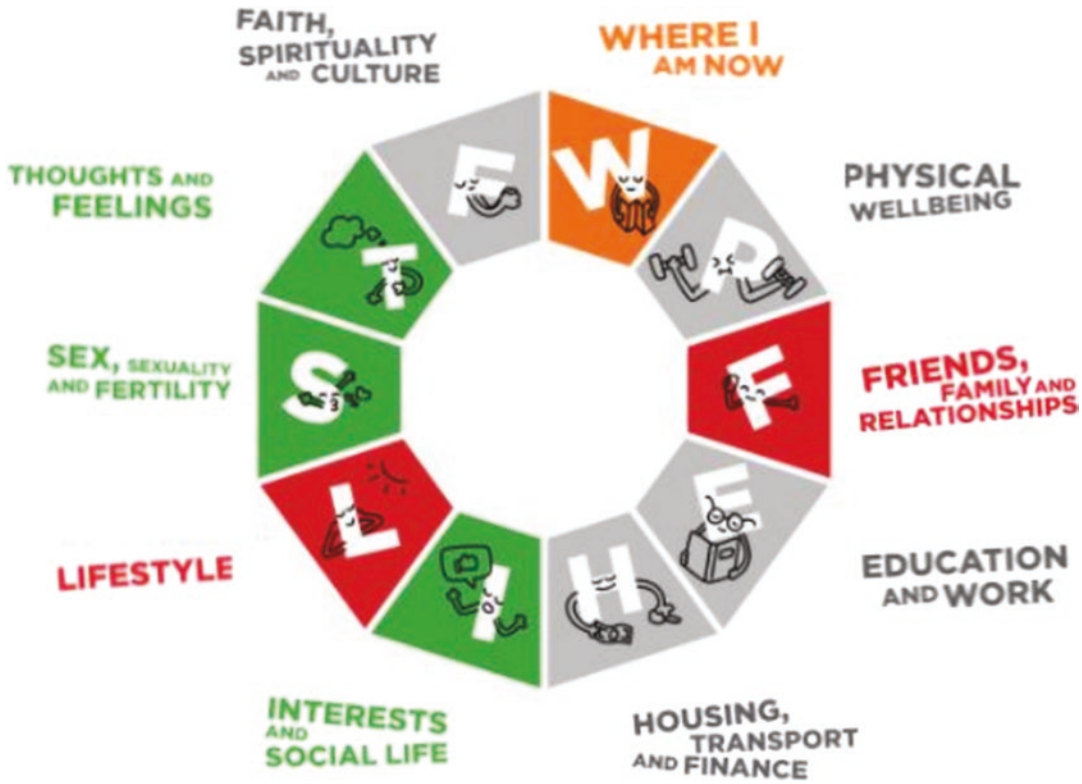
9.2.7 AYA Care: An MDT Approach

In the UK, AYA care occurs within networks. Within each network, there is at least one principle treatment centre (PTC), which works with other hospitals (termed designated hospitals) to ensure that young people can access care both in specialist centres (PTC) and in the hospitals closer to them, saving on the time and cost associated with travelling for appointments. Previously, the relationship within the network was governed by loose principles, which were hard to audit and govern, but in 2022, NHS England has worked with AYA Teams to create service specifications for AYA cancer care in PTCs and designated hospitals. This will formalise the networks and work to ensure that all AYA patients across the UK receive standard supportive care once diagnosed with cancer.

The service specifications include recommendations on (amongst other things):

- Tumour banking
- Availability of whole genome sequencing
- Improve access to clinical trails
- Appropriate care according to age and diagnosis
- Holistic care of AYAs
- Fertility
- Survivorship
- Transitioning through paediatric and adult services

One recommendation is that all AYAs being treated for cancer across the Network must be discussed at a psycho-social MDT, hosted at the PTC and attended by medics across the typical AYA tumours, specialist nurses, psychologists, social workers, youth support worker, trials researcher or nurse. The barriers to setting up a TYA MDTs include time constraints, perceived duplication and resources (Smith et al. 2012). However, use of MDTs is thought to improve clinical trial recruitment, outcomes and multi-agency working. Each patient is discussed using the Integrated Assessment Mapping (IAM) tool. Aside from diagnosis, treatment and trials being presented, the nurse specialist will also discuss the outcome of the health needs assessment, which they have completed with the patient. This focuses on specific areas of the young person's life where they award a score depending on how much distress the domain is causing and add supplementary comments. This highlights particular areas of concern for the young person and can focus the discussion during the MDT. This is separate from the diagnostic MDT and is purely focused on the holistic needs of the young person and their families.



Found at https://iamportal.co.uk. (Reproduced with permission from Teenage Cancer Trust, 2022)

9.2.8 Summary

- TYA cancer patients include those aged between 13 and 24 years old.
- Often, HSCT indications in this age group are for malignancies including refractory or relapsed leukaemia and lymphoma.
- There are unique challenges facing this age group when diagnosed and undergoing treatment.
- One significant challenge is the impact that a cancer diagnosis has on the family unit especially in the younger siblings providing the stem cell.
- Even when considered a minor, patients do still need to be assessed for competence and afforded the same respect as adult patients.
- Partnership between the NHS and charities such as the Teenage Cancer Trust can provide an age-appropriate environment for patients and their families.
- There is still much work to be done across Europe to ensure each patient is getting care that is responsive to their needs.

9.3 Transplanting the Adult and the Older Adult: Nursing Considerations

Older people are usually identified by their chronological age, and persons aged 65 years or over are often referred to as 'elderly' (WHO 2010). The median age at diagnosis of patients with acute myeloid leukaemia (AML), myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS), chronic lymphatic leukaemia (CLL), multiple myeloma (MM) and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) is over 65 years old (Eichhorst et al. 2011; NCI 2003; Palumbo and Anderson 2011; Sekeres 2010; Smith et al. 2011; Siegel et al. 2015). Most of these haematological diseases are not curable unless an allogeneic or autologous haematopoietic cell transplantation can be performed.

Currently the indications for and subsequently the use of haematopoietic cell transplantation as a treatment option in older adults with haematological malignancies are increasing, yet the majority of our experience is with patients under the age of 65.

Older patients however represent a very heterogeneous group with respect to overall health status; some individuals stay fit, whilst others are frail or become fragile suddenly.

In order to help healthcare professionals decide on the best treatment option for their older patients, geriatric assessment (GA) (Extermann et al. 2005) can identify unknown medical, functional, cognitive and social issues, making it possible to plan early interventions. Geriatric impairment, such as polypharmacy, malnourishment and impaired instrumental activities of daily living, is common among older haematological patients (Scheepers et al. 2020). Although GA still requires prospective validation in larger cohorts, studies in oncological populations have shown that treatment plans have been altered in 28% on the basis of the CGA, often resulting in less intensive treatment options. A substantial percentage of older adults have more difficulties processing and remembering information than younger ones. It is important to make sure that also older adults understand their disease, the prognosis and the treatment plan to make an informed decision. Therefore, it is essential to assess cognitive functioning and in case of mild cognitive impairment that the information is tailored to reflect the individual's needs. There are studies suggesting that physiotherapy and nutritional counselling might improve quality of life and treatment completion. Consequently, it would be most interesting to improve geriatric impairments or deficits. Unfortunately, most healthcare professionals working in hematology settings are not trained in geriatrics.

The aim of this section is to describe GA, to provide information about the increasing prevalence of certain risk factors (impaired cognitive function, medication non-adherence) and how patient information can be adjusted to the needs of older patients.

9.3.1 Differences Between Older and Younger Patients

The incidence of acute myeloid leukaemia (AML), myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS), chronic lymphatic leukaemia (CLL), multiple myeloma (MM) and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) increases with age, with the majority of patients being over 65 years of age (Eichhorst et al. 2011; National Cancer Institute 2003; Palumbo and Anderson 2011; Sekeres 2010; Smith et al. 2011; Siegel et al. 2015). Most of these haematological diseases are not curable unless the appropriate allogeneic and/or autologous haematopoietic cell transplantation is performed.

Chronological age is becoming less of a barrier to reduced-intensity conditioning in allogeneic haematopoietic cell transplantation (HCT), and as a result, HCT in the older adult population is increasing. However, the majority of experience with stem cell transplantation remains amongst younger adults.

Older Age is Still Associated with

- Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic changes
- An increased risk of toxicities and infectious complications from chemotherapeutic agents
- An impaired immune system
- A high prevalence of comorbid conditions and an overall worse performance status

These factors may result in higher risks of non-relapse death after both autologous and allogeneic HCT (Artz and Chow 2016; Mamdani et al. 2016).

Older patients represent a very heterogeneous group in terms of health and functioning; as whilst some individuals remain fit, others are frail or become fragile suddenly.

More than half of adults aged over 65 have three or more medical problems (Boyd et al. 2012) and may be taking multiple medications, making care more complex.

In older patients, therapeutic decisions are widely based on the patient's age, general health, the disease features as well as the patient's personal wishes and clinical judgement. However, even amongst older patients with a good performance status, geriatric impairments are reported (Scheepers et al. 2020; Extermann et al. 2005). In order to help healthcare professionals (HCP) who have not been trained in geriatrics work with older patients and caregivers to decide on the best treatment option, GA can be used to objectively evaluate patients, identifying medical, functional, cognitive and social issues, making it possible to uncover potential problem areas and plan early interventions. Although GA still requires prospective validation in larger cohorts and in the transplant setting (Elsawy and Sorror 2016), this assessment is able to predict survival and toxicities (Artz et al. 2006; Palumbo et al. 2015) and to detect unknown geriatric problems, making it possible to plan early interventions and to influence treatment decisions (Kenis et al. 2013). However, performing a GA is relevant, and recent studies in oncological populations show that treatment plans have been altered in 28% on the basis of the CGA, often resulting in less intensive treatment options (Hamaker et al. 2018). Amongst older haematological patients (even with good performance status), geriatric impairments are common (between 17% and 68%), and polypharmacy, nutritional status and IADL were the most impaired (Scheepers et al. 2020).

9.3.2 Geriatric Assessment

GA strategies need to be implemented early on in the patient pathway in order to facilitate decision-making in relation to the optimal approach to treatment. It can assist in identifying patients most likely to benefit from standard induction and post-remission therapies, as well as in the consideration of performing HCT. To determine the best treatment for the patient, GA is needed to systematically uncover medical, functional, cognitive and social issues, which may compromise the treatment. Table 9.1 provides an overview of domains and tools commonly used. Domains are assessed by means of commonly used tools to measure functional status, cognitive function, nutritional status, comorbidities, polypharmacy and socio-economic status. Some use this in combination with a short screening tool to detect vulnerability. An appropriately trained healthcare professional can perform the assessment, and in some cases, this may be a nurse. GA instruments aid in identifying potential problems; however, when the problem is identified as being severe, a thorough assessment is needed to understand the cause. In order to optimise the outcomes of the older patient, a geriatric intervention or referral may be necessary, for example, to the geriatrician, dietician, physiotherapist, social worker or psychologist. There are several studies that report that impairment of physical function, cognition and mental health, malnutrition and polypharmacy are associated with decreased overall survival (Kennedy and Olin 2021), but for healthcare professionals not trained in geriatrics, it would be most interesting to know whether improving impairments or deficits would improve quality of life and treatment completion. However, it is too early to draw conclusions, and above all, quality of life is hardly addressed in most of the studies.

A full GA can be time-consuming and burdensome for HCP who are not trained in the evaluation of older adults. The use of more simplified screening tools like the Vulnerable Elders Survey (VES) (Saliba et al. 2001) and G8 screening tool (Soubeyran et al. 2011) can be employed in an initial appraisal, identifying those who would benefit most from a more detailed and complete GA. One of the latest recommendations of the International Society of Geriatric Oncology (SIOG) reported that of 68–82% of cancer patients >70 years scored abnormal on the G8 (≤14). In addition, 74–94% of these patients were frail according to a GA (Decoster et al. 2015).

Table 9.1 Comprehensive geriatric assessment domains and commonly used tools and screening tools

Domain	Tools	Reference
Functional status	Performance status (PS)	Karnofsky and Burchenal (1949), Mor et al. (1984)
	Activities of daily living (ADL)	Mahoney and Barthel (1965)
	Instrumental activities of daily living (IADL)	Graf (2008)
	Self-reported number of falls	Peeters et al. (2010)
Comorbidities	Hematopoietic cell transplantation comorbidity index (HCT-CI)	Sorror et al. (2005)
Polypharmacy	Comprehensive drug review	
Geriatric syndromes	Mini-mental state examination (MMSE)	Folstein et al. (1975)
	Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS-15)	Almeida and Almeida (1999)
Nutritional status	Malnutrition Universal Screening Tool (MUST)	Stratton et al. (2004)
	Simplified Nutritional Assessment Questionnaire (SNAQ)	Kruizenga et al. (2005)
	Mini Nutritional Assessment Short Form (MNA)	Guigoz (2006)
Screening tool		
Vulnerable elders survey	Age	Saliba et al. (2001)
	Self-rated health	
	Six physical function limitations	
	Five IADL/ADL items	
G8 screening tool	Appetite, weight loss, BMI	Soubeyran et al. (2011)
	Mobility	
	Mood and cognition	
	Number medications	
	Patient-related health	
	Age categories	

9.3.2.1 Functional Status

An important determinant of frailty is functional status, including Karnofsky's performance status (PS) (Karnofsky and Burchenal 1949; Mor et al. 1984), the activities of daily living (ADL) (Mahoney and Barthel 1965) and the instrumental activities of daily living (IADL) (Graf 2008). The PS is utilised routinely in HCT and is a global estimate of the overall health of patients according to their doctor. The ADL measures the level of independence or dependence of patients and, in terms of limitations to self-care, mobility and being able to walk and continence status.

The IADL describes the more complex ADLs necessary for living in the community and assesses the competence in skills such as shopping, cooking and managing finances, which are required for independent living.

Evaluation of gait difficulty and self-reported number of falls may also be useful when looking at functional status. Problems may be caused by fatigue, muscle weakness, dizziness or neuropathies induced by cancer or its treatment and can cause significant mortality and morbidity.

9.3.2.2 Vision and Hearing Impairments

Many older adults have either a visual impairment, a hearing impairment or both. There is evidence of an association between hearing impairment and cognitive decline amongst older adults (Valentijn et al. 2005). An evaluation of visual and hearing acuity of any patient should be undertaken during the physical assessment. Where possible, hearing and visual impairments should be corrected, so that elders can function better, promoting greater independence.

9.3.2.3 Comorbidity and Polypharmacy

Typical older adults have multiple comorbidities. For HCT, comorbidity can be assessed by using the haematopoietic cell transplantation comorbidity index (HCT-CI) introduced by Sorror et al. in 2005, as an evaluation of organ dysfunction for potential HCT recipients. The HCT-CI was developed from the historical Charlson Comorbidity Index (Charlson et al. 1987).

Due to existing comorbidities, the older patient is often taking multiple medications—each with their own side effects, interactions and contraindications. Polypharmacy (defined as an excessive number of medication (≥5)), is sometimes further increased by medications, which can be bought

over the counter without prescription. Some of these medications may interact with prescribed cancer treatments or even supportive medications such as immunosuppressive agents that are used following HCT. A comprehensive drug review is strongly advised before initiating therapy and then regularly throughout the patients' treatment pathway to maintain accurate records of concomitant drugs and ensure avoidance of potentially inappropriate medications.

9.3.2.4 Cognitive Functioning

Although cognitive decline is acknowledged to increase with age, significant variability is noted amongst the older population (Greene and Adelman 2003). They define mild cognitive impairment as 'deficits in memory that do not impact on daily functioning'.

However, consequences of even mild cognitive impairment are significant because these patients may have more difficulty understanding the risks and benefits of treatment and also adhering to complex cancer treatment regimens. It should be remembered that a diagnosis of cognitive impairment does not necessarily mean that the patient is incapable of making decisions and consenting. Most patients are still able to understand the risks and benefits of treatment and of being involved in research. It is important that researchers do not automatically exclude patients with cognitive impairment from treatment but that every effort is made to ensure that patients are fully informed in order to be able to give their consent.

Assessment of cognitive function is included as a domain in GA. In addition, the Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE) is widely used as a screener for cognitive impairment and for dementia in older persons (Folstein et al. 1975).

9.3.2.5 Geriatric Syndromes

Geriatric syndromes include dementia, depression, delirium, osteoporosis, falls and fatigue. Specific geriatric syndromes can be assessed with instruments such as the MMSE and the geriatric depression scale (GDS-15) (Almeida and Almeida 1999). The MMSE assesses to which degree the person is alert, oriented and able to concentrate and perform complex mental tasks and affective functions and detects signs of dementia (Folstein et al. 1975; Sattar et al. 2014). The geriatric depression scale (GDS-15) searches for signs of depression (Sheikh and Yesavage 1986; Almeida and Almeida 1999). The presence of dementia and/or depression is associated with a negative impact on survival (Pallis et al. 2010).

9.3.2.6 Medication Adherence

During HCT, it is imperative that patients adhere to the prescribed treatment. Non-adherence leads to poorer health outcomes, such as increased incidence of transplant-related morbidity and mortality, higher cancer recurrence rates and shorter survival (Puts et al. 2014).

Older age has not been identified as a risk factor for non-adherence, unless the older adult himself perceives insufficient social support. For older adults, certain factors are known to impact upon medication non-adherence. These include factors relating to the healthcare system and the treatment team:

- High cost of medication whilst patient income is low
- Incomplete insurance coverage
- Lack of coordinated care
- Individual factors such as misunderstanding of instructions, intentional choice of medication and non-adherence to accommodate the individuals' lifestyle and daily activities (Van Cleave et al. 2016)

Whilst there is no screening tool currently available for non-adherence in gero-oncological patients, there are several existing medication adherence scales available to assess patients' adherence to medication (Lam and Fresco 2015).

9.3.2.7 Nutritional Status

Nutritional deficiency and malnutrition are common in older adults. The presence of weight loss and/or anorexia points towards malnutrition, which increases vulnerability to illness. In order to determine nutritional status, screening instruments like the Malnutrition Universal Screening Tool (MUST) (Stratton et al. 2004) or Simplified Nutritional Assessment Questionnaire (SNAQ) (Kruizenga et al. 2005) are available. In all these screening instruments, unintentional weight loss

in a short time is a fixed-item parameter to evaluate malnutrition. In order to diagnose malnutrition, the Mini Nutritional Assessment (MNA) (Guigoz 2006) can be used. The MNA assesses:

- Decline in food intake
- Weight loss and mobility
- Neuropsychological problems
- Body mass index
- Number of medications taken per day
- Patients' assessment of their health status compared with others their own age

A multidisciplinary approach to nutrition assessment, care planning, intervention and evaluation in HCT patients should be advocated where possible, with the involvement of healthcare professionals such as dieticians and nutrition specialist teams in collaboration with the medical and nursing team.

9.3.2.8 Socio-economic

Social support, persons' general living conditions as well as availability and adequacy of caregivers should be an integral part of GA. There are different types of support, such as:

- Everyday emotional support
- Emotional support with problems
- Appreciation support
- Practical support
- Social companionship
- Informative support

Everyone needs everyday support in a certain way. The type and amount of support needed will depend on the individual and also the phase of the illness and treatment. Consideration should also be given to the well-being of the caregiver as the quality of life and quality of care of the patient also depend upon this factor.

9.3.2.9 Decision-Making

Older persons may have grown up in a healthcare culture where decision-making was more paternalistic. As a result, this may either lead to lower requests for information by the patient or to a risk of poor overall communication. For most young patients, the decision and desire to be transplanted are often clear. For older patients however, the decision is often far less obvious, and the choice to proceed to HCT is a complex one (Randall et al. 2016). Patients might think they are 'too old' for HCT or be concerned whether they can find an available caregiver and whether they have enough money for extra costs incurred or that it will impair their quality of life (Randall et al. 2016). Medical information about the general process and outcomes of the transplant, donor sources, medications, timelines and risks and benefits of the procedure are usually provided after induction therapy has been successful. However, older people have more difficulties processing and remembering information than younger ones (Posma et al. 2009), and cognition may have been affected further by the chemotherapy that has been given (Williams et al. 2016). It is important, therefore, to provide education about HCT, which is gradual and repeated during induction and, afterwards, presented using plain language, empowering the older patient to make the decision about transplant (Randall et al. 2016). In order to improve the patients' ability to actively participate in the decision-making process and increase treatment adherence, a step-by-step approach should be considered (Posma et al. 2009) and narrowed down to what is meaningful to make a decision (D'Souza et al. 2015; Posma et al. 2009). Regarding risks and general knowledge of medical procedures, written information, multimedia interventions, extended discussions and test/feedback techniques can improve the patients' understanding (Schenker et al. 2011). Particular attention should be paid to implementing interventions that are accessible to patients with limited literacy and/or limited vision. These groups are at increased risk for poor comprehension.

References

Transplanting the Child

Aguilera V, Schaefer MR, Parris K, Long A, Triplett B, Phipps S. Psychosocial outcomes of parents in pediatric haploidentical transplant: parental hematopoietic cell donation as a double-edged sword. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2022;57(3):377–83.

Asadi M, Manookian A, Nasrabadi AN. Parent' experiences of their children bone marrow transplantation:

a qualitative study. Int J Hema Oncol Stem Cell Res. 2011;5:264.

Bakshi N, Sinha CB, Ross D, Khemani K, Loewenstein G, Krishnamurti L. Proponent or collaborative: physician perspectives and approaches to disease modifying therapies in sickle cell disease. PLoS One. 2017;12(7):e0178413.

Badon P, Cesaro S. Assistenza infermieristica in pediatria. 2nd ed. New Delhi: CEA; 2015.

Barrera M, Andrews GS, Burners D, Atenafu E. Age differences in perceived social support by paediatric haematopoietic progenitor cell transplant patients: a longitudinal study. Child Care Health Dev. 2007;34(1):19–24.

Bauk K, Andrews A. The pediatric sibling donor experience in hematopoietic stem cell transplant: an integrative review of the literature. J Pediatr Nurs. 2013;28:235–42.

Bingen K, Kent MW, Rodday AM, Ratichek SJ, Kupst MJ, Parsons SK. Children's coping with hematopoietic stem cell transplant stressors: results from the journeys to recovery study. J Child Health Care. 2012;41(2):145–61.

Chang G, Recklitis SJ, Recklitis C, Syrjala K, Patel SK, Harris L, Rodday AM, Tighiouart H, Parsons SK. Children's psychological distress during pediatric HSCT: parent and child perspectives. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2012;58:289–96.

Committee on Bioethics. Children as hematopoietic stem cell donors. Pediatrics. 2010;125:392.

Di Giuseppe G, Thacker N, Schechter T, Pole JD. Anxiety, depression, and mental health-related quality of life in survivors of pediatric allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a systematic review. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2020;55(7):1240–54.

Gatta G, Botta L, Rossi S, Aareleid T, Bielska-Lasota M, Clavel J, Peris-Bonet R. Childhood cancer survival in Europe 1999-2007: results of EUROCARE—a population-based study. Lancet Oncol. 2014;15(1):35–47. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1470-2045(13)70548-5.

Hutt D, Nehari M, Munitz-Shenkar D, Alkalay Y, Toren A, Bielorai B. Hematopoietic stem cell donation: psychological perspectives of pediatric sibling donors and their parents. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50(10):1337–42.

Khemani K, Ross D, Sinha C, Haight A, Bakshi N, Krishnamurti L. Experiences and decision making in hematopoietic stem cell transplant in sickle cell disease: 'patient and caregiver' perspectives. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2018;24(5):1041–8.

Manookian A, Nikbakht Nasrabadi A, Asadi M. Children's lived experiences of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Nurs Health Sci. 2014;16:314–20.

Mekelenkamp H, Lankester AC, Bierings MB, Smiers FJW, de Vries MC, Kars MC. Parental experiences in end-of-life decision-making in allogeneic pediatric stem cell transplantation: "Have I been a good parent". Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2020;67:e28229.

Mekelenkamp H, van Zanten H, de Vries M, Lankester A, Smiers F. How to facilitate decision-making for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with hemoglobinopathies. The perspectives of healthcare professionals. Front Pediatr. 2021;9:690309.

Munzenberger N, Fortanier C, Macquart-Moulin G, Faucher C, Novakovitch G, Maraninchi D, et al. Psychosocial aspects of haematopoietic stem cell donation for allogeneic transplantation: how family donors cope with this experience. Psychooncology. 1999;8(1):55–63.

Mona M. 2015. http://nursingexercise.com/child-growth-development-overview.

Neumann ML, Weaver MS, Lord B, Wiener L, Hinds PS. Care provider behaviors that shape parent identity as a "Good Paren" to their seriously ill child. Palliat Med Rep. 2021;2(1):113–21.

Norberg L, Mellgren K, Winiarksi J, Forinder U. Relationship between problems related to child late effects and parent burnout after pediatric hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Pediatr Transplant. 2014;18:302–9.

Packman W, Weber S, Wallace J, Bugescu N. Psychological effects of hematopoietic SCT on pediatric patients, siblings and parents: a review. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2010;45:1134–46.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Bader P, Basak GW, Bonini C, Duarte R, Mohty M. Is the use of unrelated donor transplantation European off in Europe? The 2016 European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplant activity survey report. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2018;53(9):1139–48. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-018-0153-1.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Basak GW, Chabannon C, Corbacioglu S, Duarte R, Kuball J, Lankester A, Montoto S, de Latour RP, Snowden JA, Styczynski J, Yakoub-Agha I, Arat M, Mohty M, Kroger N. The EBMT activity survey report 2017: a focus on allogeneic HCT for nonmalignant indications and on the use of non-HCT cell therapies. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2019;54(10):1575–85.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Chabannon C, Basak GW, Corbacioglu S, Duarte R, Dolstra H, Lankester AC, Mohty M, Montoto S, Peffault de Latour R, Snowden JA, Styczynski J, Yakoub-Agha I, Kröger N. The EBMT activity survey on hematopoietic-cell transplantation and cellular therapy 2018: CAR-'s come into focus. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2020;55(8):1604–13.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Chabannon C, Basak GW, de la Cámara R, Corbacioglu S, Dolstra H, Duarte R, Glass B, Greco R, Lankester AC, Mohty M, Peffault de Latour R, Snowden JA, Yakoub-Agha I, Kröger N. Hematopoietic cell transplantation and cellular therapy survey of the EBMT: monitoring of activities and trends over 30 years. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56(7):1651–64.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Chabannon C, Corbacioglu S, de la Cámara R, Dolstra H, Glass B, Greco R, Mohty M, Neven B, Peffault de Latour R, Perić Z, Snowden JA, Yakoub-Agha I, Sureda A, Kröger N. Impact of the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic on hematopoietic cell transplantation and cellular therapies in Europe 2020: a report from the EBMT activity survey. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2022;57(5):742–52.

Peeters G, Pluijm SMF, van Schoor NM, Elders PJM, Bouter LM, Lips P. Validation of the LASA fall risk profile for recurrent falling in older recent fallers. J Clin Epidem. 2010;63(11):1242–8.

Pentz RD, Pelletier W, Alderfer MA, Stegenga K, Fairclough DL, Hinds PS. Shared decision-making in pediatric allogeneic blood and marrow transplantation: what if there is no decision to make. Oncologist. 2012;17(6):881–5.

Pentz RD, Alderfer MA, Pelletier W, Stegenga K, Haight AE, Hendershot KA, et al. Unmet needs of siblings of pediatric stem cell transplant recipients. Pediatrics. 2014;133(5):e1156–62.

Phipps S, Dunavant M, Lensing S, Rai SN. Acute health related quality of life in children undergoing stem cell transplant: II. Medical and demographic determinants. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2002;29:435–42.

Pulsipher MA, Levine JE, Hayashi RJ, Chan KW, Anderson P, Duerst R, et al. Safety and efficacy of allogeneic PBSC collection in normal pediatric donors: the pediatric blood and marrow transplant consortium experience (PBMTC) 1996–2003. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;35(4):361–7.

Schaefer MR, Aguilera V, Parris K, Long A, Triplett B, Phipps S. "Giving the gift of life twice": understanding the lived experiences of parent donors and nondonors in pediatric haploidentical hematopoietic cell transplantation. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2022;69(2):e29480.

Styczynski J, Balduzzi A, Gil L, Labopin M, Hamladji RM, Marktel S, et al. Risk of complications during hematopoietic stem cell collection in pediatric sibling donors: a prospective European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation Pediatric Diseases Working Party study. Blood. 2012;119(12):2935–42.

Tremolada M, Bonichini S, Pillon M, Messina C, Carli M. Quality of life and psychosocial sequelae in children undergoing hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation: a review. Pediatr Transplant. 2009;12:955–70.

Uggla L, Bonde LO, Hammar U, Wrangsjo B, Gustafsson B. Music therapy supported the health-related quality of life for children undergoing haematopoietic stem cell transplants. Acta Paediatr. 2018;107(11):1986–94.

Uggla L, Mårtenson Blom K, Bonde LO, Gustafsson B, Wrangsjö B. An explorative study of qualities in interactive processes with children and their parents in music therapy during and after pediatric hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Medicine. 2019;6(1):28.

van Walraven SM, Ball LM, Koopman HM, Switzer GE, Ropes-de Jong CM, de Jong A, Bredius RG, Egeler RM. Managing a dual rol—experiences and coping strategies of parents donating haploidentical G-CSF mobilized peripheral blood stem cells to their children. Psychooncology. 2012;21(2):168–75.

Vogel R. The management of the sibling hematopoietic stem cell transplant donor. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs. 2011;28(6):336–43.

Wiener LS, Steffen-Smith E, Fry T, Wayne A. Hematopoeitic stem cell donation in children: a review of the sibling donor experience. J Psychosoc Oncol. 2007;25(1):45–66.

Williams S, Green R, Morrison A, Watson D, Buchanan S. The psychosocial aspects of donating blood stem cells: the sibling donor perspective. J Clin Apher. 2003;18(1):1–9.

Yates GJ, Beckmann NB, Voss ME, Anderson MR, Silverman MJ. Caregiver perceptions of music therapy for children hospitalized for a blood and marrow transplant: an interpretivist investigation. Glob Adv Health Med. 2018;7:2164956118788853.

Transplantation Through the Ages: Teenage and Young Adults (TYA)

Barfield R, Kodish E. Ethical considerations in pediatric hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation. Pediatr Hematopoiet Stem Cell Transpl. 2006;2006:251–70.

Bayer SR, Alper MM, Penzias AS. The Boston Ivf handbook of infertility: a practical guide for practitioners who care for infertile couples. Boca Raton: CRC Press; 2011.

Department of Health. Reference guide to consent for examination or treatment. London: Department of Health; 2009.

Desandes E, Bonnay S, Berger C, Brugieres L, Demeocq F, Laurence V, Sommelet D, Tron I, Clavel J, Lacour B. Pathways of care for adolescent patients with cancer in Europe from 2006 to 2007. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2012;58:924–9.

Fan S-Y, Eiser C. Body image of children and adolescents with cancer: a systematic review. Body Image. 2009;6:247–56.

Forinder U, Posse E. A life on hold': adolescents' experiences of stem cell transplantation in a long-term perspective. J Child Health Care. 2008;12:301–13.

Gatta G, Zigon G, Capocaccia R, Coebergh JW, Desandes E, Kaatsch P, Pastore G, Peris-Bonet R, Stiller CA. Survival of European children and young adults with cancer diagnosed 1995–2002. Eur J Cancer. 2009;45:992–1005.

GMC. 0-18 years: guidance for all doctors. London: GMC; 2007.

Gratwohl A, Baldomero H, Demirer T, Rosti G, Dini G, Ladenstein R, Urbano-Ispizua A. Hematopoetic stem cell transplantation for solid tumors in Europe. Ann Oncol. 2004;15:653–60.

Grinyer A. Contrasting parental perspectives with those of teenagers and young adults with cancer: comparing the findings from two qualitative studies. Eur J Oncol Nurs. 2009;13:200–6.

Human Tissue Authority. Guidance to bone marrow and peripheral blood stem cell transplant teams and accredited assessors. London: HTA; 2015.

Kaufman M. Role of adolescent development in the transition process. Prog Transplant. 2006;16:286–90.

Kondryn HJ, Edmondson CL, Hill J, Eden TOB. Treatment non-adherence in teenage and young adult patients with cancer. Lancet Oncol. 2011;12:100–8.

Lassaletta A, Andión M, Garrido-Colino C, Gutierrez-Carrasco I, Echebarria-Barona A, Almazán F, López-

Ibor B, Ortega-Acosta MJ. The current situation of adolescents with cancer in pediatric hematology-oncology units in Spain. Results of a national survey. Anales Pediat. 2013;78:268.
Levine J, Stern CJ. Fertility preservation in adolescents and young adults with cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28:4831–41.
Long KA, Marsland AL. Family adjustment to childhood cancer: a systematic review. Clin Child Fam Psychol Rev. 2011;14:57–88.
Macleod KD, Whitsett SF, Mash EJ, Pelletier W. Pediatric sibling donors of successful and unsuccessful hematopoietic stem cell transplants (HSCT): a qualitative study of their psychosocial experience. J Pediatr Psychol. 2003;28:223–30.
Ministry of Health. The welfare of children in hospital, Platt report. London: Ministry of Health; 1959.
Moore C, Rauch P. Addressing parenting concerns of bone marrow transplant patients: opening (and closing) pandora's box. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2006;38:775–82.
National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Children and young people with cancer. London: Nice; 2014.
Nicolussi A. Informed consent and minors. Ital J Pediatr. 2015;41:1.
Quinn GP, Vadaparampil ST, Fertility Preservation Research Group. Fertility preservation and adolescent/young adult cancer patients: physician communication challenges. J Adolesc Health. 2009;44:394–400.
Rodgers C, Young A, Hockenberry M, Binder B, Symes L. The meaning of adolescents' eating experiences during bone marrow transplant recovery. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs. 2010;27:65–72.
Smith S, Vogel CL, Waterhouse K, Pettitt N, Beddard L, Oldham J, Hubber D, Simon S, Siddall J. A blueprint of care for teenagers and young adults with cancer. London: Guidelines for Health Professionals; 2012.
Stark D, Bielack S, Brugieres L, Dirksen U, Duarte X, Dunn S, Erdelyi DJ, Grew T, Hjorth L, Jazbec J, Kabickova E, Konsoulova A, Kowalczyk JR, Lassaletta A, Laurence V, Lewis I, Monrabal A, Morgan S, Mountzios G, Olsen PR, Renard M, Saeter G, Van Der Graaf WT, Ferrari A. Teenagers and young adults with cancer in Europe: from national programmes to a European integrated coordinated project. Eur J Cancer Care. 2016;25:419–27.
Taddeo DM, Egedy MM, Frappier JYM. Adherence to treatment in adolescents. Paediatr Child Health. 2008;13(1):19–24.
Wheeler R. Gillick or fraser? A plea for consistency over competence in children. BMJ. 2006;332:807.

Transplanting the Adult and the Older Adult: Nursing Considerations

Almeida OP, Almeida SA. Short versions of the geriatric depression scale: a study of their validity for the diagnosis of a major depressive episode according to ICD-10 and DSM-IV. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry. 1999;14(10):858–65.
Artz AS, Chow S. Hematopoietic cell transplantation in older adults: deciding or decision-making? Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51(5):643–4.
Artz AS, Pollyea DA, Kocherginsky M, Stock W, Rich E, Odenike O, Zimmerman T, Smith S, Godley L, Thirman M, Daugherty C, Extermann M, Larson R, van Besien K. Performance status and comorbidity predict transplant-related mortality after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2006;12(9):954–64.
Boyd CM, McNabney MK, Brandt N, Correa-de-Araujuo R, Daniel M, Epplin J, Fried TR, Goldstein MK, Holmes HM, Ritchie CS, Shega JW. Guiding principles for the care of older adults with multimorbidity: an approach for clinicians: American Geriatrics Society expert panel on the care of older adults with multimorbidity. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2012;60(10):E1–E25.
Charlson ME, Pompei P, Ales KL, MacKenzie CR. A new method of classifying prognostic comorbidity in longitudinal studies: development and validation. J Chronic Dis. 1987;40:373–83.
Decoster L, Van Puyvelde K, Mohile S, Wedding U, Basso U, Colloca G, Rostoft S, Overcash J, Wildiers H, Steer C, Kimmick G, Kanesvaran R, Luciani A, Terret C, Hurria A, Kenis C, Audisio R, Extermann M. Screening tools for multidimensional health problems warranting a geriatric assessment in older cancer patients: an update on SIOG recommendations. Ann Oncol. 2015;26(2):288–300.
D'Souza A, Pasquini M, Spellecy R. Is 'informed consent' an 'understood consent' in hematopoietic cell transplantation? Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50(1):10–4.
Elsawy M, Sorror ML. Up-to-date tools for risk assessment before allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51(10):1283–300.
Eichhorst B, Dreyling M, Robak T, Montserrat E, Hallek M. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. Ann Oncol. 2011;22(Suppl 6):vi50–4.
Extermann M, Aapro M, Bernabei R, Cohen HJ, Droz JP, Lichtman S, Mor V, Monfardini S, Repetto L, Sørbye L, Topinkova E. Task Force on CGA of the International Society of Geriatric Oncology. Use of comprehensive geriatric assessment in older cancer patients: recommendations from the task force on CGA of the International Society of Geriatric Oncology (SIOG). Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2005;55(3):241–52.
Folstein MF, Folstein SE, McHugh PR. Mini-mental state: a practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. J Psychiatr Res. 1975;12:189–98.
Graf C. The Lawton instrumental activities of daily living scale. AJN. 2008;108(4):52–62.

Greene MG, Adelman RD. Physician-older patient communication about cancer. Patient Educ Couns. 2003;50(1):55–60.

Guigoz Y. The Mini Nutritional Assessment (MNA) review of the literature: what does it tell us? J Nutr Health Aging. 2006;10:466–87.

Hamaker ME, Te Molder M, Thielen N, van Munster BC, Schiphorst AH, van Huis LH. The effect of a geriatric evaluation on treatment decisions and outcome for older cancer patients - a systematic review. J Geriatr Oncol. 2018;9(5):430–40.

Karnofsky DA, Burchenal JH. The clinical evaluation of chemotherapeutic agents in cancer. In: MacLeod CM, editor. Evaluation of chemotherapeutic agents. New York: Columbia Univ Press; 1949. p. 191–205.

Kenis C, Bron D, Libert Y, Decoster L, Van Puyvelde K, Scalliet P, Cornette P, Pepersack T, Luce S, Langenaeken C, Rasschaert M, Allepaerts S, Van Rijswijk R, Milisen K, Flamaing J, Lobelle JP, Wildiers H. Relevance of a systematic geriatric screening and assessment in older patients with cancer: results of a prospective multicentric study. Ann Oncol. 2013;24(5):1306–12.

Kennedy VE, Olin RL. Haematopoietic stem-cell transplantation in older adults: geriatric assessment, donor considerations, and optimisation of care. Lancet Haematol. 2021;8(11):e853–61.

Kruizenga HM, Seidell JC, de Vet HC, Wierdsma NJ, van Bokhorst-Schueren MA. Development and validation of a hospital screening tool for malnutrition: the Short Nutritional Assessment Questionnaire (SNAQ). Clin Nutr. 2005;24:75–82.

Lam WY, Fresco P. Medication adherence measures: an overview. Biomed Res Int. 2015;2015:217047. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/217047.

Mamdani H, Santos CD, Konig H. Treatment of acute myeloid leukemia in elderly patients-a therapeutic dilemma. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2016;17(7):581–7.

Mahoney FI, Barthel DW. Functional evaluation: the Barthel Index. Md State Med J. 1965;1461–5

Mor V, Laliberte L, Morris JN, Wiemann M. The Karnofsky performance status scale. Cancer. 1984:2002–7.

National Cancer Institute. MDS, median age 71 years, Sekeres MA. The epidemiology of myelodysplastic syndromes. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am. 2003;24(2):287–94.

Pallis AG, Wedding U, Lacombe D, Soubeyran P, Wildiers H. Questionnaires and instruments for a multidimensional assessment of the older cancer patient: what clinicians need to know? Eur J Cancer. 2010;46:1019–25.

Palumbo A, Anderson K. Multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:1046–60. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1011442.

Palumbo A, Bringhen S, Mateos MV, Larocca A, Facon T, Kumar SK, Offidani M, McCarthy P, Evangelista A, Lonial S, Zweegman S, Musto P, Terpos E, Belch A, Hajek R, Ludwig H, Stewart AK, Moreau P, Anderson K, Einsele H, Durie BG, Dimopoulos MA, Landgren O, San Miguel JF, Richardson P, Sonneveld P, Rajkumar SV. Geriatric assessment predicts survival and toxicities in elderly myeloma patients: an International Myeloma Working Group report. Blood. 2015;125(13):2068–74.

Posma ER, van Weert JC, Jansen J, Bensing JM. Older cancer patients' information and support needs surrounding treatment: an evaluation through the eyes of patients, relatives and professionals. BMC Nurs. 2009;8:1.

Puts MT, Tu HA, Tourangeau A, Howell D, Fitch M, Springall E, Alibhai SM. Factors influencing adherence to cancer treatment in older adults with cancer: a systematic review. Ann Oncol. 2014;25(3):564–77.

Randall J, Keven K, Atli T, Ustun C. Process of allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation decision making for older adults. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51(5):623–8.

Saliba D, Elliott M, Rubenstein LZ, Solomon DH, Young RT, Kamberg CJ, Roth C, MacLean CH, Shekelle PG, Sloss EM, Wenger NS. The vulnerable elders survey: a tool for identifying vulnerable older people in the community. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2001;49:1691–9.

Sattar S, Alibhai SM, Wildiers H, Puts MT. How to implement a geriatric assessment in your clinical practice. Oncologist. 2014;19(10):1056–68.

Scheepers ERM, Vondeling AM, Thielen N, van der Griend R, Stauder R, Hamaker ME. Geriatric assessment in older patients with a hematologic malignancy: a systematic review. Haematologica. 2020;105(6):1484–93.

Schenker Y, Fernandez A, Sudore R, Schillinger D. Interventions to improve patient comprehension in informed consent for medical and surgical procedures: a systematic review. Med Decis Mak. 2011;31(1):151–73.

Sekeres MA. The epidemiology of myelodysplastic syndromes. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am. 2010;24(2):287–94.

Sheikh JA, Yesavage JA. Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS): recent findings and development of a shorter version. In: Brink TL, editor. Clinical gerontology: a guide to assessment and intervention. New York: Howarth Press; 1986.

Siegel RL, Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2015. CA Cancer J Clin. 2015;65:5–29.

Smith A, Howell D, Patmore R, Jack A, Roman E. Br J Cancer. 2011;105(11):1684–92.

Sorror ML, Maris MB, Storb R, Baron F, Sandmaier BM, Maloney DG, Storer B. Hematopoietic cell transplantation (HCT)-specific comorbidity index: a new tool for risk assessment before allogeneic HCT. Blood. 2005;106(8):2912–9.

Soubeyran P, Bellera C, Goyard J, et al. Validation of the G8 screening tool in geriatric oncology: the ONCODAGE project. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(Suppl):9001.

Stratton RJ, Hackston A, Longmore D, Dixon R, Price S, Stroud M, et al. Malnutrition in hospital outpatients and inpatients: prevalence, concurrent validity and ease of use of the "malnutrition universal screening tool" ("MUST") for adults. Br J Nutr. 2004;92(5):799–808.

Valentijn SA, van Boxtel MP, van Hooren SA, Bosma H, Beckers HJ, Ponds RW, Jolles J. Change in sensory functioning predicts change in cognitive functioning: results from a 6-year follow-up in the maastricht aging study. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2005;53(3):374–80.

Van Cleave JH, Kenis C, Sattar S, Jabloo VG, Ayala AP, Puts M. A research agenda for gero-oncology nursing. Semin Oncol Nurs. 2016;32(1):55–64.

Williams AM, Zent CS, Janelsins MC. What is known and unknown about chemotherapy-related cognitive impairment in patients with haematological malignancies and areas of needed research. Br J Haematol. 2016;174(6):835–46.

WHO. Definition of an older or elderly person. Geneva: World Health Organisation; 2010. http://www.who.int/healthinfo/survey/ageingdefnolder/en/index.html. Accessed 14 April 2017.

10 Early and Acute Complications and the Principles of HSCT Nursing Care

Elisabeth Wallhult, Michelle Kenyon, and Barry Quinn

Abstract

Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) generally includes preparative or conditioning regimens containing combinations of chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy and sometimes immunotherapy. These regimens, as well as other treatments before and after HSCT such as immunosuppressive drugs to prevent graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) (see Chap. 11), may affect the patient's organs and tissues and cause both early and long-term complications. In the evolving field of stem cell therapies, some complications that traditionally have been regarded as early complications are now, due to changes in preparative regimens and choice of stem cell source, sometimes seen later in the post-transplant outpatient setting. The complications covered in this chapter generally occur within 100 days post-HSCT and are thus classified as early complications. Two of the most common early complications are oral complications/mucositis and sepsis. Some other relatively rare complications are also covered here: haemorrhagic cystitis (HC), endothelial damage syndromes including engraftment syndrome (ES), idiopathic pneumonia syndrome (IPS), diffuse alveolar haemorrhage (DAH), thrombotic microangiopathy (TMA) and sinusoidal obstruction syndrome/veno-occlusive disease (SOS/VOD). For all complications, recommendations for prevention and principles for nursing care are presented since careful nursing monitoring and prompt intervention and care may have an impact on patients' morbidity and mortality.

Keywords

Oral complications · Mucositis · Sepsis · Haemorrhagic cystitis · SOS/VOD · Endothelial damage syndromes

E. Wallhult
Section of Hematology and Coagulation, Department of Medicine, Sahlgrenska University Hospital, Gothenburg, Sweden
e-mail: elisabeth.wallhult@vgregion.se

M. Kenyon (✉)
Department of Haematological Medicine, King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK
e-mail: michelle.kenyon@nhs.net

B. Quinn
Woking and Sam Beare Hospices, Surrey, UK
e-mail: Barry.Quinn@qub.ac.uk

10.1 Oral Care in Transplantation

10.1.1 Introduction

Mindful of the progressive developments within the field of stem cell transplantation, aimed at improving survival and quality of life for indi-

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_10

viduals, the correct and consistent approach to managing oral care problems still remains a challenge in many transplant settings (Quinn et al. 2021). There is much evidence to show that rather than taking a proactive approach to this aspect of care, many transplant teams simply react to oral complications once they occur with a sometimes inconsistent and anecdotal approach (Quinn et al. 2019). Oral problems and damage may be temporary or permanent resulting in a significant health burden for the individual while making substantial demands on limited healthcare resources. However, oral complications are not always inevitable, and much can be done to reduce or minimise the severity of symptoms by taking a more proactive approach to this aspect of care (Hannen et al. 2017). Working as a multidisciplinary team with the patient at the centre of care and treatment plan and early detection of potential and actual problems and treatment can help reduce oral problems and prevent interruptions to treatment while maximising patient safety and comfort (National Cancer Institute 2013).

10.1.2 Oral Mucositis (OM)

Oral mucositis (OM) has been defined by Al-Dasoogi et al. (2013) and others as the inflammation of the mucosal membrane, characterised by ulceration, which may result in pain, swallowing difficulties and impairment of the ability to talk. The mucosal injury caused by OM provides an opportunity for infection to flourish, in particular putting the severely immunocompromised patient in the HSCT setting at risk of sepsis and septicaemia (Quinn et al. 2020). However, OM is not the only oral complication seen within the transplant setting (Table 10.1), and most patients undergoing autologous and allogeneic HSCT will experience changes within their oral cavity (Quinn et al. 2016, 2021). With the increasing use of targeted drug therapies and approaches in the cancer and haematology setting, problems in the oral cavity will increase and become even more of a challenge (Quinn et al. 2020; ESMO 2017).

Table 10.1 Oral complications of HSCT

Oral mucositis	Halitosis
Xerostomia	Bleeding
Oral infections	Dry lips
Oral graft-versus-host disease	Pain
Ulceration	Dental decay
Trismus	Osteonecrosis
Taste changes	Fibrosis

Quinn et al. (2019, 2021)

Oral complications of HSCT (Table 10.1) lead to difficulties in eating, sleeping and talking and a reduction in quality of life.

10.1.3 Key Principles of Treatment

All treatment strategies aimed at improving oral care continue to be dependent on four key principles: accurate assessment of the oral cavity, individualised plan of care, initiating timely preventative measures and correct treatment (Quinn et al. 2020). The assessment process should begin prior to commencing treatment by identifying all the patient risks most likely to increase oral damage (Table 10.2). Each patient needs to be assessed in relation to the risk factors that may put them at higher risk of oral complications during treatment.

Patients about to commence any haematology treatment should undergo dental assessment by a specialist (Elad et al. 2015). This is to establish general oral health status and identify and manage existing and/or potential source of infection, trauma or injury. Where possible, any identified dental problems should be corrected before starting treatment regimen. A further baseline assessment of the oral mucosa should be taken as close to the administration of the first treatment dose as possible (Table 10.3). The oral cavity should be assessed by trained healthcare professionals using a recognised grading system to ensure accurate monitoring and record keeping. The tool chosen should contain both objective and subjective elements. The assessment should include changes to the oral mucosa, the presence or absence of pain and the patient's nutritional status (Quinn et al. 2019). Assessments should be

Table 10.2 Risk factors for oral damage

Pre-existing oral/dental problems	History of alcohol and/or tobacco use
Prior treatments	Poor nutrition and hydration
Comorbidities	Supportive feeding (nasogastric, PEG, RIG)
Older patients and females (at higher risk of oral damage)	Supportive therapies (opiates diuretics, sedatives, oxygen therapy) that may cause dryness of the mucosa

Table 10.3 Baseline oral assessment criteria

Inspecting the oral cavity
Clinical tools: good light source, gloves, tongue depressor and dry gauze
Ensure patient is in a comfortable position
Use valid and reliable assessment instrument which is easy to interpret
Oral sites to be evaluated (cheeks, lips, soft palate, floor of mouth, tongue)

completed daily during the HSCT process and at regular intervals post-treatment to monitor for complications. Some patients will need regular dental follow-up following treatment. Patients can be encouraged to assess their own mouth using a patient-reported tool and to report any changes they notice or experience to the transplant team (Gussgard et al. 2014).

10.1.4 Care of the Oral Cavity

Care of the oral cavity is central to helping to prevent and/or reduce oral complications during and after treatment (British Dental Health Foundation 2021). The oral care team in the HSCT setting includes dental professionals, dietician, nurse, doctor and pharmacist. The support provided by the team along with good communication and the patient at the centre of all care plans is central to maintaining patient's oral health. All patients should be provided with clear instructions and encouraged to maintain good oral hygiene. Education should also include potential oral complications to enable patients to identify and report these early (British Dental Health Foundation 2021; Quinn et al. 2019). All patients should receive written information, as well as verbal instruction, about oral care as part of the prevention and treatment of oral changes.

Good nutrition is vital in helping fight infection, maintain mucosal integrity, enhance mucosal tissue repair and reduce exacerbation of existing mucositis. Issues that may affect nutrition such as loss of appetite, taste changes and dysphagia should be addressed. There are certain foods that can damage the oral mucosa; this may include rough, sharp and hard foods and should be avoided. Spicy, very salty and acidic foods may cause mucosal irritation but may be preferred or tolerated by some patients.

Brushing of teeth, gums and tongue should be performed two to four times a day preferably after meals and before going to bed (British Dental Health Foundation 2021; Peterson et al. 2015). A soft-bristled toothbrush (manual or electric) is recommended to prevent injury to the oral mucosa and must be rinsed thoroughly with water after each use. If the mouth is painful or patients cannot open their mouths fully, soft oral sponges may be used but with caution. To prevent infections, the toothbrush should be stored with the brush head upwards and not soaked in disinfectant solution. These should also be monitored for evidence of fungal/bacterial colonisation. In order to protect the enamel, nonabrasive toothpaste containing high-dose fluoride should be used (Quinn et al. 2021).

Daily interdental cleaning with brushes may reduce plaque formation between the teeth (Sambunjak et al. 2011). However, the use of interdental cleaners should be used with caution for patients with thrombocytopenia or clotting disorders. After each meal, dentures must be rinsed. Thorough cleaning by brushing with soap and water should be performed at least twice a day. Dentures should be cleaned, dried and stored in a closed container overnight (Duyck et al. 2013).

The goal of using mouthwashes may include oral hygiene, preventing/treating infection, moistening the oral cavity or providing pain relief. As a minimum to keep the mouth clean, bland gargles and rinses with water normal saline (0.9% NaCl) or saltwater are recommended at least four times a day (Lalla et al. 2014; Quinn

et al. 2019). Some patients will require assistance; it may be necessary for healthcare professionals to perform/support oral care through rinsing with normal saline (0.9% NaCl) (Elad et al. 2015), with or without suction.

Lubricants, lip balm or lip cream may be used to moisten the lips. Patients should maintain adequate hydration and drink water frequently to keep the mouth moist. Several factors could contribute to dryness such as oxygen therapy and supportive care medications (e.g. antidepressants, antihistamines, sedatives and opioids). To keep the oral mucosa moist, regular sipping or spraying water may help. Use of saline sprays and mouthwashes as well as use of saliva substitutes may be used. There is anecdotal evidence that fresh pineapple chunks may also help stimulate saliva but should be used with caution as their acidity could irritate the oral mucosa and affect the teeth (Lalla et al. 2014).

10.1.5 Prevention of Oral Damage

The choice of prevention regimens should follow evidence-based interventions and expert opinion, working with the individual patient and the potential risk of oral damage, which may include the following (adapted Quinn et al. 2020):

- Educate patient, and encourage self-reporting of any oral changes.
- At least twice-daily oral hygiene including gargling to remove any unwanted debris.
- Interdental cleaning.
- High-dose fluoride toothpaste/foam/gel/tray.
- 0.9% sodium chloride/saltwater rinse.
- Early nutritional support.
- Cryotherapy/sucking ice chips during melphalan infusion.
- Consider oral rinses (Caphosol®, Benzydamine®).
- Consider mucosal protectants/barrier rinses licenced to use as a preventative measure/pain reliever (Mugard®, Episil®).
- Anti-infective prophylaxis.
- Palifermin.
- Low-level laser therapy.

10.1.6 Anti-infective Prophylaxis

While good oral hygiene is fundamental, antifungal and antiviral treatments will be prescribed to reduce infections in patients in the haematology and transplant setting. Patients should receive an antifungal agent given orally or intravenously. Antiviral prophylaxis should also be given. The choice of drug will be dependent on local policies/guidance.

10.1.7 Treatment of Oral Complications

All treatment plans should be based upon the grading of oral damage and patient reports; these may include the following.

10.1.7.1 Mild/Moderate Mucositis

Once oral damage develops, patients should be supported to continue oral care, and the frequency of oral rinsing may be increased. The aim is to keep the oral surfaces clean and moist (Elad et al. 2014). The team should consider mucosal protectants to prevent further damage and to provide comfort to the oral cavity (Quinn et al. 2019).

The team should check for oral infections, swab the suspected area and treat appropriately. A review of antifungal treatment, local or systemic, may be required (ESMO 2017; Watson et al. 2011).

Dietary requirements should be assessed and foods causing discomfort avoided. Swallowing problems, malnutrition and weight loss should be monitored and patients given support/advice. Adjustments to food consistency, methods of intake, food fortification and methods of intake should be assessed and support and education offered to patients. The use of supplement drinks, PEG, RIG or nasogastric feeding should be considered (Quinn et al. 2019). The patient's fluid intake should be assessed and the route of administration of pain relief continually monitored.

Each patient will need adequate pain medication including topical and systemic analgesia such as paracetamol, codeine, morphine rinses,

benzydamine mouthwash, trimecaine and lidocaine. Patients should be offered education on use and possible side effects including numbness of the oral mucosa.

10.1.7.2 Severe Mucositis

An increase in pain medication and nutritional support should be considered. The team working with the patient may wish to consider an increase in oral rinses and oral care. When oral damage appears and progresses, closer monitoring and support for patient is required.

An important aspect of care is to provide oral comfort, thereby helping the patient continue food and fluid intake, and enable sleep and rest.

For oral complications, the use of topical analgesics can be intensified. While there is insufficient evidence that many products reduce the severity of oral damage, many products can provide comfort to the patient. The clinical team institutions can offer a range of mouthwashes selecting the most appropriate for the clinical situation and the patients trying out which one works best for them. The use of oral rinses, topical gels or films can be individually considered. Any with sufficient safety and positive experiences can be used: Caphosol®, Mugard®, Oralife®, Gelclair® and Episil® are just a few of the products available on the market. It is generally accepted that topical antibacterial substances are not recommended.

For systemic pain medication, it is useful to follow a step-by-step increase, with the aim of the patient becoming pain-free within 24 h. It can be helpful to monitor the efficacy of pain medication with pain assessment tools (Watson et al. 2011). Institutions should follow a standardised pattern of pain medication following recommendations where applicable. In severe mucositis, the use of opiates with the optimal application route should be considered. The best route of application depends on the individual and setting factors and may be oral, subcutaneous, intravenous or transdermal with patches. Patients may require a combination of slow-release and fast-acting drugs. Patient-controlled analgesia should be considered. Careful monitoring should include pain relief and any potential side effects, and including family members may prove helpful to obtain a wider view of how well the patient copes outside the treatment unit (Quinn et al. 2021; Watson et al. 2011).

10.1.8 Treatment of Specific Oral Complications

10.1.8.1 Bleeding from OM

Continue mouth gargling. Tranexamic acid has been widely used in oral surgery, and gargling/swishing with tranexamic acid (500 mg) as a mouthwash may be worth considering (Quinn et al. 2020; Watson et al. 2011).

10.1.8.2 Xerostomia (Dry Mouth)

As this may be due to or increased by concurrent mediation, a review of the patient's medications is needed and if possible adjustments made. Patients should be encouraged to increase sipping of fluids. Artificial saliva, viscous solutions and gels to protect and moisten the mucosa should be considered; patients should be counselled on correct application. In chronic radiotherapy-related xerostomia, pilocarpine may be used.

10.1.8.3 Aphthous Lesions

The presence of aphthous lesions arising from some of the more recent targeted treatments may be seen. These may first appear similar to ulcers but are recognisable due to the presence of a "hallow"-like presentation. These lesions should not be treated like ulceration and may require the topical use of a dexamethasone gel (Hannen et al. 2017).

10.1.8.4 Trismus (Spasm of the Jaw Muscles)

This is a side effect seen during and post-high-dose radiotherapy. Patients should be given helpful exercises, and the team may consider mechanical devices to help alleviate the problem.

10.1.8.5 Graft-Versus-Host Disease (GvHD)

Oral damage may be a hallmark of graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) in patients following alloge-

neic stem cell transplantation, and the presence of lichenoid hyperkeratotic plaques (diagnostic sign), gingivitis, mucositis, erythema, pain, xerostomia and ulcers may indicate GvHD. Shorrer et al. (2014) suggest that solutions of dexamethasone or other steroids are used as first-line treatment; second line may include solutions of steroids in combination with other immunosuppressant drugs.

10.1.9 Post-treatment Care and Follow-Up

Oral damage in the haematology and HSCT will require several weeks/months and, in some cases, years to heal, and patients need continuing support and care during this period. Advice and support by suitably qualified health professional should continue during this period. Support to manage side effects including pain and the gradual reduction of analgesia is extremely important. Chronic side effects may include dental decay, trismus, fibrosis, lymphedema, chronic xerostomia and chronic pain and will require careful management and requires the haematology and dental teams to work more closely together (Quinn et al. 2021). All patients should be individually assessed and appropriate care and treatment given. Follow-up care should be planned and supervised to address longer-term and late complications.

10.1.10 Conclusion

The principles presented here are intended as a support and in no way should replace clinical decision-making related to the particular patient and clinical situation. Depending on the severity of oral complications and the impact on the patient, the team will need to review the plan of care.

10.2 Sepsis and Principles of Care

10.2.1 Introduction

The increased risk of infections in patients undergoing haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) is well known, and infection is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality. HSCT patients are particularly at risk, especially during the neutropenic period following the conditioning treatment. In HSCT patients, signs and symptoms of sepsis may be subtle and difficult to recognise due to neutropenia or other complications of the transplant procedure. Preventive measures should be applied, but vigilance and close monitoring of the patient, strong team collaboration and immediate action will allow for prompt and appropriate management of septic patients.

10.2.2 Definition of Sepsis

There are multiple definitions and clinical criteria for sepsis. The terms below are all terms for severe infection where bacteria may or may not be identified in blood cultures.

- Sepsis
- Severe sepsis
- Septicaemia
- Septic syndrome
- Septic shock

According to the Third International Consensus Definitions for Sepsis and Septic Shock (Sepsis-3) (Singer et al. 2016), sepsis is defined as:

> Life-threatening organ dysfunction due to a dysregulated host response to infection. Septic shock is defined as a subset of sepsis in which particularly profound circulatory, cellular, and metabolic abnormalities substantially increase mortality.

Advances in the pathophysiology, management and epidemiology of sepsis have supported a greater understanding of the phenomenon.

10.2.3 Clinical Criteria for Sepsis

Suspected or documented infection and an acute increase of ⩾2 SOFA points.

SOFA (sequential organ failure assessment) uses eight criteria to describe severity of organ dysfunction and failure. However, Singer et al.

(2016) considered that positive qSOFA (quick SOFA) criteria should also prompt consideration of possible infection in patients not previously recognised as infected.

qSOFA ctiteria:

- Altered mental status (GCSscore <15)
- Systolic blood pressure <100 mmHg
- Respiratory rate >22 breaths per min

Septic shock can be identified with a clinical construct of sepsis with persisting hypotension, requiring vasopressor therapy to elevate MAP ⩾65 mmHg (mean arterial pressure) and lactate >2 mmol L despite adequate fluid resuscitation.

The consequence of inflammatory response and evolution of sepsis is called the sepsis cascade and is illustrated in Fig. 10.1. The sepsis cascade starts with an inflammatory response that will cause microvascular injury, vasodilation and tissue hypoxia. The microvascular injury leads to capillary leak resulting in oedema; decreased urinary output; tachycardia, with an initially bounding pulse which will then become weaker; and an increased respiratory rate. Hypotension is another symptom caused by both microvascular injury and vasodilation. The vasodilation will also cause decreased renal blood flow. Hypovolemia subsequently causes poor tissue perfusion, triggering tissue hypoxia with anaerobic metabolism. In this process, oxygen and lactate are released for metabolism, thus causing metabolic acidosis E-learning package Sepsis and Sepsis Six (http://sonet.nottingham.ac.uk/)

10.2.4 Risk Factors

In the early phase of HSCT, i.e. the first 100 days, the main risk factors for infections are (Rovira et al. 2012):

- Neutropenia
- Barrier breakdown
- Depressed T- and B-cell function
- Prescence of acute graft-versus-host disease (aGvHD)

10.2.4.1 Neutropenia

A longer period of neutropenia can often be expected following allogeneic than after autologous transplant. The stem cell source also affects the length of the neutropenic period where peripheral blood (PBSC) has an expected neutropenic phase of about 2 weeks, bone marrow (BM) 3 weeks and cord blood (CB) 4 weeks.

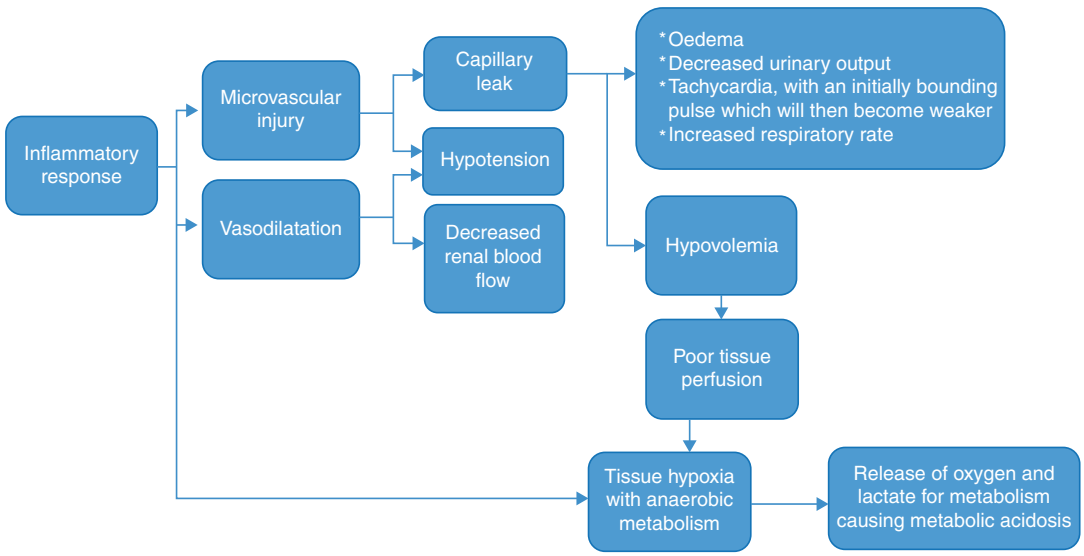


Fig. 10.1 E-learning package Sepsis and Sepsis Six 2017 (http://www.sonet.nottingham.ac.uk/)

Myeloablative conditioning (MAC) treatment will cause a longer neutropenic phase than reduced intensity conditioning (RIC).

10.2.4.2 Barrier Breakdown

Any skin or mucosal barrier breakdown will increase the infection risk, and mucositis occurs in almost all transplant patients. Skin breakdown can be caused by, e.g. drugs and aGvHD. Indwelling catheters such as peripheral cannulas, central lines, urinary catheters and pyelostomy catheters are a potential port of entry for microorganisms into the bloodstream.

10.2.4.3 Immunocompromised and Supressed T- and B-Cell Function

Allogeneic transplant is followed by long-lasting immunodeficiency. Conditioning therapy may include T-cell depleting agents, and even non-myeloablative regimens cause lymphodepletion with prolonged periods of immune incompetence. Donor type and degree of histocompatibility (human leukocyte antigen (HLA) match) are other factors that influence the time to immune reconstitution. Immunosuppression for GvHD prophylaxis is necessary in allogeneic HSCT and will delay immune reconstitution (Toubert 2012). Equally, autologous recipients can be rendered immunocompromised by their disease or the treatment they received for it prior to their transplant.

10.2.4.4 Presence of Acute Graft-Versus-Host Disease (aGvHD)

Need for immunosuppressive GvHD prophylaxis or treatment will increase the risk for infections. Mucosal or skin barrier breakdown due to GvH can further increase the risk.

10.2.4.5 Poor General Status

If the patient is not in remission at HSCT, physically frail or malnourished, there is a greater risk for infection and sepsis. Comorbidities, such as diabetes and renal failure, are other risk factors.

10.2.5 Strategies for Infection and Sepsis Prevention

Nurses play a pivotal role in the prevention and control of infections. The following basic IPC measures should be adopted by all patient contacts:

- Hand hygiene
- Respiratory and cough hygiene
- PPE
- Safe management of care equipment
- Safe management of the environment
- Management of laundry
- Management of blood and body fluid spills
- Waste management
- Management of exposure

National guidance is produced by individual countries, but the basic principles remain the same. Hand hygiene is possibly the single most important action to prevent infections acquired by exogenous organisms (pathogens entering a patient's body from their environment). Hand hygiene is a way of cleaning hands that reduces potential pathogens on the hands. To be successful, hand hygiene needs to be performed at the right time, with the right product, using the right technique, making it easy to perform.

The World Health Organization (WHO) describes "moments" for workers to practice hand hygiene:

- Before touching a person
- Before a clean or aseptic procedure (where applicable)
- After exposure to blood or body fluid
- After touching a person or significant contact with their surroundings

There are other situations where hand hygiene should be performed including:

- After removal of PPE
- After using the toilet

- Between different care activities with the same person (such as feeding them, assisting them with washing)
- After cleaning or handling waste
- Before and after handling food

(Source accessed 09/10/2022 https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/infection-prevention-and-control-in-adult-social-care-settings/infection-prevention-and-control-resource-for-adult-social-care.)

Clinical staff should wear a uniform that is clean and short sleeved. Protective isolation during the neutropenic phase is recommended, and the patient should not be in contact with any staff or visitors with symptoms of infection.

For prevention of endogenous infections (patient is exposed to their own microbial flora), oral hygiene and skin care to maintain the mucosal and skin barrier and use of prophylactic antibiotics are the most important actions. Correct handling of any indwelling catheters is a key nursing responsibility in infection control.

Other areas where infections can be prevented are air and water quality, food hygiene and environmental cleaning including medical equipment. For more detailed guidance on infection control, see Chap. 7.

Routine surveillance screening for infection by bacterial and/or fungal cultures, i.e. blood, urine, faeces, swabs from nasopharynx and central line insertion site and serum galactomannan blood test, may allow for earlier identification and implementation of therapy, although the benefit of such routines can be discussed (Nesher et al. 2014; Mikulska 2019). Regular monitoring of blood tests such as full blood count, electrolytes, urea and/or creatinine and C-reactive protein (CRP) may assist in detecting any changes that could indicate infection.

Prophylactic antibiotics, e.g. fluoroquinolones, and antifungal and antiviral medication will be used in most HSCT patients, at least during the neutropenic phase (Martino 2019).

10.2.6 Diagnosis and Management

Early recognition and treatment are vital for a successful outcome of sepsis. Temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respirations and saturation (vital signs) should be frequently monitored. Signs of infection are not always obvious, but if the patient has a temperature ≥ 38.0 °C, cultures should be taken, IV antibiotics and IV fluids started or increased and oxygen therapy initiated. The goal is always to *start antibiotic treatment within 1 h* from detection of fever (Swedish "Pro Sepsis" Programme Group Sepsis 2015). This is sometimes referred to as "the golden hour" (or "door-to-needle time" for patients admitted from outside the hospital) and is the most critical period in the patient's survival from sepsis.

Recognising sepsis can be a challenge in HSCT patients during the immediate post-transplant period where often a plethora of symptoms are present, but also after discharge, in the outpatient setting, since some symptoms are rather unspecific. Other than fever, chills or rigour, feeling unwell or different (without clear explanation), changes in behaviour or mental changes, feeling faint or changes in skin tone can indicate sepsis. An increased respiratory rate can be seen even if saturation is normal. An increased pulse and lowered blood pressure may be noted. Some patients may not develop fever, and hypothermia, i.e. <36 °C, can also be a sign of sepsis. If an outpatient with symptoms that could be sepsis-related reports a normal body temperature, it should be checked again in the clinic with a reliable thermometer and correct method. Diarrhoea and vomiting are frequently seen in sepsis but can easily be mistaken for gastroenteritis, mucositis or acute graft-versus-host disease (aGvHD). Diffuse or local pain, e.g. in the abdomen, is common. Falls are often secondary to sepsis particularly in elderly patients. Any of these indices need prompt and thorough assessment.

The concept of the *Sepsis Six* has been developed as a guide to prioritise interventions and

offer a resuscitation bundle in patients where sepsis is suspected (Daniels et al. 2011).

1. Oxygen therapy
2. Blood cultures
3. IV antibiotics
4. Fluid resuscitation
5. Serum lactate
6. Assess urine output (may require catheterisation)

When sepsis is suspected, all cultures should be taken prior to commencing antimicrobials, if possible (Rhodes et al. 2017). Cultures should be taken from central lines, wounds, nasopharynx, urine and faeces. It is also sensible to consider peripheral IV cannula as a possible source of infection. Despite conventional practice to collect blood cultures at a fever spike in order to increase the chances of detecting bacteraemia, there is so far no data to support this principle (Kee et al. 2016). Testing could include polymerase chain reaction (PCR) virology (e.g. for cytomegalovirus (CMV) or Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)) and screening for fungus (e.g. oral swab), depending on symptoms and suspected microbial agent. For the procedures for diagnosis of central line-associated bloodstream infections (CLABSI), please see Chap. 4. Laboratory tests should be taken to monitor electrolyte status, organ function, blood count and signs of infection.

A site of infection may not always be identified. If a source of infection is confirmed, or strongly suspected, applicable actions should be taken, e.g. wound care or removal of peripheral IV needle with signs of thrombophlebitis (Schorr et al. 2014).

Upon initiation of antimicrobial treatment, a broad-spectrum antibiotic is usually used. Depending on the results of the cultures performed, the chosen drug may need to be changed later.

Fever and infection will affect the blood count and frequently cause platelet consumption; hence, increased transfusions may be necessary.

10.2.7 Nursing Considerations and Care

Early recognition and intervention are achieved by frequent monitoring of the patient's vital signs and general condition and paying attention to subtle changes that should be promptly reported.

As described above, immediate action is required at the first indication of sepsis. When treatment has been initiated, the patient must be continually monitored to determine the effect of treatment or worsening of the condition. This includes vital signs, fluid balance including weight and assessment of identified and/or potential infection sites (mouth, skin, any indwelling or tunnelled catheter, urine, stools, etc.), mental status, signs of bleeding, pain and general appearance and well-being. Implementation of early warning scoring tools offer a standardised approach to escalation of medically unwell patients including those with sepsis (Royal College of Physicians 2019).

Antibiotics should be delivered with strict adherence to the prescribed time schedule. Antipyretics should be avoided since they may mask fever but may, under certain circumstances, be used to alleviate patient discomfort and pain.

Laboratory tests results will guide the need for electrolyte replacement and blood product transfusion that may be ordered prophylactically or in case of bleeding. Cultures may need to be repeated to confirm infection and/or response to treatment. Oxygen should be administered as needed to ensure adequate saturation (i.e. ≥94%, or 88–92% for patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)) (Royal College of Physicians 2019). If the patient's condition worsens and organ support such as assisted ventilation or haemodialysis is required, the patient may need to be prepared for transfer to the intensive care unit (ICU).

Extra-psychological support is important for both the patient and family. Educating the patient and the carer about the condition and actions

taken or planned will prevent unnecessary worrying and enable them to alert the staff about symptoms or changes. Information and education may also facilitate mental preparedness if the condition worsens, and a higher level of care, ICU, is needed.

Patients with sepsis are likely to need additional nursing care such as assistance with oral care and personal hygiene. It is important to ensure that the patient's and caregivers' information, education and support needs are met. On discharge from the hospital, we need to ensure that the patient and their caregiver are aware of when, why and how to contact the clinic or hospital that they have a fever thermometer at home, know when to take their temperature and are aware of the level that constitutes a fever.

10.3 Haemorrhagic Cystitis

10.3.1 Introduction

Haemorrhagic cystitis (HC) is sometimes seen in HSCT patients and can on its own or by subsequent complications cause significant morbidity and even death.

10.3.2 Definition

According to NCI Dictionary of Cancer Terms, it is defined as:

> A condition in which the lining of the bladder becomes inflamed and starts to bleed. The blood can be seen in the urine. Symptoms include pain and a burning feeling while urinating, feeling a need to urinate often, and being unable to control the flow of urine. Haemorrhagic cystitis may be caused by anticancer drugs, radiation therapy, infection, or being exposed to chemicals, such as dyes or insecticides. (NCI Dictionary of Cancer Terms 2022)

Haematuria can be symptomatic or asymptomatic. It can be described as microscopic (not visible to the eye but detected on a dipstick and in the microscope) or macroscopic (red urine or visible blood or clots) (Table 10.4). Normally, about one million erythrocytes are excreted daily in the urine. This is equal to one to three erythrocytes per high-power field (magnification ×400) under the microscope. Haematuria is defined as abnormal presence of blood in the urine, i.e. more than three erythrocytes per high-power field in the microscope. To be confirmed as microscopic haematuria, two positive samples on consecutive days are needed. The haematuria can be visually detected (macroscopic) as red urine at levels as low as 1 mL blood per litre urine. The visible blood does however not necessarily correspond to the degree of blood loss through the urine. Red urine may also have other causes, which will not be described here. Originally graded by Droller (1982), more recently, a variety of visual scales have been developed and validated in an effort to improve communication around haematuria.

Table 10.4 Haematuria is graded as follows

Grade	Haematuria findings
I	Microscopic
II	Macroscopic
III	Macroscopic with clots
IV	Requiring instrumentation for clot evacuation
	Leading to urinary retention
	Requiring surgical intervention
	May also include elevated creatinine levels and renal impairment

Droller et al. (1982)

Cystitis is the term used to describe inflammation of the bladder. The inflammation can be caused by an infection or as a reaction to certain drugs or radiation therapy.

The following symptoms may be seen in all types of cystitis:

- Urinary urgency and frequency.
- Burning or stinging with urination or right after.
- Pain, dysuria (painful urination), lower abdominal or supra-pubic pain.

- Nocturia, when sleep is disturbed twice or more at night due to a need to urinate.
- Urinary incontinence.
- General feeling of illness.

10.3.3 Incidence

Reported incidences of HC after HSCT range between 5% and 70%, depending on risk factors and use of preventive measures or not, but most materials describe an incidence between 5% and 30%.

10.3.4 Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis leading to HC is not completely known but is likely to be multifactorial. The onset is seen either early, within the 2 first weeks after start of conditioning treatment, or late, more than 2 weeks after HSCT. Conditioning treatment with chemotherapy, irradiation, cytopenia, viral infections due to immunosuppression and alloimmune reactions (immunisation by development of antibodies in response to an antigen, i.e. a protein from a donor, e.g. by receiving HSCT or transfusion) may all contribute to HC in the post-transplant period. Higher incidence of late-onset HC in HSCT with unrelated donors, older patients, and patients with graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) and thrombocytopenia does support the conclusion that the pathogenesis is multifactorial (de Padua Silva 2010).

10.3.4.1 Drug-Related HC

Early-onset HC is usually a direct and immediate effect of the conditioning treatment, typically occurring during or within 48 h after the end of the conditioning regimen and is the result of a direct toxic effect of drug metabolites and radiotherapy on the bladder mucosa (Cesaro 2019). Cyclophosphamide or ifosfamide is the most frequently associated major drug-related cause of HC. When cyclophosphamide or ifosfamide is metabolised in the body, it produces a metabolite called acrolein. Acrolein will cause direct toxicity to the inner lining of the urinary tract, the urothelium. The degree of damage is dose dependent, and the toxicity may increase with previous or concomitant radiation therapy and if busulfan is included in the conditioning regimen together with cyclophosphamide. The time of duration that acrolein is exposed to the bladder also contributes to the degree of damage. For cyclophosphamide, the maximal concentration of active metabolites is reached after 2–4 h of oral or intravenous administration. Most of the cyclophosphamide, 35–80% of the dose, is excreted in the urine as metabolites, and up to 20% is excreted as intact drug (Hassan and Ljungman 2003). In patients with decreased renal function, particularly in severe cases, decreased renal excretion may result in increased plasma levels of cyclophosphamide and its metabolites, further leading to increased toxicity (Cesaro 2019).

10.3.4.2 Non-drug-Related HC

When HC occurs more than 2 weeks after HSCT, a common cause in the immunocompromised host can be viral infection (Cesaro 2019). Viral particles are frequently identified from the urine of HSCT recipients. Of these, reactivation of the polyoma BK virus (BKV) is the commonest and most consistent risk factor for HC following HSCT, as the virus is almost invariably present in the urine of patients with HC (Leung et al. 2005). The damaged urothelial cells provide a milieu for viral replication. Immunosuppression leads to viral reactivation and causes viruria. However, the exact pathogenetic link between BKV and HC remains enigmatic. Other viral agents such as adenovirus, cytomegalovirus (CMV) and other polyomaviruses similar to BKV may also but less often cause HC.

Alloimmunity after engraftment by attack from donor lymphoid cells against infected urothelial cells has not been confirmed as causing HC but may be an additional potential factor for development of this complication.

10.3.5 Diagnosis

The diagnosis of HC is confirmed by the presence of haematuria and symptoms of cystitis.

Several predisposing factors have been reported in the HSCT setting (Lunde et al. 2015):

- Transplant type
- Age at transplantation
- Presence of graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)
- Donor source
- Conditioning regimen components and intensity

In order to confirm microscopic haematuria, two positive urine samples on consecutive days are needed. Urinary tract infection (UTI) should be confirmed by urine culture for bacteria and PCR testing for virus. Yet a diagnosis is occasionally derived from the exclusion of alternative causes.

10.3.6 Prognosis

In most cases of chemotherapy-induced HC with pre-engraftment onset and in polyomaviruria, the condition is self-limiting, and the prognosis is good. If the viruria is caused by adenovirus, the prognosis is worse, with the risk of progression to systemic adenovirus infection. In these cases, early pharmacological intervention with antiviral drugs, e.g. cidofovir, is recommended.

10.3.7 Prevention of Chemotherapy (Cyclophosphamide/Ifosfamide)-Induced HC

Hyperhydration with forced diuresis, i.e. 3 L/m^2/24 h, with the goal of a diuresis of >250 mL/h, during and until the day after administration of an alkylating agent, is the most important preventive action. If the diuresis is insufficient, diuretics should be administered. The forced diuresis will not just dilute the urine but shorten the time of duration for acrolein exposure to the bladder and thus prevent the toxic effects. During the days of hyperhydration, the patient shall be closely monitored for fluid balance, including weight, at regular intervals. An electrocardiogram (ECG) should be taken and approved, prior to start of treatment, and vital signs (blood pressure, pulse, oxygen saturation and respiratory rate) should be checked throughout the day in order to ascertain circulatory stability. Electrolytes and renal function should be monitored by blood samples and electrolyte substitution given where required. A need for potassium substitution is not uncommon. The patient should also be assessed for any urinary or low abdominal pain or discomfort. All assessments mentioned above should be performed at least every 6 h. Informing the patient about the treatment and treatment goals as well as the importance of reporting any symptoms of HC will help ensure that appropriate actions and early intervention can be applied without delay.

For patients receiving cyclophosphamide- or ifosfamide-based regimens, the drug mesna (sodium 2-mercaptoethanesulfonate) can be used as pharmacological prophylaxis, although the additional benefit in the HSCT setting has not been scientifically proven in comparison with hyperhydration and forced diuresis. Mesna binds to the toxic metabolite acrolein and forms a non-toxic compound. By additional actions mesna also reduces the forming of acrolein in the urine. The drug itself has low toxicity (Mesna Summary of Product Characteristics 2017 (SPC) [in Swedish]).

In HSCT conditioning with cyclophosphamide, the recommended dose of mesna according to the Summary of Product Characteristics (SPC) is 20% of the cyclophosphamide dose, and the first mesna dose should be administered immediately prior to the cyclophosphamide. Subsequent doses will then be given at 3, 6, 9 and 12 h after administration of cyclophosphamide (totalling 120% of the cyclophosphamide dose). It is important to adhere to the timing of mesna doses in order to ensure efficacy of the treatment. Mesna treatment should be continued during the cyclophosphamide treatment period plus the time predicted for the metabolites to reach non-toxic levels. This will usually occur between 8 and 12 h after completed cyclophosphamide administration. This treatment schedule for mesna may however vary according to conditioning regimen and doses as well as to patient individual factors.

The use of quinolones (e.g. ciprofloxacin) for BK virus-induced HC is widely discussed

(Dropulic and Jones 2008; Umbro et al. 2013). However, there is currently no consensus regarding this approach as either treatment or prophylaxis and a general increase of multidrug-resistant microorganisms makes this a matter for very careful consideration.

10.3.8 Treatment

The first intervention is hyperhydration with forced diuresis to prevent clot formation. HC is usually painful, and analgesia should be administered. If the patient is thrombocytopenic, a higher threshold level for platelet transfusion and intensive platelet support should be applied, in particular in haematuria grades III–IV. Catheterisation and bladder irrigation with 0.9% sodium chloride (normal saline) may be necessary to prevent clot obstruction. Catheter insertion should be performed so that the risk of additional injury to the urothelium is minimised. If obstruction occurs, cystoscopy can be performed. Selective embolisation of bladder arteries and catheterisation of both ureters to rest the bladder are actions that can be taken in severe cases. Cystectomy remains the last resort if all other treatment attempts fail.

Systemic antiviral drugs, e.g. cidofovir and ribavirin, can be commenced, if the HC is confirmed or likely attributable to adeno- or BK virus. Decreased immunosuppression could be considered in particular in cases of relapsing viral cystitis. Note that anticoagulants such as tranexamic acid and aminocaproic acid are contraindicated in HC due to risk of clot formation and retention.

Some studies have demonstrated effectiveness of hyperbaric oxygen (HBO) (Savva-Bordalo et al. 2012; Hosokawa et al. 2021) in HC after HSCT, whereby the patient receives 100% oxygen in a hyperbaric chamber. However, this has not been established outside single-centre studies with small numbers of patients. Furthermore, limited access to hyperbaric chambers and the likely need and inability for the patient to move to another treatment unit often make this intervention less of an option.

10.3.9 Nursing Aspects

During treatment with hyperhydration, the same need for close monitoring and assessments as in the prophylactic setting applies (see above). Assess the need for platelet transfusion prior to catheterisation as well as after. Blood transfusions may also be necessary with significant blood loss. Standard monitoring for signs of infection, injury, pain, clot formation and other potential complications from the urinary catheter is important. In cases of bladder irrigation, keeping the fluids for irrigation at ambient temperature may alleviate discomfort. Complications of the irrigation can be prevented or minimised by close monitoring and recording of fluid balance. It is also important to maintain patient comfort by adequate pain management and general nursing interventions such as comfortable positioning and assistance with personal hygiene. The need for information and psychological support should be observed for both patient and family.

Since in particular viral HC may occur after discharge from the hospital, careful assessment of any signs and symptoms related to the urinary tract that may indicate urinary bacterial or viral infection is just as important in the outpatient setting.

10.4 Sinusoidal Obstruction Syndrome/Veno-Occlusive Disease

10.4.1 Introduction

Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (SOS) is also known as veno-occlusive disease (VOD) and is referred to as SOS/VOD hereafter. Of the early complications that are considered to be of vascular endothelial origin, this is the most described. There are diagnosis and severity criteria (McDonald et al. 1984, 1993; Jones et al. 1987; deLeve et al. 2009; Mohty et al. 2016), with the EBMT criteria the most recently proposed and criteria for the development of late-onset disease (Mohty et al. 2016). Careful monitoring of HSCT

patients allows early detection of SOS/VOD. Treatment can then be started without delay, ultimately improving patient outcomes. From pre-transplant assessment to medical management and overall care of the patient, nurses thus have an essential role to play as part of a multidisciplinary team (Wallhult et al. 2017).

There are specific differences between the clinical presentation of SOS/VOD in adults versus in children, which has not been reflected in the older diagnosis and severity criteria. For this reason, EBMT has also developed a classification for diagnosis and severity criteria for SOS/VOD in paediatric patients (Corbacioglu et al. 2018). The information presented below is related to adults. For the paediatric population, please see original article (Corbacioglu et al. 2018), and for further information on VOD, visit the e-learning programme (2021) (https://www.ebmt.org/hepatic-veno-occlusive-disease-vod).

10.4.2 Definition and Pathogenesis

When drugs used in haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) conditioning regimens are metabolised in the liver, it results in toxic metabolites being produced by the hepatocytes. The metabolites trigger the activation, damage and inflammation of the endothelial cells lining the sinusoids (sinusoids being small capillary-like blood vessels in the liver). This trigger mechanism can start as soon as the conditioning treatment is administered. The activated sinusoidal endothelial cells release inflammatory cytokines, chemokines and the enzyme heparanase, which breaks down the extracellular matrix that supports the structure of the sinusoids. The endothelial cells are then forced to round up, and gaps form between the cells. The gaps allow for red blood cells, white blood cells and other cellular debris to exit through these gaps in the sinusoid walls into the space of Disse. (The space of Disse is the perisinusoidal space that is located between the endothelium and the hepatocytes.) When cells and debris accumulate in this space, the sinusoids become narrower. Due to the sinusoidal damage, endothelial cells can dissect off and embolise further downstream thus contributing to the narrowing. The damage also leads to an increase in the expression of tissue factor (TF) and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1). This coagulopathy causes an increase in clot formation and a decrease in the breakdown of clots. The deposition of fibrin and the clot formation will contribute to the narrowing of the sinusoids and may ultimately lead to hepatic sinusoidal obstruction. The result is SOS/VOD, which is characterised by obstruction of the sinusoids, portal vein hypotension and reduced hepatic venous outflow. Severe cases can progress to multi-organ dysfunction (MOD)/multi-organ failure (MOF) and death.

SOS/VOD usually develops before day +21 after HSCT with a peak incidence around day 12, but about 15–20% of the SOS/VOD cases have a late onset, after day +21.

10.4.3 Incidence and Prognosis

Although relatively rare, SOS/VOD is one of the main causes of non-relapse, transplant-related mortality. The incidence of VOD/SOS after transplantation varies substantially from 2 to 60% of both different settings of patients and transplant procedures and of application of different diagnostic criteria (Bonifazi et al. 2020).

It will also depend on risk factors including intensity of conditioning regimen and type of transplant. After allo-HSCT with myeloablative conditioning (MAC), the incidence is approximately 10–15%, but if reduced intensity conditioning (RIC) is used, the incidence is <5%. This is the same incidence as for auto-HSCT.

Mild SOS/VOD may not be particularly well recognised since the symptoms are subtle, may not require treatment and may spontaneously resolve within a few weeks. Unrecognised SOS/VOD may however progress, sometimes very rapidly, into moderate or severe. Severe SOS/VOD is associated with multi-organ dysfunction/multi-organ failure (MOD/MOF) and a mortality rate of 84%.

10.4.4 Risk Factors

The risk factors for SOS/VOD can be divided into patient- and disease-related and transplant-related risk factors (Mohty et al. 2015). As mentioned above, the risk factors, as well as the clinical presentation of SOS/VOD, differ between the adult and the paediatric population, and the risk factors presented here are related to adults.

Risk factors are divided into three categories.

Hepatic-related
- Transaminases >2.5 ULN
- Serum bilirubin >1.5 ULN
- Cirrhosis
- Active viral hepatitis
- Abdominal or hepatic irradiation
- Previous use of gemtuzumab ozogamicin or inotuzumab ozogamicin
- Hepatotoxic drugs
- Iron overload

Patient and disease-related
- Older age
- Karnofsky score below 90%
- Metabolic syndrome
- Female receiving norethisterone
- Advanced disease (beyond second CR or relapse/refractory)
- Thalassaemia
- Genetic factors (GSTM1 polymorphism, C282Y allele, *MTHFR* 677CC/1298CC haplotype)

Transplant-related
- Unrelated donor
- HLA-mismatched donor
- Non T-cell-depleted transplant
- Myeloablative-conditioning regimen
- Oral or high-dose busulfan-based regimen
- High-dose TBI-based regimen
- Second HSCT

10.4.5 Diagnosis

Despite the fact that diagnostic criteria were developed in the 1980s and have been used in clinical practice and research studies, it is often hard to identify early or mild cases of SOS/VOD before it progresses to a more severe form. Some reasons are lack of sensitivity and specificity of the criteria, the dynamic manifestations that makes definition of the condition hard and that early signs and symptoms often are subtle and makes differentiation from other transplant complications difficult. Given the poor prognosis of severe SOS/VOD, it is however vital to identify mild cases before they progress to moderate, with signs of hepatic injury and requiring more aggressive intervention, or further progress to severe SOS/VOD with MOD/MOF. The most recent diagnostic criteria proposed by EBMT (Mohty et al. 2016) are the same as the Baltimore criteria (Jones et al. 1987) for classical SOS/VOD with onset within the first 3 weeks after HSCT, but if SOS/VOD develops after day +21, elevated serum bilirubin level is not always seen, why a modified version of the criteria can be used for diagnosis of late SOS/VOD (Mohty et al. 2016) (Table 10.5). The EBMT criteria also better capture the dynamic manifestations of the disease and thus facilitate an early diagnosis as well as a more accurate assessment of severity. Treatment can then be started at a stage with greater chance for treatment response.

Differential diagnoses will need to be excluded by assessing risk factors, symptoms and lab tests since liver dysfunction can also be seen in sepsis, viral infection, graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) and iron overload and as a side effect from many of the drugs used in the HSCT setting. In addition to the signs and symptoms required for diagnosis haemorrhagic complications, thrombocytopenia

Table 10.5 SOS/VOD diagnosis criteria

Original Seattle Criteria (1984)[a]	Modified Seattle criteria (1993)[b]	Baltimore Criteria (1987)[c]	EBMT Criteria for adults (2016)[d]	
Presentation before Day 30 post-HSCT	Presentation before Day 20 post-HSCT	Bilirubin ≥2 mg/dL (~34 μmol/L) before Day 21 post-HSCT	Classical SOS/VOD in the first 21 days post HSCT ***with*** Bilirubin ≥2 mg/dL (~34 μmol/L)	Late onset SOS/VOD >21 days post HSCT
				Classical SOS/VOD
and at least two of the following:	***of*** two of the following:	***and*** at least two of the following:	***and*** two of the following:	***OR***
Jaundice	Bilirubin >2 mg/dL (~34 μmol/L)	Hepatomegaly	Painful hepatomegaly	SOS/VOD confirmed by liver biopsy ***OR*** two or more of the following:
Hepatomegaly *and* right upper quadrant pain	Hepatomegaly *or* right upper quadrant pain of liver origin	Ascites	Ascites	Bilirubin ≥2 mg/dL (~34 μmol/L)
Ascites ± unexplained weight gain	Unexplained weight gain of >2% baseline due to fluid accumulation	Weight gain ≥5% from baseline	Weight gain >5%	Painful hepatomegaly
				Ascites
				Weight gain >5%
				AND
				Hemodynamical or/ and ultrasound evidence of SOS/ VOD

[a] McDonald et al. (1984)
[b] McDonald et al. (1993)
[c] Jones et al. (1987)
[d] Mohty et al. (2016)

with platelet refractoriness, pulmonary dysfunction, renal dysfunction and encephalopathy are "late" signs that can be seen in more severe cases of SOS/VOD. Further, it is worth noting that all symptoms are also observed in other conditions and that many other complications may coexist with SOS/VOD (Eisenberg 2008). Examples of differential diagnosis for classical symptoms of SOS/VOD are listed in Table 10.6.

When SOS/VOD is diagnosed, it is important to classify the severity grade in order to intensify the monitoring and identify patients that will need therapeutic intervention. The EBMT severity grading criteria (Mohty et al. 2016) stress the importance of noting the time since the appearance of the symptoms. A rapid progression of symptoms, and in particular bilirubin kinetics (the rate of increase) with a doubling time of 48 h, should be classified as a more severe grade than if symptoms develop more slowly over several days (Table 10.7).

Table 10.6 SOS/VOD symptoms

Symptom	Also observed in
Jaundice	Biliary infection
	Cholestasis
	Acute GvHD
	Cyclosporine
	Drug or TPN injury
	Haemolysis
Hepatomegaly and ascites	Congestive heart failure
	Fungal infection
	EBV lymphoproliferative disease
	Pancreatitis
	Portal vein thrombosis
Rapid weight gain	Congestive heart failure
	Renal failure
	Sepsis syndrome
	Capillary leak syndrome

Eisenberg (2008)

Table 10.7 EBMT criteria for severity grading of a suspected SOS/VOD in adults

	Mild[a]	Moderate[a]	Severe	Very severe—MOD/MOF[b]
Time since first clinical symptoms of SOS/VOD[c]	>7 days	5–7 days	≤4 days	Any time
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	≥2 and <3	≥3 and <5	≥5 and <8	≥8
Bilirubin (μmol/L)	≥34 and <51	≥51 and <85	≥85 and <136	≥136
Bilirubin kinetics			Doubling within 48 h	
Transaminases	≤2× normal	>2 and ≤5× normal	>5 and ≤8× normal	>8× normal
Weight increase	<5%	≥5% and <10%	≥5% and <10%	≥10%
Renal function	<1.2× baseline at transplant	≥1.2 and <1.5× baseline at transplant	≥1.5 and <2× baseline at transplant	≥2× baseline at transplant or others signs of MOD/MOF

Patients belong to the category that fulfils two or more criteria. If patients fulfil two or more criteria in two different categories, they must be classified in the most severe category. Patients' weight increase ≥5% and <10% is considered by default as a criterion for severe SOS/VOD; however, if patients do not fulfil other criteria for severe SOS/VOD, weight increase ≥5% and <10% is therefore considered as a criterion for moderate SOS/VOD

EBMT European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation, *MOD* multi-organ dysfunction, *MOF* multi-organ failure, *SOS* sinusoidal obstruction syndrome, *VOD* veno-occlusive disease

[a] In the case of presence of two or more risk factors for SOS/VOD, patients should be in the upper grade

[b] Patients with multi-organ dysfunction must be classified as very severe

[c] Time from the date when the first signs/symptoms of SOS/VOD began to appear (retrospectively determined) and the date when the symptoms fulfilled SOS/VOD diagnostic criteria

10.4.6 Prevention

The first strategy for prevention is to be aware of pre-existing risk factors and try and eliminate them as far as possible and potentially establish supportive or treatment measures prior to transplant. The patient- and disease-related risk factors, including hepatic, are often difficult or impossible to change, but the transplant-related risk factors should be carefully considered in the pre-transplant setting.

No proven medical prophylaxis exists, but sodium heparin, prostaglandin E1, ursodeoxycholic acid and low-molecular-weight heparin have been tried, although data about effectiveness remains inconclusive (Carreras 2012, 2015). Defibrotide, approved for treatment of severe SOS/VOD, has also been used as prophylaxis (Dignan et al. 2013), and one randomised study in children has shown a reduction in SOS/VOD incidence (Corbacioglu et al. 2012).

10.4.7 Treatment

As soon as SOS/VOD is suspected, supportive therapy should be initiated. In mild cases of SOS/VOD, close monitoring to detect progression and supportive management is often sufficient.

The monitoring should include:

- Daily weight
- Fluid intake and output
- Abdominal girth
- Blood tests including urea and electrolytes
- Assessment of all sites for bleeding
- Assessment of pain source and level

The supportive management consists of:

- Restricting fluid intake
- Avoidance of hepatotoxic drugs if possible
- Diuretics
- Analgesia
- Blood products

- Electrolytes
- Comfortable positioning
- Psychological support

Defibrotide is licenced for the treatment of severe hepatic SOS/VOD. Defibrotide protects the endothelial cells, reduces inflammation and restores thrombo-fibrinolytic balance (Richardson et al. 2013). The recommended dose is 6.25 mg/kg body weight administered as a 2 h, IV infusion every 6 h (to a total dose of 25 mg/kg/day). Recommendation for treatment duration is at least 21 days but should continue until the symptoms and signs of VOD resolve. Defibrotide is generally well tolerated (Keating 2014) but should not be used with products that affect platelet aggregation, e.g. non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), anticoagulant therapy or other products that increase the risk of bleeding.

10.4.8 Nursing Aspects

It is important to perform an assessment of each new patient considering the risk factors mentioned above and to take baseline measurements including defining a threshold of >5% for weight gain. Most baseline measurements will be standard for HSCT patients, but in patients at high risk for SOS/VOD, assessments of abdominal girth and right upper quadrant (RUQ) pain and inspection of sclera may be added.

Standard daily monitoring should include temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respiration rate and saturation. One of the most important daily monitoring aspects is an accurate fluid balance including intake, output and weight since fluid imbalance is one of the earliest signs of SOS/VOD. A fluid retention that does not respond to diuretics represents an early sign of endothelial damage.

When performing abdominal girth measurement, it is advised to use a marked line for placement of the measuring tape and to choose one position (i.e. sitting/standing/lying) for the patient, to be used for each subsequent measure. Abdominal discomfort, tenderness, pain (in particular RUQ pain) and inspection for collateral circulation and/or spiders should always be included in abdominal assessment. For nurses trained in palpation and percussion for ascites, bulkiness, liver margins and size, these assessments should also be performed.

The sclera and skin should be assessed for bleeding/bruising and discoloration (jaundice).

Knowledge of the relevant reference ranges of daily laboratory values, particularly liver enzymes, serum bilirubin, blood count, electrolytes, urea and serum creatinine, will enable early detection of significant change or trend in values since nurses are likely to take blood samples and see the results first and can alert medical colleagues.

All findings should be precisely documented and any changes promptly reported. This is especially important in patients identified as high risk as early detection of SOS/VOD may affect the overall outcome.

If SOS/VOD is suspected, the monitoring should be intensified and adequate vascular access established. In addition to standard lab tests, coagulation parameters should be performed daily. If possible, hepatotoxic drugs should be avoided and diuretics and pain medication administered as needed. Electrolyte replacement may be necessary, and in case of thrombocytopenia or bleeding, blood products will be administered. If fluid restriction is enforced, it is important to know the smallest volumes that can be safely delivered.

The patient may also need assistance to be comfortably positioned.

When SOS/VOD has been diagnosed, the supportive care and monitoring will be further intensified including assessing for failure in respiratory, cardiac and renal function. Defibrotide treatment will most likely be started, and patients in need

for ventilatory support should be prepared for transfer to the intensive care unit (ICU).

Patients should be informed and educated to notify the staff of any signs and symptoms that may need closer monitoring or intervention. In case SOS/VOD is diagnosed, both patient and family will need reassurance and support.

10.5 Other Early Complications of Endothelial Origin

10.5.1 Introduction

A number of early HSCT complications seem to be initiated by damage to the vascular endothelium. The most well defined and well described of these complications is sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (SOS)/veno-occlusive disease (VOD) described in the previous section of this chapter. Other syndromes in this group have been named engraftment syndrome (ES), diffuse alveolar haemorrhage (DAH), idiopathic pneumonia syndrome (IPS) and transplant-associated microangiopathy (TMA). The similarities in their clinical manifestations and the lack of established diagnostic criteria often make determination of incidence and differential diagnosis difficult (Soubani and Pandya 2010; Afessa et al. 2012). Although many times mild and with spontaneous recovery, these complications also share the risk for progression to multi-organ failure (MOF)/multi-organ damage (MOD), resulting in a poor outcome.

Ongoing research and efforts for better characterisation and treatment indicate that there will be future changes in terminology and diagnostic criteria, as well as interventions, for the early HSCT complications mentioned here.

10.5.2 Pathogenesis

Several factors in the HSCT setting activate the endothelial cells that line the blood vessels. Contributing factors are the conditioning treatment and use of other drugs such as granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) and calcineurin inhibitors (CNI), e.g. cyclosporine-A, and microbial products translocated through mucosal barriers. The result is that fluid and proteins leak out of tiny blood vessels and flow into surrounding tissues. If unrecognised, this may lead to dangerously low blood pressure and subsequently MOF and shock. The symptoms often appear around the time of neutrophil recovery, i.e. when the absolute neutrophil count (ANC) increases to $\geq 0.5 \times 10^9$/L, which is why the complex process of engraftment may also play a role in activation of endothelial cell damage. The activation of the endothelial cells leads to further damage and inflammation by the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Since the incidence of vascular endothelial syndromes is higher after allogeneic transplantation, alloreactivity (the immune response to non-self cells) is considered to play a role in activation and damage of endothelial cells.

10.6 Engraftment Syndrome (ES)

10.6.1 Definition

ES usually occurs after auto-HSCT although described in allo-HSCT as well, in particular when reduced intensity conditioning (RIC) and cord blood (CB) have been used.

Due to lack of diagnostic criteria, the term ES has been used as synonymous with capillary leak syndrome (CLS), auto-aggression syndrome, peri-engraftment respiratory distress syndrome (PERDS), aseptic shock syndrome and autologous graft-versus-host disease (AGVHD). Although there are differences, their common denominator is that they share some or all symptoms that have been attributed to ES.

Engraftment is defined as when the number of neutrophils in the patient's blood rises to an absolute neutrophil count (ANC) of $\geq 0.5 \times 10^9$/L.

Peri-engraftment can be defined as the period within 5 days of neutrophil engraftment.

10.6.2 Incidence and Prognosis

Due to the diagnosis difficulties, no reliable incidence figures are published although figures

between 10% and 70% have been reported. There is also a lack of survival data. Most cases are mild and respond well to corticosteroid therapy, but ES may progress and lead to transplant-related mortality and decrease in overall survival. Patients requiring mechanical ventilation have a poor prognosis.

10.6.3 Risk Factors

There are a number of potential risk factors related to patient characteristics, disease, previous treatment, conditioning treatment, stem cell source and supportive drug treatment, but there is a lack of consensus, which can in part be contributed to the lack of diagnostic criteria. Changes in HSCT practices with new drugs and alternate stem cell sources may impact the risk factors in the future.

Among the risk factors described are:

- Female gender
- Advanced age
- No or little prior chemotherapy
- Previous use of bortezomib and lenalidomide in multiple myeloma patients
- Cord blood transplantation
- CD34+ cell number and engraftment rate
- G-CSF treatment
- Amphotericin treatment
- Cyclosporine (CyA) treatment
- Auto-HSCT for amyloidosis, multiple myeloma, POEMS (polyneuropathy organomegaly endocrinopathy monoclonal protein and skin abnormalities) syndrome and autoimmune diseases

10.6.4 Diagnosis

There are two tools to aid diagnosis of ES: the Spitzer (2001) and the Maiolino et al. (2003) diagnostic criteria. The clinical manifestations are divided into major or minor clinical criteria (Table 10.8), but Maiolino only has one major criteria, non-infectious fever. The timing of symptoms relative to engraftment also differs between the two, where Maiolino has a stricter time frame from 24 h before to any time after neutrophil recovery compared to Spitzer's 96 h after (Table 10.9). However, in some patients, others have described onset of symptoms from 7 days before (for patients with POEMS) to 7 days after engraftment, and in cases with more severe symptoms, the early symptoms may have been overlooked, why the clinical criteria sometimes could be used regardless of appearance of symptoms in relation to time for engraftment (Chang et al. 2014). C-reactive protein (CRP) is not used for diagnosis in either criteria, but a sudden and significant increase in the CRP level has been found to support the diagnosis.

Table 10.8 Engraftment syndrome criteria

Major criteria	Non-infectious fever	New fever (>38 °C) without documented infection or without response to anti-infectious treatment
	Skin rash	Maculopapular exanthema in >25% of body surface area
	Pulmonary oedema	Confirmed by X-ray or CT
		Without signs of infection, cardiac failure or pulmonary embolism
Minor criteria	Weight gain	>2.5% from baseline
	Hepatic dysfunction	Bilirubin ≥2 mg/dL (34 μmol/L) or transaminases (ASAT/ALAT) ≥2 times increase from baseline
	Renal dysfunction	Creatinine ≥2 times increase from baseline
	Transient encephalopathy	Without other cause
	Diarrhoea	≥2 liquid stools per day without documented infection

Table 10.9 Spitzer and Maiolino criteria

	Spitzer criteria	Maiolino criteria
Symptoms	3 major or 2 major and 1 minor	Non-infectious fever and 1 minor
Timing relative engraftment	Within 96 h after	24 h before or at any time after

10.6.5 Prevention

Early recognition of signs and symptoms is the most important aspect since there is no standard prophylaxis for ES, although there is evidence that corticosteroids may prevent this complication.

10.6.6 Treatment

Before treatment is initiated, other diagnoses such as infection, drug rash, diarrhoea associated with infection or medication and intravenous (IV)-related fluid overload should be excluded. Broad-spectrum antibiotics should be used until infection is ruled out (Cornell et al. 2015). If cultures are negative, symptoms remain after 48–72 h of antibiotic treatment and other aetiologies can be excluded, corticosteroid treatment can be initiated.

Methylprednisolone in doses of 1–3 mg/kg/day IV are recommended until symptoms begin to subside. Response to treatment is usually seen within 2–3 days. Corticosteroids could then be switched to oral administration and should be slowly tapered. Early intervention with steroids prevents progression to more severe manifestations, and in the vast majority (80%) of patients, there is then complete resolution in less than 6 days. In cases with no response to steroid treatment after 72 h, biopsies of affected organs may be necessary. If biopsies are performed for evaluation of diarrhoea, the findings may not be able to distinguish from GvHD. This does however not exclude ES since overlap and coexistence with GvHD is possible. If a biopsy supports the ES diagnosis, treatment with additional immune suppressants should be started and continued until response. If the result of the biopsy is an alternative diagnosis, the patient should be treated accordingly.

In addition to pharmacological treatment, supportive care with IV fluids, with electrolyte supplement as needed, and oxygen therapy may be necessary depending on the symptoms.

In cases of encephalopathy or severe ES with MOF, plasma exchange may be considered (Yeoung-Hau and Syed 2014).

10.6.7 Nursing Aspects

Daily nursing assessments are critical in early detection and diagnosis of all complications to HSCT. The patient's general well-being should be assessed. Listed in Table 10.10 are the nursing

Table 10.10 Nursing assessments and actions

Assessment	Action
Temperature	Monitor frequently, and in cases of fever ≥38 °C, obtain cultures from blood, urine, stools or other suspected sites of infection and keep the patient comfortable
Pulse and blood pressure	Monitor frequently in order to detect, e.g. circulatory symptoms of fluid overload, infection and pulmonary dysfunction
Respirations and saturation	Monitor frequently, and if symptoms of pulmonary dysfunction, e.g. dyspnoea, tachypnoea, change in breathing pattern, chest pain or cough, are present, a chest X-ray or pulmonary CT scan may be performed. In order to ensure adequate oxygenation, administration of oxygen therapy may be necessary
Weight and fluid balance	Assess the patient's weight daily, and perform calculation of fluid balance at least once daily to note any trends. If oedema, ascites or other symptoms of fluid retention occur, diuretics should be administered as ordered
Skin	Perform assessment at least daily, and note any rashes. If a rash is detected, review the patient's medication chart for medication that may cause drug rash
	Jaundice and yellow sclera are signs of liver dysfunction, and bilirubin levels should be checked
Stools	Monitor frequency and consistency, and obtain cultures and test for *Clostridium difficile* in cases of diarrhoea in order to rule out infection. Pale stools are a sign of liver dysfunction, and bilirubin levels should be checked
Lab tests	Be alert to any trends or changes in ANC, bilirubin, transaminases and creatinine and to result of cultures
Mental status	Assess regularly for confusion, lethargy, headache, visual disturbances and aphasia, and note any changes
Patient information and education	Educate the patient about signs and symptoms of ES, and explain why it is important to report any symptoms without delay. Explain actions taken in diagnosis and management of ES, and provide emotional support to both patient and family

Thoele (2014)

assessments that should be carried out frequently, the findings that could indicate ES and actions that can be taken in order to detect or rule out the ES diagnosis. All findings should be documented and any abnormalities promptly reported to the treating physician.

If steroid treatment is started, the patient should be assessed for possible side effects such as hyperglycaemia and insomnia. Blood glucose should be monitored daily.

10.7 Idiopathic Pneumonia Syndrome

10.7.1 Definition

Pulmonary complications (PCs) are the leading cause of patients' admission to intensive care unit (ICU) after HSCT. PC can be divided into infectious or non-infectious. One of the non-infectious PCs is idiopathic pneumonia syndrome (IPS).

For the purpose of this chapter, IPS will be defined and described according to the definition by the American Thoracic Society (Panoskaltsis-Mortari et al. 2011):

> An idiopathic syndrome of pneumopathy after HSCT, with evidence of widespread alveolar injury and in which an infectious etiology and cardiac dysfunction, acute renal failure or iatrogenic fluid overload have been excluded.

The alveolar injury is a result from the release of proinflammatory cytokines during engraftment, increasing alveolar permeability and causing diffuse alveolar or interstitial infiltrates.

IPS also includes a subset of diagnoses of primary lung injuries classified according to the anatomical sites of inflammation. They can either be related to the pulmonary parenchyma (e.g. acute interstitial pneumonitis and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)), the airway endothelium (e.g. bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BO)), the vascular endothelium (e.g. different forms of ES (PERDS, CLS)) or be unclassifiable. Other less frequent non-infectious PCs have also been identified. None of these entities will be described here.

10.7.2 Incidence and Prognosis

PCs are common in HSCT recipients and a major cause of morbidity and mortality. IPS is more often seen in patients undergoing allogeneic HSCT, with a mean estimated incidence of 1–10% (6% in auto-HSCT) (Chi et al. 2013). The overall outcome is different between auto- and allo-HSCT recipients, and where IPS in patients who have undergone auto-HSCT usually has a favourable prognosis, the mortality is 60–80% in the allo-setting (Carreras 2012). IPS has a progressive nature, and patients with progression to respiratory failure and need for mechanical ventilation have a very poor prognosis with 95% mortality.

10.7.3 Risk Factors

For IPS, the following risk factors have been identified (Diab et al. 2016):

- Older age
- Low performance status (Karnofsky score)
- High-intensity conditioning regimen
- Total body irradiation (TBI)
- Allo-HSCT
- Acute graft versus host disease (aGvHD)
- Malignant disease

Pre-transplant pulmonary function abnormalities have also been associated with early respiratory failure and mortality (Chien et al. 2005).

10.7.4 Diagnosis

The most common signs and symptoms are fever, non-productive cough, rales, dyspnoea, tachypnoea and low saturation, with an increasing need for oxygen support.

The diagnosis will be based on alveolar injury confirmed clinically, radiologically and/or functionally. X-ray will reveal diffuse pulmonary infiltrates. Infection must have been ruled out by negative cultures and tests in bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) or lung biopsies (Zhu et al. 2008), and there should be no evidence of cardiac dys-

function, acute renal failure or treatment-related fluid overload. It is however considered possible that some cases of IPS may be caused by an unidentified underlying infection since infections may lack typical signs and symptoms in the neutropenic patient. The IPS diagnosis can thus be supported by lack of improvement despite broad-spectrum antibiotics and other antimicrobial drugs.

The typical onset will be around day +20, but IPS may also present later after HSCT, which is why it is important to be on alert for this complication, also after discharge from the hospital, in the outpatient setting.

There are no standard guidelines for diagnosis and evaluation of PC after HSCT, but the course of illness should be considered when differential diagnoses are to be excluded. When symptoms occur, IPS may rapidly progress to pulmonary dysfunction requiring mechanical ventilation.

10.7.5 Prevention

For patients at risk for IPS, careful consideration of treatment options pre- and post-transplant such as avoiding conditioning with TBI or high-intensity regimens and choice of GvHD prophylaxis may be beneficial. Monitoring of pulmonary function and symptoms after transplantation will enable prompt intervention.

In patients with decreased lung function prior to HSCT and suspected lung injury in the post-transplant setting, close collaboration with pulmonary specialist or the intensive care team may prevent progression of pulmonary dysfunction (Elbahlawan et al. 2016).

10.7.6 Treatment

Beyond supportive care, there is no proven treatment for IPS. In auto-HSCT patients, corticosteroids can be effective, but this is usually not the case for allo-transplanted patients, irrespective of steroid dose. Studies with etanercept, a TNF-α-binding protein, given in combination with corticosteroids, have reported improved pulmonary function in patients with IPS following allogeneic HSCT and may be considered (Carreras 2012), although a small but later study (Yanik et al. 2014) could not confirm the benefit of this treatment.

10.7.7 Nursing Aspects

The close monitoring and daily nursing assessments that apply for all HSCT patients should be employed. Depending on risk factors, extra attention may be needed to early and subtle symptoms of pulmonary dysfunction, such as decrease in saturation, shortness of breath and cough. Monitoring of daily weight and fluid balance, with administration of diuretics if necessary, will prevent and rule out fluid overload. Several different tests and examinations may be performed to establish or rule out the diagnosis of IPS. Sputum cultures and laboratory tests, such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for mycoplasma, and serum galactomannan for *Aspergillus* may need to be obtained and chest X-ray or computed tomography (CT) scan performed to rule out infection. In case a BAL, with or without transbronchial biopsy, will be performed, information to the patient and preparation prior to the procedure as well as support both before and after and post procedure monitoring is important. The BAL may add substantial discomfort, in particular to an already seriously ill patient. Other lung function tests may also be repeated, for comparison with pre-transplant results.

When corticosteroids are administered, the blood glucose levels should be followed daily, and the patient should be informed of and assessed for other side effects, e.g. insomnia. Oxygen therapy may need to be administered and non-invasive positive-pressure ventilation necessary. Respiratory difficulties generate anxiety, and the patient should be offered psychological support as well as assistance with positioning and breathing techniques and exercises. Medication for anxiety may be necessary. Referral to a physiotherapist, respiratory therapist or other staff with expertise in pulmonary diseases should be made for advice on tools and exercises that may help the patient maintain pulmonary function and prevent worsening of the condition.

If the condition shows no signs of improving, the patient should be prepared for transfer to the ICU.

Identification of patients at risk, prompt intervention to signs and symptoms of pulmonary dysfunction and close collaboration within the team will increase the chances of a positive outcome.

10.8 Diffuse Alveolar Haemorrhage

10.8.1 Definition

Diffuse alveolar haemorrhage (DAH) is a life-threatening pulmonary complication occurring after allogeneic HCST without an explicit aetiology or a standard treatment (Park 2013; Wu et al. 2021). It is differentiated from idiopathic pneumonia syndrome (IPS) through confirmation of pulmonary haemorrhage by bronchoscopy and bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL). The bleeding can be either insidious, causing a gradual pulmonary dysfunction, or a more acute bleeding into the alveolar space. Damage to the alveolar-capillary barrier from conditioning treatment and the engraftment process with recovery of neutrophils leads to entry of blood into the alveolar space.

10.8.2 Incidence and Prognosis

An approximate incidence of around 2% up to 20%, with a mortality rate ranging between 50% and 100%, has been reported for DAH in HSCT recipients (Afessa et al. 2002; Majhail et al. 2006; Carreras 2012; Wu et al. 2021). The incidence is similar between auto- and allo-HSCT.

The implication of prognostic factors has not been well studied, but early-onset DAH (within the first 30 days after transplant) in patients undergoing auto-HSCT has a favourable prognosis.

10.8.3 Risk Factors

Risk factors for the development of DAH in HSCT recipients include:

- Older age
- Total body irradiation (TBI)
- Myeloablative conditioning (MAC) regimens
- Acute graft-versus-host (aGvHD) disease

10.8.4 Diagnosis

Among the initial symptoms of DAH, dyspnoea (90.2%) comes first, followed by haemoptysis (45.7%) and fever in 29.3% of patients (Wu et al. 2021). Hypoxemia may be present, and diffuse or focal interstitial or alveolar infiltrates can be found on chest X-ray or computed tomography (CT) scan. With such findings, bronchoscopy with BAL and transbronchial biopsy is indicated, although performing these invasive tests in patients with severe illness and unstable respiratory status is a challenge.

The diagnosis is based on BAL findings, which become progressively more blood stained, indicating blood in the alveoli. Other causes, such as heart failure and fluid overload, should be excluded. Infection needs to be ruled out by obtaining relevant cultures. Presence of hemosiderin-laden macrophages in BAL fluid is not diagnostic for DAH but may support the diagnosis.

It is often very difficult to differentiate DAH from IPS and the ES form of respiratory distress (PERDS). IPS is more common in allo-HSCT, after engraftment, and does not respond to corticosteroids and has a more progressive nature. In PERDS, the majority of patients do not have BAL findings, becoming progressively bloodier.

The mean onset of DAH has been reported on day 24 after transplant and 6 days after absolute neutrophil count (ANC) recovery.

10.8.5 Prevention

Reversal of some risk factors, e.g. choice of conditioning treatment, may be possible, but otherwise no prophylaxis exists.

10.8.6 Treatment

Corticosteroids, using methylprednisolone followed by slow tapering, is considered first-line

treatment even if efficacy can be questioned. With early diagnosis and treatment with steroid therapy, respiratory failure can often be prevented. Non-invasive ventilation may decrease mortality although the majority of patients with DAH require mechanical ventilation, and sepsis and MOF/MOD will cause death in a large proportion of patients (Rabe et al. 2010).

Other pharmacological therapies, as well as plasma exchange, have been tried for treatment of DAH. Recombinant factor VIIa (rFVIIa) has been administered and achieved temporary control of bleeding. Tranexamic acid or the TNFα-inhibitor etanercept has been used in addition to corticosteroids but have not proved to be effective.

Transfusion of platelets and red blood cells (RBC) may be necessary.

10.8.7 Nursing Aspects

Patients need frequent monitoring for early detection of any pulmonary symptoms. Respiration rate and saturation should be assessed together with temperature and other standard assessments. If cough is noted, this should be reported to the team and the treating physician. Cultures and blood tests may be necessary to rule out infection. Cultures should be performed according to signs and symptoms, but screening cultures can be collected to possibly enable detection of occult infection. The patient's circulatory status and fluid balance should be controlled by monitoring pulse, blood pressure, weight and input and output.

The patient should be instructed to report all symptoms, and if BAL and lung biopsy will be performed, patient information and support throughout the whole procedure is vital. Administration of transfusions, oxygen therapy and non-invasive ventilation should be performed as ordered, and since dyspnoea and other breathing difficulties are associated with a great deal of anxiety, patient support, sometimes with pharmacological treatment, is crucial. Proper positioning together with breathing exercises using appropriate breathing technique may alleviate some discomfort.

During high-dose corticosteroid treatment, blood glucose should be monitored, and it is important to be alert to steroid-related changes in the patient's mental status.

10.9 Transplant-Associated Thrombotic Microangiopathy (TA-TMA)

10.9.1 Definition

Transplant-associated thrombotic microangiopathy (TA-TMA) is an increasingly recognised complication of hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) with high morbidity and mortality (Young et al. 2021). It is characterised by a triad of endothelial cell activation, complement dysregulation and microvascular haemolytic anaemia and has the potential to cause end organ dysfunction, multiple organ dysfunction syndrome and death, but clinical features mimic other disorders following HSCT, delaying diagnosis.

10.9.2 Incidence

The incidence will vary with the criteria used to diagnose TMA. In retrospective data, the incidence is approximately 4% in auto-HSCT, and 7% has been reported in allo-HSCT (Carreras 2012), whereas one prospective study has shown an incidence close to 40% (Jodele et al. 2015). Conditioning intensity, myeloablative (MAC) versus reduced (RIC), has not shown any difference in incidence in allo-HSCT. The gold standard for diagnosis of TA-TMA is based on characteristic histologic findings, although bleeding risk often precludes tissue diagnosis (Young et al. 2021).

10.9.3 Prognosis

As with many early complications in HSCT, prompt recognition of early signs and symptoms with early diagnosis and intervention will increase the chances of a positive outcome. Cases of mild TMA where calcineurin inhibitor (CNI), e.g. cyclosporine, tacrolimus and sirolimus, is the cause generally have a good prognosis if CNI can be discontinued. If TMA is not related to CNI treatment, the prognosis is worse due to lack of effective treatment options. Exact figures for mortality rate are difficult to establish, but in

patients with TMA and multi-organ involvement, the mortality could be as high as >90%.

10.9.4 Risk Factors

Use of total body irradiation (TBI) in conditioning treatment, CNI, graft-versus-host disease (GvHD), infections (e.g. cytomegalovirus (CMV) and fungal infections) and unrelated donor transplant (in particular if mismatched) are all considered risk factors or triggers for TMA, although reported data is conflicting (Nadir and Brenner 2012; Rosenthal 2016).

10.9.5 Diagnosis

TMA usually has an onset between 1 and 2 months after HSCT but can be seen both earlier and later.

Several slightly different criteria for diagnosis of TMA are being used (Sahin et al. 2016). See adapted Table 10.11. The diagnosis is difficult but

Table 10.11 TMA diagnostic criteria

	Blood and Marrow Transplant Clinical Trials Network toxicity committee consensus definition for TMA (BBMT 2005)[a]	International Working Group Definition for TMA (Haematologica 2007)[b]	Probable TMA (Transplantation 2010)[c]	Diagnostic Criteria for TA-TMA (Blood Rev. 2015)[d]
				Tissue biopsy confirming microangiopathy ***or*** criteria below
1.	Peripheral Blood Smear with RBC fragmentation and ≥2 shistocytes per high power field	>4% shistocytes in peripheral blood	>4% shistocytes in peripheral blood	LDH above upper limit of normal (ULN)
2.	Concurrent increase in LD	Thrombocytopenia $<50 \times 10^9$/L or decrease of 50% from baseline	Concurrent increase in LD	Proteinuria on random analysis with ≥30 mg/dL
3.	Concurrent renal dysfunction (doubling of serum creatinine from baseline) an/or neurologic dysfunction without other explanations	Sudden and persistant increase in LD	Thrombocytopenia $<50 \times 10^9$/L or decrease of 50% from baseline	Hypertension
4.	Negative DAT end IAT	Decrease in Hgb concentration or increase in RBC transfusion requirement	Negative DAT and IAT	Thrombocytopenia $<50 \times 10^9$/L or decrease of 50% from baseline
5.		Decease in serum haptoglobin	Decrease in serum haptoglobin	Hgb below lower limit of normal (LLN) or anaemia with transfusion requirement
6.			Absence or coagulopathy	Shistocytes in peripheral blood or microangiopathy on tissue specimen
7.				sC5b-9 above ULN
				1 + 2 + 3: Consider diagnosis of TAM and monitor very closely
				2 + 7: If present at diagnosis poor outcome is apprehended. Consider active treatment.

[a] Ho et al. (2005)
[b] Ruutu et al. (2007)
[c] Cho et al. (2010)
[d] Jodele et al. (2015)

can be confirmed with a biopsy tissue sample although this invasive test may not always be an option for the seriously ill HSCT recipient. TMA has clinical similarities with idiopathic thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), and laboratory testing for the von Willebrand factor regulator ADAMTS13 can be performed to support the diagnosis. In classical TTP, there is a severe deficiency, while no significant decrease of ADAMTS13 is seen in TMA (Graf and Stern 2012).

Renal TMA should be suspected if the patient requires higher doses of antihypertensives than would be expected considering the situation and concomitant and/or nephrotoxic medication. Example of a differential diagnosis is virus-related nephropathy.

Symptoms such as tachycardia, chest pain and hypoxemia should lead to suspicion of lung involvement and pulmonary hypertension. The diagnosis can be supported by findings of cardiomegaly on chest X-ray, pericardial effusion on transthoracic echocardiography and blood tests.

Intestinal TMA presents with the same symptoms as acute GvHD (aGvHD), abdominal pain, diarrhoea, vomiting and gastrointestinal bleeding. The symptoms can also be mistaken for infectious colitis, but in TMA, the cause of the bleeding is ischemia in the bowels due to microangiopathy. In addition to the general diagnostic criteria, specific criteria for gastrointestinal TMA have been proposed. Besides the clinical symptoms, X-ray findings with signs of ileus and thick mucosal wall and endoscopy with mucosal erosions and haemorrhages are included in the gastrointestinal TMA diagnostic criteria, but the only definite diagnostic test is a biopsy tissue sample.

As a result of generalised vascular injury in TMA, polyserositis with pericardial and pleural effusion and ascites can occur. It can easily be mistaken for GvHD, but where GvHD is more seldom associated with microangiopathic anaemia, proteinuria and hypertension, these symptoms are common in TMA.

10.9.6 Prevention

No specific prophylaxis exists, so vigilant monitoring of clinical signs and symptoms is necessary. CNI concentration in blood, lactate dehydrogenase (LD or LDH) and serum creatinine should be closely followed, i.e. two to three times/week, with laboratory testing. Additional blood tests with peripheral blood smear, haptoglobin and direct and indirect antiglobulin tests (DAT and IAT) should be performed if an increase is seen in CNI, LD and creatinine levels.

10.9.7 Treatment

There is currently no established treatment for TMA, but supportive measures should always be taken. Traditionally, the first step is to discontinue CNI, despite paucity of evidence for this action. It is also important to treat infections, GvHD and hypertension. Changing to other GvHD prophylaxis and use of antimicrobial drugs should be based on a risk-benefit assessment where, for example, nephrotoxicity is considered. Administration of diuretics may be necessary to treat fluid and sodium retention due to steroid treatment. Vasodilators and renin-angiotensin antagonists may also be used to treat hypertension.

It is recommended to restrict platelet transfusion in microangiopathic disease, but this is often impossible due to the need to prevent bleeding complications.

A potential treatment for TMA is eculizumab. Eculizumab stops the complement-activating cascade preventing formation of C5b-9. This leads to hampering of the intravascular haemolysis. Eculizumab has shown effect when started early after diagnosis (Jodele et al. 2015). Monitoring for effect by following serum concentration levels is important, and dose adjustments may be necessary to reach and maintain the desired therapeutic levels and effect.

In a small number of cases, successful treatment with rituximab and other monoclonal antibodies has been reported.

Treatment attempts have also been made with defibrotide at the same dosing as approved for treatment of severe sinusoidal obstruction syndrome/veno-occlusive disease (SOS/VOD) but with variable results.

Total plasma exchange (TPE) has been tried due to the clinical similarities between TMA and

TTP, but where TTP can be successfully treated with TPE, it is not recommended for TMA due to poor response rates.

10.9.8 Nursing Aspects

Careful assessments will facilitate early diagnosis of, or ruling out, TMA and thus improve the outcome. Close monitoring of vital signs and being alert to any changes or trends is standard. Keeping track of fluid balance and weight is equally important. Blood pressure should be kept below 140/90 in adult patients (Jodele et al. 2015). The patient's urine should be monitored for proteinuria and the patient instructed about what abnormal findings and symptoms to look for and to notify staff of any discomfort including signs of gastrointestinal bleeding. If invasive tests such as biopsies are to be performed, proper preparation and support is vital.

If pharmacological treatment with eculizumab is started, serum level concentration needs to be followed. Treatment with rituximab and defibrotide should be administered as ordered, and the patient should be monitored accordingly for effect and side effects.

Since the onset of TMA can occur after discharge from the transplant unit, it is important to be observant to symptoms and consider this diagnosis even in the outpatient setting.

Acknowledgements Nordic Oral Care in Cancer Group, United Kingdom Oral Management in Cancer Group, European Oral Care in Cancer Group.

References

Afessa B, Tefferi A, Litzow MR, et al. Outcome of diffuse alveolar hemorrhage in hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2002;166:1364–8. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200208-792OC. Originally Published in Press as on September 25, 2002.

Afessa B, Abdulai RM, Kremers WK, et al. Risk factors and outcome of pulmonary complications after autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplant. Chest. 2012;141(2):442–50. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.10-2889.

Al-Dasoogi N, Sonis ST, Bowen JM, Bateman E, Blijlevens N, Gibson RJ, Logan RM, Nair RG, Stringer AM, Yazbeck R, Elad S, Lalla RV. Emerging evidence of the pathology of mucositis. Support Care Cancer. 2013;21:3233–41.

Bonifazi F, Barbato F, Ravaioli F, Sessa M, Defrancesco I, Arpinati M, Cavo M, Colecchia A. Diagnosis and treatment of VOD/SOS after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Front Immunol. 2020;11:489. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2020.00489. PMID: 32318059; PMCID: PMC7147118.

British Dental Health Foundation. 2021. https://www.dentalhealth.org/tell-me-about/topic/caring-for-teeth. Accessed 22 Apr 2022.

Carreras E. How I manage sinusoidal obstruction syndrome after haematopoietic cell transplantation. Br J Haematol. 2015;168:481–91. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.13215. First published online 17 November 2014.

Cesaro S. Haemorrhagic cystitis and renal dysfunction. In: Carrera, et al., editors. EBMT handbook. Berlin: Springer Open; 2019. https://www.ebmt.org/sites/default/files/2019-01/2019_Book_TheEBMTHandbook.pdf.

Chang L, Frame D, Braun T, et al. Engraftment syndrome after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation predicts poor outcomes. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2014;20:1407–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbmt.2014.05.022.

Chi AK, Soubani AO, White AC, et al. An update on pulmonary complications of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Chest. 2013;144(6):1913–22. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.12-1708.

Chien JW, et al. Pulmonary function testing prior to hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;35(5):429–35.

Cho BS, et al. Validation of recently proposed consensus criteria for thrombotic microangiopathy after allogeneic hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation. Transplantation. 2010;90(8):918–26.

Corbacioglu S, et al. Defibrotide for prophylaxis of hepatic veno-occlusive disease in paediatric haemopoietic stem-cell transplantation: an open-label, phase 3, randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2012;379:1301–9.

Corbacioglu S, et al. Diagnosis and severity criteria for sinusoidal obstruction syndrome/veno-occlusive disease in pediatric patients: a new classification from the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2018;53:138–45.

Cornell RF, et al. Engraftment syndrome after autologous stem cell transplantation: an update unifying the definition and management approach. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:2061–8.

Daniels R, et al. The sepsis six and the severe sepsis resuscitation bundle: a prospective observational cohort study. Emerg Med J. 2011;28:507–12. E-pub 2011, October 29.

de Padua SL. Hemorrhagic cystitis after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplants is the complex result of BK virus infection, preparative regimen intensity and donor type. Haematologica. 2010;95:1183–90.

deLeve LD, et al. Vascular disorders of the liver. Hepatology. 2009;49:1729–64.

Diab M, et al. Major pulmonary complications after hematopoietic stem cell transplant. Exp Clin Transplant. 2016;14(3):259–70.

Dignan FL, et al. BCSH/BSBMT guideline: diagnosis and management of veno-occlusive disease (sinusoidal obstruction syndrome) following haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Br J Haematol. 2013;163:444–57.

Droller MJ, Saral R, Santos G. Prevention of cyclophosphamide-induced hemorrhagic cystitis. Urology. 1982;20:256–8.

Dropulic LK, Jones RJ. Polyomavirus BK infection in blood and marrow transplant recipients. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;41:11–8.

Duyck J, Vandamme K, Muller P, Teughels W. Overnight storage of removable dentures in alkaline peroxide-based tablets affects biofilm mass and composition. J Dent. 2013;41(12):1281–9.

Eisenberg S. Hepatic sinusoidal obstruction syndrome in patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplant. Oncol Nurs Forum. 2008;3:385–97.

Elad S, Raber-Durlacher J, Brennan MT, et al. Basic oral care for hematology-oncology patients and hematopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients: a position paper from the joint task force of the Multinational Association of Supportive Care in Cancer/International Society of Oral Oncology (MASCC/ISOO) and the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). J Support Care. 2014;23(1):223–36.

Elad S, Raber-Durlacher JE, Brennan MT, et al. Basic oral care for hematology–oncology patients and hematopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients: a position paper from the joint task force of the Multinational Association of Supportive Care in Cancer/International Society of Oral Oncology (MASCC/ISOO) and the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). Support Care Cancer. 2015;23:223–36.

Elbahlawan L, et al. A critical care and transplantation-based approach to acute respiratory failure after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in children. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22:617–26.

E-learning package Sepsis and Sepsis Six. http://sonet.nottingham.ac.uk/. Accessed online 11 Sep 2017.

European Society for Medical Oncology. Immunotherapy-related side effects and their management: an ESMO guide for patients. esmo.org; 2017.

Graf L, Stern M. Acute phase after haematopoietic stem cell transplantation - bleeding and thrombotic complications 2012. Hamostaseologie. 2012;32(1):56–62.

Gussgard AM, Hope AJ, Jokstad A, Tenenbaum H, Wood R. Assessment of cancer therapy-induced oral mucositis using a patient-reported oral mucositis experience questionnaire. PLoS One. 2014;9:e91733.

Hannen JB, Carbonnel F, Robert C, et al. Management of toxicities from immunotherapy: ESMO clinical practice guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up ESMO guidelines committee. Ann Oncol. 2017;1(28):119–42.

Hassan M, Ljungman P. Cytostatika. Stockholm: Liber; 2003.

Ho VT, et al. Blood and marrow transplant clinical trials network toxicity committee consensus summary: thrombotic microangiopathy after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2005;11:571–5.

Hosokawa K, Aoki G, Ohata K, et al. Effectiveness of hyperbaric oxygen therapy for virus-associated hemorrhagic cystitis after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Int J Hematol. 2021;114:109–15. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12185-021-03120-y.

Jodele S, et al. A new paradigm: diagnosis and management of HSCT-associated thrombotic microangiopathy as multi-system endothelial injury. Blood Rev. 2015;29(3):191–204.

Jones RJ, Lee KS, Beschorner WE, Vogel VG, Grochow LB, Braine HG, et al. Venoocclusive disease of the liver following bone marrow transplantation. Transplantation. 1987;44:778–83.

Keating GM. Defibrotide: a review of its use in severe hepatic veno-occlusive disease following haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Clin Drug Investig. 2014;34:895–904.

Kee PPL, et al. Diagnostic yield of timing blood culture collection relative to fever. Pediatr Inf Dis J. 2016;35(8):846–50.

Lalla RV, Bowen J, Barasch A, et al. Mucositis Guidelines Leadership Group of the Multinational Association of Supportive Care in Cancer and International Society of Oral Oncology (MASCC/ISOO). MASCC/ ISOO clinical practice guidelines for the management of mucositis secondary to cancer therapy. Cancer. 2014;120(10):1453–61.

Leung AYH, et al. Polyoma BK virus and haemorrhagic cystitis in haematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a changing paradigm. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;36:929–37.

Lunde LE, Dasaraju S, Cao Q, Cohn CS, Reding M, Bejanyan N, Trottier B, Rogosheske J, Brunstein C, Warlick E, Young JA, Weisdorf DJ, Ustun C. Hemorrhagic cystitis after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation: risk factors, graft source and survival. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50(11):1432–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2015.162. Epub 2015 Jul 13. PMID: 26168069; PMCID: PMC5343753.

Maiolino A, et al. Engraftment syndrome following autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2003;31:393–7.

Majhail NS, et al. Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage and infection-associated alveolar hemorrhage following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: related and high-risk clinical syndromes. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2006;12:1038–46.

Martino R. Other life-threatening infections. In: Carrera, et al., editors. EBMT handbook. Berlin: Springer Open; 2019. https://www.ebmt.org/sites/default/files/2019-01/2019_Book_TheEBMTHandbook.pdf.

McDonald GB, et al. Venoocclusive disease of the liver after bone marrow transplantation: diagnosis,

incidence and predisposing factors. Hepatology. 1984;4:116–22.
McDonald GB, et al. Veno-occlusive disease of the liver and multi organ failure after bone marrow transplantation: a cohort study of 355 patients. Ann Intern Med. 1993;118:255–67.
Mesna Summary of Product Characteristics (SPC) [in Swedish]. https://lakemedelsverket.se/LMF/Lakemedelsinformation/?nplid=19900208000063&type=product. Accessed online 11 Sep 2017.
Mikulska M. Infection control and isolation procedures. In: Carrera, et al., editors. EBMT handbook. Berlin: Springer Open; 2019. https://www.ebmt.org/sites/default/files/2019-01/2019_Book_TheEBMTHandbook.pdf.
Mohty M, et al. Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome/veno-occlusive disease: current situation and perspectives—a position statement from the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;(50):781–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2015.52. Published online 23 March 2015.
Mohty M, et al. Revised diagnosis and severity criteria for sinusoidal obstruction syndrome/veno-occlusive disease in adult patients: a new classification from the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. BMT. 2016;51:906–12. Published online 2016, May 16.
Nadir Y, Brenner B. Thrombotic complications associated with stem cell transplantation. Blood Rev. 2012;26:183–7.
National Cancer Institute (US). Oral mucositis chemoradiotherapy and hematopoiesis stem cell transplantation patients management of mucositis. 2013. http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/supportivecare/oralcomplications/. Accessed online 3 Apr 2016.
NCI Dictionary of Cancer Terms. https://www.cancer.gov/publications/dictionaries/cancer-terms?cdrid=695987. Accessed 10 Oct 2022.
Nesher L, et al. Utility of routine surveillance blood cultures in asymptomatic allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients with indwelling central venous catheters at a comprehensive cancer center. Am J Infect Control. 2014;42:1084–8.
Panoskaltsis-Mortari A, et al. American Thoracic Society Committee on idiopathic pneumonia syndrome. An official American Thoracic Society research statement: noninfectious lung injury after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: idiopathic pneumonia syndrome. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2011;183(9):1262–79.
Park MS. Diffuse alveolar Hemorrhage. Tuberc Respir Dis. 2013;74:151–62.
Peterson DE, Boers-Doets CB, Bensadoun RJ, Herrstedt J. Management of oral and gastrointestinal mucosal injury: ESMO clinical practice guidelines for diagnosis, treatment, and follow-up. Ann Oncol. 2015;26(Suppl 5):v139–51.
Quinn B, Botti S, Kurstjens M, et al. European oral care in cancer group: oral care guidance and support: first edition; 2016.
Quinn B, Kelly C, Harding J (2019) Oral care in the cancer setting. Dentistry. https://dentistry.co.uk/2019/07/24/oral-care-cancer-setting/. Accessed 22 Apr 2022.
Quinn B, Campbell F, Fulmann L, et al. Oral care of patients in the cancer setting. Cancer Nurs Pract. 2020;19(5):35–42. https://journals.rcni.com/cancer-nursing-practice/cpd/oral-care-of-patients-in-the-cancer-setting-cnp.2020.e1706/print/abs. Accessed 22 Apr 2022.
Quinn B, Berthelsen A, Brandt L, Wallhult E. Oral care support and guidance in cancer (Nordic countries). 1st ed. 2021. http://www.eocc.co.uk/wp-content/uploads/2022/03/Nordic-Oral-Care-Guidance-November-2021-English-V.pdf. Accessed 22 Apr 2022.
Rabe C, et al. Severe respiratory failure due to diffuse alveolar hemorrhage: clinical characteristics and outcome of intensive care. J Crit Care. 2010;25:230–5.
Rhodes A, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43:304–77.
Richardson PG, et al. Drug safety evaluation of defibrotide. Expert Opin Drug Saf. 2013;12(1):123–36.
Rosenthal J. Hematopoietic cell transplantation-associated thrombotic microangiopathy: a review of pathophysiology, diagnosis, and treatment. J Blood Med. 2016;7:181–6.
Rovira M, et al. Chapter 12: Infections after HSCT. In: EBMT-ESH handbook. Berlin: Springer Open; 2012. p. 196–215.
Royal College of Physicians. National Early Warning Score (NEWS) 2 standardising the assessment of acute-illness severity in the NHS. 2019. https://www.rcplondon.ac.uk/projects/outputs/national-early-warning-score-news-2.
Ruutu T, et al. Diagnostic criteria for hematopoietic stem cell transplant-associated microangiopathy: results of a consensus process by an international working group. Haematologica. 2007;92:95–100.
Sahin U, et al. An overview of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation related thrombotic complications. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2016;107:149–55.
Sambunjak D, Nickerson JW, Poklepovic T, Johnson TM, Imai P, Tugwell P, Worthington HV. Flossing for the management of periodontal diseases and dental caries in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011;(12):CD008829.
Savva-Bordalo J, et al. Clinical effectiveness of hyperbaric oxygen therapy for BK-virus-associated hemorrhagic cystitis after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012;47(8):1095–8.
Schorr CA, et al. Severe sepsis and septic shock management and performance improvement. Virulence. 2014;5(1):226–35.
Shorrer MC, Woo SB, Treister NS. Oral graft versus host disease. Dent Clin N Am. 2014;58(2):351–68.
Singer M, et al. The third international consensus definitions for sepsis and septic shock (Sepsis-3). JAMA. 2016;315(8):801–10.

Soubani AO, Pandya CM. The spectrum of non-infectious pulmonary complications following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Hematol Oncol Stem Cel Ther. 2010;3(3):143–57.

Spitzer TR. Engraftment syndrome following autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2001;27:893–8.

Swedish "Pro Sepsis" Programme Group Sepsis. Care Program Severe Sepsis and Septic Shock – Early identification and initial intervention [För Svenska Infektionsläkarföreningen "Pro Sepsis" Programgrupp Sepsis. Vårdprogram svår sepsis och septisk chock – tidig identifiering och initial handläggning. Reviderat oktober 2015] 2015 edition; 2015.

Thoele K. Engraftment syndrome in hematopoietic stem cell transplantations. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2014;18(3):349–54.

Toubert A. Chapter 14. Immune reconstitution after allogeneic HSCT. In: EBMT-ESH handbook on haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. 6th ed. Genova: Forum Service Editore; 2012. p. 235–47.

Umbro I, et al. Possible antiviral effect of ciprofloxacin treatment on polyomavirus BK replication and analysis of non-coding control region sequences. Virol J. 2013;10:274.

Wallhult E, et al. Management of veno-occlusive disease: the multidisciplinary approach to care. Eur J Haematol. 2017;98:322–9.

Watson M, et al. Palliative adult network guidelines. 3rd ed. London: Tricord; 2011.

Wu J, Fu HX, He Y, et al. Risk factors and outcomes of diffuse alveolar haemorrhage after allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56:2097–107. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-021-01293-y.

Yanik GA, et al. Randomized, double-blind placebo-controlled trial of soluble tumor necrosis factor receptor: Enbrel (Etanercept) for the treatment of idiopathic pneumonia syndrome after allogeneic stem cell transplantation: blood and marrow transplant clinical trials network protocol. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2014;20:858–64.

Yeoung-Hau HL, Syed AA. Brain teaser: encephalopathy after stem cell transplantation. Am J Med. 2014;127(4):281–3.

Young JA, Pallas CR, Knovich MA. Transplant-associated thrombotic microangiopathy: theoretical considerations and a practical approach to an unrefined diagnosis. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56:1805–17. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-021-01283-0.

Zhu K-E, et al. Incidence, risks, and outcome of idiopathic pneumonia syndrome early after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Eur J Haematol. 2008;81:461–6.

Supportive Care

11

S. J. van der Linden, M. E. G. Harinck, H. T. Speksnijder, Teija Schröder, Ien Schlösser, Vera Verkerk, Michaela van Bohemen, A. M. Rusman-Vergunst, J. C. Veldhuijzen, and W. J. A. Quak

Abstract

Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) care is highly complex. This chapter focuses on the aspects of supportive care required following HSCT.

Assessment tools are key component of nursing practice and are necessary for planning and providing patient-centered care. HSCT care must be planned, implemented, and evaluated and is underpinned by collaboration with the entire multidisciplinary healthcare team.

With supportive care following HSCT, we ultimately aim to improve the quality of life of our patients in the posttransplant period.

Supportive care extends beyond symptom management and includes social, psychological, and spiritual care. The needs of the patient are multifactorial and can be complex, considering multiple issues at the same time and involving multiple disciplines.

Throughout supportive nursing care, our clinical competence is critical and is complemented by experience, knowledge, and awareness.

Keywords

Supportive care · Assessment · Early warning scores · Oral care · Nutrition · Allied health professionals · Transfusion · Physiotherapy · Spiritual care · Complementary therapies · Music · Touch · Massage · Pediatric

S. J. van der Linden (✉) · M. E. G. Harinck · I. Schlösser · V. Verkerk · M. van Bohemen · A. M. Rusman-Vergunst · J. C. Veldhuijzen · W. J. A. Quak
Erasmus MC, Rotterdam, The Netherlands
e-mail: s.vanderlinden@erasmusmc.nl; m.harinck@erasmusmc.nl; h.schlosser@erasmusmc.nl; v.verkerk@erasmusmc.nl; m.vanbohemen@erasmusmc.nl; a.vergunst@erasmusmc.nl; j.c.veldhuijzen@erasmusmc.nl; W.quak@erasmusmc.nl

H. T. Speksnijder
Rotterdam University of Applied Sciences, Rotterdam, The Netherlands
e-mail: h.t.speksnijder@erasmusmc.nl

T. Schröder
Helsinki University Hospital for Children and Adolescents, Helsinki, Finland
e-mail: Teija.Schroder@hus.fi

11.1 Nursing Assessment

Highly specialized and complex nursing care is essential for the disease- and treatment-related health problems of patients with hematological diagnoses (Kluin-Nelemans and Tanasale-Huisman 2013). The diagnoses within hematology are diverse but generally associated with a specific set of symptoms. Hematological diseases

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_11

can be broadly divided into malignant and non-malignant hematological diseases. The underlying hematological disease and cumulative effects of previous therapy can influence the degree and range of side effects and symptoms experienced following HSCT conditioning therapy. These effects can manifest as physical complaints such as fatigue, fever, infection, and bleeding and can result in complex illness necessitating specialist care and treatment. Psychological concerns are common and can frequently manifest as low-level anxiety and depression and less often as features of significant trauma. As a key element of the multidisciplinary team, nurses are ideally placed to identify and assess symptoms due to illness or treatment at an early stage. HSCT nurses have extensive knowledge that contributes to treatment optimization. Assessment is undertaken frequently to reflect the dynamic nature and rapidly changing clinical picture and will take into account the patient's vital signs, blood results, and symptoms as well as knowledge of their baseline physical function. By taking the medical and social history of the patient into consideration, we can increase our awareness of the potential care problems that may arise. The understanding and assimilation of information derived from these sources in conjunction with standardized assessment tools and instruments enable measurable and objective care delivery.

11.2 Pain Assessment

In certain hematological diseases such as lymphoma or multiple myeloma, patients experience pain as a result of the compression of the lymph nodes or bone destruction. In some cases, patients are reluctant to report symptoms of pain to their attending physicians in case this is interpreted as a poor treatment response. It is imperative to consider both verbal and nonverbal signs and symptoms of pain to complete a comprehensive assessment.

The bedside nurse is well placed to assess their patient and explain the importance of adequate pain management using pharmacological and supportive measures. Improving the patient's comfort will enable them to better tolerate treatment and improve their experience.

In the HSCT setting, pain is most commonly experienced as a result of mucositis, but patients will also report other pain such as bone pain associated with GCSF, abdominal pain due to diarrhea, or general discomfort with fluid accumulation.

Not all reported pain symptoms or discomfort is treated in the same way. By explaining to our patients the possible cause of the pain and the treatment for it, we can also help manage their expectations of the analgesia and other supportive interventions. We should inform our patients of the common side effects of analgesia like drowsiness and constipation and ways of reducing these effects.

When assessing pain, a standardized tool should be applied to ensure consistency across patients and between assessments. A comprehensive evaluation of the pain, location, characteristics, onset, duration, frequency, severity of pain, and exacerbating and relieving factors should be included. This assessment should be supported by the patient's nonverbal reactions such as facial expression, pallor, tempo of speech, body position, etc. as well as their vital signs.

According to Kluin-Nelemans and Tanasale-Huisman (2013), a nurse can give the patient information and tips and tricks in the field of pain relief:

- Check to what extent the pain is present on performing her/his daily routine (getting up, going to the shower, or getting dressed). The use of a pain scale can give insight to the extent of pain the patient endures. Ask the patient how she/he scores the pain from 0 (no pain) to 10 (maximum pain). If analgesia is administered, you can monitor the effect by reassessing the pain score.
- Consideration of pretreatment with analgesia before starting the daily routine may permit the patient to move independently or with more comfort.
- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) *should not* be prescribed for the HSCT patient. These can cause diminished function of the thrombocytes and kidney damage and complicate the monitoring of infections.

- If the patient is immobile for long periods, pain can increase. The nurse should assess pressure area risk and consider offering a pressure area mattress and/or gel cushion to increase comfort and reduce pressure area deterioration.
- In addition to pharmaceutical pain relief, complementary care can also be offered to reduce pain: heat-cold packs, relaxation by music therapy, distraction, or gentle massages (if possible with low thrombocytes).

11.3 The Role of Early Warning Scores

11.3.1 Early Warning Scores in the Adult Setting

Observing vital signs is a crucial task in the care of the HSCT patient. The patient's condition can change dramatically in a short period of time due to treatment and illness. Various measuring instruments allow us to monitor vital functions. Early warning scores are used as a prediction model of adverse events. When a patient shows signs of deteriorating, the early warning score is supposed to identify this and warn the nurse (Morgan et al. 1997). The Modified Early Warning Score (MEWS), one of the most cited models (Subbe et al. 2001), shows when values of vital functions deviate and indicates when intervention is required.

The MEWS (Subbe et al. 2001) scores various items (Table 11.1):

- Heart rate
- Blood pressure (systole)
- Breath rate
- Temperature
- Awareness (AVPU score)

In addition, decreased urine production, $SaO_2 < 90\%$ with adequate O_2 therapy, and the nurse's awareness or "gut feeling" give increased value to existing scores (Ludikhuizen et al. 2012). If the score is moderately elevated, it is advisable to monitor the vitals more often and to inform the attending physician. When the score increases, continuous monitoring is necessary, and evaluation from an emergency intervention team or a medical emergency team should be requested. These teams are available in most HSCT centers and usually consist of a doctor and an intensive care unit (ICU) nurse/emergency nurse. Compared to the traditional MEWS, a MEWS-SF score was studied to identify deteriorating patients with hematological malignancies even better. In the MEWS-SF, the SpO_2/FiO_2 (SF) ratio has been added to identify the oxygenation index as indication of lung functioning (Lee et al. 2020).

Standardized, structured communication techniques may help the nurses give an adequate and clear overview of the current state of a patient (Dayton and Henriksen 2007). The mnemonic SBAR (Situation, Background, Assessment, Recommendation) is the most well-known technique used in healthcare (Riesenberg et al. 2009). However, in a recent systematic review (Lo et al. 2021), the measured communication improvement using the SBAR in clinical settings had small-to-moderate effects. When SBAR was used together with multi-face interventions like early warning scores or rapid response systems, improvements in patients outcomes were measured.

Table 11.1 Modified early warning score

Score	3	2	1	0	1	2	3
Systolic blood pressure (mmHg)	<70	71–80	81–100	101–199		≥200	
Heart rate (bpm)		<40	41–50	51–100	101–110	111–129	≥130
Respiratory rate (bpm)		<9		9–14	15–20	21–29	≥30
Temperature (°C)		<35		35–38.4		≥38.5	
AVPU score				Alert	Reacting to voice	Reacting to pain	Unresponsive

Subbe (2001)

11.3.2 HSCT and Intensive Care

The outcomes of HSCT patients have been greatly improved over recent decades due to new therapies and improvements in supportive care (Saillard et al. 2016). An ICU admission is sometimes necessary to treat life-threatening situations that can arise following HSCT.

Reasons for admission might include:

- Respiratory failure secondary to infection
- Sepsis requiring intensive support
- Multi-organ failure
- Renal dysfunction
- Complications such as graft-versus-host disease after allogeneic stem cell transplant

Treatment in the ICU consists of:

- Mechanical ventilation
- Support of vital functions
- Treatment of sepsis/septic shock
- Continuation of chemotherapy

Both short-term and long-term survival of critical ill HSCT patients have improved significantly in recent years (Lueck et al. 2018; Netters et al. 2010; Ven van der et al. 2009). When a hematological patient is admitted to ICU early in their course, the chance of survival is greater (Peigne et al. 2009). Early admission reduces further organ dysfunction and increases the probability of reversing existing organ failure by delivering timely and appropriate organ support. The modified early warning score (MEWS) may contribute to this early recognition and prompt referral to ICU.

When the patient is well enough to return to the HSCT unit, fear of relocation may occur. This can happen because the continuous monitoring of vital functions ceases and the ward environment is very different from that of the intensive care. The patient may experience stress and anxiety and should be prepared at ICU for the transfer to the HSCT unit, taking into account the psychological effect of relocation to both patient and family (Coyle 2001).

11.3.3 Early Warning Scores in the Pediatric Setting

As noted by Agulnik et al. (2016), hospitalized oncology and HSCT patients are a high-risk population with frequent clinical decline requiring unplanned PICU transfer and high mortality rates. Complications developed by these patients, such as sepsis and respiratory failure, are known to have better outcomes with earlier identification and management.

It is important to know the normal vital signs in children in different ages. That is the basis which helps recognize the early warning signs in children. The use of PEWS scores as an assessment tool has the potential to quantify the severity of illness in children (Murray et al. 2015).

In reference to Agulnik et al. (2016), PEWS has been implemented in many pediatric institutions. Their study demonstrates that the PEWS tool is valid in identifying pediatric oncology and HSCT patients requiring unplanned PICU transfer. In a recent study, they concluded that hospitalized pediatric hematology-oncology and post-HCT patients have frequent deterioration resulting in a high mortality (Agulnik et al. 2022). Critical deterioration is preceded by a long duration of abnormal vital signs. This implicates the use of the PEWS to early predict critical deterioration.

The use of PEWS scores as an assessment tool has the potential to quantify the severity of illness in children. It is hoped that this results in facilitating early identification of patients at risk for clinical deterioration and prompt intervention to avoid the need to transfer to a higher level of care (Murray et al. 2015).

11.4 Nutritional Assessment

The malnutrition universal screening tool (MUST) is a validated screening tool for recognition and treatment of malnutrition (Elia 2003). The MUST form must be filled in accurately upon admission, asking for length/height, weight, and weight loss and whether the patient has no food intake for several days.

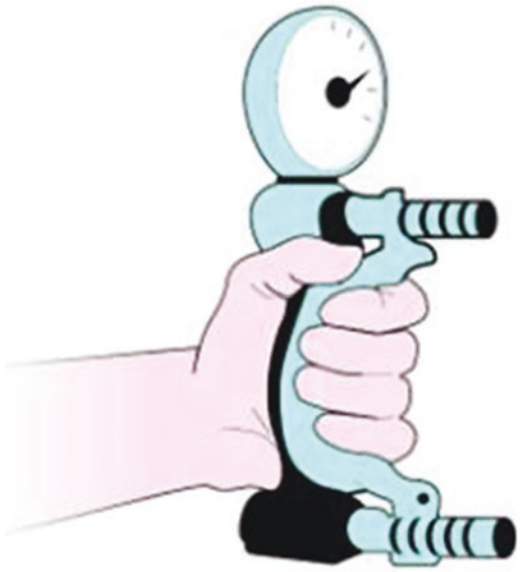


Fig. 11.1 Hand dynamometer

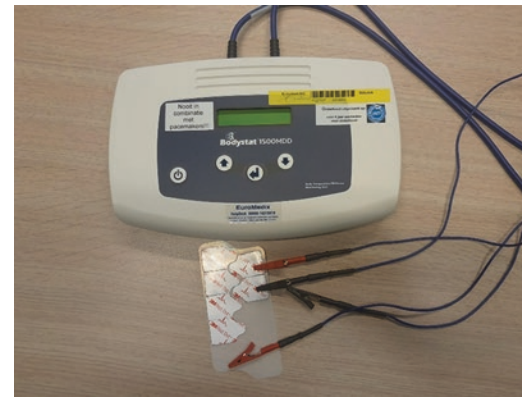


Fig. 11.2 Bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA)

Fig. 11.3 BIA resistance. (Photo credit http://www.nutritionalassessment.azm.nl/algoritme+na/onderzoek/lichaamssamenstelling/bia.htm)

The HSCT patient often has a reduced dietary intake during and following conditioning therapy, but this is often not considered at the time of admission.

Sometimes weight loss is difficult to assess due to fluid gain. It is not always possible to determine what proportion of muscle or fat components account for the weight loss using conventional methods.

The measuring instruments deployed to obtain information about muscle function and muscle mass are the hand clamp and the bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA).

The hand clamping force gauge (see Fig. 11.1) can be used to measure the maximum crushing force. The maximal squeezing force of the hand gives a good estimate of the peripheral muscle function and is related to the total amount of muscle mass in the body. Hand force depends on age and gender. It can also be influenced by other factors, such as disease. By obtaining different hand tightness measurements during the course of treatment, it can be determined whether the patient's muscle function increases or decreases (Norman et al. 2011).

A bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA) (see Figs. 11.2 and 11.3) is a tool measuring the resistance that the body provides for an alternating current of 50 kHz (Ursula 2004). The fat-free mass is calculated using a formula incorporating the resistance, length, weight, gender, and age. With this measurement, we can assess whether a patient with weight loss has lost muscle mass and/or fat mass. Determining the fat-free mass with the BIA is not reliable if there is an abnormal hydration status (Kylea et al. 2004).

11.5 The Role of Allied Health Professionals

In the care of the HSCT patient, collaboration between different supporting disciplines is of

great importance. Not only is medical and nursing care essential, but body, mind, and psychosocial care is necessary to facilitate the patient's recovery. Allied healthcare professionals (AHP) are essential members of the multidisciplinary team (MDT) and include:

- Dietician
- Physiotherapist
- Occupational therapist
- Wound or tissue viability nurse
- Pain nurse or specialist
- Spiritual worker
- Social worker
- Counselor/psychologist
- Consultative psychiatric nurse (CPN)
- Psychiatrist

11.6 Principles of Nutritional Support

Patients undergoing HSCT experience intensive treatment with chemotherapy, sometimes in combination with total body irradiation (TBI), increasing their risk of weight loss and malnutrition. Furthermore, some recipients may already be malnourished prior to transplant as a consequence of induction therapy or infection and are at risk of further significant nutritional compromise during and following transplant.

11.6.1 Nutritional Problems in Intensive Chemotherapy Treatment

11.6.1.1 Reduced Resistance to Infection

Following intensive chemotherapy, the patient has reduced tolerance due to neutropenia and/or increased intestinal permeability. In neutropenia, the number of white blood cells decreases significantly, resulting in the so-called aplasia with an increased risk of infection. The patient is neutropenic if the neutrophil granulocytes (subdivision of the leukocytes) are less than 0.5×10^9/L. An increased permeability of the intestinal wall is caused by intensive chemotherapy damaging the gastrointestinal mucosa. As a result, pathogenic bacteria (bodily bacteria or bacteria from the diet) can enter the bloodstream (sepsis or blood poisoning). The patient has an increased risk of infection due to the reduced resistance. If the patient is expected to be neutropenic for longer than 7–10 days after chemotherapy, antimicrobial prophylaxis may be given because of the high risk of infection. In some centers, the patient may commence this prophylaxis (selective intestinal contamination, SDD) at the time of conditioning therapy. These specific antibiotics select out the patient's own aerobic, potentially pathogenic intestinal flora and remove them (Bouakline et al. 2014).

To prevent food-mediated infections, the Hygiene Nutrition Directive or "neutropenic diet" or "clean diet" guidelines are implemented (Sonbol et al. 2019). This directive is usually followed from the start of conditioning therapy until discontinuation of the SDD or neutrophil recovery. The National Consultation Dietitian Hematology and Stem Cell Transplantation in the Netherlands has written the Hygiene Nutrition Directive, which is the basis for all hospitals in the Netherlands. There are small differences between several hospitals (LODHS 2020).

11.6.1.2 Food Aversion, Taste and Smell Changes, and Bad Taste in the Mouth

Intensive chemotherapy, as well as other medications such as antibiotics and antifungal agents, adversely affects the senses of taste and smell. The influence of the disease itself can also affect taste, and taste may be reduced, and/or there may be increased sensitivity to all flavors and smells. Aversions to specific foods, enhanced flavor or taste sensation, or a bad taste (metal, cardboard, or sand flavor) is frequently reported. Sometimes, the taste perception does not match with the taste memory. Patients may also be more sensitive to odors and can find that many foods or products like perfume or cleaning agents smell unpleasant.

11.6.1.3 Nausea and Vomiting

Cytotoxic treatment is often associated with complaints of nausea and vomiting. Medication to reduce nausea and vomiting (antiemetics) and hydration infusions are given and often adjusted.

Nausea and vomiting after chemotherapy can occur acutely (4–24 h) and is often severe. The symptoms may also occur later (2 or several days to sometimes a few weeks after the chemotherapy) (Hesketh et al. 2018). There is usually no association between vomiting and the type of diet used. As the patient undergoes multiple chemotherapy cycles, anticipatory vomiting may occur. In this case, vomiting occurs prior to the treatment in response to previous chemotherapies and is triggered by memory, experience, smell, taste, and sometimes visual cues.

11.6.1.4 Reduced Appetite and Early Satiety (Full Feeling)

Intensive chemotherapy, as well as other medications, infections, and fever, can cause a reduced appetite and feeling of early satiety or fullness. As a result, a reduced dietary intake may occur, which may adversely affect the nutritional state.

11.6.1.5 Mucositis (See Oral Complications Section for Further Information)

Mucositis (oral and gastrointestinal) frequently occurs after conditioning therapy. The grade depends on the type and intensity of chemotherapy. Chemotherapies that are associated with mucositis are busulfan, etoposide, melphalan, and methotrexate (van Sebille et al. 2015). Mucositis can occur in the mouth and throat (orally) and in the rest of the gastrointestinal tract (gastrointestinal).

Oral mucositis can vary widely starting with sensitive gums (mucositis grade 1); the patient is often able to eat everything, until blisters and ulcerations appear in the mouth, and then the patient has even difficulty drinking sips of water (mucositis grade 4, according to the WHO scale) (Özlem and Sümeyye 2021). Good oral hygiene is very important to limit complications associated with oral mucositis. Mucositis usually occurs 4–10 days after the conditioning and lasts about 2–3 weeks. As soon as the leukocytes start to rise to normal values, the mucositis heals rapidly.

In severe mucositis, oral nutritional intake is usually inadequate, and the patient is recommended for nutritional intervention. Gastric feeding with a tube through the nose (tube or nasogastric feeding) is preferred over parenteral nutrition, because it is physiologically more natural and reduces the risk for intestinal atrophy (Lieshout et al. 2020). The main contraindication of tube feeding is the risk of bleeding due to ulcerations in the gastrointestinal tract.

Insertion of a nasogastric feeding tube is safe when there is mucositis grade 1 or 2 and if there are sufficient platelets (at least 40×10^9/L). Otherwise, the patient first needs platelet transfusion for placement of the tube. When the severity of the mucositis is too great to introduce a tube, parenteral nutrition is the remaining option.

Diarrhea, due to gastrointestinal mucositis, is a common complaint following conditioning therapy. It is important to pay attention to dietary fiber, electrolytes, and hydration. Patients with severe watery diarrhea have reduced nutritional absorption through the gut, and parenteral nutrition may be indicated.

When the patient is discharged from the hospital after HSCT, dietary intake is often still not optimal and particularly after allogeneic myeloablative conditioned (MAC) stem cell transplantation. The patient often reports a dry mouth, nausea, vomiting, and early satiety. These patients benefit from ongoing nutritional monitoring and support for some time in the outpatient setting. Additionally, these patients can have increased energy demands due to the treatment, and further interventions may need to be considered such as tube feeding at home to limit further weight loss and restore nutrition.

In general, following autologous HSCT, there are less complications and infection-related problems. However, following allogeneic HSCT, it takes several months for the immune system to recover; hence, these patients are susceptible to infections for quite some time. In addition, the immune system is suppressed with medication to prevent graft rejection and to prevent or treat GvHD.

11.7 Transfusion

11.7.1 Introduction

Blood transfusion is an essential element of supportive care for many hematological disorders, and HSCT recipients will almost always require

transfusion support during aplasia. Importantly, HSCT recipients will usually require product irradiation to prevent transfusion-associated GvHD (tGvHD). This section covers general information on blood transfusion. Please refer to your local and national transfusion directive or policy for further details.

11.7.2 Blood Products and Indication

Different types of blood products can be transfused: erythrocyte concentrate, platelet concentrate, and plasma. The most commonly used blood product is erythrocyte concentrate (Sanquin 2016). Erythrocyte concentrate is administered in severe anemia, where insufficient hemoglobin reduces oxygen transport capacity. There may be acute anemia, for example, due to bleeding, or chronic anemia, for example, due to a chronic disease.

Platelet concentrate is administered to correct thrombocytopenia to prevent or treat bleeding. The indication for administration of prophylactic platelets depends on the patient's condition and whether the patient requires a higher circulating platelet count to treat, limit, or prevent bleeding. For the correct transfusion threshold, see the local transfusion guideline. Different transfusion thresholds are used internationally.

Plasma is administered to help correct coagulation factors. The indication for plasma transfusion is usually based on PT/APTT and fibrinogen content in the blood.

In summary, the indication for transfusion is based on the clinical situation of the patient and laboratory diagnostics.

11.7.3 Blood Groups and Pre-transfusion Investigations

In order to select the correct blood product for a patient, the determination of the ABO and Rhesus blood group is necessary. For transfusion of platelet concentrates and plasma, this is sufficient. In addition to the ABO and Rhesus blood group systems, there are many more systems such as *Duffy*, *Kidd*, and *MNS*. For the administration of erythrocytes, it is important to screen the patient prior to transfusion for irregular antibodies in addition to the ABO and Rhesus blood groups. These antibodies are usually not naturally present in the blood but can be acquired at each pregnancy and may increase with chronic transfusion need. Depending on the number and type of antibody, it may be difficult to find the appropriate erythrocyte concentrate. Following allogeneic stem cell or cord blood transplantation, the stem cell donor blood group(s) as well as recipient blood group should also be taken into account. For example, in case of double cord blood transplantation, up to three different ABO blood groups may need to be taken into account. In case of emergency and if there is no time for determining a blood group, erythrocytes with blood group "O negative" must be administered. Blood group O negative is the universal donor for erythrocytes (Table 11.2).

Platelet antibodies such as HLA (human leukocyte antigen) antibodies may also need to be considered. These antibodies may develop after prior transfusions and/or pregnancy. Sometimes HLA antibodies result in no or low increment after platelet transfusion. For these patients, platelet donors are selected as the best possible match at HLA level. This is an intensive process, and sometimes, only a very small number of platelet donors are identified for a particular patient. In these cases, it may take longer than usual to obtain platelets for the patient, and in an emergency, "random donor" platelets may be prescribed until the matched platelets become available. For plasma transfusion, only the ABO blood group is important (Table 11.3). Note: Blood group AB is the universal donor. In plasma, the Rhesus blood group does not need to be considered since the Rhesus blood group is on the membrane of the erythrocyte.

Table 11.2 Blood group compatibility for erythrocytes

Patient	Donor blood group O	Donor blood group A	Donor blood group B	Donor blood group AB
O	Yes	No	No	No
A	Yes	Yes	No	No
B	Yes	No	Yes	No
AB	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Table 11.3 Blood group compatibility for plasma

Patient	Donor blood group O	Donor blood group A	Donor blood group B	Donor blood group AB
O	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
A	No	Yes	No	Yes
B	No	No	Yes	Yes
AB	No	No	No	Yes

It is known that some drugs can interfere with the accuracy of pre-transfusion investigations in the laboratory. An example of this is daratumumab (monoclonal Ab anti-CD38). It is therefore important, upon request of serological testing, to provide the laboratory with all relevant medical information and transfusion history, including transplantation, pregnancy, previous serious transfusion reactions, and the use of relevant medication such as fludarabine (purine analog).

11.7.4 Processed Blood Products

Sometimes, blood products need to be processed. In addition, erythrocytes and platelet concentrates need to be irradiated and may be washed in some cases. Erythrocytes and platelets are washed in the case of previous severe anaphylactic transfusion reaction or in a patient with IgA deficiency. When washing blood products, the plasma proteins are removed as far as possible. In plasma, this operation is not possible. Erythrocytes and platelets are irradiated to damage the T cells in the blood product, preventing these T cells from causing transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease in patients with risk factors such as HSCT, antithymocyte globulin (ATG), alemtuzumab, and fludarabine. Only thrombocyte and erythrocyte blood products can be irradiated.

11.7.5 Transfusion Reactions

Although today's blood products are very safe, a patient sometimes experiences side effects from transfusion. Table 11.4 shows the symptoms of a possible transfusion reaction that may occur during and up to several hours after transfusion.

Acute transfusion reactions may be caused by administration of an incorrect blood product, volume overload, or bacterial or viral contamination of the transfused product. In addition, there may be an unexpected reaction from the patient. If transfusion symptoms are observed during a transfusion reaction, the transfusion should be discontinued immediately, and the doctor should be alerted. Always leave intravenous access in situ and then follow the instructions of the physician. It is very important to inform the blood transfusion laboratory about the possible transfusion reaction so that the cause can be investigated. This may prevent a transfusion reaction at a subsequent transfusion (Federatie Medisch Specialisten 2022).

In addition to acute reactions, blood transfusions can create long-term effects. For example, if a patient gets a lot of erythrocyte concentrates over a longer period of time, developing iron overload can lead to increased iron stores in organs such as the heart, liver, and kidneys, causing severe damage. This process occurs because erythrocyte concentrate contains iron, and the body does not have a system to break this excess iron down and remove it. However, this can be treated by monthly venesection when the blood counts have normalized after HSCT and if the hemoglobin is not sufficient, by medication such as Exjade or Desferal.

Table 11.4 Symptoms that may indicate possible transfusion reaction

Mild	Moderate	Serious
Temperature rise >1 or <2 °C	Moderate clinical decline during transfusion	Severe clinical impairment during transfusion
Urticaria	Cold shivering	Dyspnea
Itch	Temperature rise >2 °C	Respiratory insufficiency
Exanthem/erythema		Hypotension/shock
		Low back pain

Vademecum (2020)

11.7.6 Hemovigilance

Hemovigilance is the systematic monitoring of side effects and adverse incidents throughout the donor-to-patient transfusion chain, as well as anything that contributes to safer and more effective use of blood products (Tripnet 2017). In this context, hospitals report transfusion reactions and incidents to their National Hemovigilance Organization. Annually, serious transfusion actions are reported to the EU by the National Hemovigilance Organization.

11.7.7 Conclusion

For a safe blood transfusion, it is important that the correct indication is stated. The laboratory must have all relevant medical information to select the correct blood product. The nurse must verify:

1. Prescription—the transfusion prescription
2. Product—the identification of blood product
3. Patient—the patient and must always be performed by two nurses

In addition, the patient must be observed closely during transfusion and the doctor notified immediately of symptoms of possible transfusion reaction. The blood is an organ, and blood transfusion is an organ transplant, which requires maximum care.

11.8 Physiotherapy and Exercise

Over the last years, several clinical trials have contributed to the growing body of evidence showing the beneficial effects of exercise in cancer patients and also in the field of HSCT. Exercise interventions at different time points during and after HSCT can improve physical performance, quality of life, symptom control, and fatigue. However, it is still not possible to give a clear advice regarding the best type, intensity, start, and duration of an exercise program (Steinberg et al. 2015; Wiskemann et al. 2015; Wiskemann and Huber 2008; Cramp and Byron-Daniel 2012; Knols et al. 2005; Spence et al. 2010; Speck et al. 2010).

In the time period before and after HSCT, a specialized oncology physical therapist can be useful to advise, coach, and support exercise (under supervision). By remaining mobile, complications can be prevented, and the effects of the treatment can be optimized. Depending on the phase that the patient is in, the physical therapist will set goals (by using the "shared decision model" with the patients). The goal can be to stay at the same level during the treatment or improve condition before, during, or after treatment.

Due to the long hospitalization in isolation and the side effects from treatment, exercise can be a challenge. Most patients are not permitted to leave their room, so providing apparatus such as light weights, exercise bands, or static bikes can be helpful. The patient's condition changes day to day, so the physical therapist will need to adjust the expectations to ensure they remain realistic. It is important not to force exercise to maintain safety and prevent strain or injury.

11.9 Psychological/Spiritual Care

11.9.1 Introduction

Psychosocial issues can lead to such a loss of energy that patients become dependent on their partner or caregivers. This is further compounded by fatigue. In addition, physical symptoms such as pain can enhance the sense of dependence. Reduced appetite, insomnia, and side effects of medication can cause depressive feelings, while anxiety and fear can contribute to restlessness, forgetfulness, nausea, and tension. It is important to regularly evaluate these patient's care needs and any additional care or aftercare requirements.

- Patients often experience fear and powerlessness, feeling a loss of control over the disease and its consequences. It is important to explain factual information about the diagnosis and treatment procedures, possible side effects, and practical guidance to improve understanding.
- Patients often experience the stages of mourning (denial, anger, negotiation, and accep-

tance) and react in their own way to their diagnosis. They may also experience these emotions during their transplant. Anxiety, sadness, powerlessness, and/or a disturbed body image can cause dysfunction, and it is essential to support the patient to reduce fear and/or discuss their feelings. Enabling a social network around the patient will provide a vital source of support both during and after hospitalization. Prompt referral to a psychologist or possibly a consultative psychiatric nurse (CPN) or a psychiatrist may be necessary for those patients with a history of psychological issues, in those who appear unable to cope emotionally, or where there are any concerns for psychological well-being.

- Patients with younger children or grandchildren are advised to discuss their diagnosis and treatment with them. There are different information materials aimed at children of different ages.
- Within the family unit, there may be a change in the role of the patient or family members. Offering a social worker can be helpful in finding support to manage these changes.
- Through diagnosis and treatment, patients can develop low self-esteem. The treatment may affect their physical appearance in a way that makes them feel uncomfortable. Tips on personal care should be discussed. There are several organizations that can assist in counseling. Advise the patient, and provide them with resources and signposting where possible.
- Finding a trusted person or talking with other patients can help the HSCT patient in discussing her/his feelings or fears. Patients should be directed to relevant patient associations prior to commencing HSCT treatment.

11.9.2 Basic Information of Psychological Care for the HSCT Recipient

Beside the physical impact of the HSCT treatment, there is great impact on the whole psychosocial well-being of the patient (and their relatives). Physical problems continuously interact with the psychological state. The enduring nature of many physical problems demands a huge amount of resilience. This section describes the emotional impact of HSCT therapy and the importance of integrated care, with a focus on the role of the psychologist or consultative psychiatric nurse (CPN) and on the role of the bedside HSCT nurse.

Emotional problems such as depression and fear of relapse may occur and impact adversely on the patients' quality of life (QOL) (Syrjala et al. 2012). Emotional concerns are frequently referred to as psychological distress, which has been defined in Distress Management Version I (Practice Guideline Oncology of National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) 2002) as "a multi-determined unpleasant emotional experience of a psychological (cognitive, behavioral, emotional), social, and/or spiritual nature that may interfere with the ability to cope effectively with cancer, its physical symptoms, and its treatment."

> Distress extends along a continuum, ranging from common feelings of vulnerability, sadness, and fears to problems that may become disabling such as depression, anxiety, panic, social isolation, and spiritual crisis (NCCN 2002).

This description gives sufficient reason to organize an interdisciplinary team of caregivers around this special patient group. "Meeting the needs of a patient requires the multiple competences that many caregivers from different professions will have to share in order to offer the best quality of comfort and care. It is a common practice in which each team member will inculcate his own competencies. This is the essence of interdisciplinary" (Porchet 2006). Braamse, psychologist at Vrije Universiteit, Amsterdam (VUmc), wrote her doctoral thesis about psychological aspects of HSCT in patients with hematological malignancies (2015). Hematological malignancies as well as treatment procedures are associated with impairment in patients' QOL. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), QOL reflects a subjective concept, defined as an "individual's perception of their position in life in the context of the culture and value systems in which they live and in relation to their goals, expectations, standards and concerns" (WHO 2017). Impairments are caused by

the original disease, prior treatment, and intensive conditioning therapy. Certain subgroups of patients have more difficulties adjusting to their disease and treatment and consequently experience a more impaired health-related QOL post-transplant compared with other patient subgroups. Suffering from (chronic) GvHD leads to problems with overall QOL and physical well-being. Braamse states (2015): "Other subgroups that are at risk for worse psychological and social functioning are female patients, patients receiving low social support and patients experiencing pre-transplant psychological distress." This is consistent with other research (Hill et al. 2011; Nordin et al. 2001) on psychological and social functioning in cancer patients. Receiving low social support had been shown to increase the risk of depression and anxiety. Braamse (2015) indicates that most HSCT patients were not in need of active interventions to improve psychological distress: most patients chose watchful waiting instead of a special online intervention program or additional psychological care. Braamse (2015) concluded that a discrepancy appears to exist between symptoms patients report in the year after transplantation and their need for additional care: it seems that a substantial number of patients who report emotional problems after auto-SCT do not engage in help-seeking behavior. This highlights the great resilience of patients going through all different aspects related to undergoing a HSCT and their strength to cope with it without additional professional help.

11.9.3 Role of the Consultative Psychiatric Nurse for the HSCT Patient

A consultative psychiatric nurse (CPN) visits the HSCT patients in the outpatient clinic, during the "waiting zone" before admission. The patients are screened by protocol, which asks them to share their experiences about:

- Hearing the diagnosis
- Treatment
- Impact on different aspects of life
- Physical condition
- Sleeping pattern
- Influence on relationships and work
- Communication with caregivers

The CPN gives psychoeducation on various topics, for example, coping, loss of control, and loss of social roles. The screening includes some questions, which indicate if there is a risk of psychiatric decompensation or other increasing problems. The CPN discusses the assessment outcome and possible needs with the patient as well as helpful resources. Extra support by the allied health professionals or other disciplines may also be suggested.

When there is preexistent psychopathology, a special care plan will be described in collaboration with the physician, the psychiatrist, and nurses from the ward. The CPN writes the conclusions and advice in the patient record.

During the hospitalization of these patients, the CPN visits them for a brief consultation and observes how the patient is coping. This is an informal way of counseling. CPNs take part of the weekly interdisciplinary meeting to discuss the complex cases with the nurses and other disciplines. The main goal of the meeting is to give practical advice about the communication and structuring the daily nursing care. The meeting also functions as a mechanism for supporting each other in our work with this patient group, which has great impact on all caregivers.

The experience of the CPN is that many HSCT patients, after hearing the news about their diagnosis, have a "rollercoaster experience." At this point, there is often less time to think about the impact of therapy options due to the pressure to commence therapy. In the weeks between chemotherapy with its (side) effects and waiting for HSCT, patients often begin to consider their dilemma and contemplate their situation. Meanwhile, their physical condition is improving, and they are afraid of losing this as they begin their HSCT journey. Most patients share their experience (while they visit the CPN in the out-clinic setting) about the two emotional pathways: realizing that it is a possibility that they can die and trying to stay strong and positive toward the treatment. They lose their innocence toward staying in isolation and dealing with lots of phys-

ical problems. Last but not least, they struggle with their social role and how to manage the loss of or changes to it.

Patients report many examples of when they felt understood by their doctors and nurses. But many patients also report experience of misunderstandings and difficult and complicated communication with caregivers.

Deweirdt and Vincke (2008) stated how patients report the importance of a family member being allowed to stay for rooming-in while the patient was anxious. For the patient, it is important that their caregivers provide basic, personal attention, inserting in their experience, their concerns, and their irritations.

The phase of recovery varies between patients. Some of them have the feeling of being elderly or aged. Others use their first energy to spend time at work or with friends, which can affect home relationships and partner interaction.

HSCT patients are frequently readmitted because of infections, GvHD, or other complications. After a long stay in the hospital, each new readmission can add an enormous psychological burden. It is understandable that patients sometimes lose courage. In some cases, patients speak about their boundaries being further threatened by the treatment. They find it difficult to discuss because the doctor did so much good work and can mean that they don't want to refuse further treatment. It can be the role of the CPN to help patients communicate their wishes.

The Collaboration Between a CPN and Hematology Nurses on the HSCT Wards

Case Examples for This Population

Case 1

Patient A, male, 21 years old, non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL).

Relapsed NHL (initially diagnosed aged 16). He is a student and living independent near the campus. He has a steady relationship for a year, but because of his treatment and functional decline, he has moved back home to live with his mother. His parents are divorced and don't communicate well. He enjoys online gaming until late at night and subsequently wakes up late in the morning.

During his hospitalization, he had some difficulty with the ward routine such as waking up early in the morning and was unfriendly toward the nurses. His mother was very concerned, so she stopped working. She visited her son daily and remained by his bedside for the entire visit even when his girlfriend arrives.

He had fever for several days and mucositis requiring opioid administration, and he experienced nightmares due to analgesia. His thoughts and reactions were slower, and at night, he became more anxious. He couldn't eat normally.

In this case, the CPN can help the nurses with coordinating the communication and the daily routine and to observe for the signs of confusion or hallucinations that might occur despite his young age.

Case 2

Women B, 44 years old, acute myeloid leukemia (AML).

She has a known bipolar personality diagnosis for which she is prescribed lithium. Lithium has a specific therapeutic range and must be closely monitored through lithium blood levels. Nurses on general wards are often uncertain about the care of patients with a psychiatric diagnosis and about their own (communication) tools and skills. It is understandable that they are unsure about their observations because behavior change can occur as a result of the HSCT and existing psychopathology. The patient and the CPN can work together to process this and support the ward team in the care of these patients.

In these cases, the patterns of reaction on the changed psychosocial situations are very understandable. Patients are not doing things wrong, but sometimes, their reactions or behavior may not have a positive effect on recovery. For each case, it is important that the HSCT nurses use their own observations to contribute to patient care.

In the nursing practice, it can be helpful to consider the following:

- Does the patient really understand the need to strictly follow a set medication regime after SCT?
- How is the hygiene at home in relation to infection risk?
- In normal life enjoying food impacts on quality of life: How can the nurse help their patient with the difficulties they experience around food?

- Diarrhea caused by GvHD has various effects on the psychological well-being of the patient. How can you help to support?
- The pattern of activities changes significantly in comparison with normal life, and the hospital room and environment can inhibit mobility.
- The sleep pattern and routine are disrupted because of intravenous therapies, which can stimulate the need for going to the toilet. Other contributing factors are worrying about the diagnoses and social impact in their lives.
- Some patients do not understand their treatment regimen, either due to preexistent loss of cognitive functioning, dementia, low IQ, or the sheer complex nature of their therapy. This can cause increased anxiety and loss of control.
- Self-image is often a concern: roles and relationships change rapidly, and often there are feelings of being "on hold," at the sideline.
- How do we facilitate intimacy and address sexual functioning concerns?

Nurses understand that body and mind continually interact, and they need to develop skills to structure and interpret their observations. They should discuss this in multidisciplinary meetings and consider appropriate interventions. Nurses need to be taught how to use evidence-based tools that assess and address this aspect of care.

The patient is the best source of information about the impact of their concerns, coping in normal healthy life, and what might help them at that moment. To promote self-management and shared decision-making, it is necessary that nurses are aware of the diverse resources and how to use them in their own work setting. Even when there are many professionals involved in a patient's care, it does not necessarily follow that they will work in a multidisciplinary manner. Interdisciplinary working is time demanding: time for meetings, dialogue, and questioning teamwork (Porchet 2006).

Coolbrandt (2005) wrote a thesis about keeping and losing courage, a qualitative research in HSCT patients at Gent University Hospital. Coolbrandt (2005) noticed the active role of the nurses in the recovery story of HSCT patients. Like their medical counterparts, nurses contribute to the positive story and support patients in their therapy. Nurses protect the positive story by advising what the patient might expect. When things are going badly, they intervene by explaining the situation. Sometimes, it is appropriate to normalize a situation, and the patients feel less panic. Nurses give positive feedback; patients told that it helped them when the nurses are optimistic. Nurses give comfort when they reassure that symptoms will resolve, and they identify solutions improve symptoms. Nurses are often searching for the balance between "realistic hope and hopeful realism." This study of Coolbrandt (2005) is followed by a study in the same ward about the way hematology nurses care for HSCT patients through the most difficult part of treatment (Deweirdt and Vincke 2008). We already know, but this study confirms the great importance of an empathic attitude and expertise. This empathic attitude is characterized by understanding what the patient is going through, willingness to adjust the schedule if necessary for the patient, and paying attention to the person behind the patient. The shown expertise, that nurses can normalize concerns and complications, creates confidence in the collaboration between patient and caregivers.

Psychologist Braamse (2015) learns that for some patients, there's often no immediate solution for the problems. Patients have to go through the situation—and they know that very well. They don't expect their nurses and relatives to wear their burden. Patients know that the isolation is inherent of their illness and treatment. But they still need the presence from caregivers and close relatives or to feel them nearby. In this way, they can feel the autonomy to choose their own way of coping with the situation. That autonomy is often affected by the disease and treatment.

Nurses can always reflect on themselves with the following basic questions (derived from the authors experience):

- What do I observe?
- What do I signal?
- Which interventions can I do?
- What do I report in the dossier?
- Who can I ask for extra support?

- Which attitude is needed? Do I have it?
- Which knowledge is needed? Do I have it?
- Which skills do I need? Do I have them?
- What do I need from my colleagues?
- Who can I ask for counseling and coaching when I need it?

These questions can help you go back to your nursing base when the complexity of the cases makes you problematize things too much. When you feel powerless because of the multiple problems, you don't have to forget that your presence is also an intervention.

11.10 Therapeutic Interventions, e.g., Complementary Therapies, Music, Touch, and Massage

In some countries, there are well-being and relaxation departments for the oncologic patients. The goal is to provide the patients with a wide range of recreational activities and with that maximize their well-being during the treatment. Most of the time, such teams consist of a coordinator, an art therapist, a music therapist, and a group of volunteers. In the hospital, they can make a "living room" where patients and their family can come to relax and optionally can partake in a creative activity or a workshop. It consists of four different subdivisions: activity therapies, art therapies, music therapies, and complementary therapies/care. Each division will be specified below.

11.10.1 Activity Therapies

Activity therapies consist of three different pillars: creative activities, social activities, and a rental service.

11.10.1.1 Creative Activities

Patients can choose from a wide range of creative activities. They can do this on their own, with a volunteer, or with other patients (workshop). For this patient group, most activities take place in the patient room.

Some of the creative activities that we offer include mosaic, jewelry making, painting, drawing, mandala, knitting, and crochet. Special creative volunteers help and provide the patient with creative material. Also workshops can provide special creative activities like (dry)flower arranging and seasonal workshops.

A creative activity provides the patient with a welcome distraction to get through the day. It also helps keep the mind of negative things, and it is a way to make something nice for their loved ones.

11.10.1.2 Social Activities

Patients regularly stay for long periods of time during their treatment. Some of the patients don't have a big social network and are at risk of becoming lonely during their stay. An initiative "life well-being and relaxation" has special "social" volunteers that visit the patients on a regular basis. The volunteers work with a cart that is filled with all kinds of magazines. With that cart, the volunteer visits every patient on the ward. They make contact with new patients, hand out magazines, and tell what can be offered to them during their stay. They make extra time to visit and talk to lonely patients. Most patients really look forward to the weekly meetings with the volunteers.

11.10.1.3 Rental Service (in Some Hospitals/Organizations)

Patients have the possibility to rent items that will make their stay more pleasant. They can get laptops, game consoles, e-readers, tablets, and audiobook players. Patients can rent DVDs directly from a webpage. Offering board games, puzzles, and handy tools like a book seat (a handy device that makes it possible to put a book or a tablet on the bed without the need of holding it) is some of the special offers you can give to the patient.

11.10.2 Art Therapies

Art therapy focuses on the power of the image, where color and form play an important role. Art therapy can give support when the body, mind,

and soul are out of balance because of the physical and mental pressure that comes with being ill. With art therapies, a guiding question or a specific theme forms the basis for the therapy. Some possible themes are acceptance, coming closer to your inner self, enlightenment, relaxation, and how to handle emotions. With art therapies, the process is the most important aspect. It does not matter if the patient is creative or not; it only matters that the patient is willing and open for the therapy.

There are many different creative forms a patient can choose from: drawing, painting, felting, and molding. A combination of said techniques is also possible. Making a collage or writing poetry can also be offered. The materials that can be used are diverse: pastel chalk, aquarelle pencil, and aquarelle and acrylic paint. The art therapist decides together with the patient what material and technique to use.

Patients make regular use of art therapies. Because of their long stay in the hospital, the art therapist can offer lots of therapeutic sessions to the patients, which make it easier to work on a certain set goal.

11.10.3 Music Therapies

Music therapy focuses on the power of melody, harmony, and rhythm. Music therapy can give support when the body, mind, and soul are out of balance because of the physical and mental pressure that comes with being ill. With music therapies, a guiding question or a specific theme forms the basis for the therapy. Some possible themes are acceptance, coming closer to your inner self, enlightenment, relaxation, and how to handle emotions. With music therapies, the process is the most important aspect. It does not matter if the patient is creative or not; it only matters that the patient is willing and open for the therapy.

There are many different musical forms a patient can choose from, both in an active form and the recipient. The music therapist can play alongside the bed of the patient; the patient can choose to just listen, but he/she can also sing or play along with an instrument. It is possible for the patient to borrow an instrument, so that they can enjoy playing their own music during the stay in the hospital. Listening to music alongside the music therapist is also a possibility (the therapist has a Bluetooth speaker box for these occasions), and the patient can compose and then record his/her own song on CD. This is a great opportunity because the music not only is beneficial for the moment but also acts as a nice memory for a later time.

The musical instruments the patients can choose from are as follows: guitar, keyboard, sound bars, and a lyre (a kind of harp).

Patients make regular use of the music therapies. A lot of patients find the music that the art therapist plays very soothing, and they can let their emotions run free. Some patients even request that the music therapist plays music on their deathbed or at their funeral.

11.10.4 Complementary Therapies/ Care

Because of the side effects of the disease or HSCT treatment, some complementary therapies like massage, manicure, and pedicure are limited or not possible for the patient group. The complementary therapies that can be used by the patients are discussed below.

11.10.4.1 Aromatherapy

With the use of aromatherapy, the patient can experience a wide range of different aromas. Every aroma has its own use. Some will sooth or calm, while others will activate the patient. The use of electric scent streamers in the patient room distributes the aromas.

11.10.4.2 Therapeutic Touch

Therapeutic touch is a technique to help people relax, relieve their pain, and heal faster. It is sometimes called a “laying on of hands” and is based on ancient healing practices. Therapeutic touch is thought to promote healing through balance in the body.

11.10.4.3 Living Color Lamp

The living color lamp can change the color of the room to match the mood of the patient. Patients can change the colors with a remote, so that they can alternate between colors. Just like aromatherapy, colors can also influence the well-being of the patients.

11.11 Skin Care (See Also Chap. 11 GvHD About Skin Care)

11.11.1 Introduction

Our skin is important in many ways. Grégoire (1999) stated that the skin is the first line of defense against harmful influences of our environment. The skin prevents us from overheating, undercooling, or drying out. The skin has a sense of touch, so we can feel things and also perform complex actions, for example, with our hands and face. Our skin is unique to us and who we are as a person, recognizable to the people around us or through identification by fingerprints and scars.

The skin exists of three layers:

- The epidermis
- The dermis (leather skin)
- The subcutaneous connective tissue

Grégoire (1999) wrote in his book about pathology and physiology of the layers of the skin. The epidermis is the outer layer. This consists for the most part of horn cells. These cells are constantly newly formed in the lower layer of the epidermis. The cells multiply by division. The newly formed horn cells always move slightly to the surface of the skin because they are pushed upward by the continuous production of new cells. When the cells reach the top of the epidermis, they die. Our skin will form a very strong layer (like an armor), which is difficult to penetrate for pathogens and, in addition, counteracts dehydration of the skin. This dead horn layer is extra thick on some areas of the body, such as on the soles of the feet and on the palms of our hand.

There are also other cells in the lower layer of the epidermis between the horn cells: the melanocytes. The pigment cells make small pigment pellets that they pass on to the horn cells to place the pigment like an umbrella above their core nucleus. Vulnerable hereditary material in the nucleus is shielded against the damaging effect of ultraviolet radiation in the sunlight.

The Grégoire (1999) wrote about the leather skin (dermis) as a solid construction of connective tissue and is much different in content than the epidermis, which consists of a few types of cells. The leather skin is also the most important part of the active defense system of the skin: through which special white blood cells play an important role, viruses and bacteria can be recognized and directed harmlessly. The leather skin also ensures the elasticity and tensile strength of the skin. When the skin ages or is damaged by sunlight, the elasticity and resilience decrease. The leather skin is not constantly renewed, as happens with the epidermis. Damage to the leather skin will therefore always be visible as a scar. However, if only the epidermis becomes damaged, it will heal completely.

The subcutaneous connective tissue is the layer that separates the skin of the muscles and tendons in our body. There are blood vessels (food and oxygen supply), lymph vessels (drainage of waste), and nerves (touch sensation, pipeline, temperature sensation). The blood supply is ingenious and precisely regulates the supply of nutrients and oxygen to the leather skin and the lower layers of the epidermis. The blood vessels in the skin also play an important role in the body's temperature control. By dilating the blood vessels, extra heat can be delivered to the outside, and with vasoconstriction, the release of heat can be reduced so that no energy is lost.

11.11.2 Skin and Chemotherapy

When a patient receives chemotherapy, problems of the skin are common. The skin contains many fast-growing cells, which will be affected by chemotherapy.

Possible complaints are:

- A dry, flaky skin
- Rash
- Faster discoloration or skin damage by the sun
- Brown spots and brown discoloration
- White spots without pigment
- Acne
- Redness
- Itching
- Hyper-/hypopigmentation

Usually, after the end of chemotherapy, the skin will recover quickly.

Basic advices for chemotherapy patients (Erasmus MC (Care guide) 2009):

- The use of perfume or roller deodorant, aftershave, and razor blade is not advised. As a result of treatment, the skin may become more sensitive to these products and may lead to irritation or damage. When this happens, it increases the risk of infection. The use of shower gel, shampoo, and body lotion is allowed.
- Makeup may be used, as long as the skin and nail bed can be well observed. For example, eye shadow and non-colored lip balm are allowed, as they cover a very small part of the skin and are not specific. Rouge, powder, and similar products may not be used, as they cover a larger surface of the skin, and possible skin abnormalities may be masked.
- Recommend wearing bath slippers and plenty of clothes. Clothes need to be changed when they are visibly dirty. However, in the presence of fever (perspiration), dry skin (skin scales), or cream use, changing the outfit is desirable. Washing can be done in a normal washing machine, with other people's clothes. However, they must be washed at least 40 °C.

11.11.3 Skin Responding at the Treatment

The skin changes depend on the type of chemotherapy the patient receives. For example, the skin is drier and darker (= pigmentation problem) or look dusky or gray. Also, the nails can change in structure. This is due to the effects of chemotherapy. It is good to advise the patient to adjust the daily care of the skin to the changes that have occurred.

You can advise the patient (Erasmus MC (Care guide) 2009):

- Not to use very hot or very cold water during shower or bathing.
- Avoid alcohol-based products. They will dry out the skin.
- Do not use any perfumed soap during shower or bathing. A little (almond) oil in the bath water can help keep the skin smooth.
- Use mild, unperfumed, moisturizing body lotion or cream.

11.11.4 Skin and Rash

If the patient endures itching, scaling, splitting, and burning, you can advise the following:

- Use soothing and protective creams and ointments. They keep the skin smooth and prevent the skin from drying out. Examples for non-dry skin creams: Lanette cream and Cetomacrogol cream. Example for very dry skin: Vaseline Lanette cream.
- Do not treat skin rash with anti-acne agents.

11.11.5 Skin and Acne

Chemotherapy can cause acne. This is a side effect that creates uncertainty in our patients. You can advise the following:

- Leave the skin alone.
- Wash the skin with not too cold or too warm water, and do not use any soap. Or use a pH-neutral shower gel.
- Carefully dry the skin with the towel.
- Do not scratch or squeeze.
- A dermatologist may be able to recommend specific topical therapy.

11.11.6 Advice on Itching

Because of the treatment, the skin can dry out it which can cause itching or a prickling sensation that can be uncomfortable. You can advise the following:

- Do not scratch. Tell the patient to cut the nails very short and keep them clean.
- Itching gets worse sometimes by heat or by contact with clothes or bedding.
- Use a cool ointment or menthol powder (on localized areas) to relieve the itching. This only applies if the skin is not broken.

11.11.7 Skin and Risks of Bleeding and Infections

Chemotherapy may (temporarily) increase the risk of infection and bleeding. Observe the patient for wounds, blisters, or discolorations. In case of sudden redness of the skin or the occurrence of blisters, contact the attending physician. A little extra care for the skin is recommended.

11.11.8 Skin and the Sun

Advise caution with sun exposure and encourage the application of high SPF sunscreen (30–50). The patient needs to be careful with direct sun exposure and also if they are under the shade due to reflected light. During the periods the patients undergo chemotherapy, they can take a walk or work in the garden but advise them against sunbathing. They should avoid the sun between 12 and 15 o'clock. Chemotherapy can cause the loss of hair and thinning of the hair on the scalp. The scalp is more at the risk for sunburn. After chemotherapy, the sun can cause more discoloration of the skin. Our patients must always protect their skin. Wearing a (sun) hat or cap and covering the arms are recommended. Using a sunscreen with a protection factor of 30 or more is extremely important.

11.12 Discharge from Inpatient Care

When a patient is discharged following HSCT, this is often an anxious time. They are now leaving the "safe" environment of doctors and nurses. Some of the patients feel that they don't have any trust in their own body to let them know when they are not well.

It is advisable to inform the patient about the general aspects/living rules so that they can pick up their daily routine at home: housework or social events.

11.12.1 School, Study, and Work

- Patients who are no longer neutropenic and when their physical condition allows may slowly take up their studies or activities.

11.12.2 Domestic Work

- Patients can pick up and expand household tasks. For most patients, a full-day job is too heavy. Ask them to start slowly. It can be very stimulating for patients to feel "useful" again.
- If the patient is neutropenic, cleaning the residences from pets (birdcages, dog basket, etc.) should be discouraged. Cat's litter boxes and bird cages can easily transmit germs (toxoplasmosis). If nobody can't take over this task, recommend the patient to clean the animal shelter with (household) gloves.
- The patient can do some gardening but advise to avoid contact with sand and/or soil with their bare hands (toxoplasmosis) and avoid moving leaves and debris, which may release fungal spores. Ask them to use garden tools and wear (household) gloves.
- Fresh flowers and plants can stay in the home, but give the patients advice to regularly refresh the water of the flowers.

11.12.3 Social

- Patients should be advised if they want to take some outdoor trips, such as holidays or camping visits, to discuss this with their treating physician. This is especially important if the patient wants to go abroad following HSCT. The patient must consider the hygienic conditions or vaccinations that may be needed in the visiting country.
- The patient needs to avoid visits of family and/or friends from sick (contagious) people until they are out of their leukopathic phase and while they remain immunocompromised.

11.12.4 Driving

- The patient should consult with their attending physician when to resume driving. Some medications or having anemia can affect the ability to concentrate so that driving is not safe.

11.12.5 Sports Activities

- Give the patient information about building up their physical strength and condition. Some rehabilitation sports programs can be given in the living area of the patient. The patient can also seek information from a physiotherapist in the area to improve their physical condition.

11.13 Readmissions to Hospital

Patients are often unsure about the rules of life and their physical condition during and after HSCT. It is important that patients from the outpatient clinic receive clear information when they can resume certain activities in their social and general life. It is important to inform the patient fully about the rules of life so that they can become independent more quickly after this intensive treatment period.

In the home situation, side effects or problems may occur after HSCT. The patient should contact the hospital or attending physician. In many HSCT centers, emergency call procedures are well established. The patient should be aware of these. According to the Erasmus MC (2009) Zorggids (care guide), the contact moments should be as follows.

11.13.1 Urgent Complaints

Following HSCT, they should contact immediately (inside and outside office hours) with the following complaints:

- Fever (temperature above 38.5 °C)
- Cold shivers
- Blood in stool or urine
- Nosebleed
- Hematomas or bruising without bumping
- Difficulty moving the arms and/or legs
- Sudden shortness of breath
- Persistent and constant vomiting
- Persistent diarrhea
- Sudden/new skin rash

11.13.2 Complaints

Following HSCT, the patient should contact (within office hours) at:

- No stool for longer than 3 days
- Symptoms of anemia, such as severe tiredness or dizziness
- Pain in the mouth
- Difficulty and pain with swallowing
- Painful and burning sensation during urination
- Burning and/or painful eyes
- Insufficient drinking or passing urine

11.14 Pediatric Considerations

Advances in treatment and improved prognosis increase the number of children and families liv-

ing through the experience of childhood cancer. Increased survival rates come at the cost of aggressive combinations of chemotherapy, radiotherapy, and surgery, each of which may be associated with adverse effects and psychosocial difficulties for families (Meyler et al. 2010).

Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) may affect children and their families, inducing depression, anxiety, burnout symptoms, and posttraumatic stress symptoms, as well as posttraumatic growth (PTG), which includes feelings of inner strength, closer relationships with family members and friends, and a greater appreciation for life, factors that might lead to a general feeling of growth (Riva et al. 2014). Furthermore, these treatments can lead to physical late effects, which may also have psychosocial consequences to the patient and the family long after treatment has ended (Meyler et al. 2010).

It is important to understand the general impact of childhood cancer on families, like the emotional impact, the specific impacts for individual family members and extended family, and the disruption to family life. How the illness impacts on the social lives and networks of the family and the social implications for families needs to be taken into consideration (Meyler et al. 2010).

There are many specific psychological interventions to help children deal with cancer treatment. As quoted by Weinstein and Henrich (2013) in their research, the interventions that are mostly used to help children before they undergo a painful or anxiety-inducing procedure are educating children by explaining the procedure, providing emotional support to children by listening and answering children's fears and worries or holding their hands, and distracting children through passive forms such as music, television, and books or through active forms such as playing, telling stories, singing, and using bubbles. Weinstein and Henrich (2013) explain the least commonly reported strategies that nurses used were breathing exercises to relax the child using books, tapes, and videos to educate children on their treatment and hypnosis. All these psychological interventions are effective in reducing pain and anxiety, along with enhancing acceptance of medical treatments (Weinstein and Henrich 2013).

Also, Weinstein and Henrich (2013) stated that one of the primary benefits of these psychological interventions is that children shift from a passive and helpless state of pain and anxiety to a state of control and empowerment with an active adaptive attitude toward life. Through these interventions, children are considered an active participant within their own care. By preparing children psychologically for medical procedures and teaching them coping strategies, nurses may help reduce the risk of developing maladaptive behaviors and psychopathologies. (Meyler et al. 2010) indicate that physicians and nurses working in pediatric oncology are in a unique position to identify and manage psychosocial issues in childhood.

In order to prevent feelings of isolation and helplessness, children's rights in hospital (EACH 2016) stresses that steps should be taken to mitigate physical and emotional stress. The staff should avoid or reduce situations or actions described by the child as stressful. The staff should learn to recognize and act upon the fears or concerns of the child and families whether or not explicitly expressed. To mitigate emotional stress, the child and family should be offered emotional support.

It is important to work together with multidisciplinary team members like child life therapists, psychologists, and social workers who all can help provide psychological support to the child and their families (Weinstein and Henrich 2013). Contacts should be offered to social services, psychologists, and therapeutic healthcare professionals as well as religious support or counseling when requested, taking into account the family's cultural background and contact with self-help groups, relevant support groups, and patient or consumer organizations (EACH 2016).

For children, it is important to try to make the life in hospitals as close to normal life as possible. School is an important part of it for school-aged children. School is also an important part of

adolescents' and young adults' lives, and being diagnosed with cancer in childhood may affect perceptions of school. Cancer and its treatment have a negative impact on mental and physical health and often lead to an increased absence from school. Furthermore, treatments with radiation and chemotherapy, especially among patients diagnosed with a central nervous system (CNS) tumor, may significantly affect neurocognitive function and levels of education (Winterling et al. 2015).

Results from Winterling et al.'s (2015) studies show that survivors appear to achieve education levels comparable to those of control groups although some studies indicate that survivors more often repeat a school year and receive additional academic support.

Furthermore, worry over missing school is a great concern for adolescents starting chemotherapy.

References

Agulnik A, Forbes PW, Stenquist N, Rodriguez-Galindo C, Kleinman M. Validation of a pediatric early warning score in hospitalized pediatric oncology and hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2016;17(4):e146–53.

Agulnik A, Ferrara G, Puerto-Torres M, Gillipelli SR, Elish P, Muniz-Talavera H, Gonzalez-Ruiz A, Armenta M, Barra C, Diaz R, Hernandez C, Juárez Tobias S, de Jesus Loeza J, Mendez A, Montalvo E, Penafiel E, Pineda E, Graetz DE. Assessment of Barriers and Enablers to Implementation of a Pediatric Early Warning System in Resource-Limited Settings. JAMA Netw Open. 2022;5(3):e221547. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2022.1547. PMID: 35262714; PMCID: PMC8908074.

Bouakline A, Lacroix C, Roux N, Gangneux J, Derouin F. Fungal contamination of food in hematology. Units Laboratoire de Parasitologie-Mycologie 1 and Service de Dietetique, September 2000; 2014.

Braamse AMJ. Psychological aspects of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with hematological malignancies. Amsterdam: Ipskamp Drukkers Enschede; 2015.

Coolbrandt A. Moed houden en moed verliezen: een kwalitatief onderzoek bij stamceltransplantatiepatiënten. Masterthese; 2005.

Coyle MA. Transfer anxiety: preparing to leave intensive care. Intensive Crit Care Nurs. 2001;17:138–43.

Cramp F, Byron-Daniel J. Exercise for the management of cancer-related fatigue in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;11:CD006145.

Dayton E, Henriksen K. Communication failure: basic components, contributing factors, and the call for structure. Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf. 2007;33(1):34–47. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1553-7250(07)33005-5. PMID: 17283940.

Deweirdt N, Vincke J. Patiënten door het ergste heen helpen. *Een onderzoek naar de ondersteuning van hematologische verpleegkundigen aan stamceltransplantatie-en acute myeloïde leukemiepatiënten*. Gent: Universiteit Gent; 2008.

EACH and The European Association for Children in Hospital. EACH Charter & Annotations 2016. https://www.each-for-sick-children.org/each-charter/introduction-each-charter-annotations.html.

Elia M. THE 'MUST' REPORT Nutritional screening of adults: a multidisciplinary responsibility; 2003. must--report.pdf (bapen.org.uk).

Erasmus MC Zorggids (Care guide). Hematology intended for patients with hematologic disease, including acute and chronic leukemia, (non) Hodgkin lymphomas and multiple myeloma. 2nd ed. Team Patient Communication; 2009.

Federatie Medisch Specialisten. Richtlijnen database. Startpagina Bloedtransfusie beleid; 2022.

Grégoire L. Inleiding anatomie/fysiologie van de mens. Integraal. 1999;2:232–45.

Hesketh PJ, Palmas M, Nicolas P. Preventing chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting in patients with lung cancer: efficacy of NEPA (netupitant-palonosetron), the first combination antiemetic. Support Care Cancer. 2018;26(4):1151–59. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00520-017-3936-9. Epub 2017 Oct 28. PMID: 29080920; PMCID: PMC5847067.

Hill J, Holcombe C, Clark L, Boothby MRK, Hincks A, Fisher J, Salmon P. Predictors of onset of depression and anxiety in the year after diagnosis of breast cancer. Psychol Med. 2011;41(7):1429–36.

Kluin-Nelemans JC, Tanasale-Huisman EA. Hematologie. Bohn Stafleu van Loghum. 2013;2:156, 158, 245, 248–9, 253–5.

Knols R, Aaronson NK, Uebelhart D, Fransen J, Aufdemkampe G. Physical exercise in cancer patients during and after medical treatment: a systematic review of randomized and controlled clinical trials. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(16):3830–42.

Kylea UG, Bosaeusb I, De Lorenzoc AD, Deurenbergd P, Eliae M, Gomezf JM, Heitmanng BL, Kent-Smithh L, Melchiori J-C, Pirlichj M, Scharfetterk H, Scholsl AMWJ, Pichardm C, Composition of the ESPEN Working Group. Bioelectrical impedance analysis part I: review of principles and methods. Clin Nutr. 2004;23(5):1226–43.

Lee J, Jung Y, Jung Kim H, Koh Y, Lim C, Hong S, Won HJ. Derivation and validation of modified early warning score plus SpO_2/FiO_2 score for predicting acute deterioration of patients with hematological malignancies. Korean J Intern Med. 2020;35(6):1477–88. https://doi.org/10.3904/kjim.2018.438.

Lo L, Rotteau L, Shojania K. Can SBAR be implemented with high fidelity and does it improve communication between healthcare workers? A systematic

review. BMJ Open. 2021;11(12):e055247. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2021-055247.

LODHS National consultation dieticians hematology and stem cell transplantation, hygienic food with a weakened immune system - Nutrition and Cancer Info. 2020 hygienic food directive.

Ludikhuizen J, Smorenburg SM, de Rooij SE, de Jonge E. Identification of deteriorating patients on general wards; measurement of vital parameters and potential effectiveness of the modified early warning score. J Crit Care. 2012;4:424.e7–13.

Lueck C, Stadler M, Koenecke C, Hoeper MM, Dammann E, Schneider A, Kielstein JT, Ganser A, Eder M, Beutel G. Improved short- and long-term outcome of allogeneic stem cell recipients admitted to the intensive care unit: a retrospective longitudinal analysis of 942 patients. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(9):1483–92. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00134-018-5347-x.

Meyler E, Guerin S, Kiernan G, Breatnach F. Review of family-based psychosocial interventions for childhood cancer. J Pediatr Psychol. 2010;35(10):1116–32. https://doi.org/10.1093/jpepsy/jsq032. Epub 2010 May 5. PMID: 20444851.

Morgan R, Lloyd-Williams F, Wright M, Morgan-Warren RJ. An early warning scoring system for detecting developing critical illness. 1997. https://www.scienceopen.com/document?vid=28251d22-8476-40a6-916d-1a34796816e4.

Murray JS, Williams LA, Pignataro S, Volpe D. An integrative review of pediatric early warning system scores. Pediatr Nurs. 2015;41(4):165–74.

NCCN. 2002. https://www.nccn.org/patients/resources/life_with_cancer/pdf/nccn_distress_thermometer.pdf.

Netters FJS, Huls G, Tichelaar YIGV, Reyners AKL, Kluin-Nelemans JC, Zijlstra JG. Evidente toename in overleving van hematologische patiënten opgenomen op de intensive care. Nederlands tijdschrift voor hematologie. 2010;8:339–44.

Nordin K, Berglund G, Glimelius B, Sjödén PO. Predicting anxiety and depression among cancer patients: a clinical model. Eur J Cancer. 2001;37(3):376–84.

Norman K, Stobäus N, Gonzalez MC, Schulzke JD, Pirlich M. Hand grip strength: outcome predictor and marker of nutritional status. Clin Nutr. 2011;30(2):135–42. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clnu.2010.09.010. Epub 2010 Oct 30. PMID: 21035927.

Özlem F, Sümeyye A. Development and validation of the oral mucositis risk assessment scale in hematology. Semin Oncol Nurs. 2021;37(3):151159.

Peigne V, Rusinova K, Karlin L, Darmon M, Fermand JP, Schlemmer B, Azoulay E. Continued survival gains in recent years among critically ill myeloma patients. Intensive Care Med. 2009;35:512–8.

Porchet F. Interdisciplinary communication. Berlin: Springer; 2006.

Lieshout RV, Tick LW, Laat DD, Custers S, Dekker IM, Douma MD, Kalter D, Kranenburg S, Lee DVD, Rhoon-Bruijnzeel P, Schlösser I, Somer M, Tilborg CJV, Visser WK, Schouten HC, Beijer S. Adherence to guidelines on nutrition support during intensive treatment of acute myeloid leukemia patients: A nationwide comparison. Clinical Nutrition ESPEN. 2020;39:242–50.

Riesenberg LA, Leitzsch J, Little BW. Systematic review of handoff mnemonics literature. Am J Med Qual. 2009;24(3):196–204. https://doi.org/10.1177/1062860609332512. Epub 2009 Mar 5. PMID: 19269930.

Riva R, Forinder U, Arvidson J, Mellgren K, Toporski J, Winiarski J, Norberg A. Patterns of psychological responses in parents of children that underwent stem cell transplantation. Psycho-Oncology. 2014;23(11):1307–13.

Saillard C, Bliase D, Mokart D. Critically ill allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation patients in the intensive care unit: reappraisal of actual prognosis. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51:1050–61.

Sanquin. 2016. https://www.sanquin.nl/repository/documenten/nl/over-sanquin/over-sanquin/37356/Sanquin_jaarverslag_2016.pdf.

Sonbol M, Jain T, Firwana B, Hilal T, Deleon T, Murad A, Murad M, Khera N. Neutropenic diets to prevent cancer infections: updated systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Support Palliat Care. 2019;9(4):425–33.

Speck RM, Courneya KS, Masse LC, Duval S, Schmitz KH. An update of controlled physical activity trials in cancer survivors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Cancer Surviv. 2010;4(2):87–100.

Spence RR, Heesch KC, Brown WJ. Exercise and cancer rehabilitation: a systematic review. Cancer Treat Rev. 2010;36(2):185–94.

Steinberg A, Asher A, Bailey C, Fu JB. The role of physical rehabilitation in stem cell transplantation patients. Support Care Cancer. 2015;23(8):2447–60.

Subbe CP, Kruger M, Rutherford P, Gemmel L. Validation of a modified early warning score in medical admissions. QJM. 2001;94:521–6.

Syrjala KL, Martin PJ, Lee SJ. Delivering care to long-term adult survivors of hematopoietic cell transplantation. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(30):3746–51.

Tripnet. Trip, hemo- en biovigilantie. 2017. wwwtripnetnl .

Ursula G. Kyle, Ingvar Bosaeus, Antonio D. De Lorenzo, Paul Deurenberg, Marinos Elia, José Manuel Gómez, Berit Lilienthal Heitmann, Luisa Kent-Smith, Jean-Claude Melchior, Matthias Pirlich, Hermann Scharfetter, Annemie M.W.J. Schols, Claude Pichard, Bioelectrical impedance analysis—part I: review of principles and methods. Clinical Nutrition. 2004;23(5):1226–43.

Vademecum. 2020. https://www.vademecumhematologie.nl/artikelen/transfusiebeleid/transfusiereacties/soortentransfusiereacties.

van Sebille Y, Stansborough R, Wardill H, Bateman H, Gibson R, Keefe D. Management of mucositis during chemotherapy: from pathophysiology to pragmatic therapeutics. Curr Oncol Rep. 2015;17(11):50.

Ven van der M, Silderhuis VM, Brouwer RM. Patiënten met een hematologische maligniteit op de Intensive Care. Ned tijschrift Geneeskunde. 2009;153:A582.

Weinstein AG, Henrich CC. Psychological interventions helping pediatric oncology patients cope with medical

procedures: a nurse-centered approach. Eur J Oncol Nurs. 2013;17(6):726–31.

Winterling J, Jervaeus A, Sandeberg Af M, Johansson E, Wettergren L. Perceptions of school among childhood cancer survivors: a comparison with peers. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs. 2015;32:201–8. https://doi.org/10.1177/1043454214563405.

Wiskemann J, Huber G. Physical exercise as adjuvant therapy for patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;41(4):321–9.

Wiskemann J, Kuehl R, Dreger P, Huber G, Kleindienst N, Ulrich CM, Bohus M. Physical exercise training versus relaxation in allogeneic stem cell transplantation (PETRA study) - rationale and design of a randomized trial to evaluate a yearlong exercise intervention on overall survival and side-effects after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. BMC Cancer. 2015;15:619.

World Health Organization (WHO). 2017. http://www.who.int/mental_health/publications/whoqol/en/.

Graft-Versus-Host Disease (GvHD)

12

John Murray, Jacqui Stringer, and Daphna Hutt

Abstract

Acute and chronic graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in patients who undergo allogeneic haematopoietic cell transplantation (HCT) and affects approximately 30–40% of recipients. Prevention remains the goal, and the recent introduction of post-transplant cyclophosphamide in the haploidentical transplant setting is changing the landscape. GvHD diagnosis is complicated, and grading and staging vary depending upon the tool and transplant centre involved. For the majority of patients who go on to develop GvHD, corticosteroids remain the first-line treatment for both acute and chronic forms of the disease. Recipients that are refractory to systemic steroids have a plethora of second- and third-line options available to them. A 'standard of care' approach has not yet become agreed globally due to poor evidence from small and limited randomised control trials. However, the recent REACH (Zeiser et al. N Engl J Med. 382(19):1800–10, 2020; Zeiser et al. N Engl J Med. 385(3):228–38, 2021) and ROCKstar trials (Cutler et al. Blood. 38(22):2278–89, 2021) have armed clinicians with new and effective therapies. Supportive care is paramount, and the nurse is at the centre of the patient's care and in the best position to guide and advise the patient and family through this often-long-term complication.

Keywords

Acute graft-versus-host disease · Chronic graft-versus-host disease

J. Murray (✉) · J. Stringer
The Christie NHS Foundation Trust & The University of Manchester, School of Medical Sciences, Manchester, UK
e-mail: j.murray10@nhs.net; jacqui.stringer3@nhs.net

D. Hutt
Department of Paediatric Haematology-Oncology and BMT, Edmond and Lily Safra Children Hospital, Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel
e-mail: dhutt@sheba.health.gov.il

12.1 What Is Graft Versus Host Disease (aGvHD)?

12.1.1 Definitions

Acute graft versus *host disease* (aGvHD) is a reaction of donor immune cells against host tissues. The three main tissues that acute GvHD affects are the skin, liver and gastrointestinal tract (Zeiser 2019).

Chronic graft versus *host disease* (cGvHD) is a syndrome of variable clinical features resembling autoimmune and other immunologic disorders. Manifestations of chronic GvHD may be restricted to a single organ or site or may be

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_12

widespread, with profound impact on quality of life (Jagasia et al. 2015).

12.2 Background to GvHD

The *New England Journal of Medicine* reported the infusion of bone marrow into patients by E. D. Thomas and colleagues in 1957, following radio- or chemotherapy. Pre-clinical animal studies revealed that transplantation of splenocytes from non-oncogenic donor strains facilitated haematopoietic recovery but led to a severe illness characterised by anorexia, reduced weight, diarrhoea, ruffled fur and eventual death. It was labelled at the time 'secondary' or 'runt's disease' and later became known as graft-versus-host disease (GvHD). It was clear that the effect was not one of the conditioning therapies but was associated with an immune-mediated syndrome (Wolff et al. 2012).

GvHD, both acute and chronic, is the leading cause of non-relapse mortality and is associated with a high morbidity that increasingly affects quality of life (Gooptu and Antin 2021). However, the success of allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) depends on simultaneous graft-versus-tumour (GvT) effects. There is a fine line with aGvHD. The symptoms and side effects can be unpleasant and sometimes harmful and, in severe cases, life-threatening. However, it is well documented that some level of aGvHD is beneficial. It has been found that relapse rates post allograft were lowest in patients with aGvHD versus those without (Baron et al. 2012). Therefore, broad-based immunosuppressive strategies are less attractive as these may dampen the GvT benefit. Relapse accounts for a significant proportion of treatment failures after HSCT; thus, strategies for GvHD prevention with minimal impact on GvT are the holy grail of transplantation (Magenau and Reddy 2014). The introduction of post-transplant cyclophosphamide may well be a step toward better prophylaxis and prevention of GvHD in several protocols (Gooptu and Antin 2021).

Historically, GvHD is termed 'acute' before day 100 and 'chronic' any time after day 100. However, it has since been recognised that there can sometimes be 'overlap' between the types, so signs and symptoms are used to aid and determine the diagnosis. The skin is the most common organ affected followed by the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and then the liver. Typically, the skin develops a rash, which often but not always appears on the palms of hands and soles of the feet first and can rapidly spread to the rest of the body. GI and liver GvHD symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abnormal liver enzymes and jaundice are similar in both acute and chronic forms of GvHD.

According to the 2014 NIH consensus, aGvHD includes classic aGvHD (maculopapular erythematous rash, gastrointestinal symptoms or cholestatic hepatitis), occurring within 100 days after HCT or donor leukocyte infusion. The broad category of aGvHD also includes persistent, recurrent or late-onset aGvHD, occurring more than 100 days after transplantation or donor leukocyte infusion. The presence of GvHD without diagnostic or distinctive cGvHD manifestations defines the broad category of aGvHD (Vigorito et al. 2009; Jagasia et al. 2015).

12.3 Acute GvHD

Overview: aGvHD occurs following an allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant and is a reaction of donor immune cells against host tissues and remains a major cause of morbidity and mortality (Greinix 2008). High-dose chemotherapy +/− radiotherapy inflicts cellular damage, and this leads to an inflammatory process; the activated donor T-cells interact with the host epithelial cells. Approximately 35–50% of HSCT recipients will develop aGvHD (Dignan et al. 2012). There are several factors that can influence the development of aGvHD: the stem cell source, age of the patient, conditioning regimen and GvHD prophylaxis used. All aGvHD can be associated with culture-negative fever. Biopsies of skin and GI tissue (more rarely liver) are often obtained, although the diagnosis of aGvHD is regularly made based upon clinical signs and symptoms. A biopsy is useful to help differentiate from other diagnoses, which may mimic

GvHD, such as viral infection (hepatitis, colitis) or drug reaction (causing skin rash). The modified Glucksberg-Seattle criteria (Przepiorka et al. 1995), International Bone Marrow Transplant Registry (IBMTR) (Rowlings et al. 1997) and Mount Sinai aGVHD International Consortium (MAGIC) criteria (Harris et al. 2016) are widely used and give a stage and grade (grade 0–IV) for each organ and its degree of involvement. The lack of standardisation of grading has led to difficulties comparing patient groups at different centres.

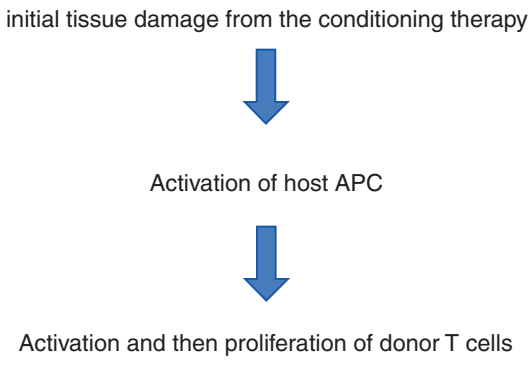
12.4 Pathophysiology of GvHD

In the 1960s, Billingham (1966) proposed three central tenets for the development of GvHD. These are:

1. The presence of immunocompetent cells from the donor.
2. The inability of the recipient to reject donor cells.
3. The histocompatibility differences between the donor and recipient.

Donor T-cells are now recognised as occupying a central role in mediating GvHD following interactions with activated host and donor antigen-presenting cells (APC). A complex network of cytokines, chemokines, cellular receptors and immune cell subsets then modulates T-cell/APC interactions that result in the initiation and maintenance of GvHD (Magenau and Reddy 2014).

The three-phase process for aGvHD comprises:



Finally, inflammatory cytokines are released such as interleukin-1 and tissue necrosis factor alpha that produce tissue necrosis.

Acute GvHD is modulated in part by the presence of cells capable of inhibiting immune responses, most notably regulatory T-cells (Magenau and Reddy 2014) (Fig. 12.1).

Both prevention and treatment of aGvHD attempt to disrupt the three-step pathophysiological cycle. Most current treatment options of aGvHD affect more than one event in this cycle through relatively non-specific immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory mechanisms (Greinix 2008).

Reduced intensity conditioning will usually contain drugs that deplete T-cells, such as Campath-1H or ATG. This reduces the initial risk of aGvHD but increases the risk of infective complications such as CMV and also the risk of late-onset aGvHD and cGvHD. Up to 50% of patients will develop some aGvHD despite prophylaxis (Mohty et al. 2020).

12.4.1 Risk Factors

Factors that can increase the likelihood of aGvHD include older recipient/donor, sex mismatch and specifically a multiparous female donor into a male donor. Furthermore, the intensity of the preparative regimen does appear to correlate with increased incidence of aGvHD. This effect may occur due to greater tissue damage from the preparative regimen, predisposing these tissues to more inflammation from the alloreactive cells. Higher doses of radiation also give rise to more GvHD. Equally, more recent use of non-myeloablative preparative regimens has led to lower incidence of aGvHD in some studies (Jacobsohn and Vogelsang 2007).

12.4.2 Signs and Symptoms of aGvHD

12.4.2.1 Skin

Acute GvHD can cause a rash which is usually flat and red and often occurs on the hands, feet and around the ears and upper chest, at first. This

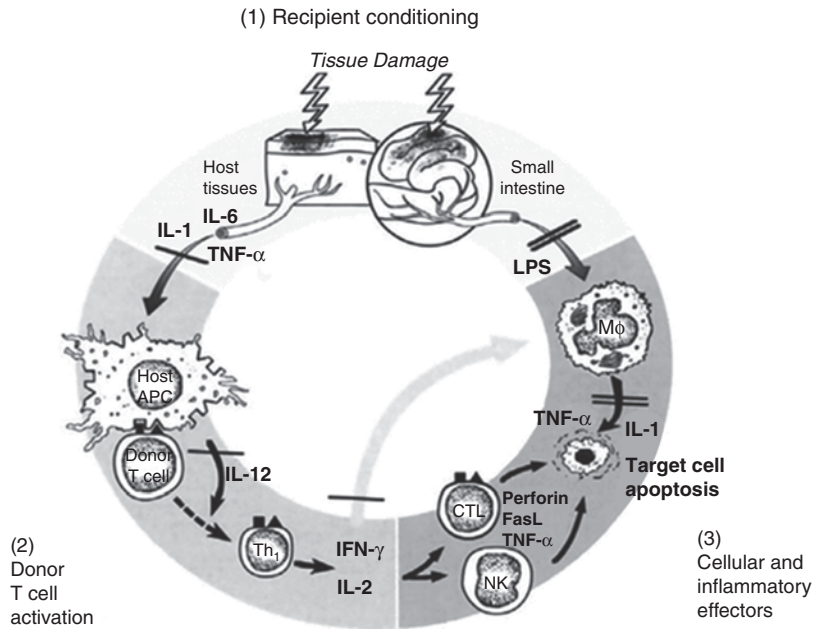


Fig. 12.1 The three phases of acute GVHD, as described by Ferrara and colleagues (From Hill and Ferrara 2000. Reproduced with permission)

can quickly spread to cover the whole body. It is often, but not always, itchy and sore and can feel like sunburn. A biopsy may be taken but is not always diagnostic. On examination, the features may include apoptosis at the base of epidermal rete pegs, dyskeratosis, exocytosis of lymphocytes, satellite lymphocytes adjacent to dyskeratotic epidermal keratinocytes and perivascular lymphocytic infiltration in the dermis (Ferrara and Deeg 1991).

12.4.2.2 Gastrointestinal

Signs and symptoms include weight loss, stomach discomfort and pain, nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea. The diarrhoea can be profuse with secretions and may also result in bleeding from ulceration of the mucosa. The effects of high-dose therapies and infection need to be excluded. Biopsy in this group of patients is more informative and may show apoptotic bodies at crypt bases, crypt ulceration and flattening of surface epithelium (Dignan et al. 2012).

12.4.2.3 Liver

Jaundice from hyperbilirubinaemia is the hallmark of advanced liver GvHD with a cholestatic pattern of elevated conjugated bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase and gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) and may be associated with pruritis. There is a wide range of differential diagnoses, which should be considered and excluded such as veno-occlusive disease, drug toxicity and infection. It is often extremely difficult to perform biopsy due to the increased risk of bleeding, but, if taken, histology shows endothelialitis, lymphocytic infiltration of the portal areas, pericholangitis and bile duct destruction (Dignan et al. 2012).

12.4.3 Classification of Acute GvHD: Grades I–IV

Acute GvHD carries a significant transplant-related mortality (TRM) with grades 0–I (mild) having a TRM of approx. 28% and grades II, III and IV (very severe) TRM of 43%, 68% and 92%, respectively (Greinix 2008).

12.4.4 Prevention of GvHD

Prophylaxis: GvHD prophylaxis for full-intensity allografting is based around calcineurin inhibitors (CNI) along with short-course methotrexate (MTX) (Gooptu and Antin 2021). This works by interfering with calcium-dependent interleukin-2

(IL-2) gene activation and de novo purine metabolism, respectively. CNI and MTX act synergistically to non-selectively inhibit lymphocyte activation and proliferation. The combination of ciclosporin and MTX or tacrolimus and MTX as prophylaxis for aGvHD compared to any single-agent treatment has been shown to be superior (Greinix 2008).

12.4.5 GvHD Prophylaxis Medications

The standard medications used across the transplant community are listed below.

Ciclosporin (*CsA*) is given as an intravenous infusion commencing usually 1–2 days prior to HSCT infusion to load the bloodstream and is eventually converted to an oral preparation when the patient is able to tolerate tablets again. Ciclosporin binds to cyclophilin and prevents generation of nuclear factor of activated T-cells (NF-AT), which is a nuclear factor for initiating gene transcription for lymphokines including interleukin-2 and interferon gamma. This action leads to suppression of cytokine production and subsequent inhibition of T-cell activation (Greinix 2008).

Methotrexate (*MTX*) is an anti-proliferative agent given intravenously on days 1, 3, 6 and 11 after HSCT for those patients receiving a full-intensity transplant. It prevents the division and clonal expansion of T-cells. It is important to receive all four doses, but severe mucositis (grade IV) often prohibits administration of the fourth and final dose and is given at the clinician's discretion.

Mycophenolate mofetil (*MMF*), used mainly in reduced-intensity transplant conditioning regimens, is an anti-metabolite that results in non-competitive reversible inhibition of inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase. This leads to selective inhibition of lymphocytes, purine synthesis and proliferation. Patients have less mucositis and faster neutrophil recovery compared to methotrexate (Greinix 2008).

Tacrolimus binds to FK506 protein 12, a different protein to the one that CsA does, but their final common pathway is identical (Greinix 2008).

Sirolimus is a natural macrolide antibiotic that exerts its immunosuppressive effect by inhibiting cytokine-driven signalling pathways of the T- and B-cell via mTOR blockade and specifically inhibiting the progression of cells from the G1 phase to the S phase. The advantage is that sirolimus has a completely different toxicity profile to calcineurin inhibitors and can be used in combination with them (Dignan et al. 2012).

Campath-1H or alemtuzumab is given in a variety of doses from 30 to 90 mg and is dependent upon the cell source and degree of mismatch between donor and recipient. It is an unconjugated humanised IgG1 kappa monoclonal antibody that targets the CD52 antigen on the T and B lymphocytes as well as on monocytes, macrophages, eosinophils and dendritic cells. The major disadvantage of this drug is the increase of infections due to the extended period of lymphopenia. CMV reactivations and infections are particularly troublesome in this patient cohort, necessitating strict surveillance (Dignan et al. 2012).

Anti-thymocyte globulin (*ATG*) decreases T-cells and also leads to viral infections. Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) reactivations can be problematic and can result in post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (PTLD).

Post-transplant cyclophosphamide (*PT-Cy*) used in haploidentical transplants and allows mismatched transplantation to occur, addressing both host rejection and GvHD.

Abatacept is a fusion protein that selectively inhibits T-cell co-stimulation and is effective as aGvHD prophylaxis (Ngwube et al. 2020).

12.4.5.1 Initial Treatment of Acute GvHD

Despite all of the recent advances in the understanding and treatment of GvHD, steroids remain the best and first-line therapy. The mechanism of action of steroids for aGvHD is unclear but most likely relates to the suppression of cytokines such as prevention of synthesis of interleukin-1 by antigen-presenting cells and lymphocyte activities (Greinix 2008).

Grade I: should not require systemic treatment. If CsA levels are optimised, then topical steroids in conjunction with an emollient may be introduced along with antihistamine for itchy skin.

Grade II: anything at or above grade II is likely to require systemic treatment. If the patient progresses from grade I to grade II following optimisation of CNI and topical therapy, then systemic corticosteroids are indicated. Patients presenting with grade II signs should commence systemic steroids for their anti-inflammatory properties, and local guidelines should be followed for dosage. Some patients with GI symptoms may benefit from budesonide as a steroid-sparing treatment as it is regarded as a non-absorbable therapy.

Grades III and IV: requires treatment with systemic steroids. If GI symptoms are the major feature, then the steroids should be given intravenously to prevent problems with absorption because of vomiting, diarrhoea and abnormal mucosal lining.

Steroids are effective treatment in approximately 40% of people, with 30% having a long-lasting response and a probability of survival at 1 year of 53%, with the skin being the most responsive at 40% with a response rate of 15–35% for those with liver involvement and 45% in GI. The lower the grade of aGvHD and the fewer organs affected, the better the response to steroids (Greinix 2008). Mohty et al. (2020) suggest that corticosteroid refractoriness occurs after 3 days of treatment with 2 mg/kg of methylprednisolone or no improvement after 7 days or progression to a new organ or recurrence during or after a taper.

12.4.6 Second-Line Therapies for aGvHD

Once first-line therapy has failed, there are multiple options such as the following:

Ruxolitinib: approved in the USA in May 2019 for corticosteroid-refractory GvHD in adults and children over 12 years. The REACH 1 trial supplied the clinical evidence (Jagasia et al. 2020) and was reinforced by REACH 2, which was ruxolitinib versus best available therapy. Ruxolitinib targets several signal pathways and may cause neutropenia and increase infection risk (Wolff et al. 2021).

Extracorporealphotopheresis: 8-methoxypsoralen (8-MOP) is a photoactivated drug that covalently binds to DNA pyrimidine bases, cell surface molecules and cytoplasmic components in the exposed nucleated white cells, causing a lethal defect. It is added to a patient's blood following withdrawal by a cell separator machine; the cells are then exposed to ultraviolet light A (UVA) and returned to the patient. Once reinfused, the cells undergo apoptosis over the next 24–48 hours. The mechanism of action is not currently fully understood (Cho et al. 2018). The reinfusion and subsequent phagocytosis by antigen-presenting cells (APCs) may regulate immune homeostasis through modulation of cytokine production and tolerance induction of APCs (Bladon and Taylor 2006). ECP is a safe treatment as it has fairly minimal side effects, hypotension, fevers, drop in haemoglobin, photophobia and tiredness post-procedure. The procedure is performed in most centres by highly trained apheresis nursing staff.

Further second- and third-line therapies are discussed below.

Second-line therapies				
Antitumour necrosis	Infliximab	Etanercept		
Mammalian target, rapamycin inhibitors mTOR	Sirolimus			
Mycophenolate mofetil (MMF)				
Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies	Daclizumab,	Denileukin diftitox	Inolimomab	Basiliximab
Third-line therapies				
Mesenchymal stem cells MSC				
Alemtuzumab				
Pentostatin				
Methotrexate				
Tyrosine kinase inhibitor	Imatinib			

Often, at least two second-line therapies will be used before moving on to a third-line treatment

12.4.7 Nursing Care Considerations for aGvHD

In addition to systemic treatments, there are often topical management techniques as well as general care that nurses can offer to patients that will lead to relief from frequently troublesome symptoms of aGvHD. Below are a few pointers for consideration when caring for patients with aGvHD affecting their skin or gastrointestinal system.

12.4.8 Cutaneous

Basic Skin Care

The key issue with patients who have cutaneous aGvHD is to maintain the integrity of the skin, and the following suggestions are key factors in doing this: Regular application of preferred emollients (e.g. QV, Hydromol, Diprobase). Advise application of a thin layer (enough to make the skin appear 'shiny'), in the direction of hair growth. Try not to 'rub' as this will increase any pain or itch. As guidance for amounts, it would be suggested that an adult would use on average 500 g/week and a child, 250 g/week. Use of bath/shower preparations (e.g. Dermol, QV, Hydromol) rather than soap, use of high SPF sunscreen (e.g. SunSense SPF 50+) and localised use of topical antipruritic agents (e.g. Dermacool 0.5–1%) if required. If the skin is still flaky, the patient can be advised to apply lipids (e.g. coconut oil) in addition to the emollients. Equally good-quality creams containing aloe vera gel are often very soothing (note: do not use aloe vera gel alone as this will dry the skin).Topical immunomodulation (e.g. steroid/tacrolimus cream) should be prescribed as per local protocol; however, there are a few general rules about the use of topical steroids: think about the potency/duration of the product used in relation to the age of the patient and the area of the body it is being applied to. Always apply thinly – once daily is usually enough. Think about whether the skin is weepy, when a cream/lotion is

appropriate or dry/scaly, in which case, an ointment may be preferable. Steroids should be applied at a different time to emollients (at least a 30-min gap between) to ensure effective absorption, and remember that broken skin is a contraindication to use.

Topical Management of Specific Stages of Cutaneous aGvHD/Maculopapular Rash (Pruritic/Painful).

Emollients are key to management at all stages. With sensitive, irritated skin, an emollient that is too thick will just not be used, whereas one that is too 'thin' will be perceived as ineffective.

Topical steroids: each hospital will have its own protocol for prescription of topical steroids, and this should be adhered to.

Menthol cream (0.5–1%, e.g. Dermacool) can be useful for management of painful and pruritic skin but must be used with care as they can make the patient feel very cold with widespread use and so are better used only on focal areas with extreme itchiness/pain.

Medical-grade silk clothing (e.g. Dermasilk, Espere Healthcare): it is important to explore the holistic care of the patient. Many clothing materials can cause irritation – even natural materials such as cotton. If there are widespread areas of the torso affected, it is worth suggesting the use of medical-grade silk as this is manufactured to cause minimal irritation and, in some countries, can be prescribed. If this is not available, clothing made from bamboo can be suggested as an alternative.

Your hospital may have a protocol specifically for patients with bullous desquamation, and treatment would be similar to those people who suffer severe burns. An example would be to irrigate with sterile water, apply an antibacterial cream (e.g. Flamazine) and protect the area from the air to minimise pain and risk of infection. The cream can be applied directly to sterile theatre gauze and wrapped around the patient to prevent trauma.

12.4.9 Gastrointestinal

Patients who develop GI symptoms affecting upper, lower GI as well as their liver may have multiple problems: reduced appetite, bloating and early satiety with nausea and frequent retching or vomiting and abdominal discomfort related to liver pain or as a consequence of increased bowel activity. Nurses should ensure that stool samples are sent to exclude infective components. Once ruled out and treatment started, nursing care may aid in a more rapid recovery and maintenance of weight. Ensuring an adequate oral input with high-calorie supplements and strict fluid balance are of primary importance. Options for enteral feeding or intravenous total parental nutrition in the short term to rest the bowel need to be kept in mind if the above actions are not sufficient, with procedures such as a radiologically inserted gastrostomy (RIG) used for long-term issues. Those with upper GI disturbance, nausea and vomiting need advice on small and frequent meals as well as supplements. For itch associated with jaundice, topical or oral antihistamines can be used. Patients who develop grade IV GI aGvHD will benefit from use of flexi-seal faecal collection devices if they have high faecal output.

12.5 Chronic Graft-Versus-Host Disease

Chronic GvHD is a serious and life-threatening condition and is a major cause of late morbidity and mortality after allogeneic haematopoietic cell transplantation occurring in 30–70% of patients (Miklos et al. 2017). Chronic GvHD prevalence and severity has increased with the increasing use of HSCT for treatment of older-age patients, the widespread use of mobilised blood cells instead of marrow for grafting and improvements in survival during the first several months after allograft. Preventing cGvHD remains challenging (Inamoto et al. 2021). Typically occurring in the first 12 months, it can be seen as early as 2 months and as late at 7 years at onset, although onset at >1 year from transplant occurs in <10% of cases (Flowers and Martin 2015). The risk of infection due to the delay in immune reconstitution and use of immunosuppressive therapies to treat cGvHD remains, however, the leading cause for death in this group of patients (Couriel et al. 2006). Supportive care

advances have decreased the morbidity, but survival has not changed significantly since the 1980s. Patients with cGvHD have a 5-year survival of 40–70%, with only 50% being able to stop immunosuppression at 5 years, with 10% needing treatment beyond this time point. The other 40% either die or develop a further malignancy before cGvHD resolves (Martin et al. 2006).

12.6 Chronic GvHD Grading

Historically if patients developed signs and symptoms of GvHD after day 100, this was labelled as chronic, even if clinically the patient appeared to have acute features. The criteria for the diagnosis of cGvHD are based on pathological changes occurring in the skin, lung, mucous membranes, gastrointestinal tract and musculoskeletal system (Greinix 2008).

Chronic GvHD includes classic cGvHD, presenting with manifestations that can be ascribed only to cGvHD; however, it also includes an overlap syndrome, which has diagnostic or distinctive cGvHD manifestations together with features typical of aGvHD (Vigorito et al. 2009).

The National Institute of Health (NIH) described a reliable and reproducible scoring scheme to evaluate the individual organ severity of four grades with scores 0–3:

- None; score 0.
- Mild involvement (no significant impairment of daily living); score 1.
- Moderate involvement (significant impairment of daily living); score 2.
- Severe impairment (major disability); score 3.

The clinical score describes how affected the patient is by their inability to perform activities of daily living. This evaluation covers the involvement of individual organs and sites. For example, if they are unable to work due to ocular loss, they would be scored as 3, severe (Carpenter 2011). The scoring should be undertaken initially at 3 months post-transplant and at 3 monthly intervals and more frequently if new signs or symptoms are found or there is a change in treatment.

The NIH in 2014 provided a Diagnosis and Staging Working Group Report. A revision was made to the diagnostic criteria for involvement of the mouth, eyes, genitalia and lungs. Schirmer's test was removed, and an ophthalmology review is recommended. Also, if an unequivocal explanation can be made for a specific abnormality that is not GvHD, then that organ should be regarded as not affected by GvHD (Jagasia et al. 2015). Earlier recognition is important, and the NIH published a series of papers in 2021 (Inamoto et al. 2021) to describe features that did not yet meet the NIH 2014 criteria. This was to enable less experienced practitioners the ability to recognise and make appropriate referrals. There were also descriptions of the use of electronic tools such as the eGvHD app to aid in earlier diagnosis (Kitko et al. 2021).

Chronic GvHD commonly occurs in patients who have previously had aGvHD although it is not simply a case of evolution from one to another. Chronic GvHD usually occurs within 3 years of allograft and is a disease of deregulated immunity with protean manifestations that mimic autoimmune disorders such as Sjogren syndrome, primary biliary cirrhosis, wasting syndrome, bronchiolitis obliterans, immune cytopenias and chronic immunodeficiency (Jagasia et al. 2015).

Single organs alone may be affected and can progress to other organs; however, cGvHD nearly always affects multiple sites, having major impact upon a patient's quality of life. There is a wide range in severity and how this relates to compromise in patients' QoL, with some manifestations being more problematic to treat (Flowers and Martin 2015).

12.6.1 Diagnosis of cGvHD

For a diagnosis of cGvHD to be made, the NIH 2014 working group suggest that at least one diagnostic manifestation of cGvHD or at least one distinctive manifestation, with the latter confirmed by pertinent biopsy, laboratory tests, evaluation by a specialist or radiology in the same or other organ be present, unless stated otherwise. It is important with any organ considered for a diagnosis of cGvHD that other causes for the

symptoms are excluded such as infection or recurrent or new malignancy (Jagasia et al. 2015). The features should also differ from the typical dermatitis, enteritis and cholestatic liver manifestations of aGvHD (see Appendix 12.A.2 for the full tables of assessment).

12.6.2 Chronic GvHD of the Skin

For a clinical diagnosis of skin cGvHD, features of poikiloderma, lichen planus-like eruption, deep sclerotic features, morphea-like superficial sclerotic features or lichen sclerosus-like lesions are needed (Jagasia et al. 2015). Assessment of the skin is performed to look at the four anatomic levels of involvement, and the score is based on the percentage of area involved and the differentiation between non-sclerotic and sclerotic features:

1. Erythematous rash (epidermal involvement).
2. Movable sclerosis (dermal involvement).
3. Non-movable sclerosis, hidebound skin or involvement of subcutaneous tissue and facia (subcutaneous involvement).
4. Ulceration (full-thickness loss of epidermal tissue).

Points 1–3 are assessed using the 'rule of 9s' body surface area score. Local skin involvement below 20% body surface and the absence of sclerotic features are classified as 'mild'. Skin involvement between 20% and 50% is 'moderate', with more than 50% becoming 'severe' (Greinix 2008). This scoring system is effective in adults but less so in children; however, it is still used in children over the age of 1 year. Ulceration is recorded by measuring the diameter of the largest ulcer (Pavletic et al. 2006). The skin is often very fragile and becomes damaged easily with poor healing of any wound. Distinctive features of cGvHD that are not seen in aGvHD are depigmentation, although this occurs gradually and may only be perceptible over long time periods, and papulosquamous lesions, although this alone is not enough for a diagnosis. It must be made in combination with other signs or confirmed with biopsy. Common features of both acute and chronic GvHD are erythema, maculopapular rash and pruritis (Jagasia et al. 2015). Itching is common and, therefore, should be recorded using a scale of 1–10 for severity, with the patient asked what was the highest score this week (Pavletic et al. 2006).

Distinctive signs of nail cGvHD are longitudinal ridging, splitting or brittleness, onycholysis and loss of nails that is usually symmetric and affects most nails (Jagasia et al. 2015).

Loss of hair can be a devastating effect of cGvHD for patients, and in this context, it is considered a distinctive feature alone. Hair has often returned following chemotherapy or radiotherapy, and the loss is often patchy and happens across the whole body. Patients may suffer with premature greying, thinning or brittleness of their hair (Jagasia et al. 2015).

12.6.3 Chronic GvHD of the Oral Cavity

Patients with oral cGvHD complain of a sore mouth that is not dissimilar to the pain suffered with oral mucositis post-chemotherapy/radiotherapy. Tolerance of spicy food stuff is poor, toothpaste burns are common and hot drinks such as tea and coffee are almost impossible to take. It is important to rule out infection as this will cause pain to be worse. Frequent swabs for virus, bacterial and fungal infection should be taken and acted upon promptly. To aid with oral pain management, Caphosol, Gelclair, lidocaine, paracetamol mist and Difflam mouthwash can be used.

Advise patients to frequently swill the mouth after eating to remove any debris using plain water. This is refreshing and ph7 so comfortable to do. Encourage the use of products to aid in production of saliva as the mucosa is usually very dry. Artificial saliva or sugar-free gum and, in some centres, pilocarpine may be used.

Many medications have side effects of dry mouth. Look to see if there are any alternatives that could be prescribed for your patient.

Early referral to the dentist is vital, as the risk of dental caries and secondary oral cancers is higher in patients with oral GvHD. Advice to perform regular oral exercises to reduce the risk of contractures.

For patients who have received stem cells derived from the bone marrow (BM), oral cGvHD is the most common site of involvement, and the oral cavity is the second most common site with PBSC (Meier et al. 2011). There are three components to mouth and oral mucosa assessment:

1. Mucosal involvement.
2. Salivary gland involvement.
3. Sclerotic involvement of mouth and surrounding tissues (Couriel et al. 2006).

Within the oral cavity, clinical diagnostic features include lichen planus-like changes. These are described as white lines and lacy-appearing lesions or plaque-like changes. This can occur on any oral surface including the tongue and lips. The mouth will be dry (xerostomia) and have mucoceles, mucosal atrophy, ulcers and pseudomembranes. Common features of both acute and chronic GvHD are gingivitis, mucositis, erythema and pain (Jagasia et al. 2015). If new lesions occur >3 years post-transplant, secondary malignancy should be excluded with biopsy. The lesion often starts as leukoplakia and can be confused with cGvHD but may be a squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) (Couriel et al. 2006).

Chronic GvHD of the mouth is scored as 3 areas using the standard 0–3 scale with a percentage of area involved:

1. Erythema.
2. Lichenoid.
3. Ulcers.

Oral sensitivity is measured on a self-score system from 1 to 10, with the worst and therefore highest score it has been for the past week recorded (Pavletic et al. 2006). The consequences of oral cGvHD in cases of hypo-salivation and xerostomia are in relation to the function of saliva and lack thereof. Poor protection against oral infections and mechanical and chemical epithelial injuries can occur. Remineralisation is impaired that can lead to dental caries, speech may be altered and eating becomes problematic (Meier et al. 2011; Treister et al. 2013).

12.6.4 Chronic GvHD of the Eyes

New onset of dry, gritty or painful eye with cicatricial conjunctivitis, keratoconjunctivitis sicca and confluent areas of punctate keratopathy are distinctive features and may occur in isolation with no other active cGvHD (Couriel et al. 2006). Lacrimal dysfunction or destruction is responsible for dry eye symptoms (Pavletic et al. 2006). Infection should be excluded and treated if apparent. Patients may describe photophobia, burning, irritation, pain, a foreign body sensation, blurred vision and paradoxically excessive tearing.

Scoring of eyes is based on frequency of use of eye drops and the occurrence of keratoconjunctivitis sicca. Asymptomatic keratoconjunctivitis sicca or need for eye drops less than three times per day is classed as ‘mild’, whilst symptomatic and the need for more than three times daily eye drops +/− punctual plugs is ‘moderate’. Those with ‘severe’ ocular cGvHD are unable to work because of ocular symptoms or require special eyewear such as dark glasses to relieve pain or have loss of vision due to keratoconjunctivitis sicca (Greinix 2008).

12.6.5 Chronic GvHD of the Genitalia

Patients who suffer from oral or skin cGvHD are also very likely to have some degree of genital cGvHD. This affects both men and women and is significantly under-reported. Some basic nursing input can help with symptoms of pain and discomfort experienced. Asking patients if this is a problem for them is the first step as patients are often reticent about mentioning genital problems to the medical team. In women, vaginal scarring and clitoral/labial agglutination occur, and in men, phimosis and urethral/meatus scarring are features. In both sexes, lichen planus-like and lichen sclerosis features are diagnostic. It is essential due to the under-reporting of symptoms that patients are examined for early signs especially if oral features are present. Studies suggest that 3–15% of women have vulvar or vaginal cGvHD (Couriel et al. 2006). The diagnosis relies heavily on sign and symptom reporting. Symptoms in women may include dryness, burning, pruritis, pain to touch, dysuria and dyspareunia. Signs include patchy or

generalised erythema, mucosal erosions or fissures, labial resorption, circumferential fibrous vaginal banding, vaginal shortening and complete vaginal stenosis. Female genital tract involvement is scored as 'mild' if any erythema on vulvar mucosal surfaces, vulvar lichen planus or vulvar lichen sclerosis exists. Those with any erosive inflammatory changes of the vulvar mucosa or fissures in the vulvar folds are scored as 'moderate'. Severe scores are when there is labial fusion, clitoral hood agglutination, fibrinous vaginal adhesions, circumferential fibrosis vaginal banding, vaginal shortening, synechia, dense sclerotic changes and complete vaginal stenosis (Couriel et al. 2006).

In the absence of diagnostic manifestations of cGvHD in other organs, histological evidence is strongly recommended and ruling out of oestrogen deficiency or infection with yeast, HPV or bacteria (Couriel et al. 2006). A referral pathway to the gynaecologist and if possible one with an interest in assessing these patients should be implemented.

There are a variety of treatments that may offer some symptomatic benefit. With female patients, application of an emollient to the vulval region and use of dilators with a lubricant such as olive oil or coconut oil will help minimise the risk of contractures. Vaginal moisturisers may make women feel more comfortable. Referral through to endocrinology for discussions about hormone replacement therapy (HRT) with oestrogen can be initiated by nursing staff. Mechanical and chemical irritants should be avoided. Washing with warm water, using products from such ranges as Oilatum or Dermol if required (rather than soap), cleaning in a front-to-back direction and then air-drying are to be advised. Bacteriostatic gels such as Replens may be used in the vagina for comfort as this adheres to the vaginal wall and has a long-lasting effect. Vulval and vaginal topical management can include steroid/immunosuppressant cream. In extreme cases, surgical interventions may be required to release strictures and adhesion formation. In all cases, particularly if the woman is not sexually active, dilators lubricated with, for example, a lipid, such as coconut oil, should be thought about as a way of maintaining vaginal patency and capacity. Men may have painful intercourse and a burning sensation on micturition. Signs include non-infectious balanoposthitis, lichen sclerosis-like or lichen planus-like features, phimosis or urethra or meatus scarring or stenosis (Jagasia et al. 2015). Signs of lichen planus-like features are classed as 'mild', lichen sclerosis-like features or moderate erythema is 'moderate' and 'severe' signs are phimosis or urethral or meatal scarring. Application of emollient is suggested alongside good hygiene to help reduce tightening of the foreskin.

Body image and sexual dysfunction are significant problems for both men and women post-transplant and are especially problematic upon development of cGvHD. Counselling and early involvement with psych-oncology services are important to aid in maintaining normality in an abnormal situation.

In a first case series describing vvGvHD in a paediatric and young adult population, 42% of patients were asymptomatic at the time of diagnosis. This may be due to a misunderstanding and under-reporting of genital symptoms in paediatric patients. It may indicate that paediatric patients are at greater risk than adult women for delayed or missed diagnosis. Larger, prospective studies are needed to evaluate treatment regimens and establish clinical care guidelines for paediatric vvGvHD (Cizek et al. 2019).

12.6.6 Chronic GvHD of the Gastrointestinal (GI) Tract

Gastrointestinal tract symptoms occur frequently, and oesophageal web, stricture or concentric rings demonstrated on endoscopy or imaging are diagnostic features for GI cGvHD. Patients may have dysphagia, odynophagia, heartburn, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, cramping, diarrhoea, weight loss and malnutrition, and these are all common features present in both acute and chronic GvHD as well as other aetiologies. It is important to make a firm diagnosis before commencing treatment. Diarrhoea should be investigated with stool culture and virology examination to exclude *C. diff* and CMV in particular (Couriel et al. 2006). Patients may also suffer from pancreatic atrophy and exocrine insufficiency that causes malabsorption and can respond to pancreatic enzyme supplementation (Jagasia et al. 2015). For

upper GI, early satiety, anorexia and nausea and vomiting are scored on occasional symptoms with little reduction in oral intake during the past week being 'mild'; a 'moderate' score of cGvHD as intermittent symptoms with some reduction in oral intake during the past week; and 'severe' if the patient has persistent symptoms throughout the day with a marked reduction in oral intake on almost every day of the past week. Lower GI disturbance with diarrhoea will score 'mild' if the patient has occasional loose or liquid stool on some days throughout the week. If the patient is having intermittent loose or liquid stool throughout the day, on almost every day of the last week, without requiring intervention to prevent or correct volume depletion, it is scored as 'moderate'. Those with 'severe' disease have voluminous diarrhoea on almost every day of the past week, requiring intervention to prevent or correct volume depletion.

12.6.7 Chronic GvHD of the Liver

The liver has no firm diagnostic features of cGvHD, and all other causes need to be excluded, e.g. viral infections, biliary obstruction and drug toxicity. A biopsy, if possible, can help carry a high risk of bleeding and is therefore not frequently performed; imaging may be useful to exclude liver abscess, infiltration or gall bladder disease (Couriel et al. 2006). Patients may present in two ways, with a liver function test showing a steep rise in serum ALT, with or without jaundice or transaminitis, or as a progressive cholestatic picture with elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase and GGT followed by jaundice (Jagasia et al. 2015). Any elevation of liver enzymes greater than twice normal may be regarded as 'mild', 2.5 times upper limit of normal as 'moderate' and 'severe' if five times.

12.6.8 Chronic GvHD Pulmonary System

Historically, for a firm diagnosis of pulmonary cGvHD, a biopsy was essential to prove bronchiolitis obliterans (BO); however, as there was a high risk of bleeding, it is now accepted that a diagnosis of bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS) can be made following pulmonary function testing (PFT). Pre-transplant screening is essential to obtain a baseline PFT with post-transplant PFT at 3 months and 1 year or more frequently if the patient develops signs as patients remain asymptomatic with an insidious onset of symptoms (Flowers and Martin 2015). A new onset of an obstructive lung defect is indicative of BOS. Clinically, the patient may be short of breath on exertion and have a cough or wheeze, but these may be later effects. There are strict criteria for BOS, and all need to be met for a diagnosis:

1. FEV1/VC < 0.7 or the fifth percentile of predicted.
2. %FEV1 < 75% of predicted with >10% decline over less than 2 years. %FEV1 should not correct to >75% with salbutamol, and the rate of decline for the corrected values should still remain at >10% decline over 2 years.
3. Absence of infection in the respiratory tract, documented with investigations directed by clinical symptoms, such as radiologic studies (radiographs or computed tomographic scans) or microbiologic cultures (sinus aspiration, upper respiratory tract viral screen, sputum culture, bronchoalveolar lavage).
4. Either one distinctive manifestation of chronic GvHD or another supporting feature of BOS.

Air trapping by expiratory chest high-resolution CT or small airway thickening or bronchiectasis or trapping on PFT where there is a residual volume of >120% or residual volume/total lung capacity >120% predicted is supporting evidence for BOS (Jagasia et al. 2015).

Chronic lung GvHD may be treated with bronchodilators, inhaled corticosteroids, systemic steroids, montelukast and referral to a physical rehabilitation programme (Couriel et al. 2006). Lung GvHD has a somewhat dismal outcome as it is not very responsive to any modality. Nurses and physiotherapists can help patients manage distress and possible panic situations the patient may feel due to increasing breathlessness by teaching complementary self-management skills such as breathing techniques, focused relaxation and stress management.

12.6.9 Chronic GvHD of the Musculoskeletal System

Diagnostic features of the musculoskeletal system include fascial involvement usually of the forearms or legs, but frequently affecting the abdomen and chest wall with sclerosis of the overlying skin and subcutaneous tissue and joint stiffness or contractures that can develop and severely impact on quality of life (Jagasia et al. 2015). The degree of functional impairment is scored as 'mild' if there is mild tightness of arms or legs, normal or mild decreased range of movement (ROM) and does not affect activities of daily living (ADL). Where there is tightness of arms or legs or joint contractures or erythema thought due to fasciitis, a moderate decrease of ROM and mild-to-moderate limitation of ADL, it is scored as 'moderate'. For 'severe' then, the patient will have contractures with significant decrease of ROM and significant limitation of ADL, e.g. unable to tie shoelaces, button a shirt or dress self.

Table 12.1 NIH global severity of chronic GvHD

Mild chronic GvHD
1 or 2 organs involved (not lung) *plus*
Score in involved organs 1 *plus*
Lung score 0
Moderate chronic GvHD
3 or more organs involved *plus*
Score of 1 in each organ
Or
Atleast 1 organ (not lung) with a score of 2
Or
Lung score 1
Severe chronic GvHD
1 organ with a score of 3
Or
Lung score of 2 or 3
Key points
1. In the skin: Higher of the two scores to be used for calculating global severity
2. In the lung: FEV1 is used instead of clinical score for calculating global severity
3. If a non-GvHD documented cause unequivocally explains the entire organ abnormality, then the organ is not scored for global severity. If the abnormality is thought to be multifactorial, it is scored without attribution from non-GvHD causes

12.6.10 Scoring of Chronic GvHD

The global scoring system of NIH 2014 was developed to be suitable for clinical trial assessments and reflects the clinical impact of cGvHD on the patient's functional status and organ impairment and is defined by Jagasia et al. (2015) in Table 12.1.

Jagasia et al. (2015) with permission.

12.7 Assessment of Response

Pavletic et al. (2006) proposed a set of measures for assessing the response to treatment of cGvHD patients. These should be performed at three monthly intervals or whenever a major change occurs. Organ-specific measures should be recorded from clinical signs and symptoms and a global rating of mild/moderate/severe made. Assessment with non-specific ancillary measures such as grip strength, 2-min walk test (or Activity Scale for Kids (ASK)) and Karnofsky score with a quality of life (QoL) score is recommended. Quality of life assessment tools such as SF-36 or FACT-BMT in adults or CHRIs (Child Health Ratings Inventories) in children can be used.

12.8 Treatment of Chronic GvHD

The long-term aim of cGvHD therapy is for the patient to develop immune tolerance and reduce morbidity. This is recognised by the ability to withdraw immunosuppression without a flare of symptoms. Most therapeutic options focus on the development of immunosuppressive agents and the ex vivo removal of the unfractionated donor T-cell population from the stem cell graft (Greinix 2008). The mainstay of treatment has for more than 30 years been the use of systemic steroids, usually with a starting dose of 1 mg/kg per day with or without calcineurin inhibitor (CNI). Steroids have a multitude of side effects such as toxicities, diabetes, weight gain, bone loss, myopathy, hypertension, mood swings, cataracts, avascular necrosis and an increase in infections (Flowers and Martin 2015).

Treatment for cGvHD is far from satisfactory with only approximately 50% of patients responding to systemic steroids with or without calcineurin inhibitors and less than 20% of patients alive without disability at 4 years. Combinations of steroids with azathioprine, thalidomide, mycophenolate mofetil or hydroxychloroquine in randomised trials have not yielded any benefit over steroids alone for survival or duration of therapy (Flowers and Martin 2015). However, the recent REACH 3 trial results found that ruxolitinib significantly improved outcomes across a range of efficacy measures when compared to best available therapy in steroid-refractory/steroid-dependent patients (Zeiser et al. 2021). Steroids still offer the best first-line treatment choice for those with cGvHD and should be started as soon as a diagnosis is made.

The ROCKstar study looked at belumosudil in steroid-refractory cGvHD and found promising efficacy and favourable safety profile in patients with fibrotic manifestations who had previously received at least three prior therapies. This has the potential to improve the outlook for patients with difficult lung and skin symptoms (Cutler et al. 2021).

12.8.1 Second-Line, Third-Line and Other Therapies for Chronic GvHD

Below is a brief list of second- and third-line therapies for cGvHD; it is not exhaustive by any means, and many treatments are used following limited evidence from small non-randomised trials. The choice for further therapies is in most part governed by the features of cGvHD and the toxicities that may be inflicted as well as the availability of the drug locally. The lack of consistently effective treatment in this setting underscores the need for high-quality clinical trials. Please refer to local policies and guidance with respect to second-line and subsequent therapies.

Ruxolitinib is an oral JAK 1 and 2 tyrosine kinase inhibitor originally used for polycythemia or myelofibrosis patients. It is widely used as a second-line therapy following the REACH 3 trial (Zeiser et al. 2021).

Ibrutinib, a Bruton's tyrosine kinase and interleukin-2-inducible T-cell kinase inhibitor, targets B- and T-cells. It can interfere with platelet function, leading to bleeding problems (Wolff et al. 2021). In pre-clinical models, it delayed progression and improved clinical manifestations (Miklos et al. 2017).

Extracorporeal photopheresis (ECP) is widely used in mucocutaneous cGvHD as a second-line therapy in steroid-refractory patients and has been shown to be effective in up to 80% of patients (Couriel et al. 2006). A UK consensus paper supported the findings and recommended ECP use in this group, with paired sessions every 2 weeks with reassessment at 3 months (Scarisbrick et al. 2008).

Imatinib, a tyrosine kinase inhibitor licenced for use in chronic myeloid leukaemia (CML), has gained popularity over the past few years. Experiments have shown reduction in fibrosis possibly from a dual inhibition process of transforming growth factor beta and platelet-derived growth factor pathways (Dignan et al. 2012).

Sirolimus, an mTOR inhibitor, may be used in combination with other agents but with caution in CNI due to increased risk of thrombotic microangiopathy and hyperlipidaemia.

Rituximab is commonly used in haematology for B-cell malignancy and is a potent anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, and there is some limited evidence of its use in cGvHD for musculoskeletal and cutaneous manifestations (Dignan et al. 2012).

Mesenchymal stem cells (MSC) (Ringden and Keating 2011) have generated considerable interest in treatment of aGvHD following initial studies from the group at the Karolinska Institute. There was some evidence from early experiments that MSC worked in autoimmune disorders, and given the fact that cGvHD may resemble this in some ways, MSC have been used for cGvHD treatment but remain mainly within clinical trials.

Belumosudil (REZUROCK™), a selective ROCK2 inhibitor (Rho-associated coiled-coil-containing protein kinase), is important in tis-

sue response to injury. It has gained first approval in the USA for use in patients ≥12 years with cGvHD after failure of at least two prior lines of systemic therapy as it has shown to be able to restore immune homeostasis and reduce fibrosis (Zanin-Zhorov and Blazar 2021).

12.8.2 Topical Treatments for cGvHD of the Eyes

The aim of treatment is to give symptomatic relief of dry eye, and care should be coordinated with an experienced ophthalmologist. Focus is placed upon increasing ocular surface moisture via lubrication and decreasing tear evaporation and tear drainage from the eye and decreasing ocular surface inflammation. Preservative-free drops coat the eye surface, minimising dry spots on the cornea, decreasing ocular symptoms and improving vision. It may take several different trials of drops to find one that works, as patients may be more sensitive to one solution. Temporary (with punctual plugs) or permanent (with cauterisation) occlusion of the tear duct may offer a solution to those with severe dry eye. Where there is inflammation of the ocular surface, direct application of steroid eye drops may be beneficial especially if the patient is on a taper of systemic immunosuppression and eye flare symptoms (Couriel et al. 2006). If available, autologous or allogeneic serum eye drops may decrease surface inflammation.

Dark glasses will reduce irritants such as wind and block any debris that may blow into the patient's eyes. There are a variety of graded dark glasses that may be obtained through an optician that can block up to 90% of light and reduce photophobia significantly. It is often useful to wear glasses inside the house to reduce discomfort. Cold compress with ice packs and chamomile tea bags are useful in some instances.

Ciclosporin eye drops appear to offer a solution, but they cause irritation in most patients, and thus compliance is often poor. Specialist ophthalmology clinics may have access to scleral lens replacement in severe cases.

12.8.3 Topical Treatments for Oral cGvHD

Management of oral cGvHD aims to alleviate symptoms of dry mouth, sensitivity and pain whilst maintaining oral function and restoring mucosal integrity (Meier et al. 2011). It may appear obvious, but the single most important action for patients is to maintain good oral hygiene (daily care and regular dental visits). Children's toothpaste causes less irritation and should be used with a soft toothbrush, with the addition of lip salve if appropriate. Avoidance of potential triggers for flares of cGvHD such as spicy or hot food or sharp foodstuffs that can cause damage is also suggested. Sip water and chew sugar-free gum to improve xerostomia.

Often, patients require systemic therapy as multiple sites are involved. However, the oral cavity can be refractory to systemic therapy; thus, complementary topical treatment is needed. There are a variety of topical steroid mouthwashes that are the first line of therapy, including prednisolone, budesonide or betamethasone. Tacrolimus 0.1% mouthwash is well tolerated and has shown to be an effective option and may be used alongside steroid mouthwashes as second-line therapy. It is important to describe adequately how to use these preparations as in many cases, this is not their usual route of administration.

To relieve oral pain, topical application of local anaesthetics such as lidocaine can be applied, either as a gel, mouthwash or spray. These should be used with caution as the gag reflex may be compromised and lead to choking and aspiration.

12.8.4 Ancillary and Supportive Care for cGvHD of the Skin

The skin remains the most affected organ for chronic GvHD, which is often debilitating when in extremis. Topical treatments are a vital therapy in addressing the manifestations of itch, rash, pain and dyspigmentation, whilst the use of physical therapy helps patients with limited range of movement maintain some degree of functionality.

Other healthcare providers such as tissue viability and infection control teams can offer help, guidance and support when the skin becomes friable and breaks down, leaving ulcers, erosions and superadded infections. The patient with cutaneous cGvHD is at an increased risk of skin cancer, and regular monitoring and assessment are advised. Any suspicion should be followed up with biopsy. Advice with respect to UV exposure should be given regularly: avoiding direct sun exposure and using sunblocks and sunscreens and loose-fitting clothing with hat and glasses.

One of the major challenges for topical management of cutaneous cGvHD is the often severe sclerotic features—characterised by thickened, tight and fragile skin. This is frequently associated with poor wound healing, inadequate lymphatic drainage and skin ulcers from minor trauma or idiopathic origin. The following are important points to be given and regularly reinforced to all patients:

- Take care to minimise risk of bumps/knocks.
- Pat skin dry—no rubbing.
- Wear loose clothing to minimise risk of friction/irritation.
- Avoid sun exposure as much as possible.
- Maintain good water intake.
- Minimise/avoid the use of perfumes directly onto the skin (advise to spray onto clothes instead); if using make-up, suggest minimal skin applications, researching into good-quality products, and protect the skin with initial application of a moisturiser.
- Provide clear, consistent and repeated reinforcement regarding the importance of regular use of emollients.
- Contact clinical team as soon as possible if skin lesions are noted to facilitate initiation of appropriate care plan and reduce risk of wound infection.

12.8.5 Connective Tissue Involvement in cGvHD

Patients with cGvHD affecting skin, joints and connective tissue will benefit from inclusion in an exercise rehabilitation programme along with occupational therapy. Functional losses associated with muscle loss, weakness, contractures and limb swelling lead to fatigue and a decreased ability to perform activities of daily living and often preclude patients from being able to return to work. Rehabilitation should aim to improve strength and mobility of joints and muscles and ideally should occur before permanent and lasting damage has set in (Couriel et al. 2006). Such programmes should include family members where possible, as exercises need to be carried out on a regular basis to be effective, with the patient often needing support to do this. It can also be psychologically helpful to any family/carers involved as it allows them to feel confident to be part of the care of their loved one.

In addition to exercise, regular massage can help maintain flexibility and function of affected limbs. If there is fascial involvement, any massage provided will need to access these tissue layers to be effective. It is therefore important that the therapist providing this treatment has been trained in using such techniques. Again, it is possible to teach family members appropriate massage skills, which will improve the efficacy of therapy provided.

12.8.6 Quality of Life

QoL is severely compromised in cGvHD, with reports of fatigue, pain and GI upset. FACT-BMT QoL questionnaire studies have revealed that physical, sexual and social functioning is also lower with higher rates of depression and anxiety and adverse effects on social and family interactions. Depressive symptoms are more severe and last longer and often manifest when patients complain of loss of memory or poor concentration. Fatigue may be considered as a separate entity but is often mixed with QoL, anxiety and depression. It may be described as a persistent and subjective state of tiredness that interferes with usual functioning and can continue for several years after transplant (Couriel et al. 2006). Using questionnaires to assess these issues with individual patients is something which nurses

can instigate to identify the impact of psychological morbidity in specific cases. These can be used as a framework to enable patients to express their concerns and structure a support programme to help manage specific issues—including onward referrals to appropriate professionals. de Vere et al. (2021) carried out a qualitative exploration of quality of life issues in patients with GvHD. They found that there was significant variation in symptoms and the extent that the symptoms affected each patient, a key point that nurses should note to be able to individualise care.

12.9 The Future

HSCT numbers continue to increase annually, and the morbidity and mortality associated with GvHD remains a significant problem. There is emerging understanding of the pathophysiology, and several new therapies have emerged in the past 2 years that have significantly improved the outlook for patients. Success in prophylaxis and treatment of GvHD will depend on whether GvHD can be prevented without losing the anti-tumour effect. Risk stratification and the emergence of a bedside GvHD test based on proteomics may be on the horizon and will ultimately then improve the outlook for this difficult-to-treat group of patients (Greinix 2008).

12.10 GvHD in Children

Data and research on GvHD in the paediatric population are limited with only a few studies specifically focused on children. Most studies are small, and children are often grouped into larger adult series (Baird et al. 2010; Gatza et al. 2020). In this short review, we will emphasise on the specific aspects of paediatric GvHD, primarily focusing on cGvHD.

In a recent publication, the Paediatric Diseases Working Party of the EBMT surveyed centres performing paediatric HSCT, looking at real-life approaches of prevention and treatment strategies in aGvHD. The findings highlight the need for standardised paediatric approaches towards aGvHD prophylaxis/treatment differentiated for malignant and non-malignant diseases (Lawitschka et al. 2020). Adolescents and young adults have increased rates of aGvHD when compared to children, and it is multifactorial, related to both biological and psychosocial factors. This likely contributes to a substantially greater risk of TRM (Friend and Schiller 2021). MacMillan et al. (2020) report a single-centre large paediatric series of 370 patients, examining the clinical phenotype of aGvHD at diagnosis and response to upfront steroid therapy. They conclude that aGvHD is different in children, with a higher incidence of isolated skin involvement, less liver involvement and less multi-organ involvement than adults. Children respond to steroids as upfront GVHD therapy to a similar extent as adults.

Most of the literature on cGvHD has focused on adults. Although the clinical manifestation of cGvHD in children is similar to that in adults, the consequences of treatment and non-responses are remarkably different in a growing organism (Lawitschka et al. 2012). Children with cGvHD are of particular interest, given their longer life expectancy and developmental issues following the complications of cGvHD and its therapy (Jacobsohn 2010; Jacobsohn et al. 2011). Compared with childhood cancer survivors who did not undergo transplantation, HSCT survivors have a substantially increased burden of serious chronic conditions and impairments involving every organ. A history of GvHD or presence of cGvHD contributes to increased rate of long-term complications in the paediatric transplant survivors (Chow et al. 2016). Chronic GvHD has negative effects on an individual's physical and mental health and can lead to the development of functional impairments and activity limitations over their lifetime (Baird et al. 2010) as well as reduced quality of life (Inagaki et al. 2015). However, paediatric cGvHD remains an understudied area of research (Jacobsohn et al. 2011; (Cuvelier et al. 2019)); therefore, large paediatric multicentre studies are needed (Watkins et al. 2016).

12.10.1 Incidence and Risk Factors

Overall the rates of cGvHD are lower in children than adults (Champlin et al. 2000; Rocha et al. 2000). However, the incidence of cGvHD in the paediatric population is still substantial and has increased recently in association with the expanded use of peripheral blood stem cells and unrelated donors (Baird et al. 2010). Zecca et al. (2002) in a large paediatric study reported a cumulative probability of cGvHD of 27%; this probability is nearly half of the estimated probability of 40–50% described in adults. Flowers et al. (2011) published a large single-centre study of risk factors for aGvHD and cGvHD. The sample included both adult and paediatric patients; cGvHD was defined according to the NIH cGvHD criteria (Filipovich et al. 2005). The incidence of moderate-to-severe cGvHD in the paediatric patient was 28% (Watkins et al. 2016).

The risk factors for cGvHD in childhood are still poorly defined. Zecca et al. (2002) reported the risk factors associated with cGvHD in children: male patients transplanted from a female donor experience more cGvHD. Children with non-malignant disorders had a reduced risk of developing cGvHD. This might be due to the fact that children with these diseases do not benefit from GvHD since they do not need any graft-versus-malignancy effect, and therefore the most effective pharmacologic strategies for both prevention and treatment of aGvHD were used in these patients. The condition of mixed donor chimerism is associated with reduced susceptibility to GvHD. Some of the children with non-malignant disorders (those with aplastic anaemia or with congenital immunodeficiencies) are given less intensive preparative regimens, and it has been hypothesised that the cytokine storm, which is dependent on the intensity of the conditioning regimen, triggers development of GvHD. Malignant diseases and the use of myeloablative protocol as well as TBI as part of the preparative regimen offer an increased risk of classic aGvHD (Faraci et al. 2012). Older recipient and donor ages are another risk factors for cGvHD (Watkins et al. 2016).

12.10.2 Treatment

The major emphasis in GvHD has been on prevention, as results with treatment have been disappointing. Currently, most centres use a combination of a calcineurin inhibitor (cyclosporine or tacrolimus) with short-course methotrexate (Jacobsohn 2008), with differences between malignant and non-malignant diseases and myeloablative and reduced-intensity conditioning (Lawitschka et al. 2020).

The treatment of cGvHD in paediatrics is highly variable and mostly extrapolated from the experience in adults. Although there is no proven standard therapy, prednisolone and cyclosporine are commonly used as front-line therapy. As steroids remain the basis of cGvHD therapy, the consequences of long-term steroid use in children are well described, and long-term harmful effects on growth and bone density persist even after discontinuation of therapy.

Other potential treatment strategies include extracorporeal photopheresis (as discussed earlier in this chapter) and the infusion of allogeneic human mesenchymal stem cells (MSC) for the treatment of aGvHD and cGvHD. Multiple MSC infusions are safe and effective for children with steroid-refractory aGvHD, especially when employed early in the disease course. Early treatment may be associated with reduced treatment-related mortality and better overall survival (Ball et al. 2013). MSC offer new potential modalities of treatments for paediatric cGvHD refractory to standard treatments (Lawitschka et al. 2012). The treatment in paediatric patients must take into consideration the potential effect on growth, nutrition, organ function, bone metabolism, hormonal balance, psychosocial aspects and immune reconstitution (Baird et al. 2010; Lawitschka et al. 2012).

Recently, the FDA has approved ruxolitinib for steroid-refractory acute graft-versus-host disease (SR-aGVHD) in adult and paediatric patients 12 years and older (Przepiorka et al. 2020). Ruxolitinib is a promising treatment in SR-GvHD. There are a few studies in children that demonstrated it is an effective option in acute and chronic SR-GVHD (Moiseev et al. 2020)

with moderate-toxicity profile (Mozo et al. 2021) and with high overall response for acute and chronic GvHD, with a high ORR of 77% and 89%, respectively (González Vicent et al. 2019).

Ibrutinib is another novel medication indicated for the treatment of adult patients with cGvHD after failure of one or more lines of systemic therapy. A small study of 22 paediatric patients concluded that administration of ibrutinib shows promising responses in cGvHD as salvage and second-line therapy, but further studies are needed (Teusink-Cross et al. 2020).

The nursing management and care of children with GvHD are complex and require expert skills and knowledge as well as adjustment to the child's/adolescent's developmental need. Patients and families, who initially felt great relief to be cured from their primary disease, now face the challenge of a chronic devastating disease, for which preventative and treatment strategies are suboptimal (Baird et al. 2010). The treatment and support of the children and their families require a multidisciplinary team care that will be able to provide a comprehensive response to all their needs.

Appendix 1: Classification of Patients with Acute GVHD

Hyperlink to MAGIC Paper and Acute GvHD Assessment

https://www.astctjournal.org/article/S1083-8791(15)00602-3/fulltext

Glucksberg et al. (1974) modified criteria taken from the EBMT 2008 revised edition of handbook with permission.

Appendix 2: Scoring of Chronic GvHD

https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4329079/

	SCORE 0	SCORE 1	SCORE 2	SCORE 3
PERFORMANCE SCORE: ☐ **KPS ECOG LPS**	Asymptomatic and fully active (ECOG 0; KPS or LPS 100%)	Symptomatic, fully ambulatory, restricted only in physically strenuous activity (ECOG 1, KPS or LPS 80-90%)	Symptomatic, ambulatory, capable of self-care, >50% of waking hours of bed (ECOG 2, KPS or LPS 60-70%)	Symptomatic, limited self-care, >50% of walking hours in bed (ECOG 3-4, KPS or LPS <60%)
SKIN † ☐ **SCORE % BSA** *GVHD features to be scored by BSA:* **Check all that apply:** Maculopapular rash/erythema; Lichen planus-like features; Sclerotic features; Papulosquamous lesions or ichthyosis; Keratosis pilaris-like GVHD	No BSA involved	1-18% BSA	19-50% BSA	>50% BSA
SKIN FEATURES SCORE:	No sclerotic features		Superficial sclerotic features "not hidebound" (able to pinch)	**Check all that apply:** Deep sclerotic features "Hidebound" (unable to pinch); Impaired mobility; Ulceration

Other skin GVHD features (NOT scored by BSA)

Check all that apply:

Hyperpigmentation
Hypopigmentation
Poikiloderma
Severe or generalized pruritus
Hair involvement
Nail involvement

*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____

MOUTH *Lichen planus-like features present:* **Yes** **No**	No symptoms	Mild symptoms **with** disease signs but not limiting oral intake significantly	Moderate symptoms with disease signs **with** partial limitation of oral intake	Severe symptoms with disease signs on examination **with** major limitation of oral intake

*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____

	SCORE 0	SCORE 1	SCORE 2	SCORE 3
EYES *Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS) confirmed by ophthalmologist:* **Yes** **No** **Not examined**	No symptoms	Mild dry eye symptoms not affecting ADL (requirement of lubricant eye drops ≤ 3 × per day)	Moderate dry eye symptoms partially affecting ADL (requirement lubricant eye drops > 3 × per day or punctal plugs), **WITHOUT** new vision impairment due to KCS	Severe dry eye symptoms significantly affecting ADL (special eyeware to relieve pain) **OR** unable to work because of ocular symptoms **OR** loss of vision due to KCS
*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____				
GI Tract ***Check all that apply:*** Esophageal web/ proximal stricture or ring Dysphagia Anorexia Nausea Vomiting Diarrhea Weight loss ≥ 5%* Failure to thrive	No symptoms	Symptoms without significant weight loss*(<5%)	Symptoms associated with mild to moderate weight loss* (5-15%) **OR** moderate diarrhea without significant interference with daily living	Symptoms associated with significant weight loss* >15%, requires nutritional supplement for most calorie needs **OR** esophageal dilation **OR** severe diarrhea with significant interference with daily living
*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____				
LIVER	Normal total bilirubin and ALT or AP <3 x ULN	Normal total bilirubin and ALT ≥3 to 5 x ULN or AP ≥ 3 x ULN	Elevated total bilirubin but ≤3 mg/dL or ALT > 5 ULN	Elevated total bilirubin > 3 mg/dL
*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____				
LUNGS**				
Symptom score:	No symptoms	Mild symptoms (shortness of breath after climbing one flight of steps)	Moderate symptoms (shortness of breath after walking on flat ground)	Severe symptoms (shortness of breath at rest; requiring 0_2)
Lung score: % FEV1 ☐	FEV1≥80%	FEV1 60-79%	FEV1 40-59%	FEV1 ≤39%
Pulmonary function tests Not performed				
*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____				

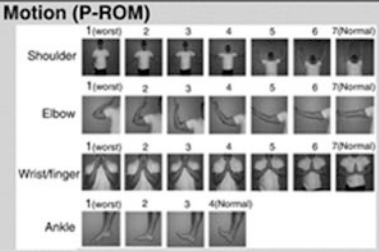
	SCORE 0	SCORE 1	SCORE 2	SCORE 3
JOINTS AND FASCIA P-ROM score *(see below)* Shoulder (1-7):___ Elbow (1-7):___ Wrist/finger (1-7):___ Ankle (1-4):___	No symptoms	Mild tightness of arms or legs, normal or mild decreased range of motion (ROM) **AND** not affecting ADL	Tightness of arms or legs **OR** joint contractures, erythema thought due to fasciitis, moderate decrease ROM **AND** mild to moderate limitation of ADL	Contractures **WITH** significant decrease of ROM ***AND*** significant limitation of ADL (unable to tie shoes, button shirts, dress self etc.)
*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____				
GENITAL TRACT *(see Supplemental figure‡)* Not examined *Currently sexually active* Yes No	No signs	Mild signs‡ and females with or without discomfort on exam	Moderate signs‡ and may have symptoms with discomfort on exam	Severe signs‡ with or without symptoms
*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*_____				

Other indicators, clinical features or complications related to chronic GVHD (Check all that apply and assign a score to severity (0-3) based on functional impact where applicable non–0, mild-1, moderate-2, severe–3)

Ascites (serositis)___	Myasthenia Gravis___	
Pericardial Effusion___	Peripheral Neuropathy___	Eosinophilia > 500/μl___
Pleural Effusion(s)___	Polymyositis___	Platelets <100,000/μl___
Nephrotic syndrome___	Weight loss>5%* without GI symptoms___	Others (specify) :_____

Overall GVHD Severity *(Opinion of the evaluator)* ❑ **No GVHD** ❑ **Mild** ❑ **Moderate** ❑ **Severe**

Photographic Range of Motion (P-ROM)



† Skin scoring should use both percentage of BSA involved by disease signs and the cutaneous features scales. When a Discrepancy exists between the percentage of total body surface (BSA) score and the skin feature score, OR if superficial sclerotic features are present (Score 2), but there is impaired mobility or ulceration (Score 3), the higher level should be used for the final skin scoring.

* Weight loss within 3 months.

** Lung scoring should be performed using both the symptoms and FEV1 scores whenever possible. FEV1 should be used in the final lung scoring where there is discrepancy between symptoms and FEV1 scores.
Abbreviations: ECOG (Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group), KPS(Karnofsky Performance Status), LPS(Lansky Performance Status); BSA(body surface area); ADL(activities of daily living); LFTs(liver function tests); AP (alkaline phosphatase); ALT (alanine aminotransferase); ULN(normal upper limit).

‡ To be completed by specialist or trained medical providers (see Supplemental Figure).

Name:_____ Date of birth:_____ Assessment date:_____

	SCORE 0	SCORE 1	SCORE 2	SCORE 3
GENITAL TRACT (male or female)	☐ No signs	☐ Mild signs and females may have symptoms* WITH discomfort on exam	☐ Moderate signs and may have symptoms* with discomfort on exam	☐ Severe signs with or without symptoms*

Currently sexually active:
☐ Yes ☐ No

Check all signs that applies:

- ☐ Lichen planus-like features
- ☐ Lichen sclerosis-like features
- ☐ Vaginal scarring (female)
- ☐ Clitoral/labial agglutination (female)
- ☐ Labial resorption (female)
- ☐ Erosions
- ☐ Fissures
- ☐ Ulcers
- ☐ Phimosis (male)
- ☐ Urethral meatus scarring/ stenosis (male)

☐ *Abnormality present but NOT thought to represent GVHD (specify cause):*_____
☐ *Abnormality thought to represent GVHD PLUS other causes (specify cause):*_____

**Genital symptoms are not specific to cGVHD and can represent premature gonadal failure or genital tract infection.*

If a gynecologist is unavailable, external examination may be performed to determine "discomfort on exam" as follows:

a) Spread the labia majora to inspect the vulva for the above signs. Touch the vestibular gland openings (Skene's and Bartholin's), labia minora and majora gently with a qtip. Vulvar pain elicited by the gentle touch of a qtip is classified as discomfort on examination. Palpate the vaginal walls with a single digit to detect bands, shortening, narrowing or other signs of vaginal scarring.

b) If the woman is sexually active, determine whether qtip palpation or gentle palpation of scarred ridges elicits pain similar to that which the woman experiences during intercourse.

Female genitalia: Severity of signs:
1) Mild (any of the following); erythema on vulvar mucosal surfaces, vulvar lichen-planus or vulvar lichen-sclerosis
2) Moderate (any of the following); erosive inflammatory changes of the vulvar mucosa, fissures in vulvar folds
3) Severe (any of the following); labial fusion, clitoral hood agglutination, fibrinous vaginal adhesions, circumferential fibrous vaginal banding, vaginal shortening, synechia, dense sclerotic changes, and complete vaginal stenosis

Male genitalia: Diagnostic features include lichen planus-like or lichen sclerosis-like features and phymosis or urethral scarring or stenosis. Severity of signs: **Mild** – lichen planus-like feature; **Moderate** – lichen sclerosis-like feature or moderate erythema; **Severe** – phimosis or urethral/meatal scarring

Biopsy obtained: ☐ **Yes** ☐ **No** **Site biopsied:**_____**GVHD confirmed by histology:** ☐ **Yes** ☐ **No**

Change from previous evaluation: ☐ **No prior or current GVHD** ☐ **Improved** ☐ **Stable** ☐ **Worse** ☐ **N/A (baseline)**

Jagasia et al. (2015) with permission.

References

Baird K, Cooke K, Schultz KR. Chronic graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) in children. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2010;57:297–322.

Ball LM, et al. Multiple infusions of mesenchymal stromal cells induce sustained remission in children with steroid-refractory, grade III–IV acute graft-versus-host disease. Br J Haematol. 2013;163:501–9.

Baron F, Labopin M, Niederwieser D, Vigouroux S, Cornelissen JJ, Malm C, Vindelov LL, Blaise D, Janssen JJWM, Petersen E, Socie G, Nagler A, Rocha V, Mohty M. Impact of graft-versus-host disease after reduced-intensity conditioning allogeneic stem cell transplantation for acute myeloid leukemia: a report from the acute leukemia working Party of the European group for blood and marrow transplantation. Leukemia. 2012;26:2462–8.

Bladon J, Taylor P. The down regulation of IL1 and IL6, in monocytes exposed to ECP treated lymphocytes, is not dependent on lymphocyte phosphatidylserine externalisation. Transpl Int. 2006;19(4):319–24.

Billingham RE. The biology of graft-versus-host reactions. Harvey Lect. 1966;62:21–78.

Carpenter P. How I conduct a comprehensive chronic graft-versus-host disease assessment. Blood. 2011;118(10):2679–87.

Cho A, Jantschitsch C, Knobler R. Extracorporeal photopheresis—an overview. Front Med. 2018;5:236.

Chow EJ, Anderson L, Baker KS, et al. Late effects surveillance recommendations among survivors of childhood hematopoietic cell transplantation: a children's oncology group report. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22:782–95.

Champlin RE, Schmitz N, Horowitz MM, et al. Blood stem cells compared with bone marrow as a source of hematopoietic cells for allogeneic transplantation. IBMTR histocompatibility and stem cell sources working committee and the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). Blood. 2000;95:3702–9.

Couriel DR, Hosing C, Saliba R, Shpall EJ, Anderlini P, Rhodes B, Smith V, Khouri I, Giralt S, de Lima M, Hsu Y, Ghosh S, Neumann J, Andersson B, Qazilbash M, Hymes S, Kim S, Champlin R, Donato M. Extracorporeal photochemotherapy for the treatment of steroid-resistant chronic GVHD. Blood. 2006;107:3074–80.

Cizek SM, El-Bietar J, Rubinstein J, Dandoy C, Wallace GH, Nelson A, et al. Pediatric and Young adult vulvovaginal graft-versus-host disease. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2019;25(12):2408–15.

Cutler C, Lee SJ, Arai S, Rotta M, Zoghi B, Lazaryan A, Ramakrishnan A, De Filipp Z, Salhotra A, Chai-Ho W, Mehta R, Wang T, Arora M, Pusic I, Saad A, Shah N, Abhyankar S, Bachier C, Galvin J, Im A, Langston A, Liesveld J, Juckett M, Logan A, Schachter L, Alavi A, Howard D, Waksal HW, Ryan J, Eiznhamer D, Aggarwal SK, Ieyoub J, Schueller O, Green L, Yang Z, Krenz H, Jagasia M, Blazar BR, Pavletic S, on behalf of the ROCKstar Study Investigators. Belumosudil for chronic graft-versus-host disease (cGVHD) after 2 or more prior lines of therapy: the ROCKstar study. Blood. 2021;38(22):2278–89. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood.2021012021.

Cuvelier GDE, Nemecek ER, Wahlstrom JT, Kitko CL, Lewis VA, Schechter T, et al. Benefits and challenges with diagnosing chronic and late acute GVHD in children using the NIH consensus criteria. Blood. 2019;134(3):304–16.

de Vere HI, Kilgour JM, Danby R. Peniket A and matin RA "is this the GVHD?" A qualitative exploration of quality of life issues in individuals with graft-versus-host disease following allogeneic stem cell transplant and their experiences of a specialist multidisciplinary bone marrow transplant service. Health Qual Life Outcomes. 2021;19:11.

Dignan FL, Clark A, Amrolia P, Cornish J, Jackson G, Mahendra P, Scarisbrick JJ, Taylor PC, Hadzic N, Shaw BE, Potter MN. On behalf of the Haemato-oncology task force of the British Committee for Standards in Haematology and the British Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Diagnosis and management of acute graft-versus-host disease. Br J Haematol. 2012;158(1):30–45.

Ferrara JL, Deeg HJ. Graft-versus-host disease. N Engl J Med. 1991;324:667–74.

Flowers MED, Inamoto Y, Carpenter PA, Lee SJ, et al. Comparative analysis of risk factors for acute graft-versus-host disease and for chronic graft-versus-host disease according to National Institutes of Health consensus criteria. Blood. 2011;117:3214–9.

Flowers MED, Martin PJ. How we treat chronic graft versus host disease. Blood. 2015;125(4):606–15.

Filipovich AH, Weisdorf D, Pavletic S, et al. National Institutes of Health consensus development project on criteria for clinical trials in chronic graft-versus-host disease: I. diagnosis and staging working group report. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2005;11(12):945–56.

Faraci M, Caviglia I, Biral E, et al. Acute graft-versus-host disease in pediatric allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Single-center experience during 10 yr. Pediatr Transplant. 2012;16:887–93.

Friend BD, Schiller GJ. Beyond steroids: A systematic review and proposed solutions to managing acute graft-versus-host disease in adolescents and young adults. Blood Rev. 2022;52:100886. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.blre.2021.100886.

Gatza E, Reddy P, Choi SW. Prevention and treatment of acute graft-versus-host disease in children, adolescents, and Young adults. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2020;26(5):e101–12.

Glucksberg H, Storb R, Fefer A, Buckner CD, Neiman PE, Clift RA, Lerner KG, Thomas ED. Clinical manifestations of graft-versus-host disease in human recipients of marrow from HL-A-matched sibling donors. Transplantation. 1974;18:295–304.

González Vicent M, Molina B, González de Pablo J, Castillo A, Díaz MÁ. Ruxolitinib treatment for steroid refractory acute and chronic graft vs host disease in children: clinical and immunological results. Am J Hematol. 2019;94(3):319–26.

Gooptu M, Antin JH. GVHD Prophylaxis 2020. Front Immunol. 2021;12:605726.

Greinix HT. Graft-versus-host disease. Bremen: UNI-MED Verlag AG; 2008.

Harris AC, Young R, Devine S, Hogan WJ, Ayuk F, Bunworasate U, Chanswangphuwana C, Efebera YA, Holler E, Litzow M, Ordemann R, Qayed M, Renteria SA, Reshef R, Wölfl M, Chen YB, Goldstein S, Jagasia M, Locatelli F, Mielke S, Porter D, Schechter T, Shekhovtsova Z, Ferrara JLM, Levine JE. International, multicenter standardization of acute graft-versus-host disease clinical data collection: A report from the Mount Sinai acute GVHD international consortium. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22:4–10.

Hill GR, Ferrara JLM. The primacy of the gastrointestinal tract as a target organ of acute graft-versus-host disease: rationale for the use of cytokine shields in allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. Blood. 2000;95:2754–9.

Inagaki J, Moritake H, Nishikawa T, et al. Long-term morbidity and mortality in children with chronic graft-versus-host disease classified by National Institutes of Health consensus criteria after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:1973–80.

Inamoto WK, Im Y, Hamilton B, Koreth J, Arora M, Pusic I, Mays JW, Carpenter PA, Luznik L, Reddy P, Ritz J, Greinix H, Paczesny S, Blazar BR, Pidala J, Cutler C, Wolff D, Schultz KR, Pavletic SZ, Lee SJ, Martin PJ, Socie G, Sarantopoulos S. National Institutes of Health consensus development project on criteria for clinical trials in chronic graft-versus-host disease: I. the 2020 etiology and prevention working group report transplantation and cellular. Therapy. 2021;27(6):452–66.

Jacobsohn DA. Acute graft-versus-host disease in children. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;41:215–21.

Jacobsohn DA. Optimal management of chronic graft-versus-host disease in children. Br J Haematol. 2010;150:278–92.

Jacobsohn DA, Arora M, Klein JP, et al. Risk factors associated with increased nonrelapse mortality and with poor overall survival in children with chronic graft-versus-host disease. Blood. 2011;118(16):4472–9.

Jacobsohn DA, Vogelsang GB. Acute graft versus host disease. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2007;2:35.

Jagasia M, et al. Reach 1 rux for the treatment of steroid refract aGvHD. Blood. 2020;135(20):1737–49.

Jagasia MH, Greinix HT, Arora M, Williams KM, Wolff D, Cowen EW, Palmer J, Weisdorf D, Treister NS, Cheng S, Kerr H, Stratton P, Duarte RF, McDonald GB, Inamoto Y, Vigorito A, Arai S, Datiles MB, Jacobsohn D, Heller T, Kitko CL, Mitchell SA, Martin PJ, Shulman H, Wu RS, Cutler CS, Vogelsang GB, Lee SJ, Pavletic SZ, Flowers MED. National Institutes of Health chronic graft-versus-host disease consensus for clinical trials: I. the 2014 diagnosis and staging working group report. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21(3):389–401.

Kitko CL, Pidala J, Schoemans HM, Mary E, Flowers ME, Cowen EW, Tkaczyk E, Farhadfar N, Jain S, Steven P, Luo ZK, Ogawa Y, Stern M, Yanik GA, Cuvelier GDE, Cheng GS, Holtan SG, Schultz KR, Martin PJ, Lee SJ, Pavletic SZ, Wolff D, Paczesny S, Blazar BR, Sarantopoulos S, Socie G, Greinix H, Cutler C. National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Project on Criteria for Clinical Trials in Chronic Graft-versus-Host Disease: IIa. The 2020 Clinical implementation and early diagnosis working group report. Transplant Cell Ther. 2021;27:545557.

Lawitschka A, Ball LM, Peters C. Nonpharmacologic treatment of chronic graft-versus-host disease in children and adolescents. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2012;18:S74–81.

Lawitschka A, Lucchini G, Strahm B, Dalle JH, Balduzzi A, Gibson B, et al. Pediatric acute graft-versus-host disease prophylaxis and treatment: surveyed real-life approach reveals dissimilarities compared to published recommendations. Transpl Int. 2020;33(7):762–72.

MacMillan ML, Holtan SG, Rashidi A, DeFor TE, Blazar BR, Weisdorf DJ. Pediatric acute GVHD: clinical phenotype and response to upfront steroids. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2020;55(1):165–71.

Magenau J, Reddy P. Next generation treatment of acute graft-versus-host disease. Leukaemia. 2014;28:2283–91.

Martin PJ, Weisdorf D, Przepiorka D, Hirschfeld S, Farrell A, Rizzo JD, Foley R, Socie G, Carter S, Couriel D, Schultz KR, Flowers MED, Filipovich AH, Saliba R, Vogelsang GB, Pavletic SZ, Lee SJ. National Institutes of Health consensus development project on criteria for clinical trials in chronic graft-versus-host disease: VI. Design of clinical trials working group report. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2006;12:491–505.

Meier JKH, Wolff D, Pavletic S, Greinix H, Gosau M, Bertz H, Lee SJ, Lawitschka A, Elad S. Oral chronic graft-versus-host disease: report from the international consensus conference on clinical practice in cGVHD. Clin Oral Invest. 2011;15:127–39.

Miklos D, Cutler C, Arora M, Waller E, Jagasia M, Pusic I, Flowers ME, Logan AC, Nakamura R, Blazar B, Li Y, Chang S, Lal I, Dubovsky J, James DF, Styles L, Jaglowski S. Ibrutinib for chronic graft-versus host disease after failure of prior therapy. Blood. 2017;130:21.

Mohty M, Holler E, Jagasia M, Jenq R, Malard F, Martin P, Socie G, Zeiser R. Refractory acute graft versus host disease: a new working definition beyond corticosteroid refractoriness. Blood. 2020;136(17):1903–6.

Moiseev IS, Morozova EV, Bykova TA, Paina OV, Smirnova AG, Dotsenko AA, et al. Long-term outcomes of ruxolitinib therapy in steroid-refractory graft-versus-host disease in children and adults. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2020;55(7):1379–87. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-020-0834-4.

Mozo Y, Bueno D, Sisinni L, Fernández-Arroyo A, Rosich B, Martínez AP, et al. Ruxolitinib for steroid-refractory graft versus host disease in pediatric HSCT: high response rate and manageable toxicity. Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2021;38(4):331–45. https://doi.org/10.1080/08880018.2020.1868637.

Ngwube A, Shah N, Godder K, Jacobsohn D, Hulbert ML, Shenoy S. Abatacept is effective as GVHD prophylaxis in unrelated donor stem cell transplantation for children with severe sickle cell disease. Blood Adv. 2020;4(16):3894–9.

Pavletic SZ, Martin P, Lee SJ, Mitchell S, Jacobsohn D, Cowen EW, Turner ML, Akpek G, Gilman A, McDonald G, Schubert M, Berger A, Bross P, Chien JW, Couriel D, Dunn JP, Fall-Dickson J, Farrell A, Flowers MED, Greinix H, Hirschfeld S, Gerber L, Kim S, Knobler R, Lachenbruch PA, Miller FW, Mittleman B, Papadopoulos E, Parsons SK, Przepiorka D, Robinson M, Ward M, Reeve B, Rider LG, Shulman H, Schultz KR, Weisdorf D, Vogelsang GB. Measuring therapeutic response in chronic graft-versus-host disease: National Institutes of Health consensus development project on criteria for clinical trials in chronic graft-versus-host disease: IV. Response criteria

working group report. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2006;12:252–66.
Przepiorka D, Weisdorf D, Martin P, Klingemann HG, Beatty P, Hows J, Thomas ED. 1994 consensus conference on AGvHD grading. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1995;15:825–8.
Przepiorka D, Luo L, Subramaniam S, Qiu J, Gudi R, Cunningham LC, et al. FDA approval summary: Ruxolitinib for treatment of steroid-refractory acute graft-versus-host disease. Oncologist. 2020;25(2):328–34.
Ringden O, Keating A. Mesenchymal stromal cells as treatment for chronic GVHD. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2011;46:163–4.
Rocha V, Wagner JE Jr, Sobocinski KA, et al. Graft-versus-host disease in children who have received a cord-blood or bone marrow transplant from an HLA identical sibling. Eurocord and international bone marrow transplant registry working committee on alternative donor and stem cell sources. N Engl J Med. 2000;342:1846–54.
Rowlings PA, Przepiorka D, Klein JP, Gale RP, Passweg JR, Henslee-Downey PJ, Cahn JY, Calderwood S, Gratwohl A, Socié G, Abecasis MM, Sobocinski KA, Zhang MJ, Horowitz MM. IBMTR Severity Index for grading acute graft-versus-host disease: retrospective comparison with Glucksberg grade. Br J Haematol. 1997;97(4):855–64.
Scarisbrick JJ, Taylor P, Holtick U, Makar Y, Douglas K, Berlin G, Juvonen E, Marshall S, Photopheresis Expert Group. U.K. consensus statement on the use of extracorporeal photopheresis for treatment of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma and chronic graft-versus-host disease. Br J Dermatol. 2008;158:659–78.
Teusink-Cross A, Davies SM, Grimley MS, Chandra S, Flannery A, Dandoy CE, et al. Ibrutinib for the treatment of chronic graft-vs-host disease in pediatric hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients: A single-center experience. Pediatr Transplant. 2020;24(3):1–9.
Treister N, Chai X, Kurland B, Pavletic S, Weisdorf D, Pidala J, Palmer J, Martin P, Inamoto Y, Arora M, Flowers M, Jacobsohn D, Jagasia M, Arai S, Lee SJ, Cutler C. Measurement of oral chronic GVHD: results from the chronic GVHD consortium. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2013;48:1123–8.
Vigorito AC, Campregher PV, Storer BE, Carpenter PA, Moravec CK, Kiem HP, Fero ML, Fero ML, Warren EH, Lee SJ, Applebaum FR, Martin PJ, Flowers MED. Evaluation of NIH consensus criteria for classification of late acute and chronic GvHD. Blood. 2009;114(3):702–8.
Watkins BK, Horan J, Storer B, Martin PJ, Carpenter PA, Flowers MED. Recipient and donor age impact the risk of developing chronic GvHD in children after allogeneic hematopoietic transplant. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;52(4):625–6. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2016.328. 1–2 advance online publication 19 December 2016
Wolff D, von Lilienfeld-Toal M, Wolf AM, Schleuning M, von Bergwelt-Baildon M, Held SEA, Brossart P. Novel treatment concepts for graft-versus-host disease. Blood. 2012;119(1):16–25.
Wolff D, Fatobene G, Rocha V, Kroger N, Flowers ME. Steroid refractory chronic graft versus host disease: treatment options and patient management. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56:2079–87.
Zecca M, Prete A, Rondelli R, Lanino E, Balduzzi A, Messina C, et al. Chronic graft versus-host disease in children: incidence, risk factors, and impact on outcome. Blood. 2002;100:1192–200.
Zeiser R, Polverelli N, Ram R, Hashmi SK, Chakraverty R, Middeke JM, Musso M, Giebel S, Uzay A, Langmuir P, Hollaender N, Gowda M, Stefanelli M, Lee SJ, Teshima T, Locatelli F. Ruxolitinib for glucocorticoid-refractory chronic graft-versus-host disease. N Engl J Med. 2021;385(3):228–38.
Zeiser R. Advances in understanding the pathogenesis of graft-versus-host disease. Br J Haematol. 2019;187(5):563–72.
Zanin-Zhorov A, Blazar BR. ROCK2, a critical regulator of immune modulation and fibrosis has emerged as a therapeutic target in chronic graft-versus-host disease. Clin Immunol. 2021;230:108823. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clim.2021.108823.

Graft Versus Tumour Effect

13

Mairéad NíChonghaile

Abstract

The treatment of relapsed disease remains challenging, and it is well accepted that concept of allogeneic HSCT relies upon both the conditioning or preparative regimen used for the recipient and the graft versus malignancy (GvM) or leukaemia (GvL) effect provided by the donor T cells and NK cells. Strategies which involve harnessing this effect are crucial to success and need to be exploited and refined to improve outcome. Further research is required to identify new strategies and therapies to improve the outlook for patients who relapse post-HSCT.

The nursing challenges following relapse are immense; the psychological support required is complex and largely falls to the nurse to coordinate and deliver regardless of the selected treatment approach.

Keywords

Graft versus malignancy (GvM) or leukaemia (GvL) · Donor lymphocyte infusions (DLI) · Relapse · Chimerism

M. NíChonghaile (✉)
HOPE Directorate, St James's Hospital, Dublin, Ireland

13.1 Introduction

The concept of allogeneic haematopoetic stem cell transplant (HSCT) relies upon both the conditioning or preparative regimen used for the recipient and the graft versus malignancy (GvM) or leukaemia (GvL) effect provided by the donor T cells and NK cells. The autoimmune attack on the malignancy helps eradicate the disease in the recipient with the aid of the condition regimen. The susceptibility of a malignant condition being eradicated by GVM of GvL effect varies with the most sensitive conditions being chronic myeloid leukaemia, chronic lymphocytic leukaemia, low-grade B-lymphoproliferative disorders, mantle cell lymphoma and EBV lymphoproliferative conditions. Most other conditions have an intermediate sensitivity to the GvM or GvL effect with conditions that have a special proliferation or that are advanced or chemo-refractory having the least response.

13.2 Mechanism of GvM/GvL Effect

Both T lymphocytes and NK cells participate in the GvL effect, and it is believed that cytotoxic T cells recognise several classes of antigens on leukaemic cells. The NK cells target MMag self-proteins (present on the tissues of the recipient), which are overexpressed by the leukaemia, e.g.

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_13

proteinase 3 and elastase tumour-specific antigens, e.g. Wilms tumour 1, and fused proteins, e.g. BCR-ABL, by using the perforin-granzyme pathway to kill their targets. However, they are only activated when inhibitory signals from self (recipient) MHC class 1 molecules on the target are missing or overcome by activating signals through the NKG2D receptor. The suppressor of the recipient's immune system allows the donor cells to provoke this effect.

13.3 Minimal Residual Disease (MRD)

The purpose of monitoring MRD in the post-transplant setting is to track disease response or remission or low-level disease recurrence when the quantity of a particular marker starts to increase. This enables a therapeutic intervention to be implemented very early and may optimise the chance of success.

MRD can be monitored using molecular methods—this is where the underlying condition has a specific market or protein that can be monitored by using flow cytometry. Table 13.1 shows the cytogenetic abnormalities that can be targeted in some diseases (adapted from Treleaven and Barrett 2009 page 410), and Table 13.2 shows some of the molecular targets (adapted from Apperly et al. 2012) if they were present at diagnosis.

Table 13.1 Common cytogenetic targets for MRD screening in different malignancies

Disease	MRD target
Myelodysplastic syndromes	Del(5q); monosomy 7, trisomy 8
Chronic myeloid leukaemia	t(9;22)
Acute myeloid leukaemia	t(8;21); inv. (16)
Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia	t(9;22) t(4;11); t(8;14)
Follicular lymphoma	t(14;18)
Mantle cell lymphoma	t(11;14)
Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia	del(13q), del(11q); del(17p)
Multiple myeloma	del(13q), del(11q)

Table 13.2 Examples of molecular targets in different malignancies

Disease	Molecular target
B-ALL	TEL-AML1 BCR-ABL1 Ig/TCR gene rearrangements
T-ALL	Ig/TCR gene rearrangements Tald1
APML	PML-RARA
AML	AML1-ETO CBFb-MYH11 WT-1 NPM1 mutated FlT3

13.4 Chimerism

Chimerism analysis is another important tool in the post-HSCT follow-up of the recipient. It demonstrates the degree of engraftment of donor cells and offers the possibility to identify impending graft rejection and can also be an indicator of disease relapse or recurrence. Chimerism can also be used as a basis for treatment intervention to prevent graft rejection and maintain engraftment and is used as a mechanism to administer pre-emptive immunotherapy to provoke the GvM or GvL effect particularly in high-risk patients.

Chimerism allows the monitoring of the ratio of donor- and recipient-derived cells in non-genetically identical donor and recipient pairs, allowing for timely intervention in the recipient. The term "chimerism" comes from Greek mythology where the chimera was a fire-spitting monster with the head of a lion, body of a goat and the tail of a serpent and is used to describe the fact of two entities—DNA from two people—existing in the one person.

Initially it was felt that in order for all HSCT to be considered successful, an individual would have to be 100% donor chimerism, and this is certainly the case with malignant conditions. However, in non-malignant conditions (e.g. aplastic anaemia or haemoglobinopathies), a mixed chimerism may be enough to restore normal haematopoiesis.

While the total (unfractionated) chimerism result is important, more information can be elic-

ited if lineage-specific chimerism is performed, allowing separate tracking of lymphoid and myeloid engraftment and in itself can provide very useful information about possible disease relapse. This should be used in conjunction with other means of MRD analysis and diagnosis where indicated.

Schedule and protocols for chimerism analysis are centre, disease and treatment specific, and reference should be made to your institution's policy.

13.5 Management of Relapsed Disease

When a recipient has evidence of MRD or a decrease in chimerism, there are a number of strategies that can be followed. In the case of mixed chimerism, the schema in Fig. 13.1 can be followed.

Relapse usually occurs in the BM but may also be at extramedullary sites, thought to be due to immune escape from patrolling lymphocytes. It is also thought that leukaemia can escape from the immune control provided by the donor's T cells by mutating or becoming a more resistant clone of the original disease. The cause of the relapse may also be different in different haematological malignancies. While relapses can occur many years after HSCT, suggesting that perhaps the underlying disease was never eradicated and was held in control by the donor immune system, it is more common with CML, and in this disease, the administration of DLI can often restore remission.

However, the outlook for the recipient who relapses post-HSCT is poor and requires frank discussion with the recipient and their family to define the likely outcomes and success. Care for the relapsed patient revolves around five potential strategies:

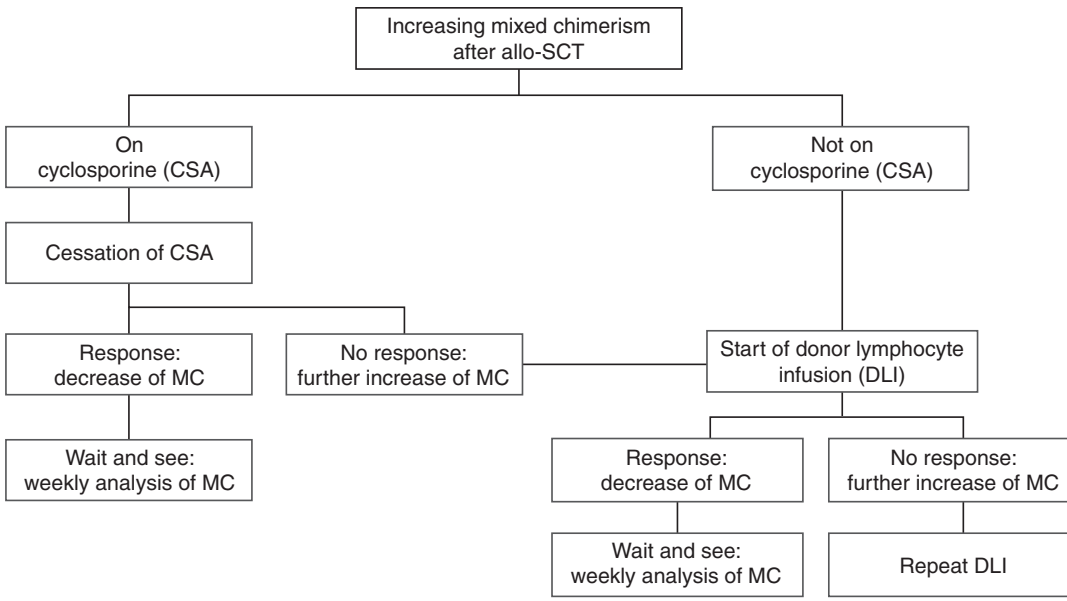


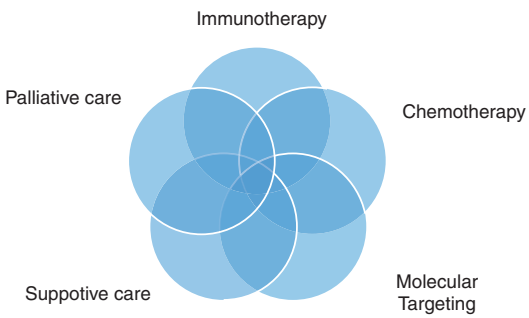
Fig. 13.1 Patients with increasing MC post-transplant (5% or more autologous cells) compared to the previous sample are offered further therapy. Immunotherapy for patients receiving CSA consists of immediate discontinuation of the immunosuppressive agent. Chimerism is then assayed weekly until CC status is restored. If MC continues to increase after cessation of CSA, a DLI is given. Immunotherapy for patients not receiving CSA consisted of DLI as frontline treatment. The cell dose administered is based on the number and potential severity of HLA mismatches between the donor and recipient, and starting doses range from 2.5×10^4 to 1×10^6/kg BW. After DLI, chimerism status is assayed weekly until CC status is restored. Patients who show a further increase in MC are given an additional DLI after at least 3 weeks have elapsed. If no GVHD occurs, the dose of DLI is doubled (Bader et al. 2005)

- Immunotherapy.
- Chemotherapy.
- Molecular targeting.
- Supportive care.
- Palliative care.

The timing of relapse is extremely important. Early relapses are difficult to treat, and any intervention may be challenging for the patient or precluded due to the proximity to the HSCT and complications experienced by the recipients. Patients who relapse after HSCT may find it extremely difficult to adapt to and accept the fact that further treatment may not be possible or may be ineffective particularly if they have already received intensive treatment prior to HSCT.

However, it is important to provide ongoing support so that patients do not feel abandoned at this stage, and this helps patients maintain realistic levels of hope and optimism. Palliative and supportive care measures are valid and realistic options to help maintain a good quality of life and should not be ignored. The help and support of the medical team, recipient's local doctor, referring hospital and often primary care services, e.g. GP and hospice, are essential in the management and treatment of the relapsed patient. Referral to psychology, social work/services, counselling or psychiatric teams may also benefit the patient and their family.

13.6 Treatment Approaches for Post-Allogeneic HSCT Relapse



13.7 Management of Relapsed Disease

13.7.1 Immunotherapy

This is an important tool in the management of the relapsed patient and can range from withdrawal of immunosuppression (if the patient is still on it) to the administration of donor lymphocyte infusions (DLI) infusions in incremental doses.

13.8 Withdrawal of Immunosuppression

The GvL or GvM effect of HSCT can be enhanced by reducing and stopping the IS (immunosuppressive) agent that the patient may be taking. Nursing care and education are essential in this circumstance as along with GvL, the patient needs to be monitored for the development of GVHD, which is extensively discussed in another chapter.

13.8.1 DLI

DLI alone can induce permanent remission of the underlying disease particularly in the case of CML where relapses occur at a molecular level. In other diseases, the response can be varied from effective to ineffective (Fig. 13.2). The recipient should be educated regarding the rationale for DLI and the benefits and potential risk of GvHD with written information given to support the education. Consent for the DLI should be obtained as per the policy of the centre administering DLI. Most centres adopt an approach with the administration of graduated doses between 1×10^6 CD3 cells per kg and 1×10^8 per kg recipient body weight, depending on time from transplant, patient performance status and type of donor.

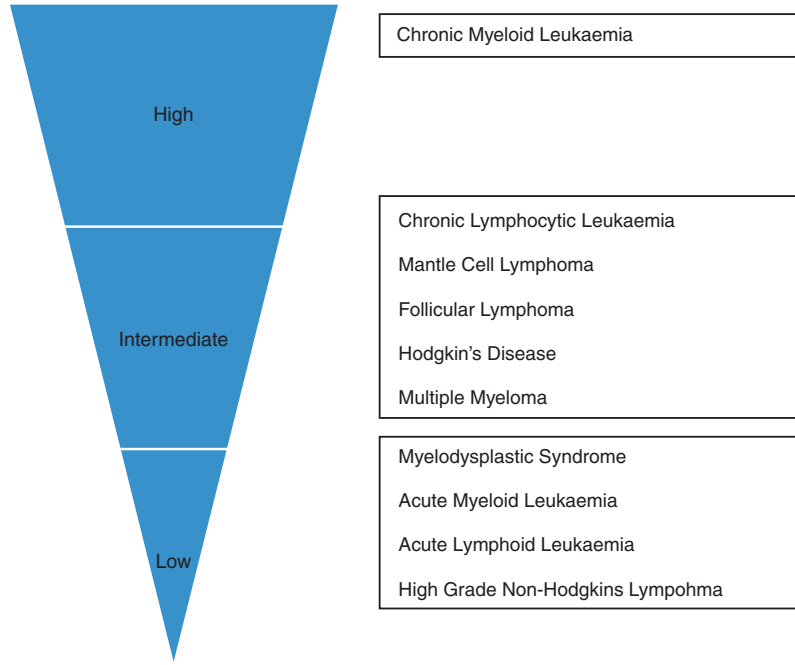


Fig. 13.2 Responsiveness to DLI (Adapted from Treleaven and Barrett 2009)

	Timing	Related	Unrelated	Haplo
Preemptive and prophylactic[b]	3 months	1–5 × 10^5/kg	1 × 10^5/kg	
	6 months	1 × 10^6/kg	1 × 10^6/kg	1 × 10^4/kg
Relapse in combination with chemotherapy[c]	After chemotherapy	1 × 10^7/kg	1 × 10^7/kg	

Level C evidence

[a]A DLI can be repeated at 1-log higher 6-8 weeks after the first DLI, when, e.g., MRD is still present and no GVHD is observed. GVHD as endpoint of repetitive DLIs for preemptive DLIS is in the era of MRD monitoring no longer recommended

Falkenberg, JHF et al. 2019 p.445 EBMT Handbook

DLI may also be administered as an adjuvant therapy to chemotherapy or targeted therapies to augment the effect of that treatment or sustain a remission if achieved.

DLI may not be administered where the recipient has already had significant acute GVHD or is receiving treatment for chronic GVHD.

It is rare to experience side effects while having a DLI. Recipients often experience a smell or taste from the DMSO preservative used in cryopreservation or may rarely experience a reaction to the DMSO. A nurse should remain with the recipient while having the DLI, and the recipient should remain under observation for a period of time following the DLI dose, which should be mandated in the centre DLI administration protocol. The main side effect of DLI is the development of GVHD, and the nurse should educate the recipient again regarding the signs and symptoms of GVHD. The treatment for GVHD has already been outlined in chapter(11).

13.8.2 Chemotherapy

This may be used to palliate the patient, to attempt to reduce the disease burden to facilitate DLI or targeted therapy or to achieve a remission. Patients relapsing within 6 months of HSCT often require reduced or modified dosing due to the toxicity of previous treatment or having reached the dosing limits of particular chemotherapeutic agents. Regimens for relapsed patients tend to be patient specific, and there are currently very few standardised approaches. The

nursing care for these patients has been well documented in previous chapters.

13.9 Molecular or Targeted Therapies

Consideration needs to be given to the administration of molecular or targeted therapies to patients who relapse post-HSCT if they are available. Disease-specific monoclonal antibodies, e.g. brentuximab, in some lymphomas; anti-CD33 agents, e.g. gemtuzumab, in myeloid malignancies; and TKIs in BCR-ABL-positive malignancies, can have an important role in this setting, and with new targeted therapies emerging, the number of available treatments is increasing.

13.10 Second HSCT

If a patient experiences a relapse later post-HSCT, consideration may be given to a second HSCT using stem cells either from the original donor or an alternative donor. In malignant disease, usually, a second procedure is only feasible when remission has been achieved following successful administration of chemotherapy, a molecular or targeted therapy. The morbidity and mortality associated with a second HSCT are often significant, and the patient and family should be carefully counselled before such an undertaking.

13.11 Conclusion

The treatment of relapsed disease remains challenging, and further research is required to identify new strategies and therapies to improve the outcome for this group of patients.

The nursing challenges are immense, and the psychological support required is complex and largely falls to the nurse to coordinate and deliver regardless of the subsequent treatment approach. The nursing team will continue to support patients and their families and help them adjust to the changes ahead. The demands on the team can mean that it is difficult to take the time to reflect and deal with the changing care and focus for the patients. The adjustments and difficulties experienced in caring for the relapse patient need to be matched by a team that continues to support each other.

References

Apperly J, Carreras E, Gluckman E, Masszi T. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. 6th revised ed. Genoa: Forum Service; 2012.

Bader P, Niethammer D, Willasch A, Kreyenberg H, Klingebiel T. How and when should we monitor chimerism after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transpl. 2005;35:107–19.

Falkenberg JHF, et al. Delayed Transfer of Immune Cells or the Art of Donor Lymphocyte Infusion. In: Carreras E, Dufour C, Mohty M, Kroger N, editors. The EBMT handbook. Switzerland: Springer; 2019.

Treleaven J, Barrett AJ. Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in clinical practice. Churchill Livingstone Elsevier: Edinburgh; 2009.

Engraftment, Graft Failure, and Rejection

14

Daphna Hutt

Abstract

Engraftment following HSCT is an essential goal for sustained long-term and effective hematopoiesis. It is the most important criteria for a better overall survival. However, stem cell engraftment may be accompanied with a clinical condition known as engraftment syndrome (ES) that could have a devastating outcome. Nurses caring for HSCT recipients must be aware of ES symptoms in order to intervene quickly and appropriately. Conversely, graft failure (GF) is a major complication and is associated with a dismal prognosis. It is classically divided into primary or secondary graft failure. The risk factors associated with GF may be related to characteristics of the graft, the patient, the donor, or the transplant procedure. The conditions that are associated with an increased occurrence of GF and the available treatment options will be thoroughly discussed in the chapter along with the nursing considerations.

Keywords

Engraftment · Engraftment syndrome · Graft failure · Graft rejection · Pediatrics · Nursing

D. Hutt (✉)
Department of Paediatric Hematology-Oncology and BMT, Edmond and lily Safra Children Hospital, Sheba Medical Center, Ramat Gan, Israel
e-mail: daphna.hutt@sheba.health.gov.il

14.1 Engraftment

Engraftment is the process by which hematopoietic stem cells (HSC) make their way (homing) to free bone marrow (BM) niches where they can find optimal conditions to survive and proliferate. Once they have reached the BM microenvironment, HSC have to proliferate to generate all hematopoietic cell subsets (Servais et al. 2013). A fundamental goal for successful engraftment is that the transplanted HSC are capable of sustaining long-term effective hematopoiesis; production of red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets; and their release to peripheral blood (Locatelli et al. 2014). Engraftment is the most important variable for a better overall survival after stem cell transplant (Cluzeau et al. 2016).

14.2 Engraftment Definition

Various definitions of engraftment exist in the literature. Engraftment is most commonly defined as the first of three consecutive days of achieving a sustained peripheral blood neutrophil count of >500 × 10^6/L (Wolff 2002). Platelet engraftment is usually defined as independence from platelet transfusion for at least 7 days with a platelet count of more than >20 × 10^9/L (Teltschik et al. 2016). In recent publication by Kharfan-Dabaja et al. (2021) both adult and pediatric transplantation physician panels endorsed the existing defi-

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_14

nitions but suggested that using the word "recovery" instead of "engraftment" is more appropriate because confirmation of donor source ideally requires also proof of at least mixed/partial donor chimerism, which generally occurs later in the course of transplantation. The two major factors affecting engraftment are the graft source and the hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) conditioning regimen. Generally, there are three common sources of HSCT grafts: bone marrow (BM), harvested from the iliac crest; peripheral blood stem cells (PBSC), following G-CSF mobilization of HSC to the peripheral circulation with later collection of these cells by leukapheresis; and cord blood (CB). Champlin et al. (2000) published a large retrospective multivariate analysis which compared results of 288 HLA-identical sibling PBSC transplantations with results of 536 HLA-identical sibling BM transplantations. Patients who received PBSC had significantly faster recovery of neutrophils and platelets compared to BM transplants. Neutrophils exceed the threshold of 500×10^6/L between 2 and 6 days earlier with PBSC than after BM. In an EBMT study, the time interval for engraftment was 12 days for PBSC and 15 days for BM. Platelet recovery is also faster by approximately 6 days, i.e., platelet recovery of 20×10^9/L was reached at day +15 for PBSC patients and day +20 for patients receiving BM (Schmitz et al. 2002). CB transplant is associated with longer time to engraftment. A large study of 1268 patients (73% children) with acute leukemia (64% acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), 36% acute myeloid leukemia) in remission analyzed engraftment kinetics and outcomes after a single-unit CB transplantation with myeloablative conditioning regimen. The median time to neutrophil engraftment was 25 days (range 11–108) for children and 23 days (range 11–116) for adult recipients ($P = 0.6$) (Ruggeri et al. 2014). Furthermore, when comparing intensity of conditioning regimens, Slavin et al. (1998) described for the first time that allogeneic nonmyeloablative HSCT was better tolerated than any standard myeloablative conditioning, with a shorter period of neutropenia and a shorter period of platelet dependence.

Methods of determining donor engraftment rely on the assessment of donor and recipient cell components in the recipient BM or PB, termed as chimerism analysis (see Chap. 12).

14.3 Engraftment Syndrome

Engraftment syndrome (ES) is a clinical condition that is characterized by fever, rash, pulmonary edema, weight gain, liver and renal dysfunction, and/or encephalopathy. It occurs at the time of neutrophil recovery after stem cell transplantation (SCT) (Chang et al. 2014; Grant 2020). Most data suggest that ES results from a pro-inflammatory state caused by the release of diverse cytokines and other mediators of inflammation. Clinical features of ES are similar in children and adults. Criteria for the diagnosis of ES typically include fever (thought to be not from infection) and features of systemic vascular leak, as ES was previously referred to as capillary leak syndrome. ES can resemble acute or hyperacute GvHD giving rise to the question of whether ES is an early manifestation of GvHD (Spitzer 2015).

14.4 Management of ES

ES may be self-limited and require no therapy. Indications for treatment include a temperature of >39 °C without an identifiable infectious etiology and clinically significant manifestations of vascular leak, especially pulmonary edema. ES is corticosteroid responsive, and treatment is given only as long as symptoms persist, usually for 1 week (Spitzer 2015).

14.5 Nursing Considerations

Due to the potentially devastating outcomes associated with ES, nurses caring for SCT recipients must be aware of ES and its symptoms in order to intervene quickly and appropriately (Thoele 2014). Nursing assessment, in order to identify changes, should include the assessment of the

clinical manifestation of ES, with anticipated presentation 9–13 days post-transplantation:

- Frequent temperature monitoring
- Routine skin assessment for rashes or abnormalities
- Respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, and breath sounds (for signs of pulmonary edema)
- Fluid balance
- Weight changes
- Appropriate investigations are undertaken to rule out infection such as blood cultures, complete blood count (CBC), and chest X-ray (Grant et al. 2020).

Nursing care should include symptom relief by administration of antipyretics; oxygen for hypoxia; diuretics for weight/fluid gain, edema, ascites, and effusions; and a renal dose of dopamine if needed. Nurses should educate patients and caregivers about the signs and symptoms of ES as well as the treatment and management.

14.6 Graft Failure

Although incidence is relatively low, graft failure (GF), when it does occur, is a major complication associated with a dismal prognosis, particularly in recipients of alternative donor HSCT (Ayas et al. 2015). It remains an important contributor to morbidity and mortality after allogeneic SCT. Recent studies indicate that patients experiencing GF have a lower probability of survival in comparison to those with sustained engraftment of donor cells (Olsson et al. 2013; Locatelli et al. 2014; Wobma et al. 2020).

GF is defined as the lack of hematopoietic cell engraftment following autologous or allogeneic SCT (Lowsky and Messner 2016). It is classically divided into primary or secondary graft failure.

Primary graft failure is defined as no evidence of engraftment or hematological recovery of donor cells, of an ANC >500/mL by day +30 in PBSC and BM transplants with associated pancytopenia or by day +42 in CB transplants (2), without evidence of disease relapse.

Secondary graft failure is defined as a decline in hematopoietic function (may involve hemoglobin and/or platelets and/or neutrophils) necessitating blood products or growth factor support, after having met the standard definition of hematopoietic (neutrophils and platelets) recovery (2).

Primary graft failure is usually associated with a more significant risk of morbidity and mortality in comparison with secondary graft failure (Olsson et al. 2013; Kato et al. 2013).

14.7 Graft Rejection

The term graft rejection refers to immune-mediated rejection of the donor cells by residual host cells because of genetic disparity between the recipient and the donor. Therefore, this term is only relevant to allogeneic transplants (Lowsky and Messner 2016). Immunological rejection of the hematopoietic stem cell graft is a major cause of graft failure (Olsson et al. 2013) primary as well as secondary GF (Wobma et al. 2020). Marrow graft rejection is usually defined by the absence of donor cells in a patient with pancytopenia and reduced marrow cellularity (Martin 2016). Chimerism studies performed by methods of FISH (in sex-mismatched transplant) or by microsatellites enable early diagnosis of GF, and it could be crucial of optimizing the chance of rescuing patients with graft failure (Locatelli et al. 2014). They should be carried out routinely especially in patients who have inadequate marrow function and might be candidates for donor lymphocyte infusion (DLI) or a second transplant (Martin 2016).

14.8 Incidence of Graft Failure

The incidence of GF varies between different transplant modalities, studies, and reports. In autologous transplants, a reasonable estimate of GF is between 1 and 3%. The incidence of GF is higher in allogeneic transplant recipients especially if the patient receives an HLA-mismatched or T-cell-depleted graft or a single-unit CB transplant (Lowsky and Messner 2016). Several stud-

ies report the incidence of GF in different transplant settings ranging from 3.8% to 6.8%. Olsson et al. (2013) reported a large retrospective study of 967 transplants performed between 1995 and 2010 an overall GF rate of 5.6%, with a higher incidence of GF in recipients of SCT for nonmalignant disorders. Analysis of 23,272 patients from the CIBMTR database produced a similar incidence of primary GF (5.5%) in patients with hematological malignancies after myeloablative conditioning (Olsson et al. 2015). A retrospective study of a large cohort of 4684 unrelated donor HSCT in the period (2006–2012) confirmed a low rate of graft failure (3.8%) (Cluzeau et al. 2016). In a single center pediatric study that included 290 patients the incidence of neutropenic (failure of neutrophil engraftment by day +28) and non-neutropenic (with neutrophil recovery) GF was 6.6% and 3.8%, respectively (Wobma et al. 2020).

14.9 Risk Factors Associated with Graft Failure

Several risk factors that are associated with GF have been identified over the years (Fig. 14.1). They may be related to characteristics of the graft, the patient, the donor, or the transplant procedure (Olsson et al. 2015) and in most of the cases the etiology of GF is multifactorial (Valcarcel and Sureda 2018). The conditions that are associated with an increased occurrence of graft failure include:

- HLA disparity
- Reduced-intensity conditioning
- Diagnosis
- Graft source
- Cell dose
- Graft manipulation
- ABO mismatching in the donor/recipient pair
- Others

Fig. 14.1 Risk factors for graft failure include

1. HLA Disparity: Earlier studies reported that an increase in the degree of HLA mismatch was associated with a higher risk for GF for siblings and unrelated grafts (Anasetti et al. 1989). In particular, HLA class I mismatches are important determinants for graft failure (Petersdorf et al. 2001). Donor selection criteria regarding HLA matching have changed over the years, and it is difficult to compare the results of previous to current studies. HLA disparity is not a consistent finding in more recent studies. Passweg et al. (2011) reported in a study of 709 participants with hematological malignancies who received unrelated donor reduced-intensity conditioning (RIC) transplants that the risk of GF was comparable between the HLA-matched and HLA-mismatched donors. However, immunological T-cell-mediated responses toward HLA contribute to primary GF as seen by the higher risk of primary GF in mismatched compared to both well-matched and partially matched unrelated grafts (Olsson et al. 2015) including CB transplants or CD34 selected (Wobma et al. 2020(4)). The presence of donor specific antigens (DSA) in the recipient is associated with a 10-fold increased risk of GF in all HSCTs with an HLA-mismatched donor (Bramanti et al. 2019).
2. Reduced-Intensity Conditioning (RIC): RIC regimens have lower doses of chemoradiation therapy; the host immune system may persist, resulting in an increased rate of GF (Mattsson et al. 2008; Olsson et al. 2013; Locatelli et al. 2014; Wobma et al. 2020). Those regimens may result in an intermediate phase, termed mixed chimerism, in which hematopoietic cells are derived from both donor and recipient cells and thus do not fulfill the traditional definition of GF (Lowsky and Messner 2016).
3. Diagnosis: The primary disease may affect the probability of GF indirectly due to differences in the intensity of pretransplant chemotherapeutic protocols (Olsson et al. 2015). The risk for GF is reported to be up to threefold higher in nonmalignant diseases (Valcarcel and Sureda 2018; Albert et al. 2021).

Patients with severe aplastic anemia (SAA) have higher incidence of GF due to sensitization to components of red blood cells caused by multiple transfusions; therefore, in SAA transfusions should be minimized prior to transplant.

Hemoglobinopathies (Thalassemia, Sickle-Cell Disease): The incidence of GF or rejection remains high probably due to an intact immune system. GF is particularly high in patients who have heavy iron overload and organ damage due to excessive transfusion and inadequate chelation treatment (Gaziev et al. 2008).

Myeloid Disorders (Myelodysplastic Syndrome (MDS) and Myelofibrosis (MF)): These patients generally do not receive prior intensive chemotherapy and might resist donor cell engraftment, due to the presence of residual host cells (Lowsky and Messner 2016). In addition, patients with absence of complete remission (CR) prior to transplant have more GF compared to patients in CR ($P < 0.0001$) (Cluzeau et al. 2016).

4. Graft Source: Graft type is the strongest risk factor in the multivariate model for primary GF, with three times higher risk in BM compared to PB grafts (Olsson et al. 2015). Passweg et al. (2011) described that the only characteristic that was associated with GF in that study was the use of BM compared with PB ($P = 0.002$). Unrelated CB transplants are associated with the highest engraftment failure rate (Kekre and Antin 2014).
5. Cell Dose: The higher number of CD3 cells in PB is likely to facilitate engraftment and contributes to the lower incidence of primary GF. BM grafts with low cell dose (TNC doses $\leq 2.4 \times 10^8$/kg) result in a 40% increase in primary GF. PB products per se are associated with cell doses above the threshold that would affect primary GF, or other cell subtypes such as T cells may be equally or more important for engraftment. Nevertheless, while other factors seem more important for primary GF, CD34 cell dose is probably important for subsequent secondary graft failure (Olsson et al. 2015).
6. Graft Manipulation: T-cell depletion (TCD) of the graft may cause a potential increased risk for GF (Lowsky and Messner 2016). Various approaches to TCD are used by transplant centers, and they vary in the rates of GF (Kekre and Antin 2014), although Reisner et al. (2011) emphasize in a review of the developments in the last 15 years that haploidentical transplants demonstrate how obstacles to successful transplantation can be overcome making full haplotype-mismatched transplantation a clinical reality that provides similar outcomes to transplantation from matched unrelated donors (MUD). Encouragingly, in recent years, the graft failure rate for haploidentical transplantation has decreased to levels comparable to those of matched unrelated donors (MUD), matched related donors (MRD), and mismatched unrelated donors (MMURD) (Reisner et al. 2011; Kekre and Antin 2014).
7. ABO Mismatching in the Donor/Recipient Pair: ABO incompatibility between the donor and the recipient occurs in approximately 25% of HLA-matched transplants. Usually, it has no influence on the neutrophil engraftment, but certain donor/recipient mismatches have been associated with post-transplant pure red cell aplasia (Lowsky and Messner 2016). Olsson et al. (2013) observed that using ABO-incompatible grafts is no longer a risk factor for GF. They assume that removing the red cells from the graft decreases the number of SC by about 30% of the original dose and this might be the reason for GF and not the ABO incompatibility itself, although more recently, in the largest analysis of primary GF ($n = 23{,}272$), Olsson et al. (2015) concluded that major ABO incompatibility does in fact still remain a risk factor for primary GF.
8. Other risk factors that have been identified to cause an increased risk of graft failure are infections especially of viral origin, such as cytomegalovirus (CMV), human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6), and parvovirus, and the use of drugs that may induce myelosuppression, such as ganciclovir (Locatelli et al. 2014).

Identifying and assessing the risk factors for GF, prior to transplant, allow clinicians to make more informed choices for their patients with respect to BM versus PB, donor selection, immunosuppressive regimens, and when to plan for a rescue transplant (Olsson et al. 2015). Ensure to include those while facilitating patients' informed consent prior to SCT.

14.10 Treatment Options for GF

Whatever the etiology of graft failure or rejection is, it should be identified as early as possible and recognized as a serious and life-threatening issue requiring immediate intervention (Wolff 2002; Wobma et al. 2020). Routine monitoring of donor cell engraftment is recommended since the evaluation of chimerism status can be crucial for optimizing the chance of rescuing patients from graft failure (Locatelli et al. 2014). No single drug or strategy has incontrovertibly proven to be superior to others for reversing graft failure; current approaches to limit the detrimental impact of this complication are primarily based on its prevention (Locatelli et al. 2014). No standard approach to the management of graft failure exists (Hege et al. 2016), and the rescue strategies are limited (Servais et al. 2013). The common approaches are listed below.

14.10.1 Changes to Immune Suppression

Early detection of decrease in donor chimerism enables prompt modification of the immunosuppressive treatment (Dubovsky et al. 1999). With the exception of patients transplanted for aplastic anemia it is commonly recommended to increase IST (Valcarcel and Sureda 2018). Withdrawal of the immunosuppressive drugs is usually the first measure, which by itself can control leukemia in a limited number of patients (Yoshimi et al. 2005). In case of persistent mixed chimerism after allogeneic transplant, it remains unclear if withdrawal of immunosuppressive drugs will accelerate or prevent GF. The limitation of this method includes an increased risk of graft-versus-host disease.

14.10.2 Donor Lymphocyte Infusion

Donor lymphocyte infusion (DLI) has a potent immunological effect and has been increasingly used to treat relapse, especially molecular relapse, but may also be used to overcome rejection in cases of decreasing donor cell chimerism (Mattsson et al. 2008). Persistent mixed chimerism or declining level of donor cell chimerism is associated with increased risk for GF both in adult and pediatric transplant recipients. A large ($n = 163$) prospective multicenter trial of children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) after allogeneic SCT demonstrated that children who developed increased mixed chimerism were at higher risk of developing relapse and can be rescued by preemptive DLI (Bader et al. 2004). Administration of preemptive DLI after day +100 to patients that were withdrawn from immunosuppressive medications enabled 50% of the patients in that study to convert to complete donor type. The majority of the patients required multiple administrations of DLIs. Therefore, DLI may convert mixed donor-host chimerism to full donor chimerism as a surrogate measure to prevent relapse in patients with hematological malignancies (Hale and Petrovic 2014). Frugnoli et al. (2010) reported that escalating doses of DLI is a treatment option for emerging rejection in patients with mixed chimerism following SCT for β-thalassemia. The origin of lymphocytes for DLI could be either frozen aliquots collected from the donor at the time of the original harvest or collected peripherally by leukapheresis or phlebotomy from the donor before DLI (Haines et al. 2015). Side effects of DLI include increased risk of GvHD (Lowsky and Messner 2016) and, in few cases, can lead to marrow aplasia (Mattsson et al. 2008).

14.10.3 CD34+ Boost

Poor graft function is defined by cytopenia of at least two lineages beyond day +28 in patients with complete or near-complete chimerism (Lowsky and Messner 2016). It is manifested by the development of a neutrophil count of $<1 \times 10^9$/L (grade 4) and/or platelet count of

<50 × 10^9/L (grade 3, 25–50 × 10^9/L; grade 4, <25 × 10^9/L) (Frugnoli et al. 2010). Cytopenias may be due to viral infection, medication side effect, or GvHD (Lowsky and Messner 2016). In patients with continued poor graft function in the absence of graft rejection, a boost of donor stem cells without additional preparative chemotherapy may improve overall function of the graft. Because this boost may induce GvHD, T-cell depletion of the stem cells can prevent this and improve survival in some patients (Mattsson et al. 2008). CD34+-selected cell boosts without a conditioning regimen prior to infusion can be a valid option in order to improve poor graft function, and fully reverse graft failure, especially in patients with complete donor chimerism or predominance of donor hematopoiesis (Locatelli et al. 2014; Servais et al. 2013).

14.10.4 Autologous Backup

Infusion of autologous hematopoietic stem cells (HSC) that were collected and stored prior to transplant can restore hematopoiesis in case of GF. The collection of autologous backup prior to allogeneic transplant is according to center policy. In patients with hematological malignancies or with marrow failure syndromes, the collection of autologous backup is controversial (Lowsky and Messner 2016).

14.10.5 Growth Factors

Administration of growth factors, after autologous transplant, significantly shortens the time for neutrophil recovery. In case of poor graft function or GF, it is a reasonable approach until a more definitive intervention is decided. Following allogeneic transplants, the role of growth factors for patients with poor graft function or GF is unclear. It is a reasonable approach for the management of low blood counts, and depending on the cause, it may or may not be effective (Lowsky and Messner 2016). Certainly, hematopoietic growth factors should be considered in the management of graft dysfunction, especially with partial donor chimerism (Wolff 2002).

14.10.6 Regrafting

A second allogeneic transplant is the only potential long-term curative option for patients with GF and rejection (Remberger et al. 2011; Servais et al. 2013; Locatelli et al. 2014; Cesaro et al. 2015). There are no conclusive data for supporting the choice of using either the same donor of the first allograft or an alternative donor (Mattsson et al. 2008; Locatelli et al. 2014; Mallhi et al. 2017). Different studies recommend a variety of options depending on the availability of a donor, the patient's clinical condition, and the underlying disease. Gaziev et al. (2008) recommend using the initial donor for second transplant for patients with thalassemia recurrence following the first graft. The use of the same donor was more frequent in the sibling group compared with the unrelated group, in a report of second transplant in SAA patients. This might be due to the availability of the donor for transplant (Cesaro et al. 2015). However, in patients with an immune-mediated graft rejection, the use of an alternative donor, whenever possible, is recommended (Locatelli et al. 2014). HLA-haploidentical related donors represent an attractive alternative donor source (Albert et al. 2021) for salvage treatment (Teltschik et al. 2016). PB might be the best stem cell source for salvage transplantation (Servais et al. 2013) in order to improve engraftment and thus achieve faster hematopoietic recovery (Cesaro et al. 2015).

There are no uniform criteria about the best conditioning approach for a second SCT in patients who have developed GF although it should differ from that used at the first transplant (Mattsson et al. 2008; Cesaro et al. 2015; Mahadeo et al. 2019). Many transplant teams favor using an immunosuppressive non-myeloablative, reduced-intensity conditioning (RIC) regimen in order to avoid unacceptable cumulative toxicities of two consecutive high-dose conditionings given in a short interval of time (Remberger et al. 2011; Servais et al. 2013; Ferrà et al. 2015; Cesaro et al. 2015; Cluzeau et al. 2016; Klein et al. 2021). The optimal reconditioning regimen after graft failure still needs to be defined, and standardized proto-

Table 14.1 Graft failure and graft rejection

	Primary GF	Secondary GF	GR
Definition	No evidence of engraftment **or** hematological recovery of donor cells	Decline in hematopoietic function after having met the standard definition of hematopoietic recovery	Immune-mediated rejection of the donor cells by residual host cells
Type of transplant	Allo and Auto	Allo and Auto	Allo
Engraftment	No	Yes. With subsequent decline in hematopoietic function	Yes. With subsequent rejection of the donor cells
Cause	Wide array of possibilities	Wide array of possibilities	Immune-mediated process
Treatment options	No standard approach	No standard approach	Regrafting

cols are lacking (Teltschik et al. 2016; Sun et al. 2021). It should maintain sufficient immunosuppressive effects to promote engraftment, as well as reduced intensity to lessen the toxicity given that patients are soon after the first transplantation (Sun et al. 2021).

In general, a second unrelated HSCT is considered a risky procedure with a lower probability of long-term survival on account of a high incidence of GF, noninfectious organ toxicity, and infectious complications. This negative outcome is also influenced by the type of underlying disease. However, second transplant using related and unrelated donors in SAA patients is feasible with a good chance of long-term overall survival in more than 60% of cases (Cesaro et al. 2015). Second transplant should be considered especially for patients with nonmalignant diseases (Remberger et al. 2011).

In conclusion, GF is a rare complication after allogeneic transplant but is associated with poor outcome. Early identification of the patients at risk and aggressive intervention could rescue or prevent some patients from developing GF and limit morbidity and mortality. Table 14.1 summarizes the differences between graft failure and graft rejection.

14.11 Pediatric Considerations

The aim of allogeneic transplant in nonmalignant disease is to achieve sustained engraftment in order to improve the hematopoietic function, to correct the immunocompetence, and/or to increase or normalize the respective enzyme shortage (Bader et al. 2005). Children who may have more than 60- to 70-year life expectancy after undergoing allogeneic transplant may benefit from the approach of reduced-intensity conditioning (RIC) or reduced-toxicity conditioning regimens prior to transplant versus myeloablative conditioning. This is especially true in those with nonmalignant diseases and those with malignant diseases that may have a profound graft-versus-tumor effect (Satwani et al. 2013). In the last several years, the use of RIC has expanded from adults with high indices of comorbidity to candidates without comorbidities (Satwani et al. 2013) as well as to the pediatric population. In pediatric nonmalignant diseases, RIC is an attractive alternative with the potential for decreased regimen-related toxicities, lower incidence of long-term complications, as well as preserving fertility. Graft rejection rates are low, especially when stable mixed chimerism is curative if ensured in the lineage that corrects function (Madden et al. 2016). Graft rejection, in children with inborn errors of metabolism undergoing RIC transplants, still remains an obstacle to the success of the transplant since they are immunocompetent (Kato et al. 2016). The incidence of GF in children varies in the different studies. In a large report of 240 classical SCID patients who received allogeneic transplant between 2000 and 2009 by Pai et al. (2014), 18% of the patients received a boost, an additional transplant from the same donor without conditioning (23 children), or a second transplant from a different donor (with or without conditioning) or from the same donor with conditioning (34 children), and 11 children received both a boost and a second

transplant at 5 years. A retrospective study by Mitchell et al. (2013) of 135 children with primary immunodeficiency reported that 18 patients (13%) required a second SCT due to graft failure or rejection. Satwani et al. (2013) reported a large study of reduced-toxicity conditioning allo-SCT, using both related and unrelated allogeneic stem cell sources in pediatric recipients, with both malignant and nonmalignant diseases. Primary GF occurred in 16 patients (16%) all in unrelated CBT recipients and none in MUD/MSD graft recipients. Chemotherapy naivety was the only significant risk factor for primary GF. In a single-center study by Balashov et al. (2015), the incidence of primary and secondary GF in primary immunodeficient patients undergoing MUD and haploidentical transplants was 27% (10 out of 37 patients). This accrued in patients that were initially in high risk for graft failure, such as chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) and congenital neutropenia.

However, as with the adult patients, evidence on the optimal management of GF in children is limited; therefore, analysis of pediatric GF is important in order to establish a standard treatment strategy against this rare event (Kato et al. 2013). In recent years several studies have been published recommending using HLA-haploidentical transplant as salvage transplant with variety of reconditioning regimens in non-malignant disease using post-transplant cyclophosphamide that resulted in excellent engraftment and overall survival (Albert et al. 2021). As well as reconditionig protocoles based on total nodal irradiation (TNI) in both malignant and non-malignant diseases (Wegener et al. 2019). The case report (Fig. 14.2) demonstrates the process of graft rejection, its consequences, and treatment options.

14.12 Nursing Considerations

When a patient fails to engraft, he or she faces a life-threatening situation. Patients experiencing disappointment and fear from the failure of the transplant might express feelings of anger, betrayal, grief, depression, and hopelessness. Similarly, healthcare personnel involved in the patient's care may also feel a sense of failure and grief (Wilson and Sylvanus 2005). General nursing care of patients experiencing GF does not differ from the treatment during the neutropenic period of the transplant, as described in Chap. 7, although nurses should routinely monitor the patient engraftment by daily CBC during the engraftment phase, as it enables to assess for signs of GF as well as delayed engraftment. Chimerism analysis should be evaluated frequently as per local policy, especially in patients that are at risk for GF (Fig. 14.3).

Equally important to the physical care is the emotional support for the patient and family experiencing this devastating, disappointing, and life-threatening situation. Nurses can help to reduce patients' fears by providing accurate, timely information about procedures, symptoms, and feelings that the transplant recipient may experience or is experiencing. Nurses should provide support and education on the diagnosis of GF, treatment options, and decisions regarding the care plan. All information must be individually tailored to the patient and family needs (Wilson and Sylvanus 2005).

Nurses caring for patients who undergo SCT should be aware of the possibility of graft failure following the transplant. They should know the risk factors associated with GF and the treatment options available. This will lead to a better understanding and recognition of this rare but life-threatening situation. The possibility of GF should be discussed with the patient and his family prior to transplant, and they should be counseled with regard to the risk factors for developing GF. The nursing literature regarding graft failure remains scarce with no recent study on the implications and the support needed for the patient who develops graft failure.

Fig. 14.2 Case report

Case report- Late graft rejection

An 8 month old baby was initially referred for an evaluation due to BCGigitis after a BCG vaccine. He was diagnosed with X**-** linked chronic granulomatosis disease (CGD) GP91 deficiency. Prophylactic antibiotics with resprim and sporanox were started and he had no further infections. He underwent a bone marrow (BM) transplant on 09-03-2017 from his HLA-matched healthy sister. The conditioning regimen was according to the EBMT/ESID guidelines for hematopoietic cell transplant for primary immunodeficiencies ESID D- reduced intensity protocol, including treosulfan, fludarabine and ATG. GvHD prophylaxis was based on mycophenolate (MMF) and cyclosporine (CSA). He developed CMV reactivation on day -2 that was successfully treated with Foscarnet. He suffered from peri-orbital cellulitis during neutropenic period and was treated with Tazocin. The remaining course of the transplant was uneventful. He engrafted on day + 12 with 96% donor cells by XX FISH analysis. MMF was stopped on day +97 post-transplant with no signs of GvHD. On day +147, he developed skin rash suspected of GvHD which resolved without treatment**.** CSA was stopped 8 month post-transplant. During the follow-up month post-transplant, the % of donor cells was gradually decreasing reaching 10% at one year post-transplant. Of note, the patient was in good clinical condition with no infections. Additional test included CGD-DHR (diagnostic test for CGD), that was abnormal. Split chimerism test showed that only 3.5% of the granulocytes were of donor origin. He was diagnosed with late graft rejection. On 22-10-2018 he was hospitalized due to fever and lung infection diagnosed by CT scan and was treated empirically with Voriconazole with resolution of the fever. The need for second transplant was discussed with family. In the absence of another matched family donor, it was decided to use the same donor as in the first transplant. A second BM transplant was performed on 08-09-2019; two years and a half post the first transplant .The conditioning regimen was based on ESID A- myeloablative protocol with busulfan and fludarabine. GvHD prophylaxis was based on CSA, MTX and MMF. Engraftment was on day +12 post-transplant with 85% donor cells by XX FISH analysis which gradually increased to 99%. His second transplant course was uneventful and he was discharged on day +21. Currently, he is in a very good general condition, good immune reconstitution and started his re-immunization program. Chimerism is stable with 99.8% of donor cells by FISH analysis.

This unique case presents the development of late graft rejection that was successfully treated with a second transplant. In non-malignant disorders as CGD stable mixed chimerism (>20% myeloid) is sufficient to protect against the risk of infections (Lankester et al. 2021(1)). The first transplant failed to correct the underlying dysfunction of the neutrophils. Since the patient was without immune suppression therapy, the only curative option was a second transplant. A second transplant after reduced intensity conditioning, with myeloablative protocol is feasible and safe with very good outcome, especially when performed late when the patient recovered from the first transplant.

Using the same minor sibling donor is a matter of concern for the family, but in a situation without another suitable donor, the benefit should be explained to the parents and the donor.

The donor that was 6 years and 9 month old gave her assent for the donation as per local protocol and was followed by a donor advocate

Routine monitoring of patient engraftment by daily complete blood count

Serial Chimerism testing

Emotional support for patient experiencing graft failure

Fig. 14.3 Be aware of

References

Albert MH, Sirin M, Hoenig M, Hauck F, Schuetz C, Bhattacharyya R, et al. Salvage HLA-haploidentical hematopoietic stem cell transplantation with post-transplant cyclophosphamide for graft failure in non-malignant disorders. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56(9):2248–58. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-021-01323-9.

Anasetti C, Amos D, Beatty PG, et al. Effect of HLA compatibility on engraftment of bone marrow transplants in patients with leukemia or lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 1989;320:197–204.

Ayas M, Eapen M, Le-Rademacher J, et al. Second allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation for patients with fanconi anemia and bone marrow failure. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:1790–5.

Bader P, Kreyenberg H, Hoelle W, et al. Increasing mixed chimerism is an important prognostic factor for unfavorable outcome in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia after allogeneic stem-cell transplantation: possible role for pre-emptive immunotherapy? J Clin Oncol. 2004;22:1696–706.

Bader P, Niethammer D, Willasch A, Kreyenberg H, Klingebiel T. How and when should we monitor chimerism after allogeneic stem cell transplantation? Bone Marrow Transplant. 2005;35:107–19.

Balashov D, Shcherbina A, Maschan M, et al. Single-center experience of unrelated and haploidentical stem cell transplantation with TCRab and CD19 depletion in children with primary immunodeficiency syndromes. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:1955–62.

Bramanti S, Calafiore V, Longhi E, Mariotti J, Crespiatico L, Sarina B, et al. Donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies in haploidentical stem cell transplantation with post-transplantation cyclophosphamide: risk of graft failure, poor graft function, and impact on outcomes. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2019;25(7):1395–406.

Cesaro S, Peffault de Latour R, Tridello G, et al. Second allogeneic stem cell transplant for aplastic anaemia: a retrospective study by the severe aplastic anaemia working party of the European society for blood and marrow transplantation. Br J Haematol. 2015;171:606–14.

Champlin RE, Schmitz N, Horowitz MM, et al. Blood stem cells compared with bone marrow as a source of hematopoietic cells for allogeneic transplantation. Blood. 2000;95:3702–9.

Chang L, Frame D, Braun T, et al. Engraftment syndrome after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation predicts poor outcomes. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2014;20:1407–17.

Cluzeau T, Lambert J, Raus N, et al. Risk factors and outcome of graft failure after HLA matched and mismatched unrelated donor hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a study on behalf of SFGM-TC and SFHI. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51:687–91.

Dubovsky J, Daxberger H, Fritsch G, Printz D, Peters C, Matthes S, Gadner H, Lion T. Kinetics of chimerism during the early post-transplant period in pediatric patients with malignant and non-malignant hematologic disorders: implications for timely detection of engraftment, graft failure and rejection. Leukemia. 1999;13:2060–9.

Ferrà C, Sanz J, Díaz-Pérez M-A, et al. Outcome of graft failure after allogeneic stem cell transplant: study of 89 patients. Leuk Lymphoma. 2015;56:656–62.

Frugnoli I, Cappelli B, Chiesa R, et al. Escalating doses of donor lymphocytes for incipient graft rejection following SCT for thalassemia. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2010;45:1047–51.

Gaziev J, Sodani P, Lucarelli G, et al. Second hematopoietic SCT in patients with thalassemia recurrence following rejection of the first graft. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;42:397–404.

Grant A, Chapman LRM, Mitchell R, O'Brien TA. Engraftment syndrome following hematopoietic stem cell transplant: a review of the literature. Clin Transplant. 2020;34(6):1–10.

Haines HL, Bleesing JJ, Davies SM, et al. Outcomes of donor lymphocyte infusion for treatment of mixed donor chimerism after a reduced-intensity preparative regimen for pediatric patients with nonmalignant diseases. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2015;21:288–92.

Hale G, Petrovic A. Clinical options after failure of allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with hematologic malignancies. Expert Rev Clin Immunol. 2014;7:515–27.

Hege K, Quigg T, Delgado D. Alemtuzumab, fludarabine, low-dose TBI, and double umbilical cord transplant for primary graft failure in a patient with recurrent HLH. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2016;63:361–3.

Kato M, Matsumoto K, Suzuki R, et al. Salvage allogeneic hematopoietic SCT for primary graft failure in children. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2013;48:1173–8.

Kato S, Yabe H, Takakura H. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for inborn errors of metabolism: a report from the research committee on transplantation for inborn errors of metabolism of the Japanese Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare and the working Group of the Japan Soci. Pediatr Transplant. 2016;20:203–14.

Kekre N, Antin JH. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation donor sources in the 21st century: choosing the ideal donor when a perfect match does not exist. Blood. 2014;124:334–43.

Kharfan-Dabaja MA, Kumar A, Ayala E, Aljurf M, Nishihori T, Marsh R, et al. Standardizing definitions of hematopoietic recovery, graft rejection, graft failure, poor graft function, and donor chimerism in allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation: a report on behalf of the American Society for Transplantation and Cellular therapy. Transplant Cell Ther. 2021;27(8):642–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtct.2021.04.007.

Klein OR, Bapty S, Lederman HM, Younger MEM, Zambidis ET, Jones RJ, et al. Reduced intensity bone marrow transplantation with post-transplant cyclophosphamide for pediatric inherited immune deficiencies and bone marrow failure syndromes. J Clin Immunol. 2021;41(2):414–26.

Lankester AC, Albert MH, Booth C, Gennery AR, Güngör T, Hönig M, et al. EBMT/ESID inborn errors working party guidelines for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for inborn errors of immunity. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56(9):2052–62. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-021-01378-8.

Locatelli F, Lucarelli B, Merli P. Current and future approaches to treat graft failure after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2014;15:23–36.

Lowsky R, Messner H. Mechanisms and treatment of graft failure. In: Negrin RS, Antin JH, Appelbaum FR, Forman SJ, editors. Thomas' hematopoietic cell transplantation, vol. 2(77). 5th ed. New York: Wiley Blackwell; 2016. p. 944–54.

Madden LM, Hayashi RJ, Ka WC, et al. Long-term follow-up after reduced-intensity conditioning and stem cell transplantation for childhood nonmalignant disorders. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22:1467–72.

Mahadeo KM, Khazal SJ, Abdel-Azim H, Fitzgerald JC, Taraseviciute A, Bollard CM, et al. Management guidelines for paediatric patients receiving chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2019;16(1):45–63.

Mallhi K, Orchard PJ, Miller WP, Cao Q, Tolar J, Lund TC. Non-myeloablative conditioning for second hematopoietic cell transplantation for graft failure in patients with non-malignant disorders: a prospective study and review of the literature. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2017;52(5):726–32.

Martin P. Documentation of engraftment and characterization of chimerism after hematopoietic cell transplantation. In: Negrin RS, Antin JH, Appelbaum FR, Forman SJ, editors. Thomas' hematopoietic cell transplantation, vol. 1(24). 5th ed. New York: Wiley Blackwell; 2016. p. 272–80.

Mattsson J, Ringdén O, Storb R. Graft failure after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2008;14(Suppl 1):165–70.

Mitchell R, Nivison-Smith I, Anazodo A, et al. Outcomes of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in primary immunodeficiency: a report from the Australian and New Zealand Children's Haematology oncology group and the Australasian bone marrow transplant recipient registry. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2013;19:338–43.

Olsson R, Remberger M, Schaffer M, et al. Graft failure in the modern era of allogeneic hematopoietic SCT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2013;48:537–43.

Olsson RF, Logan BR, Chaudhury S, et al. Primary graft failure after myeloablative allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation for hematologic malignancies. Leukemia. 2015;29:1754–62.

Pai S-Y, Logan BR, Griffith LM, et al. Transplantation outcomes for severe combined immunodeficiency, 2000–2009. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:434–46.

Passweg JR, Zhang M-J, Rocha V, et al. Donor characteristics affecting graft failure, graft-versus-host disease, and survival after unrelated donor transplantation with reduced-intensity conditioning for hematologic malignancies. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17:1855–77.

Petersdorf EW, Hansen JA, Martin PJ, et al. Major-histocompatibility-complex class I alleles and antigens in hematopoietic-cell transplantation. N Engl J Med. 2001;345:1794–800.

Reisner Y, Hagin D, Martelli MF. Haploidentical hematopoietic transplantation: current status and future perspectives. Blood. 2011;118:6006–17.

Remberger M, Mattsson J, Olsson R, Ringdén O. Second allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a treatment for graft failure. Clin Transpl. 2011;25:E68–76.

Ruggeri A, Labopin M, Sormani MP, et al. Engraftment kinetics and graft failure after single umbilical cord blood transplantation using a myeloablative conditioning regimen. Haematologica. 2014;99:1509–15.

Satwani P, Jin Z, Duffy D, et al. Transplantation-related mortality, graft failure, and survival after reduced-toxicity conditioning and allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in 100 consecutive pediatric recipients. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2013;19:552–61.

Schmitz N, Beksac M, Hasenclever D, et al. Transplantation of mobilized peripheral blood cells to HLA-identical siblings with standard-risk leukemia. Blood. 2002;100:761–7.

Servais S, Beguin Y, Baron F. Emerging drugs for prevention of graft failure after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Expert Opin Emerg Drugs. 2013;18:173–92.

Slavin S, Nagler A, Naparstek E, et al. Nonmyeloablative stem cell transplantation and cell therapy as an alternative to conventional bone marrow transplantation with lethal cytoreduction for the treatment of malignant and nonmalignant hematologic diseases. Blood. 1998;91:756–63.

Spitzer TR. Engraftment syndrome: double-edged sword of hematopoietic cell transplants. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2015;50:469–75.

Sun YQ, Wang Y, Wang FR, Yan CH, Cheng YF, Chen YH, et al. Graft failure in patients with hematological malignancies: a successful salvage with a second transplantation from a different haploidentical donor. Front Med. 2021;8:604085.

Teltschik H-M, Heinzelmann F, Gruhn B, et al. Treatment of graft failure with TNI-based reconditioning and haploidentical stem cells in paediatric patients. Br J Haematol. 2016;175(1):115–22. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.14190.

Thoele K. Engraftment syndrome in hematopoietic stem cell transplantations. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2014;18:349–54.

Valcarcel D, Sureda A. Graft failure. In: The EBMT handbook: hematopoietic stem cell transplantation and cellular therapies. New York: Springer International Publishing; 2018. p. 307–13.

Wegener D, Lang P, Paulsen F, Weidner N, Zips D, Ebinger M, et al. Immunosuppressive total nodal irradiation–based reconditioning regimens after graft rejection or graft failure in pediatric patients treated with myeloablative allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys. 2019;104(1):137–43.

Wilson C, Sylvanus T. Graft failure following allogeneic blood and marrow transplant: evidence-based nursing case study review. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2005;9:151–9.

Wobma H, Jin Z, Moscoso S, Bhatia M, Broglie L, George D, et al. Risk factors, clinical outcomes, and cost-of-care related to graft failure in pediatric allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplant recipients. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2020;26(7):1318–25.

Wolff SN. Second hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for the treatment of graft failure, graft rejection or relapse after allogeneic transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2002;29:545–52.

Yoshimi A, Bader P, Matthes-Martin S, et al. Donor leukocyte infusion after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia. Leukemia. 2005;19:971–7.

15 Late Effects and Long-Term Follow-Up

Michelle Kenyon, John Murray, Barry Quinn, Diana Greenfield, and Eugenia Trigoso

Abstract

Allogeneic stem cell transplantation was successfully performed in 1968, and its use has grown significantly over the past five decades with the total number now exceeding 1.5 million patients (Niederwieser et al. Haematologica. 107:1045–1053, 2022). HSCT is a curative treatment for many haematological cancers and other disorders. Almost 40,000 HSCT procedures are performed Europe-wide per annum (Passweg et al. Bone Marrow Transplant. 51(6):786–92, 2016), and the number of transplant recipients achieving 'long-term survival' and with late effects directly related to their treatment (Majhail et al. Hematol Oncol Stem Cell Ther 5(1):1–30, 2012) is increasing (Penack et al. Blood Adv 4:6283–6290, 2020). This growth in survivors is the result of improvements in transplant knowledge and expertise, refinements to conditioning regimes, developments in supportive care and increased numbers of procedures due to broadening transplant indications.

The most common cause of death after transplant is relapsed disease. Yet, even without disease relapse, long-term survival is complex for many as other causes of mortality such as graft versus host disease (GvHD), infection, second malignancy, respiratory disease and cardiovascular disease (CVD) (Savani et al. Blood. 117:3002–9, 2011) prove difficult to address.

Recovery post-HSCT is challenging, lasting several months to years. These individuals are susceptible to the development of post-treatment physical and psychological sequelae years to decades after completion of treatment leading to a reduced life expectancy with greater morbidity when compared to an age-adjusted population (Socié et al. N Engl J Med 341:14–21, 1999). Survivors with late effects experience significantly poorer physical and mental health, report more unmet needs for

M. Kenyon (✉)
Department of Haematological Medicine, King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK
e-mail: michelle.kenyon@nhs.net

J. Murray
Haematology and Transplant Unit, The Christie NHS Foundation Trust, Manchester, UK
e-mail: j.murray10@nhs.net

B. Quinn
School of Nursing and Midwifery, Queen's University Belfast, Belfast, UK
e-mail: Barry.Quinn@qub.ac.uk

D. Greenfield
Specialised Cancer Services, Sheffield Teaching Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, & Department of Oncology and Metabolism, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK
e-mail: diana.greenfield@nhs.net

E. Trigoso
Paeidatric Transplant Unit, Hospital Universitario y Politécnico LA FE, Valencia, Spain

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_15

care and have significantly greater use of health services compared with survivors without late effects (Treanor et al. Psychooncology 22(11):2428–2435, 2013).

Furthermore, as the number of survivors continues to grow, their long-term health problems and subsequent needs demand increasing resource and attention from late effects services. These services must remain agile and responsive, develop capacity to provide continuing expertise and oversight and collaborate with the other specialist services for input when needed.

The unpredictable, complex and multifactorial nature of these long-term and late effects in HSCT survivors means that patients require regular life-long assessment guided by rigorous protocols. However, it is important to remember that even using standardised protocols, these should be different for adults and children and the resulting care must be tailored to the needs of the individual. And finally, further consideration is needed for the growing number of young people and adult survivors in long-term follow-up who have been treated in childhood and transitioned into adult long-term follow-up care.

Keywords

Late effects · Survivorship · Survivors · Follow-up

15.1 Principles of Care

Protocol-led assessment and treatment is included in the current FACT-JACIE standards (version 8, 2021), which has evolved the standard of care recommending the assessment of recipients for evidence of acute and chronic GVHD, need for vaccinations and post-transplant late effects.

B7.12 54 There shall be an infrastructure and policies or standard operating procedures in place for provision of appropriate long-term follow-up, treatment and plans of care.

B7.12.1 There should be policies or standard operating procedures in place for post-transplant vaccination schedules and indications.

B7.12.2 There shall be policies and standard operating procedures for monitoring by appropriate specialists of recipients for post-cellular therapy late effects, including at a minimum:

B7.12.2.1 Endocrine and reproductive function and osteoporosis

B7.12.2.2 Cardiovascular risk factors

B7.12.2.3 Respiratory function

B7.12.2.4 Chronic renal impairment

B7.12.2.5 Secondary malignancies

B7.12.2.6 Growth and development of paediatric patients.

B7.12.3 There shall be policies or standard operating procedures describing the transition of long-term paediatric recipients to adult care as appropriate.

A further benefit of life-long survivorship care is the acquisition of knowledge and understanding through data collection and analysis which in turn facilitates the design and delivery of appropriate services that will better meet the needs of future survivors.

Late effect: A health problem that occurs months or years after a disease is diagnosed or after treatment has been administered. Late effects may be caused by the primary disease or its treatment and may include physical, mental or social problems and/or secondary cancers (ISCT, FACT-JACIE standards 2021).

15.2 Survivorship and Quality of Life

While there are many definitions of survivorship, it is widely accepted that a survivor is anyone living after a diagnosis of cancer or 'living with and beyond cancer'.

Survivorship includes 'those who are undergoing primary treatment, those who are in remission following treatment, those who are cured and those with active or advanced disease' (DoH 2010).

By developing and implementing strategies to improve the care and support for HSCT survi-

vors, we will also improve their quality of life and experience of care.

There are a broad range of issues experienced by HSCT survivors which are detrimental to overall quality of life (QoL) and have been reported in the literature.

Unmet physical or psychological needs are reported in 60% of cancer survivors. Beyond the first post-HSCT year, a fifth report psychosocial difficulties including fatigue, social reintegration, finance and employment. A third worry about the future and their health (Baker et al. 1999; Andrykowski et al. 2005; Gielissen et al. 2006).

Finance, employment and education are leading survivor concerns. The economic cost of cancer is a substantial personal and societal problem; 92% of sufferers lose income, impacting adversely on QoL for 40% (Bieri et al. 2008). These are among the major challenges that significantly hinder the cancer patient survivorship transition from treatment phase to reintegration phase and limit the post-HSCT potential for personal growth and fulfilment. A more recent study (Hahn et al. 2017) using Survivor Unmet Needs Survey (SUNS) in HSCT recipients attending a long-term follow-up clinic between 2006 and 2012 supports the finding from these earlier works. The top 5 specific unmet needs for autologous HSCT patients were inability to set future goals/long-term plans, changes in appearance, bad memory/lacking focus, losing confidence in abilities, and paying household or other bills. For allogeneic HSCT patients these 5 unmet needs were: ability to earn money, pay bills, feeling tired, feeling depressed and dealing with others' expectations of 'returning to normal'.

Work and education are immensely important to cancer survivors (Snyder et al. 2002) and have health benefits, and interventions addressing return to work are cost-effective (Waddell and Burton 2006). Reintegrated survivors are more likely to self-manage (Richards et al. 2013), make a positive contribution to self and society, depend less on the state financially and potentially reduce healthcare costs.

A range of psychological and psychosocial interventions including education, exercise, counselling, cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT) and psychotherapy have been investigated, aiming to address survivor concerns and improve overall quality of life.

15.2.1 Quality of Life Assessment

There is a new emphasis on understanding and monitoring the concerns and outcomes for cancer survivors through the routine use of patient-reported outcome measures (PROMs) in follow-up services. Quality of life (QoL) is an important outcome measure following HSCT. Treatment-specific QoL tools exist and have been validated in patients receiving haematopoietic stem cell transplant.

Instruments for assessing QoL can be general or specific to a certain disease or treatment. A number of cancer-specific tools (QLQ-LEU, EORTC SF 36, FACT-G/ FACT-BMT) exist and can be seen in publications of large-scale studies. They are often holistic, assessing different dimensions of well-being, such as physical, emotional, social/family and functional. Many of the commonly used scales such as EORTC and FACT are self-complete and produce a numeric score from which an inference on the relative QoL can be drawn.

These holistic assessments can be used to collect information on individuals at set time points during treatment and recovery and also can increase our knowledge of our patients as a group or groups. QoL data can help us to understand the differences between groups, e.g. comparing QoL in male versus female recipients or haploidentical versus cord recipients.

Standardised assessment tools can reveal information in certain groups or individuals that may not have been previously identified through conventional outpatient consultation alone. This can lead to increases in referrals to other services such as counselling, assisted conception, sexual dysfunction, social work, etc.

At a local level, this increase in referrals can have resource implications, but it can also lead to:

- Formalising referral pathways.
- Cultivating interest and expertise in certain areas.
- Developing services that meet the unmet holistic needs of patients.

Furthermore, this information can be used to:

- Identify how quality of life can be improved for individuals and to help plan care for individual patients.
- Assess patient experience and quality of care in individual services.
- Measure progress on survivorship care across networks or countries.

This holistic approach to assessment can be validated for patients while identifying individual information and supportive care needs. These needs can be met through a discussion with a healthcare professional, which is supported by written or multimedia materials and offers signposting for individuals to high-quality information and support (Table 15.1). The table below illustrates the most common issues expressed through assessment. They are multidimensional in nature representing psychological, physical and functional concerns.

Table 15.1 Top 10 common concerns (www.eHNA/Macmillan.org.uk analysis 2015)

1.	Worry, fear or anxiety
2.	Tiredness, exhaustion or fatigue
3.	Sleep problems/ nightmares
4.	Pain
5.	Eating or appetite
6.	Anger or frustration
7.	Getting around (walking)
8.	Memory or concentration
9.	Hot flushes/ sweating
10.	Sore or dry mouth

Accessed May 2022 https://www.macmillan.org.uk/_images/using-ehna-data-to-explore-needs_tcm9-298084.pdf

15.2.2 Common Post-HSCT Concerns

15.2.2.1 Physical Well-Being

Most studies found that survivors report resumption of routine physical activities but describe a greater number of medical problems (Mosher et al. 2009). Fatigue is one of the most commonly reported concerns, and many HSCT patients are dissatisfied with their energy levels many years after treatment. More recently, a systematic review (Oberoi et al. 2018) concluded that physical activity was effective at reducing fatigue in cancer and HSCT recipients and determining the best approaches for safe implementation should be a priority for further research.

Additionally, providing information materials and education on fatigue management is a key area where nurses can positively influence this troubling issue (Anderson et al. 2007; Andorsky et al. 2006).

15.2.2.2 Psychological Distress

It is known that 5–19% of HSCT survivors exhibit symptoms that are consistent with post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). In those without PTSD, four out of ten report clinically significant psychological distress at an average of 3.4 years post-transplant. The same study found that there was no difference by age, gender, transplant type or time following transplant (Rusiewicz et al. 2008). Kuba's more recent study (Kuba et al. 2017) investigated cancer-and-treatment-specific distress (CTXD) and its impact on symptoms of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) in patients undergoing allogeneic HSCT. The results emphasise the major burden of uncertainty pre-HSCT and the impact of uncertainty and concerns regarding appearance and sexuality on PTSD symptomatology. Understanding the subtleties of psychological distress more generally (e.g. fear, guilt, loss of control) in HSCT patients is imperative to optimising the psychological well-being of this vulnerable population (Amonoo et al. 2020).

15.2.2.3 Return to Work (RTW)

HSCT survivors return to work despite ongoing physical and psychological symptoms. Younger

age and higher levels of education have been linked to a higher probability of post-transplant employment. Those who are unsuccessful in returning to work have poorer physical, cognitive and social functioning and report more pain, sleep disorders and distress (Mosher et al. 2009).

With this in mind, improving our understanding of the issues around work for these patients is highly relevant. Persoon et al. (2019) conducted a qualitative study to identify HSCT survivors' work perceptions; barriers to and facilitators of return to work (RTW); and possible solutions to improve RTW generating some important insights. RTW was often characterised as a complex and prolonged trajectory. Work perceptions varied between patients; most valued work as positive, but some also reported a decline in work capacity and/or in importance. Perceived barriers included treatment duration and side effects, presence of comorbidity and poor health pre-diagnosis and difficulties commuting. Perceived facilitators were financial incentives, keeping in touch with the workplace and support of other patients and family. Proposed solutions to improve RTW included discussing RTW at the hospital, enhanced employer support and improved access to rehabilitation programs.

While return to work or education is important to survivors, in guiding our patients, it is essential to consider the following:

- Type of work
  - Physical demand
  - Environment
  - Routine
  - Hours
- Support of employer
  - Phased return is usually the optimal way of enabling people to return to work progressively.
- Financial pressure
  - Many people need to return to work due to mounting financial difficulties.
- Self-esteem
  - Some people feel 'lost' without their work identity and feel a sense of urgency to return.

15.2.2.4 Sexuality

Evidence suggests that sexual function is one of the most prevalent and persistent long-term concerns after HSCT.

Despite its prevalence and the range of concerns that can be experienced across the entire sexual response cycle (El-Jawahri et al. 2018; Majhail 2017) sexuality and sexual function issues are under-reported. A range of sexual concerns have been described with a tendency for women to report more problems than men and women continue to describe more sexual concerns a number of years post-transplant (Mosher et al. 2009). Sexual function is typically multifactorial in origin with endocrine, mechanical and psychological factors. In their review on HSCT and sexuality, Thygesen et al. (2012) report on 14 quantitative studies that examined sexual function after HSCT. Sexual dysfunction is common following both autologous and allogeneic HSCT. Those that resume sexual relations in the first post-transplant year tend to experience fewer long-term issues (Jean and Syrjala 2009), but many survivors continue to experience profound sexual dysfunction even 5–10 years post-HSCT (Thygesen et al. 2012). The partners of patients who have undergone allogeneic HSCT are also negatively impacted. Poloméni et al. (2016) found that 75% of both patients and partners reported negative effects on their sexual life, and 30% of patients and 50% of partners reported negative effects on their couple life.

More recently, Gjærde et al. (2022) reported their European multicentre cross-sectional study of adult allo-HSCT recipients surviving >2 years and their partners. They focused on sexual functioning after transplant and evaluated whether a discussion of sexual functioning was perceived to have taken place between the transplant team and the survivor and partner. Of the 136 survivor and 81 partner participants, 47% of male and 65% of female survivors and 57% of male and 59% of

female partners reported clinically relevant sexual problems. Sixty-two percent of survivors and 79% of partners reported that sexual functioning had not been discussed with them during transplant. The impact of such high prevalence of sexual dysfunction warrants further investigation but also strategies to effectively prevent and treat sexual problems when they occur.

15.3 Addressing Sexuality

Sexuality is an important component of each person's life, whether they identify as male, female or non-binary, and is much more than the physical act of sexual intercourse or sexual expression. A key factor is to make no assumptions about the person or their sexuality or their choice of sexual expression. Make it clear to the person that you are willing to help and support them with any sexual concerns and questions. In a busy technical environment, the person may be seeking permission from those caring for them, to talk about these important concerns.

Sexuality is also about more hidden elements, including how people perceive themselves as sexual beings and the need to be recognised, respected, connected with, loved and cared for by others (Quinn 2010). Whether the person is in a relationship (gay, lesbian, heterosexual), is single or enjoys sex with one or multiple partners, most people will have sexual needs and desires throughout their lifespan (Oskay et al. 2014). There is a danger that in seeing sexuality as merely a physical expression that the haematology and transplant care team may fail to see that sexuality is about the whole person including how they relate to others in an intimate way (Oskay et al. 2014).

Whether the patient is or is not sexually active during the prolonged treatment period, before, during and after transplant, patients will need support and advice from the team caring for them, on sexual changes, choices and concerns. Sex and sexuality are largely seen as a very private matter, and a patient and/or partner may be reluctant to talk about their concerns or unexpected changes to a member of the transplant team who appear busy dealing with other aspects of the treatment process (Jean and Syrjala 2009, Roth et al. 2010, Mulhall 2008). It is important that the team makes it clear that they are there to help, and that support is available. There may be a misconception from some members of the transplant team that a person undergoing a stem cell transplant will not have an interest in sex. In reality, no matter what is happening in a person's life, all persons are sexual human beings (Quinn 2010). What that means for each person and how they will express that need throughout periods of their life may change and develop.

For some, people being sexually intimate with their partner during the treatment and transplant process may bring comfort, reassurance and hope, amidst ongoing uncertainty and change, while others will have no interest in being sexually active. However, feeling loved, accepted and cared for as one faces the uncertainty of transplantation may bring great comfort to the person and their partner (Jean and Syrjala 2009; Schover 1997).

In a busy haematology or transplant setting, the team can help to facilitate times of privacy when the individual can be alone or with their partner, if this is what they wish. The transplant team who recognise the importance of these intimate moments can often organise and plan treatments and interventions, at less acute points in the transplant process, in order to provide these moments or times of privacy. The diagnosis of any serious illness and the treatments and changes required may have a profound impact on the person and/or partner, affecting them physically, emotionally, socially and spiritually (Brandenburg et al. 2010). People may benefit from times of relaxation, massage therapy, aromatherapy or other complementary procedures.

Facing the reality of temporary or permanent infertility and the multiple body and life changes secondary to disease and treatments can affect a person's identity and how they perceive themselves. The physical and psychological demands of dealing with a serious illness, the transplant demands and setting, can interfere with the human sexual response cycle (desire/interest, arousal, readiness (penetration), orgasm and resolution, satisfaction). Any of these points on the response cycle may be affected, but these can be

sensitively addressed by a caring practitioner (Quinn 2010; Schover 1997).

15.3.1 Providing Support and Information

The team can sensitively support the person and the partner through the transplantation process and treatments, mindful of the impact on the person's sexual being. This includes providing accurate information on potential sexual changes that may occur, practical advice on the choice of treatment and interventions and a listening ear. Many sexual concerns arising in the haematology and transplant setting can be resolved or certainly reduced by a member of the team simply listening to the person's concerns and knowing how and where to access practical and expert help, if required (Katz and Dizon 2016; Quinn 2010). It is worth considering the impact of other co-existing morbidities, and the treatments required for these conditions on the person's sexuality and their ability to have sex.

In addressing sexual concerns, the transplant team can be proactive in supporting the person with body changes and psychological concerns. Members of the team who are aware of the possible impact that treatments, the transplant and supportive medications may have on a person's sexuality will be better able to speak to the person sensitively, honestly and clearly before the commencement of treatment. These issues should be an important part of the preparation for treatment and transplantation (Quinn 2010; Jean and Syrjala 2009).

Facing the reality of temporary or permanent infertility and the multiple body and life changes secondary to disease and treatments can affect a person's identity and how they perceive themselves. The physical and psychological demands of dealing with a serious illness, the transplant demands and setting, can interfere with the human sexual response cycle (desire/interest, arousal, readiness (penetration), orgasm and resolution, satisfaction). Any of these points on the response cycle may be affected, but these can be sensitively addressed by a caring practitioner (Quinn 2010; Schover 1997).

15.3.2 Addressing Fertility Concerns

Many of the chemotherapy agents used in the haematology and transplant setting can affect the person's fertility including alkylating agents which are known to cause most damage, resulting in either temporary or permanent infertility. For many young patients, this may be the first time that they have had to consider the possibility of planning children, and this will require support from the team, family and friends. Facing the possibility of being infertile can have a profound effect on how the person feels about themselves and their place in the world. Patients will be advised not to plan children during the treatment as the drugs and the demanding treatment requirements will affect the development of the embryo leading to foetal defects and miscarriage. For some people/couples, it may be very painful having to put their plans for a family on hold during the treatment and transplant period.

Occasionally a woman may discover a cancer diagnosis during her pregnancy and may be advised to undergo a medical termination because the pregnancy will not be viable and/or in order to proceed with necessary treatment. This can be a very difficult time for the woman and her partner; sometimes the full impact of this loss becomes more apparent following the completion of treatment. The team can be there to talk about the impact of treatment and to support and advice on the possible options available to support fertility (Schover 1997).

For men this may include sperm banking and the possibility of cryopreservation of testicular tissue, generally used for younger patients. For women, this may include cryopreservation of embryos or eggs and ovarian preservation. In some cases, the urgency of treatment may mean that fertility-saving options are not possible. During the transplant process, the focus for everyone including the patient may be on treating the disease, and the reality of being infertile becomes more important in the months and years following transplantation. This can be extremely difficult for patients who are beginning new relationships and have to disclose this to their new partner. This reality can be addressed at follow-up

clinics both in the hospital and community, ensuring the person has support that they can access. Individuals and couples may need support and advice over their concerns of having passed or passing on genes to their children predisposing them to a higher risk of cancer (Quinn 2010).

Support may take the form of practical advice, including adjusting to an altered sex life during treatment, adequate pain/symptom control, comfortable positioning during sex, contraception, providing private moments, advice on sexual aids and medical treatments or simply an opportunity to talk about concerns and fears (Table 15.2). Practical support and guidance can help the person returning to sexual activity after transplantation or simply regaining confidence in being sexually expressive again.

Many of the treatment agents (chemotherapy, targeted therapies and radiation) used in the field of haematology and transplantation are known to cause specific problems which can lead to lower sex drive, vaginal dryness (which may cause pain during intercourse), erection concerns, ejaculation and orgasm difficulties (which may lead to loss of confidence and lack of sexual enjoyment) (Brandenburg et al. 2010). Some drugs including the vinca alkaloids and some targeted therapies may cause nerve damage giving rise to erectile dysfunction and to ejaculation and orgasm difficulties. Following total body irradiation, a small number of patients may experience damage to the nerve, vascular and muscle tissue giving rise to possible erectile difficulties, including the inability to get or maintain an erection suitable for sexual penetration or vaginal changes including stenosis and/or dryness which may cause pain during sexual intercourse. Women may benefit from the team explaining the use of vaginal lubricants and dilation to prevent vaginal stenosis.

Table 15.2 Providing support (Quinn 2010)

Sensitively listening and addressing fears
Creating time and privacy for couples to be alone
Providing adequate symptom relief
Support with body changes
Encouraging couples/sexual partners to talk to one another
Advice on creative foreplay (hugging, stroking, having a shared bath, kissing, mutual masturbation)
Advice on alternative positioning
Alternatives to sexual penetration
Guidance on sexual aids (dilators, vacuum pumps, dildo, toys)
Guidance on medical treatments (oral, injection, pellets)
Counselling

Men may require support in exploring treatment options for erectile concerns. These complications may require interventions including advice on oral medications (sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil), pellet (intraurethral alprostadil) (MUSE), injection (intracavernosal alprostadil) and appliances (vacuum device) to address erectile dysfunction (Katz and Dizon 2016).

Hormone replacement therapy unless contraindicated may have a role to play, alongside, an opportunity to talk through fears and concerns and/or psychosexual therapy support (Brandenburg et al. 2010). If patients are sexually active during treatment, the team may advise them to use some form of barrier method (condoms, femidoms, dental dams) (Quinn 2010). This is to prevent pregnancy and to protect the patient's partner from the minimal risk of irritation caused by a small amount of chemotherapy agents remaining in bodily fluids such as semen, urine and rectal and vaginal secretions. These barrier methods may also reduce the risk of infection especially if the patient is at risk of neutropenia and prolonged immunosuppression. While individuals are advised to take steps to prevent infection, rarely should this prevent the person from enjoying sex with a partner. Occasionally the team may learn of partners no longer sleeping in the same bed for fear of contamination to their partner; the team can reassure the couple that this is not necessary and they can continue with their usual sleeping arrangements.

Other sexual difficulties may arise due to body changes and other symptoms including weight gain or loss, skin changes, graft versus host disease, constipation, diarrhoea, nausea, fatigue, oral complications, depression and anxiety. The person's confidence in being sexually active may be affected by the unwanted body changes that occur (Katz and Dizon 2016).

Poorly controlled symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhoea, loss of appetite and extreme tiredness caused by the treatments and the underlying disease, may affect the person physically and psychologically. Carefully assessing and managing these symptoms may enable the person to enjoy the comfort of sexual intimacy with their partner (Katz and Dizon 2016).

Some of the supportive treatments used in the transplant setting while bringing relief to these unpleasant symptoms can also give rise to sexual difficulties. Pain relief including opiates may give rise to uncomfortable constipation, tiredness, nausea and mucosal dryness leading to painful vagina/anal intercourse and erectile dysfunction. Some anti-sickness medication while providing necessary relief from nausea can effect erectile functioning. While anti-anxiety and anti-depressant mediations help with stress and anxiety, these medications can lead to a lower sex drive and erectile dysfunction (Quinn 2010).

Some patients will be at risk of bleeding due to thrombocytopenia and should be advised to continue a sex life if they so wish but to be aware of reducing trauma during sex, including vaginal, oral and anal intercourse. Localised trauma may be reduced by using a more gentle thrusting movement during penetration or masturbation. Many of the drugs used in the transplant setting may bring on the early onset of menopause and the associated symptoms which can cause great distress.

Medically induced menopause brings unwanted symptoms including vaginal dryness, mood changes, hot flushes, low confidence and sometimes a lack of interest in sex. Women may find it more difficult to achieve a satisfactory orgasm (Brandenburg et al. 2010; Jean and Syrjala 2009). It is important that women and their partners are forewarned about these symptoms but also to ensure these issues are revisited sensitively during and after treatment.

Men, women and non-binary persons may need support and advice on finding alternative ways to express themselves sexually both during and after transplant. Although people may have a reduced interest in sex for a period of time, their interest in returning to a sexually active relationship may return in weeks and months following the transplant. Practical measures including the careful positioning of medical devices may enable a person to be held and hugged during prolonged hospitalisation. These measures also include reducing clutter around the persons' bed so that their partner can be closer to them and critically reviewing and removing any unnecessary infection control measures that may act as a barrier to intimacy. Practical advice on how to deal with medical devices including urinary catheters and emptying bowels and/or bladder before having sex can provide greater comfort.

While the person may lack the energy to participate in penetrative sexual intercourse, they may wish to try alternatives including cuddling, hugging, lying in bed together, increased time for foreplay, sharing a bath or shower together and sharing quiet and private moments together. Although the sexual needs of patients in the highly technical setting of transplantation can sometimes be overlooked, the ability to be intimate with a partner might be a welcome relief from some of the demands made on the person by the transplant process.

15.4 Summary

15.4.1 Wider Impact of Survivorship Care

Carers of those undergoing stem cell transplant report high levels of emotional distress (Wulff-Burchfield et al. 2013). The psychological difficulties that carers report can be prolonged. This is exacerbated by their own lifestyle and role disruption; carers report financial difficulties and are often unable to work for periods themselves or have to give up work altogether due to their 'carer role' commitment (Beattie and Lebel 2011). It is important to recognise these issues and offer carers support, information and invest in their preparedness for caregiving to improve their experience (Winterling et al. 2021).

15.4.2 Models of Long-Term Follow-Up

It is widely recognised that HSCT recipients require structured long-term follow-up and screening to reduce the morbidity and mortality demonstrated in those considered as long-term survivors.

There are clear guidelines around screening requirements (Majhail et al. 2012) but little direction on how these might best be implemented in a late effects (LE) service. A survey of UK transplant centres identified that all had a LE service and most had a standard operating procedure outlining its process but identified wide variability in almost every aspect of the late effects services (Hamblin et al. 2017). A follow-up survey in 2019 identified improvements in number of centres having dedicated long-term follow-up clinics and associated SOPs. However, there was ongoing variation in vaccination programmes, access to cancer screening and audit processes (Dignan et al. 2021).

Important components for successful delivery of LE service include:

- Assessment tools incorporating clinical and psychosocial late effects.
- Availability of a range of medical and allied health specialists.
- Access to psychological services.
- Implementation of second malignancy screening, e.g. mammography and PAP smear.

15.4.3 Opportunities for Nurses

Nurses have a significant role in delivering and/or coordinating post-HSCT care for patients.

Nurses have an opportunity to:

- Identify useful resources for patients.
- Develop post-HSCT services for patients.
- Ensure that care meets the needs and concerns of patients.
- Develop innovative roles as individual practitioner and as part of a wider multidisciplinary team.
- Develop the evidence base by leading/participating in survivorship research.
- Develop creative ways of working and providing suitable clinical and supportive care.

15.5 Post-transplant Complications and Surveillance

Standardisation of follow-up protocols is important to prevent important tests being overlooked or being duplicated unnecessarily.

15.5.1 Second Malignancies

There is an increased risk of developing a second solid cancer post-transplant in the range of 2–6% at 10 years. Data suggests that second solid cancers occur twice as frequently in the transplant population than in the general public with this increasing to threefold at 15 years. There are several risk factors that may contribute to the development of a second solid cancer (Curtis et al. 1997; Tichelli et al. 2019):

- Use of TBI or prior radiotherapy
- Primary disease
- Male sex
- Pre-transplant conditioning
- Genetic predisposition contributing to initial cancer and subsequent malignancy
- Older age at transplant
- Donor gender (F > M)
- Immune dysfunction (T-cell depletion, HLA mismatched, allo-HSCT, GvHD, immunosuppressive therapy)

Clinicians have long been aware that radiation leads to second solid cancers with a latent period of approximately 3–5 years before developing a malignancy (Rizzo et al. 2009). The risk for non-squamous cell cancer is higher in younger patients (especially those under 30 years) at ten times that of nonirradiated patients. Other cancers such as breast, thyroid, brain, central nervous system, bone and connec-

tive tissue and melanoma are all related to radiation exposure. Screening for some of these cancers is available and aids in early diagnosis (Savani et al. 2011).

All patients should be enrolled into national cancer screening programmes for breast, cervical, colon and skin cancer. Particular attention should be paid to women who receive radiation to their chest >800 cGy to ensure they follow guidelines laid down for paediatric survivors. These state that annual mammogram screening should begin at 25 years of age or 8 years after exposure whichever occurs later. Women should have PAP smears annually to three yearly, and those with GvHD should be screened annually. Patients should have at least six monthly dental reviews and an annual thyroid assessment, and if any thyroid nodule is identified, imaging and potential biopsy should be undertaken (Savani et al. 2011).

At the initial consent for transplant consultation, patients should be counselled about the future potential risks of second malignancy. This is an ideal time to engage with the patient and help them make changes to their lifestyle that will have an impact on their lives moving forward. Smoking cessation, a healthy balanced diet, taking regular exercise, reducing alcohol consumption and taking care of their skin in the sun will all have beneficial effects.

15.5.2 Systematic Post-transplant Screening and Investigations

A specific screening plan for transplant patients has been published by Majhail et al. (2012) on behalf of the Center for International Blood and Marrow Transplant Research (DeFilipp et al. 2016), American Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (ASBMT), European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), Asia-Pacific Blood and Marrow Transplantation Group (APBMT), Bone Marrow Transplant Society of Australia and New Zealand (BMTSANZ), East Mediterranean Blood and Marrow Transplantation Group (EMBMT) and Sociedade Brasileira de Transplante de Medula Ossea (SBTMO).

These comprehensive guidelines written by an expert group were last updated in 2011, published in 2012 and have been the mainstay of long-term follow-up care worldwide. They provide a consensus for screening and preventative measures for autologous and allogeneic stem cell transplant patients who have survived for at least 6 months following transplant. However, with continuing advances in treatment and supportive care, growing knowledge and expertise in this area, updated guidance is much in need. At the time of writing, the new guidelines are on the horizon and will continue to inform and influence models of late effects care to benefit patient outcomes. There are also patient versions of the guidelines that can be found at www.bethematch.org/patients-and-families/life-after-transplant/ (accessed May 2022).

The recommendations take each system and describe the late complication and the general risk factors for developing them. It includes suggested monitoring tests and preventative measures that should be undertaken supported by associated evidence from randomised trials and if none is available from retrospective studies or from expert opinion when no evidence exists at all (Majhail et al. 2012).

Infection and revaccination are described elsewhere in this textbook, but regardless of time since transplant, all presentations of infection should be thoroughly and rigorously investigated and treated aggressively. Revaccination should be initiated as per the widely accepted Ljungman et al. (2009) guidelines.

Majhail et al. (2012) elegantly describe the general follow-up that a transplant patient should receive in a systematic order and this can be applied fairly easily in the clinic environment. Below is a concise form of the guidance. Please refer to Table 15.3 for the recommended screening guidelines and the full publication for further details.

15.5.3 Ocular Screening

Ocular screening should commence at 6 months and continue on an annual basis for assessment of

Table 15.3 Recommended screening and prevention (Majhail et al. 2012) printed with permission from Elsevier Inc

Recommended screening/prevention	6 months	1 year	Annually
Immunity			
Encapsulated organism prophylaxis	2	2	2
PCP prophylaxis	1	2	2
CMV testing	2	2	2
Immunisations	1	1	1
Ocular			
Ocular clinical symptom evaluation	1	1	1
Ocular fundus exam	+	1	+
Oral complications			
Clinical assessment	1	1	1
Dental assessment	+	1	1
Respiratory			
Clinical pulmonary assessment	1	1	1
Smoking tobacco avoidance	1	1	1
Pulmonary function testing	+	+	+
Chest radiography	+	+	+
Cardiovascular			
Cardiovascular risk-factor assessment	+	1	1
Liver			
Liver function testing	1	1	+
Serum ferritin testing		1	+
Kidney			
Blood pressure screening	1	1	1
Urine protein screening	1	1	1
BUN/creatinine testing	1	1	1
Muscle and connective tissue			
Evaluation for muscle weakness	2	2	2
Physical activity counselling	1	1	1
Skeletal			
Bone density testing (adult women, all allogeneic transplantation recipients and patients at high risk for bone loss)		1	+
Nervous system			
Neurologic clinical evaluation	+	1	1
Evaluate for cognitive development		1	1
Endocrine			
Thyroid function testing		1	1
Growth velocity in children		1	1
Gonadal function assessment (pre-pubertal men and women)	1	1	1
Gonadal function assessment (post-pubertal women)		1	+
Gonadal function assessment (post-pubertal men)		+	+
Mucocutaneous			
Skin self-exam and sun exposure counselling	1	1	1
Gynaecologic exam in women	+	1	1
Second cancers			
Second cancer vigilance counselling		1	1
Screening for second cancers		1	1
Psychosocial			
Psychosocial/QOL clinical assessment	1	1	1
Sexual function assessment	1	1	1

Majhail et al. (2012)
1 recommended for all transplantation recipients, *2* recommended for any patient with ongoing cGvHD or immunosuppression, + reassessment recommended for abnormal testing in a previous time period or for new signs/symptoms

keratoconjunctivitis sicca syndrome, cataracts and ischaemic microvascular retinopathy. Sicca syndrome (vaginitis, dry skin and xerostomia) occurs in 10–40% of patients.

15.5.4 Oral Examination

The oral cavity can be affected by chronic graft versus host disease (cGvHD) and, even in the absence of cGvHD, requires repeated assessment from 6 months especially if there is a sign of xerostomia (dry mouth) as this increases the risk of dental caries. Good oral hygiene and treatment of oral infections should be initiated promptly on recognition. There is an increased risk of secondary oral squamous cell carcinoma in those with oral cGvHD, and patients should be aware to raise concerns.

15.5.5 Pulmonary Screening

Respiratory problems include bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS), idiopathic pneumonia syndrome (also known as interstitial pneumonitis), cryptogenic organising pneumonia (COP) and sinopulmonary infections. Clinical review at 6 months and annually with physical examination and history should be performed. Counselling with regard to smoking cessation is extremely important. If the patient has GvHD, then it may be appropriate to undertake pulmonary function testing, and if there is evidence of lung involvement, then imaging such as inspiratory and expiratory CT for air trapping to exclude BOS is indicated.

15.5.6 Cardiovascular Tests

Cardiovascular disease is rare in the transplant setting. Clinical review at 6 months and annually with physical examination, blood pressure monitoring and history should be performed. Counselling with regard to a healthy lifestyle, taking regular exercise, maintaining a healthy weight, eating well and not smoking should be reinforced in clinic and be in line with the recommendations for the general public. Risk factors such as diabetes, hypertension and dyslipidaemia can be addressed with non-medication interventions, but some may require treatment if this approach is unsuccessful. If any concerns are raised, investigations with ECG and ECHO and referral to cardiology may be needed.

15.5.7 Hepatic Complications

Liver function tests are taken at most clinical reviews and aid assessing for the onset of GvHD. Patients with pre-existing liver conditions such as hepatitis B or C should have monitoring of their viral load by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and referral to a hepatologist or virologist for advice on ongoing antiviral therapy. Serum ferritin levels should be measured at 1 year, and those with elevated levels should be followed more closely and considered for chelation.

15.5.8 Renal Surveillance

Renal injury is common post-transplant as many drugs are nephrotoxic such as ciclosporin, aminoglycosides, aciclovir, etc., and renal function should be checked at 6 months and annually thereafter. In those with chronic kidney disease (CKD), referral to nephrology and assessment with renal ultrasound and/or biopsy should be considered.

15.5.9 Musculoskeletal Assessment

Patients with GvHD and especially those receiving systemic steroids may encounter problems with muscle strength, general weakness and loss of function. All patients should be given advice about regular daily exercise. Those who have developed GvHD should be assessed for a range of joint movement to detect sclerotic changes and referred on to physiotherapy for active intervention.

Osteoporosis is common with reports of incidence of 25–50% at 18 months (Majhail et al.

2012). Those with ongoing GvHD requiring long-term use of corticosteroids are at particular risk. DEXA scanning is indicated and advice regarding diet and exercise given to optimise bone mineral density and falls prevention. Supplementation with vitamin D and calcium may be required.

15.5.10 Neurological Assessment

All patients should be assessed annually for signs and symptoms of neurologic deficit such as leukoencephalopathy, cognitive impairment or neurotoxicity as a consequence of long-term use of calcineurin inhibitors. Also any signs or symptoms of peripheral neuropathy should be examined for. If any deficit is found during routine assessment, the patient should be referred for nerve conduction studies or MRI as indicated by the clinical findings. A referral to a neurologist may be appropriate.

15.5.11 Endocrine Surveillance

Endocrine dysfunction is common following stem cell transplant. Thyroid function and gonadal testing are recommended at 1 year and then annually with replacement if needed. Up to 25% of patients who receive total body irradiation will have some thyroid dysfunction (Majhail et al. 2012). Significant gonadal failure requiring hormone replacement is more common in women than men as the ovaries are more sensitive to the effects of chemoradiotherapy than the testes. Sexual dysfunction and assessment of sexual function are described more fully in this chapter. Sexual dysfunction is common although typically under-reported and results in impaired quality of life (QoL) and relationship problems.

15.5.12 Second Malignancy Screening

All patients should be counselled regarding the increased risk of secondary cancers and advised to monitor themselves frequently (skin, breast and testicular examination) and report symptoms promptly. The median time to development is 5–6 years post-therapy although this risk continues to rise with no plateau. Cancers of all organs are well described but the skin, oral cavity, CNS, bone, thyroid and connective tissue are more prevalent. Breast screening should be carried out for women who receive total body irradiation at age 25 or 8 years following exposure whichever is later but no later than 40 years. Cervical PAP smears should be performed every 1–3 years (yearly if presence of GvHD) in women aged 21 and over or within 3 years of initial sexual activity whichever is earliest. Advice regarding sun exposure, wearing sun screen, loose fitting clothing and a hat and glasses when outside should be given to all patients.

15.5.13 Psychological Screening

Psychological problems may manifest in various ways in the post-transplant setting, and clinicians need to be vigilant for subtle signs and make appropriate referrals for interventions. Depression, anxiety, fatigue and psychosexual dysfunction are frequently observed. This often increases in the transition from early transplant recovery to longer-term follow-up as the patient adjusts to the change in life style, employment and financial independence. Relationships with family and friends may change leading to distressing outcomes. Adopting a standardised approach to psychosocial assessment using validated tools can be helpful to offer validation and discussion airtime for patients experiencing psychosocial sequelae.

A low level of suspicion should be maintained by the clinician for early signs of psychological distress throughout follow-up.

15.5.14 Fertility Concerns

Fertility is often lost due to high-dose treatments although not in all. Patients should be counselled thoroughly regarding safe sex in those of childbearing age. Those who are contemplating pregnancy should be referred to specialist services for advice and monitoring.

15.5.15 Summary

There is no standard instrument guiding post-transplant care that will apply to all patients who have undergone stem cell transplant. Each patient is an individual, and, as such, an individualised plan needs to be generated. Large institutions have published guidelines, such as Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center's LTFU guidelines, the National Marrow Donor Program Be The Match long-term survival guidelines, the Livestrong Care Plan and the Passport for Cure, to name but a few.

The key message is that early standardised screening leads to early detection and treatment or increased monitoring, although it is not fully proven that this leads to better outcomes. It is the role of all healthcare providers to raise awareness for potential secondary effects of high-dose therapies and to ensure adequate and appropriate survivorship care. Empowering patients to be involved in their own long-term care is paramount. Having 'buy-in' from the patient will help to ensure that they remain vigilant for subtle changes and attend screening appointments. They have self-interest at heart and are less likely to forget that they require certain follow-up tests if they are educated regarding the importance of screening and monitoring in the late effects clinic.

Having a written care plan or treatment summary detailing the chemotherapies, radiation and side effects experienced with future dates for screening is ideal and can be based on any of the published material listed above. Educate the patient and family on what can be expected and when, enable them to become an active participant in their own post-transplant care and provide ongoing support to help our patients navigate the potentially stormy waters ahead.

15.6 Metabolic Syndrome

In addition to the more familiar post-HSCT sequelae, metabolic syndrome (MetS) is of particular note due to its collection of cardiovascular risk factors that increase the risk of cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus and all-cause mortality. Metabolic syndrome (MetS) is typically defined as a clustering of five factors including (1) hyperglycaemia, (2) hypertriglyceridaemia, (3) low high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol, (4) hypertension, (5) obesity (measured by high waist circumference) [International Diabetes Federation, Alberti KGMM, et al. Alberti et al. 2009]. The long-term survivors of HSCT have a considerable risk of developing MetS and subsequently cardiovascular disease.

Indeed, an EBMT cross-sectional, multicentre, noninterventional study of 453 adult HSCT patients surviving a minimum of 2 years post-transplant attending routine follow-up HSCT and/or late effects clinics in 9 centres (Greenfield et al. 2021) found the overall prevalence of MetS was 37.5% rising to 53% in patients >50 years of age at follow-up. In this study, no differences were observed in rates of MetS between autologous and allogeneic HCT survivors, nor any association with graft versus host disease (GvHD) or current immunosuppressant therapy. Furthermore, there was a significantly higher occurrence of cardiovascular events (CVE, defined as cerebrovascular accident, coronary heart disease or peripheral vascular disease) in those with MetS than in those without MetS (26.7% versus 9%, $p < 0.001$, OR 3.69, 95% CI 2.09–6.54, $p < 0.001$), and, as expected, MetS and CVE were age-related.

A series of recommendations (Table 15.4) have been developed (DeFilipp et al. 2016) to

Table 15.4 Screening guidelines for metabolic syndrome (DeFilipp et al. 2016)

Screening guidelines for metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular risk factors for adult and paediatric patients among the general population and HCT survivors				
	General adult population	Adult long-term HCT survivors	General paediatric population	Paediatric long-term HCT survivors
	(http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/)	Majhail et al.	(http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov)	Pulsipher et al.
Weight, height and BMI	Weight height and BMI assessment in all adults (no specific recommendation for screening interval)	No specific recommendations	Weight, height and BMI assessment after 2 years of age (no specified screening interval)	Weight, height and BMI assessment yearly
Dyslipidemia	For persons with increased risk for coronary heart disease, assessments should begin at age 20.	Lipid profile assessment every 5 years in males aged ≥35 years and females aged ≥45 years	Lipid panel between 9 and 11 years of age or earlier if family history	Lipid profile at least every 5 years; if abnormal, screen annually
	The interval for screening should be shorter for people who have lipid levels close to those warranting therapy, and longer intervals for those not at increased risk who have had repeatedly normal lipid levels	Screening should start at age 20 for anyone at increased risk (smokers, DM, HTN, BMI ≥30 kg/m^2 and family history of heart disease before age 50 for male relatives or before age 60 for female relatives)		
Blood pressure	Blood pressure assessment every 3-5 years in adults aged 18-39 years with normal blood pressure (<130/85 mm hg) who do not have other risk factors	Blood pressure assessment at least every 2 years	Blood pressure assessment yearly after the age of 3 years, interpreted for age/sex/height	Blood pressure assessment at each visit and at least annually
	Blood pressure assessment annually in adults aged ge1; 40 years and for those who are at increased risk for high blood pressure (blood pressure 130 to 139/85 to 89 mm hg, those who are overweight or obese, and African-Americans)			
Hyperglycaemia	Screening for abnormal blood glucose (HbA1C, fasting plasma glucose or oral glucose tolerance test) every 3 years in adults aged 40-70 years who are overweight or obese	Screening for type 2 DM every 3 years in adults aged ≥45 years or in those with sustained higher blood pressure (>135/80 mm Hg)	Fasting glucose every 2 years after the age of 10 years in overweight children with other risk factors	Fasting glucose at least every 5 years; if abnormal, screen annually

BMI body mass index, *DM* diabetes mellitus, *HbA1C* haemoglobin A1C, *HCT* haematopoietic cell transplantation, *HTN* hypertension

help clinicians provide screening and preventive care for MetS and cardiovascular disease among HSCT recipients. Furthermore, all HSCT survivors should be advised of the risks of MetS and encouraged to undergo the recommended screening based on their predisposition and ongoing risk factors.

15.7 Adherence in the Long-Term Follow-up Setting

Adherence issues are common in HSCT survivors. Adherence describes the extent to which survivors follow the medical recommendations. Adherence is not limited exclusively to medication but it encompasses all health-related behaviours that are recommended by healthcare providers (Eeltink and Kisch 2021).

Causes for non-adherence are often beyond the patient control with adoption of unhealthy behaviours further influenced by multiple interacting factors. Among those quoted in the literature are the patient's physical discomfort, misunderstanding and uncertainty about the merits of medication or monitoring, poor communication regarding the diagnosis and treatment regime and inadequate information on illness in general and secondary effects of the disease and its treatment in particular.

*Five factors of adherence (*WHO 2003):

1. Health system
2. Socio-economic
3. Health or condition
4. Treatment
5. Patient

1. Health System

   A relationship based on a partnership between the patient, relatives and the treating physician improves adherence (Russmann et al. 2010). Insufficient and inadequate doctor/patient/family dialogue, relationship, trust and mutual information are quoted as one of the most important causes of noncompliance.

   Poor attention to patient education with regard to medication benefits and risks, side effects and correct dosing can result in decreased quality of life, more frequent consultations and possible hospital readmissions. More broadly and beyond medication adherence alone, a whole team approach to education and support facilitates the development of joint strategies that increase likelihood of adherence.

2. Socio-economic

   Barriers to adherence may revolve around a lack of resources, both in the patient's finances and in the level of clinical knowledge and expertise and medical facilities available.

   The economic cost of cancer plays a significant role in therapy adherence. Many patients need to travel considerable distances to access treatment or care at substantial personal cost. Furthermore, the majority of patients and many of their carers are unable to work during and for many months following treatment leading to a loss of income and a lack of financial stability.

   Availability of social support services is yet another potent factor, especially in patients overwhelmed by multiple pressing needs.

3. Health or Condition

   Extensive symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, pain, constipation and fatigue play an important role in a person's ability to manage medication and follow a treatment course with a degree of reliability. High symptom burden or other physical conditions similarly impacts on attendance and ability to adopt healthy behaviour strategies.

   Disease progression and declining health can interfere with the physical ability to manage treatment and also the willingness to continue with treatment.

4. Treatment

   Therapy-related factors refer to the treatment regime and the process of taking medication according to the regime. Working to optimise adherence requires precision and concentration and the ability to follow specific instructions around timing of dosing. Often careful planning around the daily programme of treatment will increase the patient's ability to follow the treatment plan accurately.

   Drug frequency, odour, side effects and prior experience of therapy can all impact upon and hinder adherence (Lee et al. 1992).

5. Patient

   The patient's attitude towards their illness and treatment are important factors. Their support network, resources, disease knowledge, health beliefs and expectations are central to the degree to which they will be able to follow treatment.

   Psychological distress or other psychological factors can also be a cause, often requiring professional intervention and support.

   For many, a simple lack of understanding of the importance of regular treatment or assessment is the driver for poor adherence or attendance. Others are afraid that annual check-ups may reveal sinister pathology that they would prefer to ignore.

15.8 Immunisations Following Stem Cell Transplantation

Stem cell transplant and CAR-T recipients lose their pre-existing immunity within weeks to vaccine-preventable diseases and are at increased risk of morbidity and mortality (Kamboj and Shah 2019). Therefore, all stem cell transplant and CAR-T recipients should be routinely revaccinated once T and B cell immunity has sufficiently recovered.

Tables 15.5 and 15.6 describe the ECIL 2017 updated guidelines for vaccination of haemopoietic stem cell transplant recipients (Cordonnier et al. 2019).

For those patients who develop graft versus host disease (GvHD), it is likely that all immune function and protection are lost. Cordonnier et al. (2019) recognise the difficulty of a higher risk of infection and the protection that vaccines offer, but that vaccines may not be effective if used too early in this patient group. There is little data and the recommendation is to follow the same revaccination schedule but advocate measuring antibody levels pre- and post-vaccine to determine the level of cover that has been achieved and the need for any boosters.

Family members should continue to have all of their routine vaccinations to help avoid infection transmission to the patient (Cordonnier et al. 2019).

15.8.1 CAR-T Considerations

In 2019 best practice recommendations were written for adults and children undergoing CAR-t cell therapy by EBMT and JACIE. The guidelines were updated in 2021 and are currently in press. The revaccination of this patient group is not yet fully understood. There is consensus that vaccination may offer benefit and follow that of transplant patients, but should be in line with national standards and individual patient risk (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2019).

15.8.2 COVID-19

Guidelines for patients post-transplant and CAR-T may vary by country, please follow national guidance. Advice for the UK by the Joint Committee on Vaccination and Immunisation and supported by BSBMTCT states that patients vaccinated pre-CAR-T or transplant should be revaccinated with 3 primary doses. These should occur from 2 to 6 months in transplant and 3 to 6 months following CAR-T. Dosing schedule can be found at: https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/third-primary-covid-19-vaccine-dose-for-people-who-are-immunosuppressed-jcvi-advice/joint-committee-on-vaccination-and-immunisation-jcvi-advice-on-third-primary-dose-vaccination

Table 15.5 ECIL 7 recommendations for vaccination of haemopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients with inactivated vaccines page 202

	Recommendation and (grading) in allogeneic HSCT	Recommendation and grading in autologous HSCT	Paediatric specificities
PCV13*	From 3 months after transplantion three doses of PCV13 (or subsequent, broader spectrum, conjugate vaccines) are recommended at 1-month intervals (A I); in case of chronic GVHD, considering the low response to PPSV23, an additional dose of PCV instead of a dose of PPSV23 is recommended 6 months after the third dose of PCV is administered (B II u)	Same initial schedule as for allogeneic HSCT: three doses of PCV13 administered from 3 months after transplantation at 1-month intervals (A I)	The same schedule is recommended in children and adults; children with transplants usually have a similar response to healthy children,[22] and respond better than adults, but often develop vaccine-related fever and local reactions[28]
PPSV23*	12 months after the procedure, if the patient does not have chronic GVHD that requires immunosuppressors, then one dose of PPSV23, not earlier than 8 weeks after the last PCV is recommended (B I)	One dose of PPSV23 at 12 months after transplantation and not earlier than 8 weeks after the last PCV (B I)	The same schedule is recommended for children and adults
Hib vaccine*	From 3 months after transplant three doses at 1-month intervals are recommended (B II r); no preference on the type of vaccine (conjugated with tetanus-protein or diphtheria-protein). Alternatively, to decrease the overall number of vaccine doses administer three doses of a combined diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis-Hib vaccine from 6 months after the transplantation (BIIr)	Same recommendation and same grading as for allogeneic HSCT	The same schedule is recommended for children and adults; children usually respond better than adults[6]
Neisseria meningitidis vaccines*	From 6 months after transplantation at least two doses of either a monovalent or tetravalent C vaccine (B II u) and meningococcal B vaccine (B III), in accordance with country recommendations for a given age and particularly for at-risk groups such as students living in campus, travellers, or soldiers	Same recommendation and grading as for allogeneic HSCT	The same schedule is recommended for children and for adults; children and adolescents are the main at-risk population
Tetanus-diphtheria vaccine*	From 6 months after the transplant three doses at 1–2-month intervals (B II u); DT vaccines should be preferred over Td vaccines both in children and adults (C III); booster doses should be administered according to country recommendations	Same recommendation and grading as for allogeneic HSCT	The same schedule is recommended for children and for adults; children and adolescents are the main at-risk population
Acellular pertussis vaccine*	The addition of pertussis toxoid to the diphtheria-tetanus vaccine, three doses at 1–2-month intervals, should be considered (CIII); although there is no specific study with DTaP in adult HSCT recipients, considering the poor response to Tdap, the DTaP that contains a higher dose of pertussis toxoid than the Tdap should be preferred both in children and adults (C III)	Same recommendation and grading as for allogeneic HSCT	The same schedule is recommended for children and for adults; previously unvaccinated HSCT infants should be vaccinated as soon as possible; children seem to respond better than adults
Inactivated influenza vaccine IIV†	From 6 months after transplantation a seasonal IIV dose should be administered annually at the beginning of flu season, after the first years following transplant, and at least until 6 months after stopping any immunosuppressor and as long as the patient is judged to be immunocompromised (A II r) or life-long (B II r); a second dose administered 3–4 weeks after the first one could be considered in patients with severe GvHD or low lymphocyte counts (B II r); in the setting of a community outbreak, IIV can be administered 3 months after transplantation, in which case, a second dose administered 3–4 weeks later is likely to be beneficial (B II r)	From 6 months: annual seasonal IIV, 1 dose, at the beginning of influenza season, at least as long as the patient is judged to be immunocompromised (B II r); in the setting of a community outbreak, IIV can be administered 3 months after transplant, in which case, a second dose administered 3–4 weeks later is likely to be beneficial (B II r)	Children aged 6 months to 8 years, receiving IIV for the first time after transplantation should receive a second dose at least 4 weeks after the first dose (B II t); for children older than 9 years, a second dose of vaccine after 3–4 weeks could be considered in patients with severe GVHD or low lymphocyte counts (B II r)
IPV	From 6 to 12 months: three doses of IPV are recommended to be administered at 1-2-month intervals (B II u); booster doses should be administered according to country recommendations	Same recommendation and grading as for allogeneic HSCT	The same schedule is recommended for children and for adults; children usually respond better than adults; however, because of a higher risk for losing polio immunity in the years after initial vaccination for patients transplanted before the age of 10 years, we recommend a regular assessment of anti-polio antibody titres to assess persistent immunity and consider boosters
HBV vaccine*	Before transplant patients who are negative for all HBV markers that are transplanted with a graft from an anti-HBc positive donor should be vaccinated if possible (B III) and could additionally receive anti-HBV immunoglobulins; 6 months after transplantation patients who were negative for HBV before transplantation and patients who were vaccinated before transplant but lost their immunity at 6 months should be vaccinated according to country recommendation (6–12 months after transplantation 3 doses should be administered 0, 1, and 6 months apart), (B II t); patients infected with HBV before HSCT (HBsAg negative and anti-HBc positive) should be assessed regularly for anti-HBs antibody titres and should be vaccinated if they have unprotective titres (B III); if anti-HBs titres are <10 mIU/mL 1–2 months after the initial series of three vaccine doses, an additional series of three doses should be considered	6 months after transplantation: patients who were negative for HBV before transplantation and patients who were vaccinated before transplantation but lost their immunity after 6 months should be vaccinated according to country recommendation and age (6–12 months after transplantation 3 doses should be administered 0, 1, and 6 months apart)(B II t); patients infected with HBV before HSCT (HBsAg negative and anti-HBc positive) should have anti-HBs antibody titres assessed regularly and be vaccinated if they have unprotective titres (B III); if anti-HBs titres are <10 mIU/mL 1–2 months after the initial series of three vaccine doses, an additional series of three doses should be considered	The same schedule is advised for children and for adults, except that children should receive a standard paediatric dose (10 μg) of vaccine and adolescents should receive 20 μg of the vaccine according to the summary of product characteristics of each vaccine
HBV vaccine*	6–12 months after transplantation recommendations for the general population in each country should be followed (B II u)	Same recommendation and grading as for allogeneic HSCT	Follow age recommendations for general population in each country

aP=acellular vaccine. GvHD=graft-versus-host disease. HSCT=haemopoietic stem cell transplantation. PCV13=13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine. PPSV23=23-valent polysaccharide pneumococcal vaccine. HPV=human papillomavirus. IPV=inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine. HBV=hepatitis B virus. Hib=*Haemophilus influenzae* type b. IIV-inactivated influenza vaccine. DT vaccines=diphtheria-tetanus vaccines containing high-doses diphtheria toxoid. Td vaccines-diphtheria-tetanus vaccines containing low-doses diphtheria toxoid. *Guideline proposed on the basis of laboratory endpoints. †Guideline proposed on the basis of clinical endpoints. For the evidence-based medicine grading system (A I, A IIr, B I, B III, B II u, B II t, B II r, C III) see appendix.

Patients who should receive a booster dose will be greater than 24 months and did not have immunosuppression or GvHD at the time of their first or second dose, full guidance found at:

https://www.gov.uk/government/news/jcvi-issues-updated-advice-on-covid-19-booster-vaccination

Table 15.6 ECIL 7 recommendations for vaccination of haematopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients with live-attenuated vaccines page 206

	Recommendation and (grading) in allogeneic HSCT	Recommendation and grading for autologous HSCT	Paediatric specificities
LAVV*†	LAVV is contraindicated in HSCT recipients with active GvHD, a relapse of the underlying disease, or ongoing immunosuppression (DIII); at least 24 months after transplantation one dose of LAVV can be considered in VZV seronegative adult patients with no GVHD, no ongoing immunosuppression, no relapse of the underlying disease, and no treatment with immunoglobulins during the previous months‡ (B II r); the addition of a second dose in adults could be considered in patients who were seronegative before HSCT or had no history of VZV infection	Same recommendation as after allogeneic HSCT	Two doses (instead of one dose in adults) of LAVV can be considered in children meeting the same imitation criteria as adults (B II r); abel specific recommendations should be followed for the amount of time between administering the two doses
Zoster LAVT†	Not recommended (D III)	Not recommended (D III)	Not recommended (D III)
MMR§	From 24 months after HSCT, recipients should have MMR antibody titres tested (B II u); consider vaccination only in patients with no GvHD, no immunosuppression, no relapse of the underlying disease, and treatment with immunoglobulins during the previous monthst; seronegative patients for measles should receive one dose of MMR (B II u); HSCT recipients who are women, seronegative for rubella, and of childbearing potential should receive one dose of MMR with the same precautions (C II u); in case of a measles outbreak, MMR vaccination could be considered 12 months after transplantation in patients with low-grade immunosuppression (C III)	Same recommendation as after allogeneic HSCT	Because of a lower response in children, two doses—instead of one in adults—should be considered in children, at least 4 weeks apart
Yellow fever§	Yellow fever vaccine should be considered cautiously and only administered to patients with no active GVHD and no immunosuppressive drugs, and if the patient cannot avoid traveling to endemic area before (DIII) or from 24 months (CIII) after the procedure	Yellow fever vaccine should be considered cautiously if the patient cannot avoid traveling to endemic area before (DIII) or from 24 months (CIII) after the procedure before (DIII) or from 24 months (CIII)" after the procedure	Although there are no data in children, the same schedule is recommended for children and for adults

HSCT=haemopoietic stem cell transplantation. LAVV=live attenuated varicella vaccine. LAV=live attenuated vaccine. GvHD=graft-versus-host disease. VZV=varicella-zoster virus. MMR=measles-mumps-rubella. *Guideline proposed on the basis of laboratory endpoints. †All LAV are contraindicated as long as the patient is considered severely immunocompromised. ‡The interval between the last immunoglobulin administration and the administration of a varicella or MMR live-attenuated vaccine should be at least 3 months, ideally between 8 and 11 months. For the evidence-based medicine grading system (B II u, B II r, C II u, C III, D III) see appendix. §(Guideline proposed on the basis of clinical endpoints.

15.9 End-of-Life Care in the Haematopoietic Stem Cell Transplant (HSCT) Setting

15.9.1 Background

The writings of Viktor Frankl (Frank 1947) and Martin Heidegger (1962) are a reminder that death is not separate from life and in fact, death is an essential component of life. By acknowledging this reality, each individual is able to choose life each day and to make choices that are important for them. For many nurses working in the field of HSCT, this reminder to live a worthwhile life is perhaps part of the driving force to practice nursing and to continue engaging with person-centred care (McCormack 2020). Amidst the great advances in HSCT including the increasing cure rates, people living longer and better management of toxicities, the reality still remains, that some people will die of their advancing disease and/or treatment-related factors.

While the majority of the patients will return home to continue living their lives, some of the adults and children cared for in this setting may die within the hospital or transplant ward, or be discharged home to die. In the highly clinical and technical setting of HSCT, this reality can sometimes be overlooked and avoided, leaving the patient and family feeling abandoned and alone (Quinn 2020, Randall & Downie 2006). In a study exploring the experience of living with advanced cancer, some participants spoke of feeling misunderstood and left alone with their advanced disease. A large part of their suffering arose from the interpretation of their personal distress that was not easily visible to others, and many participants felt that people did not fully understand what

they were going through, leaving them feeling ultimately alone (Quinn 2020).

However, despite these challenges, the delivery of good end-of-life care can be improved through some simple measures and approaches (Stevens et al. 2009, Randall and Downie 2006). Each member of the HSCT team (clinical and non-clinical), who has come to know the patient and family, often over a prolonged period of time is invited to recognise and to respond to their important role in supporting patients and their families at this crucial time in their lives. When curative treatment is no longer an option and the focus moves towards more compassionate focussed care and the management of symptoms, the trusting relationship between the patient, family and the HSCT team is crucial.

15.9.2 End-of-Life Care

End-of-life care and the care of those who are dying has been defined as care that helps all those with advanced, progressive, incurable illness to live as well as possible until the day they die (World Health Organisation 2020). Unfortunately, many healthcare workers in HSCT settings may find it difficult to discuss the reality of dying due to a lack of knowledge and skills, avoidance, fear of upsetting the patient and themselves, and the overmedicalisation of the dying process (Quinn 2022). In reality, care for those moving towards the end of life in the HSCT setting calls for a combination of clinical and human skills, built on sensitivity and humility, coupled with good symptom management, core values within nursing care and practice (Quinn 2022).

Important and sensitive conversations about the reality that treatment is no longer working and exploring what the patient and family would like as they approach the end of life need to be addressed. The reluctance to engage with this conversation may be exacerbated as a result of living in a society that tends to distance itself from this sensitive subject, coupled with the fact that the reality of death touches us all (Elias 1985). The following principles of good end-of-life care or a personal commitment to those moving towards the end of life may be worth considering in the HSCT setting:

A commitment to those facing the end of life.

- When you are moving towards the end of life, we will be honest with you and sensitively support you and your family to ensure your needs and wishes are met, and you are enabled to die in your preferred place of care.
- When you are approaching the end of your life, we will offer you the opportunity to be involved in your care planning. This will include an assessment of your needs and preferences and an agreed set of actions reflecting these choices.
- We will work to ensure that you and your family receive excellent care in accordance with your wishes, at all times of day and night. We will work with our community partners to ensure this happens.
- We will offer you personalised care, based on your wishes and needs. This will include attending to your physical, social, emotional, spiritual and religious needs.
- We recognise the importance of your family, your friends and your support network, and they have the right to have their own needs assessed and reviewed and to have a carer's plan.
- In order to care for you and your family, we will ensure that all staff and volunteers working in our team are aware of the issues surrounding care at the end of life, in particular the importance of excellence in communicating.
- We will participate in research in order to improve patient and family care at the end of life in the HSCT setting.

(Quinn 2020)

This commitment from the HSCT team relies on identifying when a patient may have incurable disease and/or untreatable complications, having the courage to sensitively broach the subject of dying with the patient and family, working with the patient and family to identify and address their physical, social emotional and spiritual needs and planning care together. These core

principles can support nurses, doctors and the HSCT team to support the patient to receive, the right care, in the right place, and at the correct time (Quinn et al. 2017).

15.9.3 Care for those Who Are Dying

The ability to help the person who is dying and to identify what is important to them has been described as an art, and like all creations of art, this form of art takes time (Table 15.7). All nurses, doctors and health care workers working in HSCT will be required to use this art through practising the principles of palliative or supportive care (Table 15.8).

15.9.4 Managing Symptoms

Mindful that good end-of-life care requires the team to attend to the person and their physical, social, spiritual and emotional needs and concerns, some of the common symptoms seen in the end-of-life care setting include those seen in Table 15.9.

Pain continues to be one of the symptoms that people with advanced disease fear and yet research clearly shows that pain management is not always achieved in a consistent and robust manner (Quinn et al. 2021). This may be as a result of a number of reasons including poor communication, a lack of knowledge of what is meant by pain, which drugs to use, the best therapeutic doses, non-pharmacological approaches and failing to understand what pain means to the individual. While pain is often classified as nociceptive, neuropathic, refractory, breakthrough, chronic or acute and this is important to consider when assessing pain and choosing treatment options, pain can also be understood in a more human manner, as a disturbance or a disruption in key relationships (Table 15.10). This approach helps the HSCT team to appreciate some of the more hidden aspects of pain and how other challenging symptoms can impact on the individual. Rarely will the person's experience of pain happen in isolation from other symptoms/factors including anxiety, fear, loss, fatigue, breathlessness and the inability to sleep or eat. While pain

Table 15.7 The art of assessment (Quinn 2022)

Paying attention to the person and hearing their priorities
Thinking beyond the symptom to how it affects the person
Creating time and being present
Cocreating a plan of care with the person and family
Applying 'skilled companionship'[a]
Intervening and reviewing to monitor symptom support and management

[a]Skilled companionship has been described by Alastair Campbell (1984) as the ability to use our clinical skills as nurses and doctors and our humanity to support a person as they strive to cope with the reality of living with advanced disease

Table 15.8 Principles of palliative/supportive care

Providing relief from pain and other distressing symptoms
Intention not to hasten or postpone death
Integrating the physical, psychosocial and spiritual needs of patients and family
Offering a support system to support the family before and after death
Using a team approach including counselling and chaplaincy
Improving quality of life directing treatment, preventing unnecessary and distressing tests or treatments

(World Health Organisation 2020; Quinn and Thomas 2017)

Table 15.9 Common symptoms in end-of-life care

Pain (physical, social, emotional, spiritual)
Nausea
Vomiting
Oral problems (dryness, ulcers, mucositis)
Anorexia/cachexia
Agitation/restlessness
Diarrhoea
Excessive secretions
Ascites
Breathlessness
Anxiety/distress
Depression
Confusion
Feelings of loss and grief
Aloneness
Spiritual/religious abandonment

can exacerbate a person's anxiety and their inability to sleep, the inability to sleep and the presence of worry can increase the personal experience of pain and make the pain harder to manage; all of these need to be considered. By taking a more person-centred approach (physical, social, emotional and spiritual) to symptom management, better control may be achieved.

(Quinn et al. 2016)

Following the principles of good pain management, a combination of pharmacological approaches (Randall and Downie 2006) which may include paracetamol, non-steroidal anti-inflammatories, opiates, corticosteroid, anti-depressants, anti-epileptics, antimuscarinics and benzodiazepines should be considered and reviewed and increased as required (Quinn et al. 2015). Pain relief should be prescribed on a regular basis and prescribed as needed for 'breakthrough pain'. The HSCT team should also consider the best route of administration (oral transdermal, subcutaneous, sublingual, buccal mucosa, intravenous) for the patient and derived benefit.

Pharmacological approaches should be complemented with non-pharmacological interventions including massage, touch, pastoral/spiritual support, hearing the patient's concerns, music and relaxation approaches. A combination of both is often the best approach to managing total pain or indeed any symptom in advanced disease (Table 15.11). 'To ignore psychological and spiritual aspects of care may often be the reason for seemingly intractable pain' (Watson et al. 2011. 18).

The management of these and other symptoms commonly seen in this setting including nausea, agitation and excessive secretions should also consider both a pharmacological and non-pharmacological approach focussing on what suits the individual patient.

The following tool (Fig. 15.1) has been designed to encourage patients to talk about their personal experience of pain and what it means to them, but it may also be used to help the patient to talk about their impact of other symptoms. The tool is designed to invite the patient to talk about what is important to them including the reality of their own dying process and their fears and concerns.

Following the principles of the WHO pain ladder (Fig. 15.2), a combination of pharmacological approaches which may include paracetamol, non-steroidal anti-inflammatories, opiates, corticosteroid, anti-depressant, anti-epileptic, anti-muscarinic and benzodiazepine should be considered and reviewed and increased as required. Pain relief should be prescribed on a regular basis and prescribed as needed for 'breakthrough pain'. The HSCT

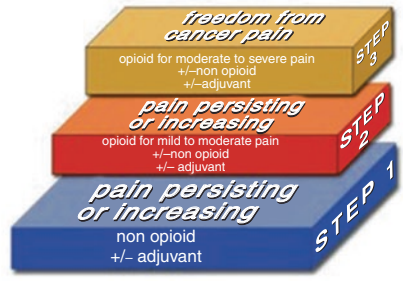
Table 15.10 A human approach to understanding pain and other symptoms (a disturbance or disruptions in key relationships)

Physical pain	A disturbance or disruption in the relationship between the person and their body
Social pain	A disturbance or disruption in the relationship between the person and their world including their family, work and society
Emotional pain	A disturbance or a disruption in the relationship between the person and their emotions or how they see themselves
Spiritual pain	A disturbance or disruption in the relationship between the person and their beliefs and values

Table 15.11 Examples of drugs and approaches used in the last days of life

Pain	Morphine/diamorphine/oxycodone/alfentanil/fentanyl +/− adjuvant drugs (corticosteroid, anti-depressant, anti-epileptic, anti-muscarinic, benzodiazepine)	Human touch, complementary therapies, prayer, mindfulness, silence, presence
Excessive secretions	Glycopyrronium	Positioning, suctioning (with caution)
Nausea	Levomepromazine/ondansetron/metoclopramide/cyclizine	Removal of distressing smells
Agitation	Midazolam	Presence, touch, spiritual/pastoral support
Breathlessness	Morphine, benzodiazepines, oxygen	Positioning, open windows, fan

Fig. 15.1 Aspects of pain/other symptoms and what they mean to the individual are often hidden from view and take longer to identify and manage (Managing Advanced Cancer Pain Together—An expert guidance. MACPT (2016) http://www.macpt.eu [Accessed June 2022])



World Health Organization. Cancer pain ladder for adults; http://www.who.int/cancer/palliative/painladder/en/. [Accessed 13th Nov 2016]

Adjuvant options

- Corticosteroid
- Antidepressant
- Anti-epileptic
- Anti-muscarinic
- Benzodiazepinec

Fig. 15.2 Using the WHO approach to pain management in the HSCT setting (Copyright © MACPT. All rights reserved http://www.macpt.info/)

team should also consider the best route of administration (oral transdermal, subcutaneous, sublingual, buccal mucosa, intravenous) for the patient and derived benefit. Pharmacological approaches can be complemented with non-pharmacological interventions including massage, touch, pastoral/spiritual support, hearing the patient's concerns, music and relaxation approaches. A combination of both is often the best approach to managing total pain or indeed any symptom in advanced disease. 'To ignore psychological and spiritual aspects of care may often be the reason for seemingly intractable pain' (Watson et al. 2011. 18).

15.9.5 Support

An important aspect of end-of-life care is recognising the HSCT team's role in supporting the patient and their family but also knowing when the person may require more expert help including pastoral care, psychological support and specialist palliative care for challenging aspects of symptom management and/or support/advice for the HSCT team. Compassionate care in the end of life setting can be described as the nurse's ability to pay attention to the person living with advanced disease and 'be present' while listening and responding to any issues that they may have

(Quinn 2020). While a nurse may not always be able to remove the cause of someone's distress, taking time to listen may act as a palliative measure and alleviate their distress (Quinn and Thomas 2017). Using a compassionate approach to assessment and care enables the nurse to explore with the person how their symptoms and/or concerns are affecting them and what type of assistance they may require.

Pastoral, psychological and palliative/supportive care should be seen as a core part of HSCT care and introduced to the patient much earlier so that these approaches are seen as complementing the treatment approach of HSCT. While an individual may not have any religious affiliation or religious needs, many patients may require someone to listen to their hopes and dreams, their concerns and fears (Purjo 2020). The HSCT team with careful planning, support and working with the patient's community medical and nursing team can in many cases enable patients with advanced disease to be cared for in their own home if that is the patient's wishes. While focussing on the person with advanced disease, the team is well placed to support family members including children and parents.

Those involved in the dying process, including nurses, doctors and the wider healthcare team may be affected by loss. Team members may have witnessed deaths of people they have come to know over a period of time, and they may need to take steps to care for themselves. This type of personal self-care might include discovering a space or an activity, where each team member can find solace and support. Those who have found ways of caring for themselves may be best placed to care for others who are dying or experiencing grief (Quinn 2022).

15.9.6 Conclusion

Although the current trend in health care appears to be one of delivering more care with less resources, this in no way negates the central focus on delivering truly holistic patient-centred care. We can no longer continue to talk about patient-centred care without a willingness to engage with all aspects of the person we support and care for including their physical, emotional, social, existential and spiritual needs. Moving beyond a medical approach to treatment and care in the HSCT setting to one of attending to the person can bring great comfort and support. Often, the greatest gift a nurse or doctor can give to those who are dying is their attention and presence. Amidst the uncertainty and the painful realities each person has to face, caring is often perceived as occurring when another person carries out a simple act of kindness with a caring attitude (Quinn 2020).

15.10 Late Effects and Long-Term Follow-Up in Paediatric Patients

The study of late effects after paediatric haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) offers unique opportunities and challenges, magnified by the fact that children going through each developmental stage (infant, toddler, child preadolescent and young adult) have different sensitivities to therapies, resulting in different complications. For instance, infants and toddlers are susceptible to neurocognitive damage with radiation, and adolescents are at high risk of joint/bone issues with steroid therapy (Baker et al. 2011).

Paediatric HSCT survivors have a higher cumulative incidence of late effects compared to the studies of cancer survivors who did not receive HSCT as part of their treatment, with 93% of survivors having at least one late effect with a median follow-up of only 7 years (Bresters et al. 2010).

Allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (allo-HSCT) improves event-free survival in acute myeloid leukaemia (AML); however, the burden of late effects may be increased.

In general, allo-HSCT survivors reported a significantly higher burden of late effects in several organ systems and more frequent use of medications than the CT (chemotherapy only) survivors (Wilhelmsson et al. 2019).

Children who undergo HSCT with TBI have a significant risk of both growth hormone deficiency (GHD) and the direct effects of radiation on skeletal development. The risk is increased with single-dose TBI as opposed to fractionated TBI, pre-transplant cranial irradiation, female gender and post-treatment complications such as graft versus host disease (GVHD).

Late side effects and complications can include chronic immunosuppression and infections, chronic GvHD, bronchiolitis obliterans, endocrine dysfunction, cataracts, disease recurrence and secondary malignancies (Tomlinson and Kline 2010).

The endocrine system is highly susceptible to damage by high-dose chemotherapy and/or irradiation prior to haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) during childhood. Insufficiency of thyroid hormone is one of the most common late sequelae of HSCT and occurs more often in young children. Deficiency in the pituitary's production of growth hormone is a problem of unique concern to the paediatric population (Dvorak et al. 2011).

Survivors who are transplant recipients have higher risks of subsequent malignancies involving epithelial and mucosal tissues (Leisenring et al. 2006).

15.10.1 Specific Late Effects After HSCT in Childhood

15.10.1.1 Growth Impairment

Impaired linear growth after HSCT is multifactorial in origin and can be due to growth hormone deficiency (GHD), hypothyroidism, hypogonadism, corticosteroid treatment as well as poor nutritional status, genetic factors and metabolic status. Because of these confounding factors, the reported prevalence of growth impairment varies widely (9–84%) between studies (Baker et al. 2011).

Treatment includes thyroid replacement therapy and growth hormone therapy, respectively, for thyroid dysfunction and growth delays (Tomlinson and Kline 2010).

Growth hormone deficiency (GHD) replacement therapy provides the benefit of optimising height outcomes among children who have not reached skeletal maturity (Chemaitilly and Robison 2012).

Even though myeloablative conditioning regimens for HSCT are known to affect endocrine function, Myers et al. (2016) recently evidenced that 'poor growth, thyroid dysfunction and vitamin D deficiency remain prevalent despite reduced intensity chemotherapy for haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in children and young adults'.

15.10.1.2 Neurocognitive Impairment

There is limited evidence of neurocognitive and academic outcomes in paediatric HSCT:

- HSCT seems to pose a low risk overall.
- Risk increases for children of age < 5 years at the time of SCT who received TBI (Phipps et al. 2008).

The procedure of SCT entails probably minimal risk of late cognitive and academic sequelae. Subgroups of patients are at relatively higher risk: patients undergoing unrelated donor transplantation, receiving TBI and those who experience GVHD. No significant changes are seen in global intelligence quotient and academic achievement (Phipps et al. 2008).

Despite substantial exposure to potentially neurotoxic agents, studies have generally shown survivors of paediatric HSCT to be within normal limits in cognitive and academic functioning, and with stable performance over time, although children who are younger at the time of transplantation may be at increased risk for cognitive impairment (Phipps et al. (2008)).

Phipps et al. (2008) reported 158 patients who survived and were evaluated at 1, 3 and 5 years' post-transplant and concluded that HSCT, even with TBI, poses low to minimal risk for late cog-

nitive and academic deficits in patients who are at least 6 years old at the time of transplantation.

However, socio-economic status was found to be a significant determinant of all cognitive and academic outcomes.

15.10.2 Return to School

It could be hypothesised that children beginning the elementary school with important delays in fine and gross motor domains could be more at risk for academic achievement. Moreover, longer hospitalisations and necessary treatments like HSCT contribute to limit the discovering of motor functioning at this age stage forcing the young patients to stay in bed and to avoid social and physical contacts due to their immunocompromised status (Taverna et al. 2017).

A diagnosis of cancer during the teenage years arrives at an important stage of development, where issues of normality, identity and independence are crucial. Education provides opportunity for peer contact, achievement and development for teenagers.

Key areas involved in the impact of a cancer diagnosis on teenagers' educational engagement include school attendance, reintegration and peer relationships. Long-term school absences are a concern for teenagers but do not necessarily lead to a reduction in educational and vocational attainment. It is important to involve healthcare and education professionals, as well as parents and teenagers themselves, in school matters (Pini et al. 2012).

Factors that may place children and teens at increased risk for difficulties in school (Landier et al. 2013) include:

- Diagnosis of cancer at a very young age
- Numerous prolonged school absences
- A history of learning problems before being diagnosed with cancer
- Cancer treatment that results that reduced energy levels
- Cancer treatment that affects hearing or vision
- Cancer treatment that results in physical disabilities
- Cancer treatment that includes treatment of the central nervous system

Collaborative education planning should be initiated on diagnosis and aim to include nonacademic variables, such as peer groups, which can influence successful maintenance of education. Further research is needed to understand the relationship between education engagement and teenagers' cancer experiences as a whole, as well as gaining a more in-depth understanding of how teenagers experience their education after a diagnosis of cancer (Pini et al. 2013).

It will therefore be imperative that we continue to follow our HSCT survivors on a long-term basis and continue research efforts to study long-term outcomes (Baker et al. 2011).

References

Alberti KGMM, Eckel RH, Grundy SM, Zimmet PZ, Cleeman JI, Donato KA, et al. Harmonizing the metabolic syndrome: a joint interim statement of the international diabetes federation task force on epidemiology and prevention; national heart, lung, and blood institute; American heart association; world heart federation; International Atherosclerosis Society; and International Association for the Study of Obesity. Circulation. 2009;120:1640–5.

Anderson KO, Giralt SA, Mendoza TR, Brown JO, Neumann JL, Mobley GM, Wang XS, Cleeland CS. Symptom burden in patients undergoing autologous stem-cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2007;39(12):759–66.

Andorsky DJ, Loberiza FR, Lee SJ. Pre-transplantation physical and mental functioning is strongly associated with self-reported recovery from stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2006;37:889–95.

Andrykowski M, Bishop M, Hahn E, Cella D, Beaumont J, Brady M, Horowitz M, Sobocinski K, Rizzo J, Wingard J. Long-term health related quality of life, growth and spiritual Well-being after haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23:599–08.

Amonoo HL, Brown LA, Scheu CF, et al. Beyond depression, anxiety and post-traumatic stress disorder symptoms: qualitative study of negative emotional experiences in hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients. Eur J Cancer Care. 2020;29:e13263. https://doi.org/10.1111/ecc.13263.

Baker F, Zahora J, Polland A, Wingard J. Reintegration after bone marrow transplantation. Cancer Pract. 1999;7:190–7.

Baker S, Bhatia S, Bunin N, Nieder M, Dvorak C, Sung L, Sander J, Kurtzberg J, Pulsiphe M. NCI, NHLBI first international consensus conference on late effects after pediatric hematopoietic cell transplantation: state of the science, future directions. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17(10):1424–7.

Beattie S, Lebel S. The experience of caregivers of hematological cancer patients undergoing a hematopoietic stem cell transplant: a comprehensive literature review. Psycho-Oncology. 2011;20:1137–50. https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.1962.

Bieri S, Roosneck E, Helg C, Verholen F, Robert D, Chapius B, Passweg J, Miralbell R, Chalandon Y. Quality of life and social integration after allogeneic hematopoietic SCT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2008;42:819–27.

Brandenburg D, Grover L, Quinn B. Intimacy and sexuality for cancer patients and their partners. Pan-Birmingham Cancer Psychology Services; 2010.

Bresters D, van Gils IC, Kollen WJ, Ball LM, Oostdijk W, van der Bom JG, Egeler RM. High burden of late effects after haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in childhood: a single-Centre study. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2010;45(1):79–85.

Campbell A. Moderated love: a theology of professional care. London: SPCK; 1984.

Chemaitilly W, Robison LL. Safety of growth hormone treatment in patients previously treated for cancer. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 2012;41(4):785–92.

Cordonnier C, Einarsdottir S, Cesaro S, et al. Vaccination of haemopoietic stem cell transplant recipients: guidelines of the 2017 European conference on infections in Leukaemia (ECIL 7). Lancet Infect Dis. 2019;19:e200–12.

Curtis RE, Rowlings PA, Deeg J, Shriner DA, Socié G, Travis LB, Horowitz MM, Witherspoon RP, Hoover RN, Sobocinski KA, Fraumeni JF, Boice JD, Gary Schoch G, Sale GE, Storb R, Travis WD, Kolb H-J, Gale RP, Passweg JR. Solid cancers after bone marrow transplantation. N Engl J Med. 1997;336:897–904.

DeFilipp Z, Duarte RF, Snowden JA, Majhail NS, Greenfield DM, Miranda JL, Arat M, Baker KS, Burns LJ, Duncan CN, Gilleece M, Hale GA, Hamadani M, Hamilton BK, Hogan WJ, Hsu JW, Inamoto Y, Kamble RT, Lup-Stanghellini MT, Malon AK, McCarthy P, Mohty M, Norkin M, Paplham P, Ramanathan M, Richart JM, Salooja N, Schouten HC, Seber A, Steinberg A, Wirk BM, Wood WA, Battiwala M, Flowers MED, Savani BN, Shaw BE, on behalf of The CIBMTR late effects and quality of life working committee and the EBMT complications and quality of life working party. Metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular disease following hematopoietic cell transplantation: screening and preventive practice recommendations from CIBMTR and EBMT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;52:1–10.

Dignan FL, et al. Survivorship care for allogeneic transplant patients in the UK NHS: changes Centre practice, impact of health service policy and JACIE accreditation over 5 years. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;56(3):673. Gale OneFile: Health and Medicine, link.gale.com/apps/doc/A655716505/HRCA?u=anon~46f87b69&sid=googleScholar&xid=ba47c4c7. Accessed 27 June 2022

DoH. National cancer survivorship initiative – vision. London: Crown; 2010.

Dvorak CC, Gracia CR, Sanders JE, Cheng EY, Baker KS, Pulsipher MA, Petryk A. NCI, NHLBI/PBMTC first international conference on late effects after pediatric hematopoietic cell transplantation: endocrine challenges-thyroid dysfunction, growth impairment, bone health, & reproductive risks. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17(12):1725–38.

Eeltink C, Kisch A. Impact of adherence in outcome of long-term survivors. In: Savani BN, Tichelli A, editors. Blood and marrow transplantation long term management. New York: John Wiley & Sons; 2021. https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119612780.ch42.

Elias N. The loneliness of the dying. London: Continuum; 1985.

El-Jawahri A, Fishman SR, Vanderklish J, Dizon DS, Pensak N, Traeger L, et al. Pilot study of a multimodal intervention to enhance sexual function in survivors of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Cancer. 2018;124:2438–46.

Frank V. Man's search for meaning. Oxford: Rider; 1947.

Gielissen M, Verhagen S, Witjes F, Bleijenberg G. Effects of cognitive behaviour therapy in severely fatigued disease-free cancer patients compared with patients waiting for cognitive behaviour therapy: a randomized controlled trial. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24:4882–8.

Gjærde LK, Eeltink C, Stringer J, Mooyaart J, Bosman P, Kenyon M, Liptrott S, Greenfield DM, Linke A, Turlure P, Botti S, Dzaferagic D, Sica S, Welsh L, Kisch A, Perić Z, Schoemans H, Murray J. Sexual function of adult long-term survivors and their partners after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation in Europe (S-FAST): a study from the transplant complications working party and nurses group of the EBMT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2022; https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-022-01869-2. Epub ahead of print

Greenfield DM, Snowden JA, Beohou E, Labopin M, van der Werf MLS, Schoemans H, Hill K, Annaloro C, Lupo-Stanghellini MT, Aki Z, Arat M, Metzner B, Turlure P, Han T, Rovo A, Socie G, Nagler A, Kröger N, Dreger P, Basak G, Tichelli A, Salooja N, Duarte R. Metabolic syndrome is common following haematopoietic cell transplantation (HCT) and is associated with increased cardiovascular disease: an EBMT cross-sectional non-interventional study. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2021;5:2820–5. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-021-01414-7.

Hahn T, Paplham P, Austin-Ketch T, Zhang Y, Grimmer J, Burns M, Balderman S, Ross M, McCarthy PL. Ascertainment of unmet needs and participation in health maintenance and screening of adult hematopoietic cell transplantation survivors followed in a formal survivorship program. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2017;23(11):1968–73. https://doi.

org/10.1016/j.bbmt.2017.07.024. Epub 2017 Aug 4. PMID: 28782599

Hamblin A, Greenfield DM, Gilleece M, Salooja N, Kenyon M, Morris E, Glover N, Miller P, Braund H, Peniket A, Shaw BE, Snowden JA. On behalf of the British Society of Blood and Marrow Transplantation (BSBMT). Provision of long-term monitoring and late effects services following adult allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant: a survey of UK NHS-based programmes. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2017;52:889–94. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2017.67.

Heidegger M. Being and Time. London: Harper & Row; 1962.

FACT-JACIE standards. International Standards for Hematopoietic Cellular Therapy Product Collection, Processing, and Administration. Eighth Edition (2021) from the Federation for Accreditation of Cell Therapy (FACT) and the Joint Accreditation Committee of ISCT-Europe and EBMT (JACiE). Available from: http://www.jacie.org/

Jean CY, Syrjala KL. Sexuality after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Cancer J. 2009;15(1):57.

Kamboj M, Shah MK. Vaccination of the stem cell transplant recipient and the hematologic malignancy patient. Infect Dis Clin. 2019;33(2):593–609.

Katz A, Dizon DS. Sexuality after cancer: a model for male survivors. J Sex Med. 2016;13(1):70–8.

Kuba K, Esser P, Scherwath A, et al. Cancer-and-treatment–specific distress and its impact on post-traumatic stress in patients undergoing allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT). Psycho-Oncology. 2017;26:1164–71. https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.4295.

Landier W, Leonard M, Ruccione KS. Children's oncology Group's 2013 blueprint for research: nursing discipline. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2013;60:1031–6. https://doi.org/10.1002/pbc.24415.

Lee CR, Nicholson PW, Souhami RL, Deshmukh AA. Patient compliance with oral chemotherapy as assessed by a novel electronic technique. J Clin Oncol. 1992;10(6):1007–13.

Leisenring W, Friedman DL, Flowers ME, Schwartz JL, Deeg HJ. Nonmelanoma skin and mucosal cancers after hematopoietic cell transplantation. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(7):1119–26.

Ljungman P, Cordonnier C, Einsele H, Englund J, Machado CM, Storek J, Small T. Vaccination of hematopoietic cell transplant recipients. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2009;44:521–6.

Majhail NS, Rizzo JD, Lee SJ, Aijurf M, Atsuta Y, Bonfim C, Burns LJ, Chaudhri N, Davies S, Okamoto S, Seber A, Socie G, Szer J, Van Lint MT, Wingard JR, Tichelli A. Recommended screening and preventive practices for long-term survivors after hematopoietic cell transplantation. Hematol Oncol Stem Cell Ther. 2012;5(1):1–30.

Majhail NS. Long-term complications after hematopoietic cell transplantation. Hematol Oncol Stem Cell Ther. 2017;10:220–7.

McCormack B. The person-centred nursing and person-centred practice frameworks: from conceptual development to programmatic impact. Nurs Stand. 2020;35(10):86–9. https://doi.org/10.7748/ns.35.10.86.s40.

Mosher CE, Redd WH, Rini CM, Burkhalter JE, DuHamel KN. Physical, psychological, and social sequelae following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a review of the literature. Psychooncology. 2009;18(2):113–27.

Mulhall J. Saving your sex life. Munster: saving your sex life. Münster, Germany: Hilton Publication; 2008.

Myers KC, Howell JC, Wallace G, Dandoy C, El-Bietar J, Lane A, Davies SM, Jodele S, Rose SR. Poor growth, thyroid dysfunction and vitamin D deficiency remain prevalent despite reduced intensity chemotherapy for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in children and young adults. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51:980–4.

Niederwieser D, Baldomero H, Bazuaye N, Bupp C, Chaudhri N, Corbacioglu S, Elhaddad A, Frutos C, Galeano S, Hamad N, Hamidieh AA, Hashmi S, Ho A, Horowitz MM, Iida M, Jaimovich G, Karduss A, Kodera Y, Kröger N, Péffault de Latour R, Lee JW, Martínez-Rolón J, Pasquini MC, Passweg J, Paulson K, Seber A, Snowden JA, Srivastava A, Szer J, Weisdorf D, Worel N, Koh MBC, Aljurf M, Greinix H, Atsuta Y, Saber W. One and a half million hematopoietic stem cell transplants: continuous and differential improvement in worldwide access with the use of non-identical family donors. Haematologica. 2022;107(5):1045–53. https://doi.org/10.3324/haematol.2021.279189.

Oberoi S, Robinson PD, Cataudella DS, Culos-Reed N, Davis H, Duong N, Gibson F, Götte M, Hinds P, Nijhof SL, Tomlinson D, van der Torre P, Cabral SL, Dupuis L, Sung L. Physical activity reduces fatigue in patients with cancer and hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2018;122:52–9, ISSN 1040-8428, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.critrevonc.2017.12.011

Oskay ÜMRAN, Can GÜLBEYAZ, Basgol S. Discussing sexuality with cancer patients: oncology nurses attitudes and views. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2014;15(17):7321–6.

Passweg JR, Baldomero H, Bader P, Bonini C, Cesaro S, Dreger P, Duarte RF, Dufour C, Kuball J, Farge-Bancel D, Gennery A, Kröger N, Lanza F, Nagler A, Sureda A, Mohty M. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in Europe 2014: more than 40 000 transplants annually. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2016;51(6):786–92. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2016.20.

Penack O, Peczynski C, Mohty M, Yakoub-Agha I, Styczynski J, Montoto S, Duarte RF, Kröger N, Schoemans H, Koenecke C, Peric Z, Basak GW. How much has allogeneic stem cell transplant–related mortality improved since the 1980s? A retrospective analysis from the EBMT. Blood Adv. 2020;4(24):6283–90. https://doi.org/10.1182/bloodadvances.2020003418.

Persoon S, Buffart LM, Chinapaw MJM, et al. Return to work experiences of patients treated with stem cell transplantation for a hematologic malignancy.

Support Care Cancer. 2019;27:2987–97. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00520-018-4596-0.
Phipps S, Rai SN, Leung WH, Lensing S, Dunavant M. Cognitive and academic consequences of stem-cell transplantation in children. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(12):2027–33.
Pini S, Hugh-Jones S, Gardner PH. What effect does a cancer diagnosis have on the educational engagement and school life of teenagers? A systematic review. Psychooncology. 2012;21(7):685–94.
Pini S, Gardner P, Hugh-Jones S. The impact of a cancer diagnosis on the education engagement of teenagers – patient and staff perspective. Eur J Oncol Nurs. 2013;17(3):317–23.
Poloméni A, Lapusan S, Bompoint C, Rubio MT, Mohty M. The impact of allogeneic-hematopoietic stem cell transplantation on patients' and close relatives' quality of life and relationships. Eur J Oncol Nurs. 2016;21:248–56, ISSN 1462-3889, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejon.2015.10.011
Purjo T. The spiritual capabilities of Viktor Frankl's Logotheory: guidelines for successful application. Norderstedt: BoD-Books on Demand; 2020.
Quinn B. Providing palliative and end of life care for people with advanced disease. Nurs Stand. 2022;1(3):6–65.
Quinn B, Ludwig H, Bailey A, Khela K, Marongiu A, Carlson KB, Rider A, Seesaghur A. Physical, emotional and social pain communication by patients diagnosed and living with multiple myeloma. Pain Manag. 2021;12(1):59–74.
Quinn B. Living with uncertainty and the reality of death. Int J Palliat Nurs. 2020;26(6):278–83.
Quinn B, Thomas K. Using the gold standards framework to deliver good end of life care. Nurs Manag. 2017;23(10):20–5.
Quinn B, et al. Managing pain in the advanced cancer setting. Cancer Nursing Practice. 2017;16(10):27–34.
Quinn B Luftner D, Di Palma M, Drudge C, Dal Lago L, Dargan S. (2016) Managing Advanced Pain Together: Guidance www.macpt.info
Quinn B. Sexual side effects of cancer treatments and the person living with cancer. In: Brandenburg D, Grover L, Quinn B, editors. Intimacy and sexuality for cancer patients and their partners. Pan Birmingham Cancer Psychology Services; 2010. p. 22–32.
Randall F, Robert SD. The philosophy of palliative care: critique and reconstruction. Oxford University Press, 2006.
Richards M, Corner J, Maher J. The National Cancer Survivorship Initiative: new and emerging evidence on the ongoing needs of cancer survivors. Br J Cancer. 2013;105:S1–4.
Rizzo DJ, Curtis RE, Socié G, Sobocinski KA, Gilbert E, Landgren O, Travis LB, Travis WD, Flowers MED, Friedman DL, Horowitz MM, Wingard JR, Deeg JH. Solid cancers after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Blood. 2009;113:1175–83.
Roth AJ, Carter J, Nelson CJ. Sexuality after cancer. Psycho-oncology. 2nd ed. New York, NY: Oxford University Press, Inc. 2010;245–50.
Rusiewicz A, DuHamel KN, Burkhalter J, Ostroff J, Winkel G, Scigliano E, Papadopoulos E, Moskowitz C, Redd W. Psychological distress in long-term survivors of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Psychooncology. 2008;17(4):329–37.
Russmann S, Curkovic I, Huber M. Adverse reactions and risks associated with non-compliance. Ther Umsch. 2010;67(6):303–7.
Savani B, Griffith M, Jagasia S, Lee SJ. How i treat late effects in adults after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Blood. 2011;117:3002–9.
Schover LR. Sexuality and fertility after cancer. New York: John Wiley & Sons; 1997.
Snyder C, Harris C, Anderson J, Holleran S, Irving L, Sigmon S, Yoshinobu L, Gibb J, Langelle C, Spelten E, Spragers M, Verbeek J. Factors reported to influence the return to work of cancer survivors: a literature review. Psycho-Oncology. 2002;11:124–31.
Socié G, Stone JV, Wingard JR, Weisdorf D, Henslee-Downey J, Bredeson C, Cahn J-Y, Passweg JR, Rowlings PA, Schouten HC, Kolb H-J, Bender-Götze C, Camitta BM, Godder K, Horowitz MM, Wayne AS, Klein JP. For the late effects working Committee of the International Bone Marrow Transplant Registry. Long-term survival and late deaths after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. N Engl J Med. 1999;341:14–21.
Taverna L, Tremolada M, Bonichini S, Tosetto B, Basso G, Messina C, Pillon M. Motor skill delays in pre-school children with leukemia one year after treatment: hematopoietic stem cell transplantation therapy as an important risk factor. PLoS One. 2017;12(10):e0186787. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0186787.
Thygesen K, Schjødt I, Jarden M. The impact of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation on sexuality: a systematic review of the literature. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012;47:716–24. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2011.169.
Tichelli A, Beohou E, Labopin M, et al. Evaluation of second solid cancers after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in European patients. JAMA Oncol. 2019;5(2):229–35. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2018.4934.
Tomlinson D, Kline N. In: Tomlinson D, Kline N. Pediatric oncology nursing advanced clinical handbook. Berlin Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag; 2010.
Waddell G, Burton A. Is work good for your health and wellbeing? London: The Stationary Office; 2006.
Watson M, et al. Palliative adult network guidelines. 3rd ed. West Sussex; 2011.
Wilhelmsson M, Glosli H, Ifversen M, Abrahamsson J, Winiarski J, Jahnukainen K. Hasle H; Nordic Society of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology (NOPHO). Long-term health outcomes in survivors of childhood AML treated with allogeneic HSCT: a NOPHO-AML study. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2019;54(5):726–36. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41409-018-0337-8. Epub 2018 Sep 21

Winterling J, Kisch A, Alvariza A, Årestedt K, Bergkvist K. Preparedness for family caregiving prior to allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Palliat Support Care. 2021:1–8. https://doi.org/10.1017/S1478951521001346.

World Health Organisation. Adherence to long-term therapies, evidence for action. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2003.

World Health Organization (2020) Palliative Care. www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/palliative-care (Last accessed: 22 April 2022).

Wulff-Burchfield E, Jagasia M, Savani B. Long-term follow-up of informal caregivers after Allo-SCT: a systematic review. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2013;48:469–73. https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2012.123.

Yakoub-Agha I, Chabannon C, Bader P, Basak GW, Bonig H, Ciceri F, Corbacioglu S, Duarte RF, Einsele H, Hudecek M, Kersten MJ. Management of adults and children undergoing CAR t-cell therapy: best practice recommendations of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT) and the Joint Accreditation Committee of ISCT and EBMT (JACIE). Haematologica. 2019;105(2):297–316.

Further Reading

EBMT Swiss Nurses Group. Adherence to oral anti-tumour therapies. 2011.

Nursing Research and Audit in the Transplant Setting

16

Corien Eeltink, Sarah Jayne Liptrott, and Jacqui Stringer

Abstract

Nursing research is a systematic inquiry that uses disciplined methods to answer questions or solve problems in order to expand the knowledge base within a given field. There are various issues to address in order to complete a successful study. The aim of this chapter is to provide the reader with an overview of the key topics for consideration and give guidance as to where to go for further information. Providing best care to patients undergoing HSCT is the moral and ethical duty of all nurses. As a consequence, awareness of, and involvement in, research as the vehicle to ensuring best practice is also our moral duty.

Keywords

Nursing research · Audit · Methodology · Quantitative · Qualitative · Mixed methods · Cross-sectional · Longitudinal · Prospective · Retrospective

16.1 Introduction/Background

Nursing research is a systematic inquiry that uses disciplined methods to answer questions or solve problems. It has only been in the last four decades that nurses have had access to knowledge from nursing research to inform their practice. Nowadays, nurses are expected to use the best type of evidence to base their nursing care on, so-called evidence-based practice (EBP).

In 1859, Florence Nightingale's book *Notes on Nursing* was first published, with the aim of providing guidance to women who have personal charge of the health of others. At this time, there were no nursing schools and no trained nurses. She was the pioneer of modern nursing. She combined knowledge, her systematic approach, developing instruments, and statistics into an early form of evidence-based practice. Based on her analysis and presentations, she was able to make changes in nursing care with the effect of reducing mortality and morbidity.

In 1997, Molassiotis reported the lack of nursing training in research techniques, prob-

C. Eeltink (✉)
Centrum voor Oncologie, Dijklander Ziekenhuis, Hoorn, The Netherlands
e-mail: c.m.eeltink@dijklander.nl

S. J. Liptrott
Nursing Research and Development Office, Oncology Institute of Southern Switzerland (IOSI), Ente Ospedaliero Cantonale, Bellinzona, Switzerland
e-mail: sarahjayne.liptrott@eoc.ch

J. Stringer
Clinical Lead Complementary Health and Wellbeing, The Christie NHS Foundation Trust, Manchester, UK
e-mail: Jacqui.Stringer@christie.nhs.uk

M. Kenyon, A. Babic (eds.), *The European Blood and Marrow Transplantation Textbook for Nurses*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-23394-4_16

lems with funding nursing research, staff shortages, and language barriers as the reasons for the limited contribution of nursing research and the utilization of research findings to the field of bone marrow transplantation (BMT) in Europe. However, he also reported that nursing research was moving forward and starting to be integrated into many European BMT centers.

Currently, huge progress is being made. JACIE accreditation, demonstrating excellence of practice, is a legal requirement for transplant centers in many countries (more information about JACIE in Chap. 1), and as a consequence, nurses have an important role in validating protocols of care. The EBMT nurses group is making it possible to form multi-institutional collaborative models of research. An example of this is the many surveys our nurses have developed looking at current practice in relation to, for example, mouth care, CVCs, isolation, low bacterial diet, nutrition, medication adherence, and patient information. Such surveys are the ideal baseline from which to explore where there is inconsistency in nursing practice across Europe and whether further work is required to clarify what can be seen as best practice. Patient-focused research looking at mouth care, sexuality, and quality of life has been extensively explored and indicates an increasing use of evidence-based practice. Finally, the number of PhDs among registered nurses is growing, which is increasing the capacity of the nursing community to carry out independent research. Nursing research is moving in the right direction.

However, we have been undertaking hematopoietic transplantation for over 60 years with increasing success, and the longer HSCT survivors live, the more long-term effects they report. Much remains to be done. This chapter aims to provide guidance on carrying out research and information about the types of methodology, which can be used in nursing research, and what support may be required to complete a successful project.

16.2 Service Evaluation: Audit or Research?

Before focusing on research as a topic, it is worth first clarifying the differences between service evaluation, audit, and research. These are all valid methods nurses can use to review, benchmark, or enhance their practice (Box 16.1), but there are differences in the way they are performed, and these differences have resource implications (financial, staff, and time). Probably the key difference between the three strategies is the overall aim of the work. Both service evaluation and audit are looking at assessing or confirming the quality of the care being provided to patients, whereas research aims to add new information to the field. It is often the case that a service evaluation or audit will trigger questions, which become the basis of a research study.

Box 16.1 Definitions of Service Evaluation, Audit, and Research

Service evaluation: Service evaluation seeks to assess how well a service is achieving its intended aims. It is undertaken to benefit the people using a particular healthcare service and is designed and conducted with the sole purpose of defining or judging the current service. The results of service evaluations are mostly used to generate information that can be used to inform local decision-making.
Audit (clinical): The English Department of Health states that clinical audit involves systematically looking at the procedures used for diagnosis, care, and treatment, examining how associated resources are used, and investigating the effect care has on the outcome and quality of life for the patient. Audit usually involves a quality improvement cycle that measures care against predetermined standards (benchmarking), takes specific actions to improve care, and monitors ongoing sustained improvements to quality against agreed standards or benchmarks.
Research: Research involves the attempt to extend the available knowledge by means of a systematically defensible process of enquiry.

Adapted from Twycross and Shorten (2014).

Because research may change the care that a patient is currently receiving, there is a significant amount of preparation required and mandatory approvals from statutory bodies (e.g., ethics committee) to be obtained prior to starting a study. This is to ensure the patient is protected from poor study design and unethical research practice. The situation can become confusing as research methodologies are often used for both service evaluation and audit. Equally, there may not always be clear standards available against which to audit practice. However, there are papers offering guidance on how to confidently decide which category a specific project falls into (Twycross and Shorten (2014)).

It is beyond the remit of this chapter to go further into the issue. However, there are resources available to support nurses to make decisions regarding what classification their work falls into, which is not always obvious. The Health Research Authority (HRA) in the UK, for example, has an online tool that has been designed to help clinicians with exactly this challenge: http://www.hra.nhs.uk/research-community/before-youapply/determine-whether-your-study-is-research/.

16.3 Performing/Undertaking Research

Few people are born as researchers. The majority become researchers through education and training, practical experience, and always hard work. Research is demanding yet rewarding – even when results are not what were expected, as the aim is to learn and increase knowledge in a particular field. When initiating research, it can be challenging to know where to begin. Planning and organization are key concepts in research performance, in order get started and keep focus with the project. For novice researchers, those looking to undertake research in a new field or using a methodology that they may not be familiar with, there is usually help at hand. It is important to build a team to undertake the research, which may begin within the local organization itself; many hospitals have research and development departments (particularly those with links to academic institutions) and/or access to statisticians and support for analysis where necessary. Often, difficulties arise when there is a lack of resources or time to undertake research. Getting support from management and senior clinical staff to undertake research can aid in getting some protected time.

Financial support for undertaking research is an important consideration and may be available from a variety of sources. Registration for a personal postgraduate degree (either a master's or a doctorate) is supported by some institutions and has the added benefit of ongoing training and supervision. Nursing associations/organizations – both national and international such as the European Oncology Nursing Society – provide the possibility of applying for research grants. Information on other available resources can be obtained from, for example, national departments of health and health research boards; however, this will vary from country to country and will need investigation.

Issues of interest for investigation through research and development of the research question can be the work of a team. All healthcare professionals will have their own views of what is important and potentially how it can be investigated. By involving other members of staff in the research process, there is a "buy-in" where the project becomes the property and interest of all, rather than just one individual. This is important when thinking about the practicalities of undertaking research as it is particularly challenging if one person has to do everything. Research planning can also benefit from user (e.g., patient) involvement in terms of advising on, for example, study design, strategies for recruitment, and data collection methods that may or may not work.

Support can also be sought from a wider field such as via local academic institutions, universities, or other centers for multicenter studies. Knowledge of the literature and contacting those who are the experts in the field can

be useful when questions or ideas are unclear. Other professional groups that may be disease or intervention focused such as the EBMT Nurses Group can also be a useful resource. The EBMT NG Research Committee is one such group that promotes collaboration with researchers in order to encourage presentation of ideas and aspirations for research within a wider setting. Please see the website for more details: http://www.ebmt.org/Contents/Nursing/WhoWeAre/NursingCommittes/Pages/default.aspx.

16.4 Interpreting Nursing Research

In order to complete a successful project, regardless of which criteria it comes under (audit, service evaluation, or research), it is important to identify any work that has already been performed within the field of interest. A scoping exercise to identify key relevant research and a critical appraisal of existing literature will facilitate the identification of current knowledge and, as such, which studies can be used as a baseline for further work (e.g., to audit against as best practice). It will also identify where gaps in knowledge exist and provide a focus for where research can aid in developing our understanding.

To interpret and evaluate the significance of nursing research, knowledge of the various methodologies is required. This will provide the potential researcher with confidence to know whether the methodology and study design selected were appropriate to answer the research question and, as a consequence, will provide an indicator as to the quality and reliability of the results presented.

Evaluating the quality of existing literature can be complex and time-consuming, but a thorough review can inform future research direction and methodological choices. There are a variety of appraisal checklists available that can facilitate evaluation of research such as the CONSORT statement for randomized controlled trial (RCT) reporting, Critical Appraisal Skills Programme (CASP) tools, and PRISMA Statement. A published paper will usually have a title, abstract, introduction (including study aims), methods (including statement of ethical approval), results, discussion, acknowledgment of funding sources, and a reference section. The abstract is concise while communicating key information and will give the reader an indication of whether the paper is relevant to their field of interest. The main article will provide a more detailed description. The introduction, for example, should provide an overview of previous literature to "set the scene" and state the study rationale and consequent aims/objectives. The methodology and results sections require the reader to undertake a critical appraisal of sampling and recruitment strategies. This includes, where appropriate, whether the correct calculation has been made to ensure sufficient subjects were entered, the "power calculation," to provide meaningful results, and data collection methods and analysis of results to inform them of the overall methodological quality and therefore reliability of the study results. The discussion section will provide a summary of the results and their interpretation, often comparing with other pertinent research. It should also describe the limitations of the research and implications for both future research and clinical practice.

It is difficult for a research study to be conducted perfectly; an open and critical reflection of limitations will assist in judging the impact on quality and perhaps generalizability of the results. Equally, suggestions of future studies, which may be required, and implications for clinical practice can be used as validation of a proposed piece of research. A review of the references may identify recent work and prevent repetition as well as older studies, which are still relevant and can provide a lot of information. If the reference list consists mainly of old or outdated sources, it may be an indicator that the research is based on outdated information or that there is the necessity for more work to be done on the issue in question. Similarly noting the presence of peer-reviewed journals will support evidence of reading around the topic.

16.5 Nursing Research

16.5.1 The Research Question

Once the general topic has been identified, it is important to refine this further to a more specific area of interest. Asking a librarian to assist with finding the appropriate literature as a background reading exercise allows for a greater understanding of the topic. Narrowing the focus may be helped by talking with colleagues about the topic and by working with a team and using sources of support as described earlier. Formulating the research question is about restating your topic as a question. The research question needs to be clear, focused, and ethical—and obviously something that can be researched. The acronym "PICO" is a reminder used to help clarify the clinical question (Box 16.2). It acts as a framework, requiring reflection about different aspects of interest to investigate. Building the PICO requires clarity and specificity, which helps in targeting the right evidence to use in practice. The question must be specific. What type of patient group is of interest? Is there a specific test as an intervention or a broad group? If looking for better outcomes, what are examples of those outcomes?

Box 16.2 PICO: Worked Example, Aslam and Emmanuel (2010)

P: Patient, problem, or population I: Intervention C: Comparison O: Outcome	P: Allogeneic HSCT recipients I: Psychologist C: No psychologist O: Effect on psychological distress
Sample question using PICO: In allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell recipients (P), what is the effect of a psychologist in the multidisciplinary team (I) on psychological distress (O) compared to no psychologist (C)?	

16.5.2 Designs for Nursing Research

Once the question has been clearly defined, identifying the appropriate methodology to answer the question most effectively is the next step. The research design has to be pertinent to the question itself, with the nature of the question guiding the choice of approach. Research questions may be exploratory (i.e., with no a priori theory of outcome), wanting to investigate a phenomenon that we know little about and how it is perceived by a group of individuals. This type of question lends itself to in-depth interviews and a qualitative research approach. If a research question is, for example, interested in the efficacy of a novel intervention, perhaps in comparison with standard care, then a randomized controlled trial may be more appropriate.

Two overarching categories of research are basic research, used to obtain empirical data (e.g., laboratory-based studies), which is unlikely to be immediately translatable to clinical practice, and applied research, which is usually directly relevant to the clinical setting. Nursing research tends to be applied research.

Research can also be categorized into experimental or non-experimental. Although the suggested gold standard of evidence is the experimental approach of an RCT, it is not always possible or appropriate to use this approach, for example, where randomization may be unethical. This does not mean research other than that of an RCT is not of value; on the contrary, well-conducted research will always add to the knowledge base, and studies using more exploratory methodologies often provide a foundation for clinical trials. Common approaches for nursing research include descriptive or explorative research (e.g., using questionnaires), correlational studies, and both experimental and quasi-experimental approaches.

16.5.3 Literature Reviews

With the ever-increasing amount of research being produced and published, it is possible that answers to research questions already exist, but they sometimes lack the culmination, critical appraisal, and interpretation of individual studies together in one single document. This is where reviews of the literature to identify the evidence

base are sources of research in themselves. Systematic reviews have increased in number within the field of nursing care. They use strategies in order to limit bias and systematically critically appraise and synthesize pertinent studies of interest (Greener and Grimshaw 1996). This means having defined objectives for the review, criteria for study inclusion, an organized approach to searching databases, and a clearly defined method for critical appraisal, analysis, and subsequent synthesis of data. Systematic reviews can potentially combine research findings from smaller individual studies, in order to provide a broader overview of findings in which detection of "minor" findings may be amplified or discredited. Box 16.3 describes two examples of systematic reviews within the HSCT setting.

Box 16.3 Systematic Reviews Within the HSCT Setting

In the review by Chaudhry et al. (2016), the incidence and outcomes of oral mucositis (OM) in allogeneic HSCT patients and its association with conditioning regimens were analyzed, reviewing 395 patients in 8 eligible myeloablative regimen studies and 245 patients in 6 eligible reduced-intensity conditioning (RIC) regimen studies. Severe mucositis (defined as either grades 2 to 4 or grades 3 and 4, depending on the studies' definition of severity) occurred among 79.7% patients treated with myeloablative regimen studies and 71.5% patients treated with reduced-intensity conditioning regimen studies. RIC regimens led to a high incidence of OM similar to that of MA regimens.

Riley et al. (2015) reviewed the effects of oral cryotherapy in patients with cancer receiving treatment. For this they included 14 RCTs analyzing 1280 participants. After high-dose melphalan before HSCT, cryotherapy reduces considerable oral mucositis. However, the size of the reduction could not be detected.

16.5.4 Quantitative, Qualitative, and Mixed Method Research

Research is generally divided into three groups—quantitative, qualitative, and mixed method approaches. Quantitative research is particularly focused on theory testing and relationships between variables (factors which are either changed within an experimental design, such as mouth wash in oral care, or influenced by such changes, e.g., level of oral pain/mucositis), where measurement instruments (e.g., pain scale) provide numerical data, which can be subjected to statistical analysis (Creswell 2014). Examples of quantitative designs include those producing numerical data such as experiments or clinical trials (often sponsored by pharmaceutical companies or academic groups that coordinate research projects), observations (looking at frequencies), and surveys with closed questions (using questionnaires, in person, online, or by phone). At the other end of the spectrum, qualitative research is focused on understanding meanings and experiences of human beings, also within a given context (Kielmann et al. 2011). Researchers using these methods do not have any theory on which to base their work; rather they may use their results to develop a theory. Examples of qualitative data include interviews, focus groups, and secondary data (such as written accounts or reports). Both quantitative and qualitative approaches have positive and negative aspects, and a more recent "mixed method" approach to research lies somewhere between these two ends. A combination of qualitative and quantitative data collection methods is aimed to benefit from the advantages of each approach, in order to provide a robust method of validating and investigating findings. Mixed methods may be used within a study or over a program of research, and an example of such is provided in Box 16.4.

Box 16.4 Mixed Method Research in the HSCT Setting

Niederbacher et al. (2012) investigated quality of life (QoL) following allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT). Forty-four patients were monitored and followed up for at least 3 months post-transplant. Quality of life was evaluated via the Functional Assessment of Chronic Illness Therapy–Bone Marrow Transplantation (version 4) questionnaire with all patients and semi-structured, problem-oriented interviews with seven subjects. The authors compared results from the quantitative and qualitative parts based on triangulation—a method aimed to increase confidence in findings by use of two or more independent measures (Bryman 2008). Findings suggested <25% were highly satisfied with their QoL, with women scoring lower than men. The results revealed a positive correlation between the post-HSCT period and QOL (r_s = 0.338, P = 0.025), especially regarding the social/family (r_s = 0.411, P = 0.006) and emotional well-being (r_s = 0.306, P = 0.043) aspects. Interviews, however, revealed dependence and inability to work while also acknowledging support from family and healthcare professionals and a shift in priorities. By using mixed method approach, authors were able to say that the comparative quantitative and qualitative parts of the study demonstrated corresponding results.

16.5.5 Classifications of Research by Time

Research can also be categorized according to the time in/over which it is conducted. This can include retrospective studies, prospective studies, and cross-sectional and longitudinal research.

16.5.6 Cross-Sectional Study Design

A cross-sectional study is an observational study that collects data from a group of similar individuals (cohort) or a representative population at one specific point in time or over a period of time. It may be descriptive and used to assess certain distress of a disease or treatment in a defined population. A cross-sectional study is quick and easy to conduct and good for generating hypotheses, and an example of such is provided in Box 16.5. A weakness is that the onset of the outcome is difficult to determine and that associations may be difficult to interpret.

Box 16.5 Cross-Sectional Studies in the HSCT Setting

Dyer et al. (2016) assessed 421 Australian survivors (57% male, 43% female) of HSCT sexuality and reported sexual inactivity in 12% of both male and female survivors and sexual difficulties in 51% of sexually active male survivors and 66% of sexually active female survivors. Men reported erectile dysfunction (80%) and decreased libido (62%), and female survivors reported loss of libido (83%), painful intercourse (73%), vaginal dryness (73%), less enjoyment of sex (68%), vaginal narrowing (34%), and vaginal irritation (26%). They also studied associations and found age and cGVHD significantly associated with sexual dysfunction. However, this study is the largest up till now; a weakness of this study is that it is not prospectively examined. After all, how sexual function evolves over time cannot be concluded. For some outcomes, a prospective design is better.

16.5.7 Longitudinal Study Design

A longitudinal study is alternative to a cross-sectional study in that data is gathered for the *same* subjects repeatedly over the study period.

As a consequence, longitudinal research can extend over many years or even decades depending on the aims of the study. An example of a longitudinal study is provided in Box 16.6.

Box 16.6 Longitudinal Study in the HSCT Setting

Kupst et al. (2002) undertook a prospective longitudinal study of cognitive and psychosocial functioning in pediatric HSCT patients. They assessed the children on three occasions: pre-HSCT, 1 year post-HSCT, and 2 years post-HSCT. One hundred and fifty-three children and adolescents were evaluated pre-HSCT and at 1 year, with 2-year data available for 74 children. Longitudinal analyses of Wechsler IQ data were completed on 100 children (longitudinal exact test) and 52 children (repeated measures analysis of variance). Results of cognitive assessment indicated (1) stability of IQ scores over time and (2) that the strongest predictor was pre-HSCT cognitive functioning. Psychosocial assessment results indicated (1) a low prevalence of behavioral and social problems, (2) stability in functioning over time, and (3) pre-HSCT functioning strongly predictive of later functioning.

16.5.8 Prospective Study Design

A prospective study design is a specific type of observational study that follows a group of similar individuals (cohort) over time and ideally begins enrolling before exposure (baseline) and then follows over a period of time (longitudinally), to determine if and when exposure (e.g., HSCT) changes outcomes. In this way, more associations can be identified between "risk factors" and outcomes—examples of prospective studies are provided in Box 16.7.

Box 16.7 Prospective Studies in the HSCT Setting

Syrjala et al. (2008) reported the most extended longitudinal study in relation to sexual function changes during 5 years after HSCT report that 46% of males and 80% of the female patients have sexual problems 5 years post-transplant. Both men and women declined in average sexual function from before transplantation to 6 months after transplantation. Women did not improve from 6-month posttransplantation levels by 5 years. Men improved significantly by 2 years. A weakness of this study is that the baseline measurement is before transplantation; ideally, the baseline measurement would be carried out before induction chemotherapy.

Crooks et al. (2014) determined whether the use of a single-item screening tool and a problem list could monitor patients' distress and the relations. All consecutive patients scheduled for an allogeneic transplant between January 15, 2012, and December 17, 2012, who gave informed consent after being informed, were handed a packet that included a short demographic sheet, distress thermometer, and problem list. The final sample included 37 patients; they were approximately 54 years of age, ranging from 32 to 66 years, and had more males (62%) than females (38%). Distress was measured at the transplant talk, discharge, and 3 and 6 months post-discharge. Using the distress cutoff score of 4 as the criterion, 59% had clinically significant distress at time point 1, 58% at discharge, 43% at 3 months, and 19% at 6 months. The results show the use of a one-item screening tool and problem list to monitor psychosocial distress over time as a potential method to coordinate the care to address problems.

16.5.9 Retrospective Study Design

A retrospective study is one which looks backward, often by looking through patients' notes or registries. It will collate information and examine variables in relation to an outcome (e.g., survival) that is established when the protocol is written at the start of the study. This methodology is useful if the outcome of interest is uncommon, and a prospective investigation would have to be too large to be feasible. Retrospective studies may be carried out prior to commencement of a more targeted prospective study to validate the field of study. An example of a retrospective study can be found in Box 16.8.

Box 16.8 Retrospective Study in the HSCT Setting

Aoudjhane et al., on behalf of the Acute Leukemia Working Party of EBMT (2005), compared the results of patients who underwent a reduced-intensity conditioning regimen (RIC) prior to HLA identical HSCT to those after myeloablative (MA) regimen HSCT, in patients with acute myeloblastic leukemia (AML) over 50 years of age. Outcomes of 315 RIC were retrospectively compared with 407 MA HSCT recipients. In multivariate analysis, acute GVHD (II–IV) and transplant-related mortality were significantly decreased ($P = 0.01$ and $P < 10–4$, respectively), and relapse incidence was significantly higher ($P = 0.003$) after RIC transplantation. Leukemia-free survival was not statistically different between the two groups. These results may set the grounds for prospective trials comparing RIC with other strategies of treatment in elderly AML.

16.6 Ethical Issues in Nursing Research

Throughout the research process, the protection of those participating is paramount. Guidance on the ethical conduct of clinical trials is provided both locally within institutions and nationally and internationally and is based on key documents such as the Nuremberg Code (1996) and the Declaration of Helsinki (2002). Methods to protect human rights include the process of gaining informed consent from each potential subject to participate in a trial, as well as the review of any study and its documentation, by an independent ethics committee.

The process of informed consent is more than a signature on a document. Participants must be aware of the implications of participating in the study, the potential risks and benefits, anonymity and protection of privacy, the voluntariness of their participation, and right to withdraw consent to participate at any time without suffering negative consequences. This information tends to be within a participant information sheet (PIS) and related consent form (CF). These are documents that will also be revised by the independent ethics committee. Potential participants should be provided with these documents and have time to both read and assimilate the information, with opportunity to discuss and ask questions so that there is a clear and complete understanding of all aspects of the study. The purpose of ethics committees, however, is to ensure the interests of the participant are accounted for when evaluating studies for approval. This includes evaluating whether the study is ethical, the completeness and appropriateness of documents such as the PIS and CF, and reviewing aspects of the design to ensure its correct conduct.

Ethical considerations in nursing research are sometimes rather complex, and just a simplified

overview has been described in this chapter. The requirement for approval to conduct research should be discussed at a local level with research and development units or with the local ethics committee secretary, who will usually be able to provide guidance on the types of approval for the type of research being undertaken. This may also include approval from the national regulatory bodies in some cases. Research should not be undertaken until all necessary approvals have been received and documented. The process of approval may be lengthy if amendments to documents or even research protocols are required in order to address concerns raised by one or more of the approval bodies. This potential for delay should be considered when research is being planned.

16.7 Conclusion

One of the key factors for nursing research is that we are aiming to produce results and increase our knowledge base in a way that is quickly translatable into clinical practice. In a rapidly developing field such as HSCT, research helps provide evidence on which to base standards for care, thus helping ensure the safety and efficacy of our practice with a very vulnerable patient population. Planning a potential study is often the aspect of work, which is most time-consuming. It is, however, imperative to get this right to prevent delays further down the line (e.g., with the ethical approval process). For that reason, teamwork is highly recommended as is support from experts/experienced researchers. It is beyond the scope of this chapter to provide specific details for all aspects of the research process, but rather the aim was to provide guidance on the main concepts, which require thought in order to complete a successful project. Research is an integral part of the future of HSCT, and as qualified nurses, we have a duty of care to our patients to become involved in whatever way we can. Finally, it is important to remember that negative results can be just as useful as positive ones, if not more so; please do not let such an outcome, if it should occur, put you off publishing.

References

Aoudjhane M, Labopin M, Gorin NC, Shimoni A, Ruutu T, Kolb H-J, Frassoni F, Boiron JM, Yin JL, Finke J, Shouten H, Blaise D, Falda M, Fauser AA, Esteve J, Polge E, Slavin S, Niederwieser D, Nagler A, Rocha V. Comparative outcome of reduced intensity and myeloablative conditioning regimen in HLA identical sibling allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation for patients older than 50 years of age with acute myeloblastic leukaemia: a retrospective survey from the acute leukemia working party (ALWP) of the European group for blood and marrow transplantation (EBMT). Leukemia. 2005;19:2304–12.

Aslam S, Emmanuel P. Formulating a researchable question: a critical step for facilitating good clinical research. Indian J Sex Transm Dis. 2010;31(1):47–50.

Bryman A. Social research methods. 3rd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2008.

Chaudhry HM, Bruce AJ, Wolf RC, Litzow MR, Hogan WJ, Patnaik MS, Kremers WK, Phillips GL, Hashmi SK. The incidence and severity of oral mucositis among allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation patients: a systematic review. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2016;22(4):605–16.

Creswell JW. Research design: qualitative, quantitative and mixed methods approaches. 4th ed. London: Sage; 2014.

Crooks M, Seropian S, Bai M, McCorkle R. Monitoring patient distress and related problems before and after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Palliat Support Care. 2014;12(1):53–61.

Declaration of Helsinki. (As amended in Tokyo, Venice, Hong Kong and Somerset West and Edinburgh) October 2000; 2002.

Dyer G, Gilroy N, Bradford J, Brice L, Kabir M, Greenwood M, Larsen SR, Moore J, Hertzberg M, Kwan J, Brown L, Hogg M, Huang G, Tan J, Ward C, Kerridge I. A survey of fertility and sexual health following allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in New South Wales, Australia. Br J Haematol. 2016;172(4):592–601.

Greener J, Grimshaw J. Using meta-analysis to summarise evidence within systematic reviews. Nurse Res. 1996;4:27–38.

Kielmann K, Cataldo F, Seely J. Introduction to qualitative research methodology. Manual, UK.Gov website; department for international development; 2011.

Kupst MJ, Penati B, Debban B, Camitta B, Pietryga D, Margolis D, Murray K, Casper J. Cognitive and psychosocial functioning of pediatric hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients: a prospective longitudinal study. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2002;30:609–17.

Molassiotis A. Nursing research within bone marrow transplantation in Europe: an evaluation. Eur J Cancer Care. 1997;6(4):257–61.

Niederbacher S, Them C, Pinna A, Vittadello F, Mantovan F. Patients' quality of life after allogeneic haematopoi-

etic stem cell transplantation: mixed-methods study. Eur J Cancer Care. 2012;21(4):548–59.

Riley P, Glenny AM, Worthington HV, Littlewood A, Clarkson JE, McCabe MG. Interventions for preventing oral mucositis in patients with cancer receiving treatment: oral cryotherapy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015;12:CD011552. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD011552.pub2.

Syrjala KL, Kurland BF, Abrams JR, Sanders JE, Heiman JR. Sexual function changes during the 5 years after high-dose treatment and hematopoietic cell transplantation for malignancy, with case-matched controls at 5 years. Blood. 2008;111(3):989–96.

The Nuremberg Code. Br Med J. 1996;313:1448. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.313.7070.1448.

Twycross A, Shorten A. Service evaluation, audit and research: what is the difference? Evid Based Nurs. 2014;17(1):65–6.